Learning Chinese Characters

A REVOLUTIONARY NEW WAY TO LEARN THE 800 MOST BASIC CHINESE CHARACTERS

Includes all characters for the AP AND HSK 1-3 EXAMS

TUTTLE

Alison Matthews
Laurence Matthews

For Annette and Helen
two of life's blessings

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

www.tuttlepublishing.com

© 2007 by Alison and Laurence Matthews

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

References to HSK Levels refer to materials published by the HSK authorities. The ultimate rights of interpretations of HSK policies remain with the Office of the PRC HSK State Commission at the following address: HSK Office, 15 Xueyuan Road, Haidan District, Beijing PRC 1000083. Fax 86-10-62311093, 86-10-62311037; Tel. 86-10-62317150, 86-10-62317531 x 2685 or 2672.

LCC Card No. 2007929564
ISBN 978-0-8048-3816-0

Distributed by:

North America, Latin America & Europe
Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.
Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930
Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993
info@tuttlepublishing.com
www.tuttlepublishing.com

Asia-Pacific
Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.
61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12
Singapore 534167
Tel: (65) 6280-1330
Fax: (65) 6280-6290
inquiries@periplus.com.sg
www.periplus.com

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 1603MP

Printed in Singapore

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

Contents

Introduction **5**
Learning Strategies **7**
Chinese Characters for Beginners **9**
User Guide **13**
Key to Character Entries **20**

Chapter 1 .... **21**
一, 二, 三, 十, 口, 日, 几, 也, 不, 机, 杯, 人, 他, 力, 女, 她

Chapter 2 .... **30**
子, 好, 个, 八, 儿, 白, 的, 四

Chapter 3 .... **37**
文, 这, 门, 们, 正, 是, 手, 我, 中

Chapter 4 .... **43**
么, 什, 五, 七, 九, 六, 百, 边, 上, 下, 马, 吗, 妈

Chapter 5 .... **50**
大, 太, 夫, 小, 你, 又, 友, 地, 在, 云, 运, 动, 会, 国

Chapter 6 .... **58**
月, 朋, 有, 妹, 来, 了, 说, 语, 多, 名, 外, 刀, 分, 到, 倒

Chapter 7 .... **66**
天, 明, 汉, 别, 如, 行, 学, 车, 连, 开, 去, 法, 取, 千, 前

Chapter 8 .... **74**
安, 字, 目, 自, 咱, 阳, 阴, 那, 哪, 西, 要, 酒, 从, 村, 时, 过, 身, 谢

Chapter 9 .... **81**
家, 山, 羊, 样, 班, 出, 础, 岁, 但, 得, 公, 以, 之, 为, 办, 干, 午, 和

Chapter 10 .... **90**
母, 每, 海, 用, 半, 利, 生, 胜, 姓, 星, 先, 告, 洗, 可, 河, 何, 啊, 首, 道, 发, 工, 江

Chapter 11 .... **98**
厂, 后, 而, 找, 打, 对, 树, 男, 里, 理, 电, 同, 心, 必, 相, 想, 思, 今, 念

Chapter 12 .... **106**
年, 没, 广, 床, 长, 张, 本, 体, 书, 立, 位, 拉, 啦, 火, 灯, 占, 站, 点, 店

Chapter 13 .... **113**
果, 棵, 课, 政, 故, 姑, 湖, 克, 辛, 亲, 产, 卡, 还, 看, 讨, 回, 接, 差, 着

Chapter 14 .... **120**
能, 作, 昨, 左, 做, 坐, 座, 右, 见, 现, 观, 再, 苦, 内, 呐, 肉, 两, 辆, 俩, 满, 互, 它, 比, 批, 切

Chapter 15 .... **130**
词, 典, 红, 细, 其, 期, 基, 尤, 就, 斤, 近, 听, 新, 经, 轻, 头, 买, 卖, 读, 实

Chapter 16 .... **139**
指, 论, 认, 只, 织, 识, 音, 意, 成, 城, 者, 都, 猪, 老, 教, 然

Chapter 17 .... **146**
当, 呢, 户, 所, 己, 记, 纪, 已, 走, 起, 导, 钟, 种, 足, 很, 根, 跟, 眼, 银, 娘, 食, 饿

Chapter 18 .... **154**
问, 闻, 方, 访, 房, 放, 旁, 万, 主, 住, 注, 往, 元, 园, 远, 玩, 完, 院, 南, 幸, 平, 苹, 评

Chapter 19 .... **162**
事, 面, 些, 倍, 部, 北, 将, 东, 乐, 算, 第, 弟, 劳, 加, 驾, 咖, 非, 啡, 排

Chapter 20 .... **170**
反, 饭, 板, 米, 青, 请, 清, 晴, 情, 睛, 精, 亮, 停, 单, 间, 简, 合, 拿, 拾, 哈, 给, 答

Chapter 21 .... **177**
片, 叫, 收, 啤, 讲, 进, 改, 况, 次, 吹, 欢, 久, 爱, 暖, 父, 吧, 把, 爸, 爬

Chapter 22 .... **185**
关, 送, 联, 言, 信, 少, 步, 省, 交, 饺, 较, 校, 牛, 件, 哥, 歌, 应, 向, 响, 化, 花, 历, 旧

Chapter 23 .... **192**
业, 碰, 史, 使, 更, 便, 英, 块, 快, 决, 觉, 定, 重, 懂, 睡

Chapter 24 .... **199**
飞, 气, 汽, 亿, 艺, 吃, 全, 色, 角, 确, 嘴, 最, 谈, 写, 号, 度, 态, 市, 师, 带

Chapter 25 .... **208**
示, 票, 漂, 社, 祝, 视, 表, 衣, 农, 初, 被, 破, 坏, 且, 姐, 助, 租, 祖, 组, 宜, 谊, 直, 真, 毛, 笔, 民, 代

Chapter 26 .... **218**
刮, 话, 适, 活, 术, 支, 技, 等, 持, 特, 义, 风, 数, 楼, 层, 室, 屋, 握, 提, 让, 页, 题, 员, 圆, 高, 搞, 治, 抬, 始, 容

Chapter 27 .... **228**
志, 声, 装, 知, 医, 贵, 您, 束, 整, 嗽, 该, 孩, 咳, 刻, 谁, 推, 难, 准, 集, 处, 各, 路, 客, 病

Chapter 28 .... **238**
杂, 怎, 脏, 总, 责, 绩, 负, 才, 团, 因, 嗯, 困, 水, 求, 球, 忽, 物, 易, 踢, 场, 汤, 扬, 奶, 极, 级, 原, 愿

Chapter 29 .... **248**
结, 喜, 周, 调, 躺, 堂, 常, 掌, 条, 务, 备, 鱼, 复, 任, 计, 设, 划, 或, 感, 喊, 布, 希

Chapter 30 .... **255**
节, 脚, 报, 服, 通, 痛, 危, 顾, 忙, 忘, 望, 雨, 雪, 参, 影, 喝, 渴, 继, 世, 介, 界, 变

Chapter 31 .... **265**
笑, 桥, 例, 死, 解, 急, 颜, 许, 需, 须, 续, 冷, 零, 领, 绍, 照, 查, 检, 脸, 险, 验, 试, 考, 科, 研

Chapter 32 .... **275**
系, 累, 践, 钱, 浅, 礼, 乱, 育, 流, 究, 空, 突, 深, 抽, 邮, 神, 演, 黄, 共, 画, 怕, 拍

Chapter 33 .... **284**
哭, 器, 操, 澡, 早, 章, 草, 包, 饱, 抱, 跑, 商, 宿, 预, 舍, 舒, 兴, 橘, 桔, 举, 句, 局, 够, 附, 府, 离, 遇, 脱

Chapter 34 .... **294**
建, 健, 庭, 挺, 消, 息, 留, 派, 展, 喂, 候, 齐, 挤, 济, 黑, 增, 晚, 像, 换

Chapter 35 .... **304**
刚, 钢, 鸡, 虽, 般, 搬, 迎, 纸, 低, 永, 泳, 族, 游, 冬, 疼, 图, 春, 秋, 夏, 热, 熟

Chapter 36 .... **314**
坚, 紧, 览, 蓝, 篮, 福, 富, 丰, 帮, 围, 伟, 挂, 封, 街, 鞋, 双, 炼, 练, 段, 锻, 顿, 烦

Chapter 37 .... **323**
诉, 药, 净, 静, 朝, 掉, 桌, 敢, 休, 退, 腿, 短, 误, 彩, 菜, 播, 习, 翻, 译, 除, 茶, 骑, 椅, 寄

Chapter 38 .... **333**
错, 借, 散, 船, 铅, 蛋, 楚, 麻, 嘛, 康, 录, 绿, 旅, 愉, 输, 凉, 谅, 碗, 香, 努, 蕉, 糖, 酸, 矮

Chapter 39 .... **343**
窗, 寒, 赛, 遍, 篇, 唱, 冒, 帽, 晨, 惯, 迟, 烧, 概, 呀, 穿, 戴, 剩, 馆

Chapter 40 .... **353**
慢, 摆, 舞, 跳, 辅, 傅, 瓶, 擦, 袜, 磁, 丢, 宴, 夜, 假, 墙, 赢

Appendix: Soundwords **361**
Pronunciation Index **366**
Meaning Index **370**
Fast Finder Index **377**

Acknowledgments

First and foremost we want to thank Janet and Dil for their wonderful illustrations. From the very first day they both entered into the spirit of the enterprise with immense energy and enthusiasm, and our Friday mornings will never be so much fun again! The initial idea was to have a few pictograms for the basic building block characters — we never dreamed we would find someone who would take the task by the scruff of the neck and attempt all 219! Although we all helped at times by brainstorming possible interpretations, Janet's ability to think "outside the box" resulted in some truly inspired character pictures and many of her interpretations will never be bettered. Similarly, when Dil brought her gifts as an illustrator to bear on the story pictures, she quickly grasped that these pictures had a very specific job to do and set about developing exactly the right style for them. We will always remember her exclamations of, "Oh, I shall enjoy drawing *that*," on being presented with yet another bizarre story to illustrate. Her enthusiasm and sense of fun have produced some truly memorable pictures.

Before we sat down to write all the stories we wanted to make sure that using visualization to remember the characters would work for different ages, backgrounds and mindsets. Our search for willing volunteers resulted in a group that covered a range of ages and interests in different parts of the world. Amongst this group was a hard core who were especially helpful, and a big thank you goes out to Larry Fogg, Pat Halliwell, Marion Brumby and Nigel Maggs.

To try and ensure that the introductory text was easy to understand we prevailed upon some very good friends (most of whom have never studied any Chinese) to read it. All of them spent time going over the text and made pertinent and helpful comments and suggestions. Our thanks to Martin Adfield, John & Barbara Eastwood, Geoff & Jill Cory, and Nigel & Toby Brown. (We should add, though, that we take full responsibility for the finished result).

There are people in life who can be guaranteed to listen to your ideas no matter how off-beat they are, and encourage you to "go for it" if they think an idea will work. Debbie and Dave Russell have given unstintingly of their time in this regard. As well as talking over detailed points they have given us their unflagging support throughout. Thank you!

Inevitably there are also times in the writing of any book when you wonder why you ever got started. At times like these everyone should have a friend like Judy Landis. Quite apart from reading parts of the book, Judy has kept us straight on all things American and is our one-woman cheer-leader. Her observations are always eloquent, sound and invariably shot through with common sense and humor. Our love and thanks go to her.

For her professionalism and understanding we'd like to thank Doreen Ng at Tuttle Publishing.

Finally, it can be hard to live with two people who wander around saying things like "that's the sort of job a ghostly dwarf would do" or "what we need here is two giants from Shanghai." So our thanks go to Helen for her forbearance in not actually throwing anything at us (at least, not for these particular transgressions).

Introduction

In a dark old castle in medieval times, someone has a bright idea: "If we could find a way of putting some **fire** on a **nail** in the wall we could have a **lamp** in the room." They get the local **giant** to **dunk** twigs in candle-wax to make the first simple lamp.

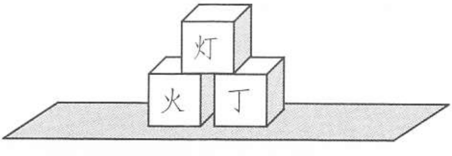
If you pictured this story as you read it, you have just learned the meaning and pronunciation of a Chinese character! This book uses stories like this as well as pictures to help you to learn and remember 800 Chinese characters. This is enough to recognize about three-quarters of the characters you would come across in an average piece of Chinese text.

The key features of this book are:

- it covers all 800 characters in "HSK Level A" (the first section of the original vocabulary list for the HSK, the Chinese Government's Language Proficiency Test);
- it uses modern standard Chinese (*putonghua* or "Mandarin");
- simplified characters are used with pronunciations given in *Hanyu pinyin*;
- the characters are introduced in a logical way, gradually building on what you have learned;
- we arrange the characters so that the most common ones are covered early on;
- key information is given for each character, including guidance on how to write it;
- we include example compounds for the characters — in particular we include all the compounds stipulated for the original HSK Level A.

Basic building block characters are introduced at the start of each chapter. We use pictures to help you learn and remember them. "Fire" (火) and "nail" (丁) are examples of basic building blocks.

Composite characters come next. These are made up of the basic building blocks. For example, the characters for fire (火) and nail (丁) when squashed together make a single new composite character (灯) that means "lamp". We can picture this as follows:



The basic building blocks "rest directly on the floor" in this picture. A composite character which is made up of two parts sits on the two blocks which support it.

Stories are provided to help you to remember these relationships: for example that the characters for "fire" and "nail" make up the character for "lamp". The story at the top of this page gives you this information in the first sentence. (The pronunciation is coded into the second sentence: more about pronunciations later).

The stories do more than encode information — they also help you *remember* it. They are based on tried and tested memory techniques which are widely recognized as being effective and long-lasting.

Everybody likes stories, and they are memorable because, without even trying, we tend to picture the scene in our mind's eye. The most memorable stories are vivid, enjoyable and/or quirky. So using stories as a memory technique not only makes learning and remembering easier, quicker and more effective than rote learning — it's also far more fun than just staring at a character and saying to yourself "this character means lamp" over and over again.

Some of our stories are illustrated with pictures, especially in the early part of the book, but as you work through the book you will find that you can visualize the stories without having any pictures — and we will give you simple tips on how to do this most effectively. But in the meantime why not test yourself: do you remember fire + nail = ?

Is this book for you?

You can learn the characters before, during, or after learning other elements of Chinese (such as grammar). It's a bit like learning to ride a bike and learning to fix the bike. You can learn to mend punctures at any point in your training (or not at all!). The point is that an expert cyclist will need to learn the same things as will a complete beginner. In the same way, the usefulness of this book to you does not depend on your knowledge of other elements of Chinese. If you want to learn Chinese characters then this book is the right book for you, whatever stage you are at in learning the Chinese language.

You can use this book if you are a complete beginner and know nothing of Chinese. If you are totally new to characters, we recommend reading Section 3: "Chinese Characters for Beginners" before you start, and as you go along you might choose to ignore some of the comments about how characters are used in practice. But the chances are, if you're reading this, that you've already learned some spoken Chinese and have at least a beginner's knowledge of the language.

Either way, whatever your level of experience, you're likely to find the idea of having to learn hundreds of characters pretty daunting — it's like a dragon lurking in the background which you know you will have to tackle sometime. You may even have tried tackling it already and have given up. But actually, this dragon is nothing to be scared of. It's just a question of taming it with the right tools, rather than trying to defeat it with brute force. Bear with us and we'll show you how. Learning Chinese characters is one of the most interesting and fun parts of learning Chinese, so don't let anyone frighten you off them!

What's different about this book?

Learning Chinese characters by breaking them down into parts is nothing new: since time immemorial students have been doing this in an effort to take some of the slog out of learning. Typically this has involved using verbal rhymes or phrases, but using imagery or visualization (seeing a picture in the mind's eye) is much stronger. Memory techniques using imagery were well known to the Romans; and a Jesuit missionary working in China called Matteo Ricci used such methods to devise a system for Chinese characters four hundred years ago. In modern times, the systematic use of imagery for learning the meanings of characters was pioneered by James Heisig (for Japanese characters, which are inherited from Chinese). So this book forms part of a long tradition in terms of the techniques it uses. But it is the first modern book to set out a consistent set of images for the meanings of Chinese characters. It also goes one step further by extending this technique to cover pronunciations too.

Learning Strategies

Which characters should you learn first?

We said that learning Chinese characters can be treated as a self-contained module that can be studied separately from other aspects of Chinese such as grammar, conversation practice, etc. Because of this you are free to learn the characters in the most sensible and logical order. The order in which we introduce the characters in this book takes into account a number of things. The main three are these:

- we build up systematically, introducing each character before it is needed as a part of other characters;
- we ease you into our system gradually, so there is not too much to learn all at once;
- we introduce the most common characters early on and the rarer ones later.

For all these reasons, it is best to work through the book “in the right order”, at least for the early part of the book (Chapters 1 to 6). That way you’ll be learning the most common characters first, and whenever you meet a composite character you will have already learned its component parts.

From Chapter 7 onwards, there is quite a lot of freedom to pick and choose if you want to. If there is a particular character that you would like to learn right away, then simply find it in the book (using one of the indexes), and learn it there and then. The cross references will tell you where to find any parts of the character that you haven’t come across before, including any basic building blocks that it uses. You can then learn just those parts that you need to make up the character you are interested in.

How much do you need to learn about each character?

You can choose how much information you learn about a character, and when. It is perfectly OK to learn just the meanings of characters, leaving pronunciations until later. Meanings alone may satisfy your interest to begin with, and will enable you to try your hand at translating things like signs and menu items. But to learn Chinese properly you will have to learn the pronunciations too, and this is built into the stories (as you will see shortly). Your eventual aim should be to have an “integrated” view of each character:

- its meaning
- its pronunciation
- its role in words (compounds)

— only then will you fully understand all the nuances of what a character “really” means. But there’s no rule to say that you have to master everything for each character before you move on to the next one.

Working with a textbook

If you are using this book in conjunction with a class textbook, you can take the characters you need for a chapter of that textbook, find them in this book (tracing their component parts using the cross references) and then use our pictures and stories to learn them.

It's not even necessary for the rest of the class to be using the same method. Learning is an individual and very private process. Nobody else even needs to know how you are learning the characters — everyone is free to use whichever method they choose.

Learning on your own

If you're working on your own, try working through a few characters a day (maybe 10–15, but it's up to you). Go at a pace that suits you; it's much better to do small but regular amounts than to do large chunks at irregular intervals.

It's a good idea to keep a note of which characters you've learned each day, and then to "test yourself" on the characters you learned the previous day, then on those from three days ago, a week ago, and a month ago. Each time you test yourself you will fix them in your memory for longer. This *expanding timescale* idea is built in to some of the "test yourself" panels in the book.

The learning environment

Find a quiet place where you can do your studying without being interrupted all the time. Bus and train journeys to and from work or college are often good times, but different things work for different people. You may find learning easier in the mornings than the evenings, or maybe it's the other way round. Whatever works best for you, try to schedule learning times for yourself accordingly. A routine where you stick to the same time of day is best of all, as your brain will get into the "habit" of being ready to learn at that time.

Take time to visualize each story in your mind's eye (there is more on this later). Write the character on a pad or in a notebook to get the "feel" of its strokes and think about its meaning and pronunciation as you write it.

Don't be too hard on yourself

Don't worry if you forget some of the characters you thought you had learned — this happens to everyone! (We give some "troubleshooting" tips later on). One encouraging fact from the research that has been done on memory is that if you learn something and then forget it, re-learning it is quicker than first time round, and makes it stick for longer.

At times it will seem as if there's a long way to go, and it's important then to remind yourself of how far you've come. At the end of many of the chapters there is a progress chart showing what percentage of written Chinese you have covered so far. Because of the way we have ordered the characters you will find that you make huge strides very quickly. For example, by the end of Chapter 4 you will already have learned 20% of the characters that you would meet in an average piece of Chinese text!

Chinese Characters for Beginners

Read this section if you are new to Chinese characters (but don't bother learning any of the characters you meet — there'll be plenty of time for that later!)

The origins of characters

Chinese characters really aren't as strange and complicated as some people try to make out — in fact they're no more mysterious than musical notation. The first characters started out as pictures:

口 mouth 木 tree

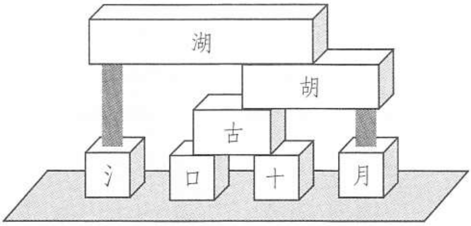
As time went on, they were gradually simplified and abbreviated until many of them now look nothing like the original objects:

车 car 马 horse

Then, when people wanted to describe things which weren't easy to depict, characters were "glued together" to make more complicated composite characters. We have already met the character for "lamp" which is made up of "fire" and "nail". Another example is the character 好 which means "good" or "to be fond of" and which combines 女 "woman" with 子 "child". Nowadays most characters are composites, that is, made up of two or more parts, either side by side or one on top of the other. When characters are joined together like this, they get squashed, so that the overall character is still the same size. For example, the character 日 is narrower when it is part of 时 and shorter and fatter when it is part of 星 (never mind for now what these characters mean!).

So we can divide characters into two types: *basic building blocks*, the simple characters originally based on drawings, and *composite* characters that are made up of two or more basic building blocks. We illustrated this idea by regarding a composite character as a building block which sits on the two blocks which support it, whereas basic building blocks sit "directly on the floor."

But it doesn't stop there. Composite characters can *themselves* be used as parts of yet other characters. This corresponds to building higher with our building blocks, as in the following picture:



Pronunciation

The main thing you should know is that each character is pronounced in Chinese using one syllable (and it works the other way round too — each syllable of Chinese corresponds to a character).

Each syllable is fairly simple: the basic pattern consists of a consonant plus a vowel (or vowels), with the possible addition of an "n" or "ng" at the end. Some typical syllables are:

wu ta ji bei dao zen ben tang jing

In addition, each syllable is spoken using one of four *tones*. Tones indicate how the pitch of the voice varies when the syllable is spoken. There are four tones in all, and they are indicated by an accent over one of the vowels in the syllable:

1st tone	(high)	**bā**
2nd tone	(rising)	**bá**
3rd tone	(falling then rising)	**bǎ**
4th tone	(falling)	**bà**

The system we use for indicating the sounds of Chinese characters using the letters of the alphabet is called *Hanyu pinyin* (or *pinyin* for short), and is the system used in China for the benefit of foreigners (e.g. on signs in railway stations). Note that in this system many of the letters are pronounced differently from their sounds in English. There is a short description of pinyin in the Appendix, but to learn how to pronounce Chinese properly, you really need a Chinese speaking teacher (or possibly tapes). This book is about learning the pronunciations for each character (this one is "wei", that one is "tang", etc.), rather than teaching you how to say them aloud.

How characters are used in written Chinese

Chinese was traditionally written in columns, top to bottom, starting with the right hand column and working leftwards. But it can be written left to right, like English, and these days you will see both. Technical books in particular are likely to be printed left to right, like English.

Although each character has a meaning, it's not really true that characters are equivalent to "words". As you have just seen, each character corresponds to a *syllable*, and in Chinese (as in English) some words are just one syllable while other words consist of two or more syllables joined together. Some syllables (like "if" and "you" in English) are one-syllable words on their own; other syllables like ("sen" and "tence" in English) link together to form multi-syllable words. Many syllables do both: they're like the English word "light" which is happy on its own, but which also links up to form words like "headlight" or "lighthouse".

In Chinese writing, the characters are written in a long line, with no extra spaces between words. It is as if English were written like this:

If you can un der stand this sen tence you can read Chi nese too.

Compounds

A *compound* in Chinese is a word made up from two or more characters. That is, a compound is a multi-syllable word. If two characters are paired together to form a compound, they simply appear one after the other in a sentence, but are treated as a single word like "Chi" and "nese" above. Most compounds have only two characters. The flavor of a character often comes out in how it combines with other characters to make compounds, and so for many characters we give examples of compounds that they appear in.

Compounds and Composites

So what's the difference between pairing two characters to get a *compound*, and combining two characters to get a *composite character*?

A compound:	大	人		大人
	dà	**rén**	gives	**dàrén**
	big	person		adult
A composite character:	女	也		她
	nǚ	**yě**	gives	**tā**
	woman	also		she

Two characters in a *compound* are simply written one after the other, full sized, and the resulting word has a pronunciation which has two syllables — in fact it is simply the pronunciations of the two characters one after the other. Often (but not always!) you'll be able to guess the meaning of the word from the meanings of its individual characters.

On the other hand, when two characters are combined to get a new composite *character* (the process we saw with "fire" + "nail" = "lamp"), they are squashed or distorted so that the new character fits into a square the same size as each of the original two. The meaning of the new character *may* be related to the meaning of its two parts, but it frequently appears to have no connection with them at all! Finally, the new character will also have a single syllable as its pronunciation (so that if it is a word, it is a one-syllable word) and this pronunciation may, or may not, come from one of its parts.

Writing characters

Being able to read Chinese characters is satisfying, but it's also rewarding to be able to *write* them (and this is a great way to impress people who aren't learning the language!) We'll show you how to write each character, starting with basic instructions in Chapter 1. Don't worry if you're not "good at drawing" — you don't need to be. Characters these days are much more likely to be written using a ball-point pen than a calligraphy brush.

As well as being fun, writing the characters yourself is a very good way of getting to know them, and we recommend that you practice writing the characters as you learn them. You'll be learning the oldest writing system in the world which is still in use today.

You've seen that characters are often made up of two or more parts (for example 她 is made up of 女 and 也). On a more fundamental level though, each character is made up of *strokes*, where each stroke is made with a single, continuous motion of the pen: a straight line, a curve, a bent line, a line with a hook, or a dot. Each character consists of a set number of strokes, and there is a traditional, fixed order in which these strokes should be drawn. The stroke-order diagrams given with each character entry (in the line of small boxes) show you how to draw the strokes in the right order. There are also some general rules for drawing characters, which we will mention as we go along.

You might think that it doesn't really matter how the strokes are written as long as the end result looks the same. To some extent this is true, but there are some good reasons for knowing the "proper" way to write the characters. Firstly, it helps you to count strokes properly for a character which you haven't seen before (and you'll need to be able to do this to look it up in a dictionary). Secondly, it will make your characters "look right", and also help you to read other people's hand-written characters later on. In the long run it's better to learn the correct method from the start because, like with so many other things, once you get into "bad" habits it can be very hard to break them!

If you are left-handed, just use your left hand as normal, but still make sure you use the correct stroke order and direction. For example, draw your horizontal strokes left to right, even if it feels more natural to draw them right to left.

Simplified and traditional characters

In the middle of the 20th century, many characters were given simplified forms. This was to help increase literacy in China, and the simplified characters are definitely much easier to learn and use. This book uses these modern simplified characters. However, many Chinese communities around the world still use traditional characters rather than simplified ones, and of course many old documents and inscriptions were written using the traditional forms too. For this reason, if there is a traditional form of a character we give it as part of the entry for that character so that you can see what it looks like.

Types of Chinese

This book uses modern standard ("Mandarin") Chinese. The characters *mean* the same in other varieties of Chinese, for example Cantonese, but they will be pronounced completely differently (and Cantonese speakers typically use traditional characters). This means that even if two Chinese people can't understand one another when they are talking, they can usually write to each other quite happily!

Radicals

Finally, you may have heard of "radicals" (which some books call "keys" or "significs"), so we'll quickly explain what they are. Look at the following characters:

Character:	她	好	妈	姓	姐
Meaning:	she	good	mum	surname	older sister

They all have the same part on the left-hand side, 女, which means "woman". This part gives a clue to the meaning of the character, and is called the "radical". As you can see, most of these five characters have something to do with the idea of "woman". But it's not a totally reliable system and also, to make life complicated, the radical in a character is not always the left-hand part. Radicals have been used for centuries to group characters together in dictionaries, and they can still be helpful if you want to find a character in a dictionary when you don't know its pronunciation.

There is more on radicals in Chapter 24, and we will introduce some other concepts (such as a "phonetic series") as we go along. But that's all you need for now to get started.

User Guide

Essential reading before starting Chapter 1!

Here we introduce the methods we will be using in this book, and in particular how the stories and pictures work. We do this using some of the characters from Chapter 1 (which you may already know). Firstly we'll look at how to learn and remember the *meanings* of characters, and then we'll look at learning the *pronunciations*.

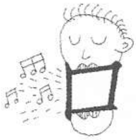
Learning the meanings of basic building blocks

Some characters are so simple that you hardly need any help to remember them; for example:

一 one 二 two 三 three

Apart from some symbolic characters like these, most simple characters started off as pictures. For example:

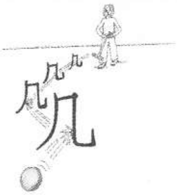
口
mouth



There are no circles in Chinese characters, so the picture of a round mouth becomes a small square. We will supply a *character picture* like the one shown on the right for each of the simple characters which act as basic building blocks.

So far, so good. But not all characters are recognizable today as the original object they represented, or indeed still refer to the same thing as the original picture. Look at this one:

几
several



The character 几 was originally a picture of a small stool, but the character picture we have supplied is different. A drawing of a stool would remind you that 几 meant "stool" in ancient times, but not that it now means "several". It is better to see (and hence later recall) a picture of several 几-like objects. *Seeing* this picture is much more powerful, in terms of laying down a long term memory, than reading a written description.

How to use character pictures

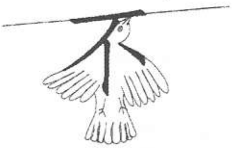
The way to use these character pictures is as follows:

- firstly look at the picture for a short while, and see how the character's shape is used in the picture;
- then look at the character on its own, and while you are doing this, see if you can mentally superimpose the picture over the character, remembering which parts of the character correspond to which parts of the picture.

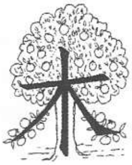
This is a good way of making sure that, when you see the character again later on, the picture (and hence the meaning) will pop into your head.

Here are two more examples:

不
not



木
tree



For 不 we have used the traditional picture of a bird flying up to the ceiling and **not** being able to escape. With 木 we are back to a straightforward drawing of an object. In modern Chinese 木 is not a hugely common character on its own, but you do need to know its meaning as it appears as a *part* of many composite characters (for example, the next two we'll meet).

But before we get on to those, how are you doing so far? Can you remember what each of these characters means?

口　木　不　几

If you have a problem with any of them, go back to the character picture and study it again, and then superimpose it over the character in your mind's eye as explained above.

The meanings of composite characters

Our first composite character is made up of two basic building blocks:

机 **machine**

As you can see this character is made up of the two characters "tree" and "several" squashed together. To learn the meaning of this composite character, we relate it to the *meanings of its two parts*, by creating an *equation*:

tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机

Since most Chinese characters are composite, we will have many equations like this. Other examples are:

thread 纟 + work 工 = red 红

now 今 + heart 心 = to study 念

You can see that these equations don't really make any logical sense! However, if you can learn these equations then you can remember composite characters. For example, if you see a character which has two parts, and you recognize these simpler parts to be "thread" and "work", then you will know from the equation that the overall character means "red".

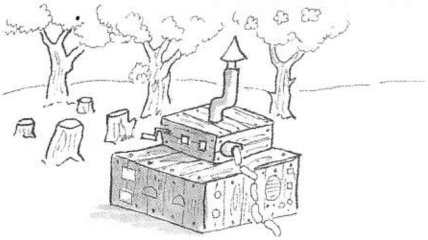
Stories and story pictures

So how do you learn these equations? This is where the stories come in. The stories are extremely short, often just a sentence, and the important thing is not just to read them but to really visualize them. To help with many of the early stories, we have illustrated them with *story pictures*.

Here is our first story, which will help you learn the equation

“**tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机**”:

It took **several trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**.



How to use stories and story pictures

Have a good look at the story picture above: see how the “several trees” have indeed been felled to make the large “machine” that is taking shape. What type of trees are being used? What is the machine for? By asking yourself questions about the setting you’re *paying attention* to the story picture and you will then remember it, so that when you see the character in future, the parts “tree” plus “several” will trigger the story in your mind, which will in turn trigger the word “machine”.

After a while we give you stories without story pictures, but the same process applies. Read the story and visualize at least as much detail as there would be in a story picture. By doing so you will be paying attention to these details, which is what will fix the story in your memory.

You will notice that in the story for “machine” the three words from the equation are printed in **bold**. This is to remind you to pay particular attention to these words when creating the picture in your mind’s eye.

Notice that in this example the equation is “**tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机**” and yet the story uses the words “tree” and “several” in the other order. We write the equation as “tree + several” because the character 机 has “tree” on the left and “several” on the right; but for the story the two parts are all we need — the order doesn’t matter. So the stories combine the two words in the order that is most natural. In this case “several trees” is more natural than “a tree and several (of something else)”. We are able to do this because it is very rare for A + B to form one character and B + A to form another one (we will point this out on the few occasions when it does occur).

Story pictures and character pictures

Notice that the story picture for “machine” is a completely different *type* of picture from the character pictures we have for basic building blocks. The story picture which accompanies the “**tree 木 + several 几 = machine 机**” story links the three *ideas* “tree”, “several” and “machine”, without any reference to the shape or appearance of the *characters* for “tree” and “several”.

Character pictures, on the other hand, are based around a drawing of the character itself, and help you to remember the meaning of each basic building block directly from its shape.

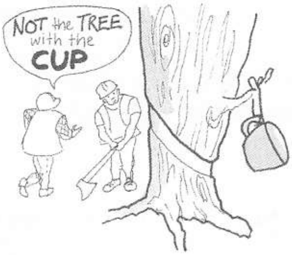
More about stories

Another example will illustrate some further points about the stories:

杯 cup

tree 木 + **not** 不 = **cup** 杯

> "I said **not** the **tree** with the **cup** tied to it!" cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice.


NOT the TREE with the CUP

Again, look at the scene. A lumberjack and his apprentice are in the forest and the apprentice is about to attack a particular tree when he is stopped in the nick of time by the lumberjack. (Why is the lumberjack horrified? What is the cup for? — Well, we shall see shortly).

Again, it is only the *meaning* you need to remember. Don't try to remember the whole story verbatim. Use the story as a bridge to get you to the meaning.

We should also stress that this story is simply an *aid to remembering* that the character 杯 means "cup"; the story does not represent the historical reason *why* 杯 has come to mean "cup". The stories are simply our way of helping you to familiarize yourself with the characters and to remember them in a simple and effective way. Often the stories will be humorous, a bit strange or bizarre, or may even seem silly, but that is just what's needed to make them stick in your memory.

If you really picture the scenes in your mind's eye, that is all the work you need to do, and the story will stick. Brute force repetition is not needed. Test it out, can you remember:

tree + **several** = ?

tree + **not** = ?

At this stage it may seem quicker to simply learn the equations off by rote, but it will be a different matter when you are have covered dozens of equations and are trying to remember them without mixing them up. Using pictures (and later on, making your own vivid pictures in your mind's eye) makes it much easier to remember them all, even though on the face of it you are trying to remember "extra" information. Think about how easily you remember the basic story of a movie despite the background "richness" of hundreds of details, and compare this with how hard it is to remember isolated "bald" facts such as addresses or lists.

Two strategies for learning meanings

So we have two strategies for learning the meanings of characters:

- If the character is a basic building block, learn it from the character picture.
- If the character is composite (i.e. made up of simpler parts), remember it from the story (and story picture if there is one).

Learning the pronunciations of characters

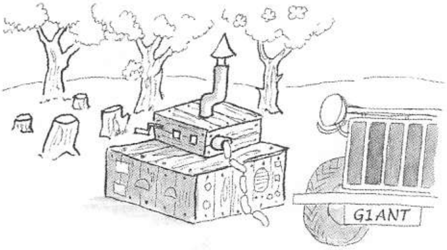
To help you remember the pronunciations of characters, we extend the stories. The composite characters already have a story, so we'll start with them.

Pronunciations of composite characters

We simply extend the story with another sentence, whose purpose is to help you remember the pronunciation of the character. The pronunciation parts of stories are always in italics and are separated from the meaning parts of stories with a dividing line "/". (If you are interested only in the meanings of characters at this stage, then you can just ignore the parts of stories after the dividing line — although reading them will often help the stories to stick in your mind). Here are two examples:

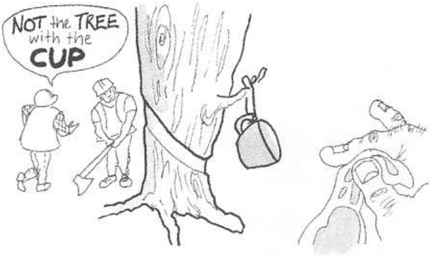
机 machine **jī**

It took **several trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**. / *When it was finished they had to get the **giant** to bring his **jeep** to deliver it.*



杯 cup **bēi**

"I said **not** the **tree** with the **cup** tied to it!" cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice. / *"The **giant** collects the sap from that one to cook his **bacon** in."*


NOT the TREE with the CUP

Notice that we have extended the story pictures as well as extending the stories.

Soundwords

We call "jeep" and "bacon" *soundwords*. They indicate the (approximate) pronunciations of the characters: the character 机 is pronounced somewhat like the "jee" in "jeep" and the character 杯 is pronounced like the "ba" in "bacon". Now there are several points to note immediately about soundwords:

- It is the first syllable *only* of the soundword which corresponds to the Chinese syllable; in fact we only go as far as the first vowel sound, unless it is followed by an "n" or "ng" sound.
- It is the *sound* of the English soundword which is important, *not* its English spelling.
- The sound is only *approximate*. The soundword "jeep" reminds us of the Chinese syllable **ji** (and not for example **tang** or **bei**); it does *not* mean that the Chinese syllable **ji** is pronounced *exactly* like the "jee" in "jeep".

Here are some examples of soundwords and their corresponding Chinese syllables:

Soundword	Chinese Syllable	Soundword	Chinese Syllable
pizza	**pi**	mandolin	**man**
bored	**bo**	bandit	**ban**
mouse	**mao**	mango	**mang**
tiger	**tai**	bank	**bang**
bacon	**bei**	fungus	**feng**
powder	**pao**	tongue	**teng**

Archetypes to represent tones

You may have wondered why a giant has wandered into each of the two stories above. He is there to indicate the tone! Four *archetypes* appear in the pronunciation parts of the stories, and represent the four tones of Chinese as follows:

Giant	1st tone	(high)	**bā**
Fairy	2nd tone	(rising)	**bá**
Teddy	3rd tone	(falling then rising)	**bǎ**
Dwarf	4th tone	(falling)	**bà**

So the two stories above tell you that the characters for "machine" and "cup" have 1st tone (because a giant features in each story). We have chosen these four archetypes because they are universal, familiar, timeless and distinct. If you have really pictured a story in your mind's eye, you will find that you remember which archetype featured in it.

We've said that the stories which work best for learning characters are off-beat and humorous ones, and the four archetypes we have chosen lend themselves to this. There is nothing childish about using such powerful images; they are just what you need to bypass the verbal, logical parts of your brain and plant long-lasting links in your non-verbal memory.

Now, do you remember the pronunciations of 机 and 杯?

Pronunciations of basic building blocks

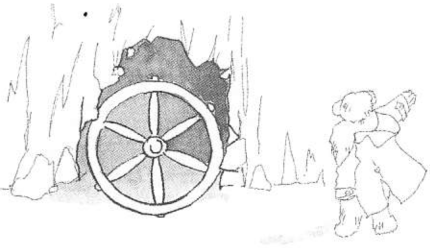
Finally, what about the pronunciations of characters which are basic building blocks? For these, there is no story to extend, as there was for composite characters. Also, a story involving "mouth" by itself will tend to get mixed up with all the other stories involving "mouth".

Our solution to this is to invent a dummy object, the same one for all basic building blocks, and we have chosen the most basic piece of technology there is: a *wheel*. Thus the story to think of when you want to remember the pronunciation of "mouth" itself is the story involving "mouth + wheel".

The following examples show how this works.

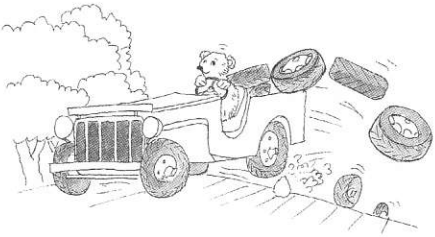
口 mouth **kǒu**

*/ A large **wheel** stands across the **mouth** of the cold, dark cave, but **Teddy** simply puts on his duffel **coat** and hops between the spokes to get inside.*



几 several **jǐ**

*/ There are **several wheels** to deliver so **Teddy** offers to load them onto his **jeep**. (See him careening off down the road scattering wheels in all directions every time he hits a bump!)*



You will see that 几 is pronounced "**ji**", just like 机. But this time it is Teddy in the jeep, not the giant, so that we know that "several" is pronounced **jǐ** with the third tone, not **jī** with the first tone.

Since wheel stories are about pronunciations, they are printed in italics.

Summary

To sum up, the strategy, when you see a character you have learned and want to remember its meaning and pronunciation, is as follows:

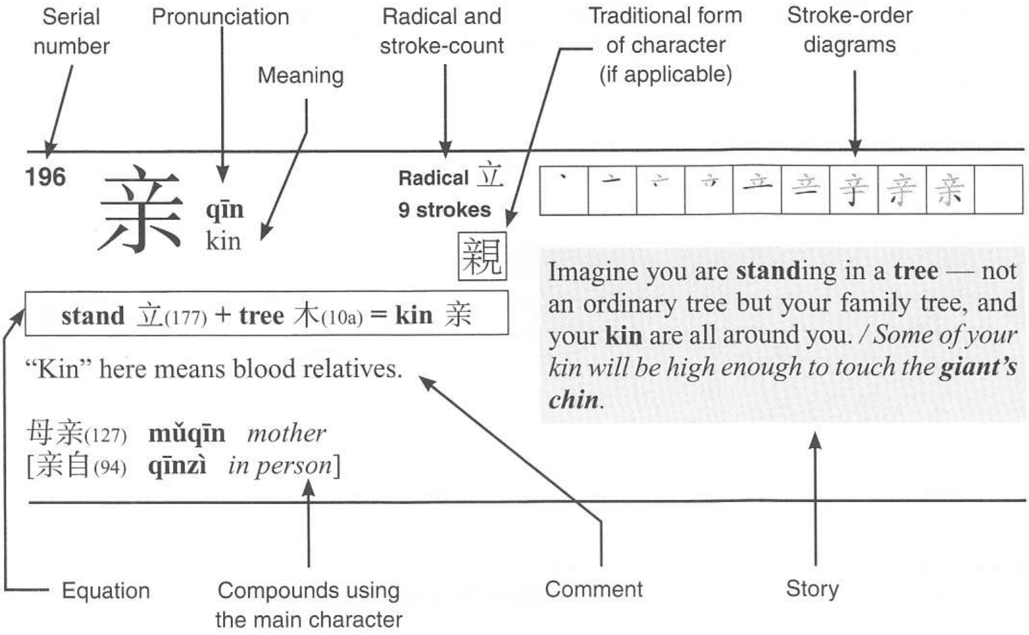
- If it is a basic building block, remember the meaning from its character picture, and then think of the "wheel" story to get the pronunciation.
- If it is a composite character (i.e. made up of simpler parts), identify the parts and then use these to remember the story: the first part of the story gives you the meaning, and the second part gives you the pronunciation.

But rest assured that the whole process is much quicker to carry out than it is to describe!

As with any new skill, such as learning to drive, things will become automatic after a while. If you study Chinese for any length of time, you will find that you become familiar with many characters and start to read them "at a glance". When that happens, the corresponding stories presented in this book will become superfluous: like scaffolding for a building, they will have served their purpose once the building is complete. Until that time, however, the stories provide a systematic framework which can help you to hold the myriad of characters in place in your mind without mixing them up. And even much later on, when you find you have temporarily forgotten a character, you can use the parts of the character to recreate the story that ties them together, and hence "recover" the meaning and pronunciation of the character. The stories will act like a long-lasting index to the store of characters in your memory.

Key to Character Entries

See the User Guide for an explanation of the equations and stories.


Serial number
Pronunciation
Meaning
Radical and stroke-count
Traditional form of character (if applicable)
Stroke-order diagrams
Equation
Compounds using the main character
Comment
Story

196 亲 **qīn** kin

Radical 立
9 strokes

親

stand 立(177) + **tree** 木(10a) = **kin** 亲

"Kin" here means blood relatives.

母亲(127) **mǔqīn** *mother*
[亲自(94) **qīnzì** *in person*]

Imagine you are **stand**ing in a **tree** — not an ordinary tree but your family tree, and your **kin** are all around you. / *Some of your kin will be high enough to touch the* ***giant's chin***.

Serial numbers printed in black (such as **278**) refer to the original HSK Level A characters. Serial numbers printed in gray (such as **278a**) refer to other characters and to non-character fragments — these are included if they are needed as parts of HSK Level A characters. Pronunciations are printed in black if they are in HSK Level A, and in gray otherwise. Compounds which are not in the HSK Level A list are given in brackets [ ].

Key to icons:

Pouring rain story (see Character 15)	Wild West story (see Character 54)	Spaceship story (see Character 54)	Film set story (see Character 75)

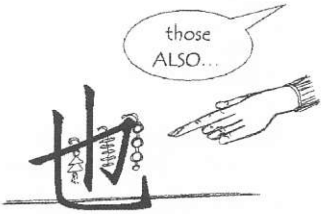
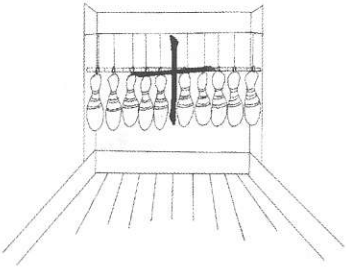
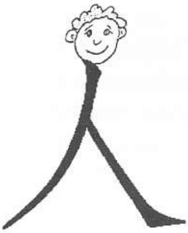
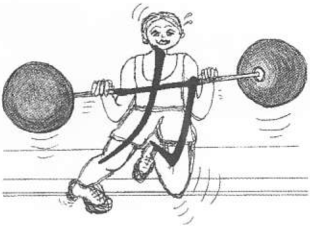
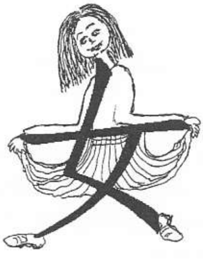
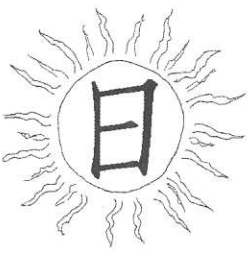
Story conventions: Archetypes represent tones (see User Guide):
Giant = 1, Fairy = 2, Teddy = 3, Dwarf = 4, Robot = neutral
Double archetype: i on-glide (see Character 38).
Ghostly archetype: u on-glide (see Character 59).

Chapter 1

So let's get started. We'll be taking it very gently to begin with, so there'll be rather fewer characters per chapter in the first few chapters than in the book as a whole.

Before we start, you *did* read the User Guide, didn't you? If not, go and read it now! Otherwise quite a lot of what follows won't make sense.

You've already seen four character pictures in the User Guide. The remaining ones you'll need for this chapter are given below. The first thing is to study the character pictures on this page, to learn the meaning of these basic building blocks. When you have them fixed in your mind, turn the page and start working your way through the character entries that follow. Take your time and make sure you visualize each story (the story pictures will help with this). Finally, at the end of the chapter, you can test yourself on what you have learned.

也 **also**  	十 **ten** 
人 **person** 	力 **power** 
女 **woman** 	日 **sun** 

After introducing the basic building blocks and their meanings, we are now ready for the main entries for the characters in Chapter 1. For the basic building blocks we give a wheel story (for the pronunciation), and for composite characters we give the equation and two-part story.

For all characters we give the stroke order diagrams in the row of small boxes. To the left of these boxes, we give the radical for the character and its stroke-count (i.e. the total number of strokes needed to write the character).

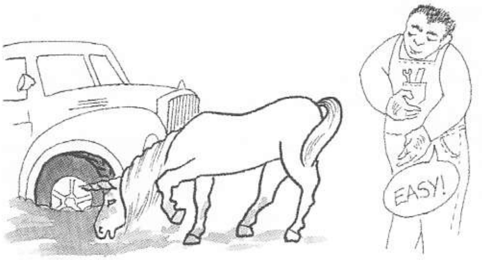
Whenever we want to explain a general point, give you some encouragement, or tell you something interesting about the Chinese language, we will write in areas outside the character entries and across the full width of the page — exactly like we have here!

1

一 **yī (yí; yì)**
one

Radical —
1 stroke

一									



/ ***One*** *of the huge* ***wheels*** *of the truck was stuck fast in the thick mud and the unicorn had blunted his horn trying to shift it. They called in the* ***giant*** *who took one look at it and said, "This will be* ***easy****."*

This is the simplest character there is, and it's obviously a basic building block. As such it has a "wheel" story to help you remember the pronunciation. The soundword is "easy" so the pronunciation is "ee" (the pinyin spelling is "**yi**" but it is pronounced "ee"), and the giant in the story tells you it is pronounced using the first tone.

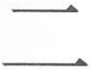
But, wouldn't you know it, for the very first character we have a complication with regard to the pronunciation! Essentially, the pronunciation is **yī** (1st tone), but the complication is that in practice the tone for this character varies, depending on the tone of the syllable which follows it. When it is followed by a 4th tone, it is pronounced **yí** (2nd tone), and when followed by all other tones it is pronounced **yì** (4th tone). When it is on its own, or in a string of numbers, it reverts to **yī** (1st tone). This sort of change only happens for one other character in this book, which we shall meet shortly.

For this first character a stroke order diagram seems rather superfluous! Simply write the stroke in a left to right direction. The large character is printed in a typical printed typeface. Don't worry about the little lump at the right-hand end of the stroke: this is like a "serif" (the small horizontal line you might find at the bottom of letters like "h" in some typefaces in English) and can be ignored. The stroke order diagrams in the boxes show you what a hand-drawn character will look like.

The word "one" isn't a very vivid word to use in stories where we need this character (it will be hard to distinguish a picture of "one tree" from simply "a tree"), so when "one" appears in an equation we will always use a *unicorn* in the story.

We shall also do this for some other numbers: for example a *biplane* will substitute for "two", a *starfish* for "five", an *octopus* for "eight". For other numbers (e.g. "four", "six") we won't need to do this as they won't appear as parts of composite characters.

2



èr
two

Radical 二
2 strokes

一	二								

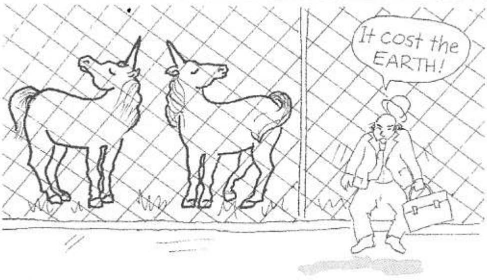
one 一(1) + one 一(1) = two 二

This is a composite character, made up of "one" and "one". Hence there is an equation, and the story illustrates it. The second half of the story, separated by a slash "/", gives you the pronunciation. The soundword is "earth" and there is a dwarf in the story, so the pronunciation is **èr**.

As mentioned above, a *biplane* will substitute for "two" in future stories.

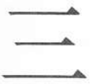
To write this character, write the top stroke before the bottom stroke, writing each stroke left to right. Note that the bottom stroke is slightly longer than the top one.

There is another character for "two" (Character 222), which we'll meet later.


It cost the EARTH!

The zoo had one **unicorn** so bought another **unicorn** to get a breeding pair. However they failed to check the gender of the new one so ended up with **two** of the same sex! / *The **dwarf** accountant is furious because the new unicorn had cost the **earth**.*

3



sān
three

Radical 一
3 strokes

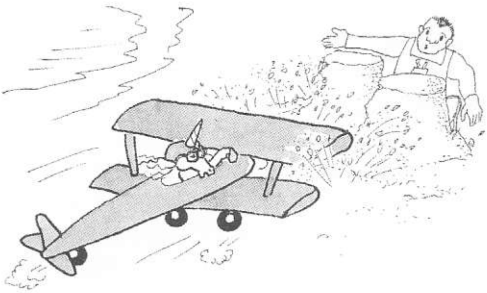
一	二	三							

one 一(1) + two 二(2) = three 三

A composite character, made up of "one" and "two". One and two are represented by the unicorn and the biplane. Take a look at the picture to fix the story in your memory: the unicorn has indeed made a nice three-point landing, but he relaxed too soon!

The soundword is "sand". Remember that with soundwords you go as far as the first vowel sound, and then see if there is an "n" or "ng" sound following it. In this case there is, so the pronunciation is **sān**, not **sā**.

When writing this character note that the second stroke is slightly shorter than the first, and the third is slightly longer.



The **unicorn** lands his **biplane** on the beach perfectly so that all **three** tires touch down simultaneously. / *Unfortunately he fails to stop before he hits the **giant's sandcastle**!*

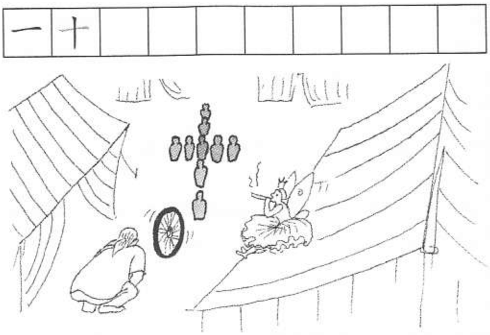
Clearly you don't really need stories to remember the meanings of the characters 一, 二 and 三. The stories are given to help you remember the pronunciations and to get you used to how the pictures and stories work for both basic and composite characters.

4 十 **shí**
ten
Radical 十
2 strokes

This character means "ten" (just as an X in Roman numerals means "ten"), but also represents a cross shape, such as a crossroads. Just as a unicorn substitutes for "one" in the stories, we will use a *cross* or *crossroads* as a substitute for "ten".

The soundword is the fairy's "cheroot" so the pronunciation is **shí**. (Not **ché** — it is the *sound* of the soundword, not its English spelling, that is important). There is more about the soundword system in the Appendix.

This character exemplifies another rule for writing characters: when two lines cross, a horizontal line is drawn before a vertical one.



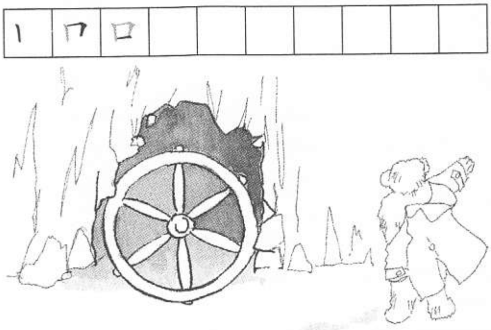
/At the fairground, in one game you have to roll a ***wheel*** *and knock down* ***ten*** *skittles laid out in the shape of a cross. The* ***fairy****, confident of not having to pay out, sits smoking a* ***cheroot****.*

---

5 口 **kǒu**
mouth
Radical 口
3 strokes

This character means a person's mouth, but also more generally the mouth of a cave or river, an entrance or exit of a building, etc. We will often use *the mouth of a cave* to represent it in stories.

This character is written, not with four strokes, but with three! For the second stroke, draw the top of the square from left to right, and continue down the right-hand side of the square, without taking your pen off the paper.

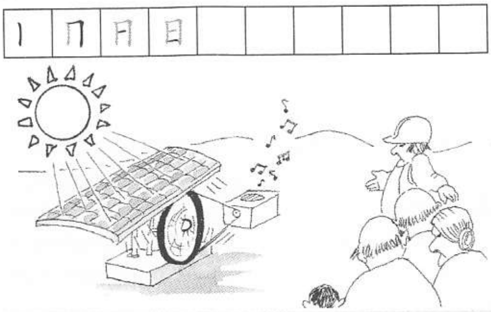


/A large ***wheel*** *stands across the* ***mouth*** *of the cold, dark cave, but* ***Teddy*** *simply puts on his duffel* ***coat*** *and hops between the spokes to get inside.*

---

6 日 **rì**
sun
Radical 日
4 strokes

This character means "sun", but also "day", and "Japan".



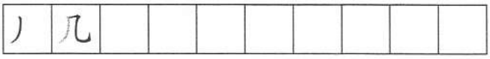
/The ***dwarf*** *has built a* ***sun****-powered* ***wheel****, and invites all his* ***relations*** *to come and admire it.*

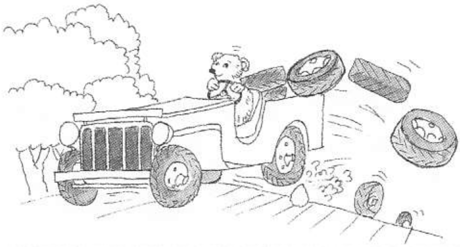
We just said that 日 (Character 6) means "sun" (originally it was a picture of a round sun with a dot in the middle), but it also has several derived meanings. It can mean "day", and it's also used as an abbreviation for Japan, the "land of the rising sun". But whenever a character has several meanings like this, we will stick to a single meaning for all stories where that character appears. This single meaning is the one given in the "headline" of the character entry. So we will always use the word "sun" in stories for characters containing 日.

---

7 几 **jǐ** (jī) several

Radical 几
2 strokes
幾





/ There are ***several wheels*** to deliver so ***Teddy*** offers to load them onto his ***jeep***. (See him careering off down the road scattering wheels in all directions every time he hits a bump!)

As well as meaning "several", this character also means "how many?" (when you are asking about small numbers, say up to ten).

几 can also be pronounced **jī**, and it then has a different meaning. This extra pronunciation and meaning is included in HSK Level B, but not in Level A. Whenever a character has another meaning and pronunciation like this, we will let you know the other pronunciation so that you can look it up in a dictionary if you are interested. These extra pronunciations will be printed in gray and will be in brackets.

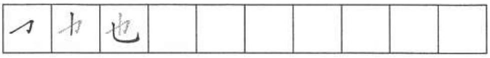
You will also notice that this character has a traditional form (in a box below the stroke-count) — you can ignore these traditional forms for the time being if you like; we will talk about them in Chapter 27.

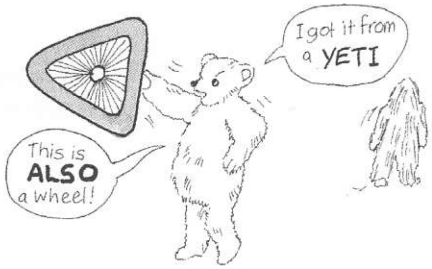
When drawing this character, notice that it only has two strokes.

---

8 也 **yě** also

Radical 乛
3 strokes




I got it from a YETI
This is ALSO a wheel!

/ "This is ***also*** a ***wheel***," ***Teddy*** claims, holding up a triangular object. "I got it from a ***yeti*** yesterday!"

This character is fun to draw once you get the hang of it, but watch the stroke order!

Are you remembering to visualize the stories when you read them? Sometimes it can help if you close your eyes when you picture the scene. Don't forget that you can add in any small details that help make the scene more vivid as long as they don't distract you from remembering the meaning.

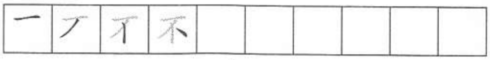
9

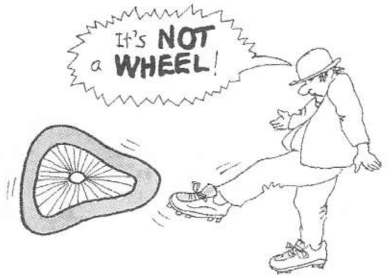
不 **bù (bú)**
not

Radical 一
4 strokes

This is the only other character (apart from 一, Character 1) which changes tone depending on the sound which follows it. It is generally pronounced **bù** (4th tone), but this changes to **bú** (2nd tone) when followed by another 4th tone character.

When you write 不 note that the third (vertical) stroke hangs from the second stroke, so 不 is not symmetrical: that is, it is not like the bottom half of 木 (which follows).




It's NOT a WHEEL!

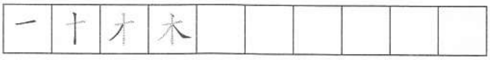
*/ "It's **not** a **wheel**," says the **dwarf**, kicking it angrily with his **boot**.*

10a

木 mù
tree

This character is printed in gray because it is not in the HSK Level A set of characters. So you can skip its pronunciation if you want to, but you *do* need to know its meaning, as it appears as a part of many composite characters (for example, the next two). We've given the pronunciation in gray, so you can look the character up in a dictionary if you want to.

We've given 木 the serial number 10a, because we are reserving the numbers 1 to 800 for the 800 HSK Level A characters covered in this book. You can easily find such characters: for example 10a appears just before Character 10. We've called it 10a and not 9a, because it is introduced because of, and hence belongs with, Character 10.



The first two strokes are like "ten" (Character 4), so the horizontal stroke is written before the vertical one. The stroke order also illustrates another general principle: you often draw a central part before drawing in small symmetrical side-pieces.

10

机 **jī**
machine

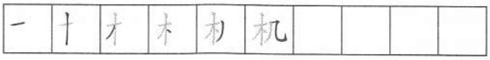
Radical 木
6 strokes

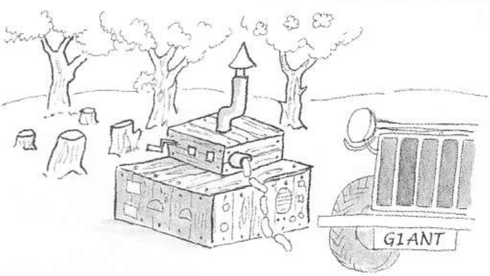
機

tree 木(10a) + several 几(7) = machine 机

This character is another composite character, made up of two basic building blocks, so it has an equation. The numbers in brackets refer to the building block entries.

To draw it, simply draw one part and then the other. Remember to draw each part half as wide as normal, so that the complete character fits into the same size square.





It took **several trees** to provide enough wood to make the parts for the huge **machine**. / *When it was finished they had to get the **giant** to bring his **jeep** to deliver it. [Remember this from the User Guide?]*

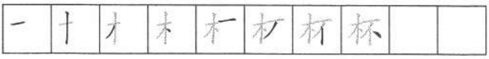
11 杯

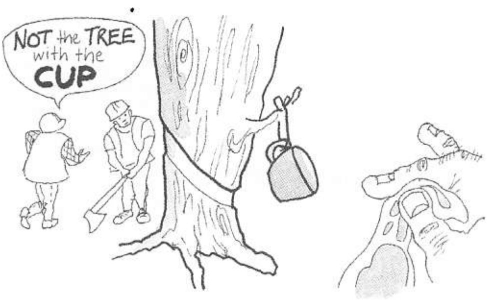
bēi
cup

Radical 木
8 strokes

tree 木(10a) + **not** 不(9) = **cup** 杯

You'll notice that writing a composite character usually involves simply writing the building blocks, and the building blocks you need will always have been covered earlier in the book. In cases where this does not apply, we will draw attention to it — an example is coming up in the next chapter (24a).




NOT the TREE with the CUP

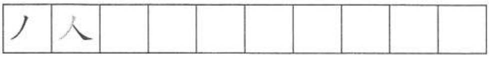
"I said **not** the **tree** with the **cup** tied to it!" cried the horrified lumberjack to his apprentice. / *"The **giant** collects the sap from that one to cook his **bacon** in."*

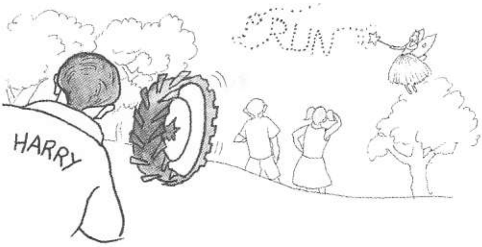
12 人

rén
person

Radical 人
2 strokes

"Person" is one of the few characters where we will not simply use the bare meaning, but a particular interpretation of it. In order to make our stories more vivid, it is best to think of a *particular* person, real or fictional, who you can easily imagine in various situations. We will call this person "Harry" — you can think of Harry Truman, Harry Houdini, Harry Potter, or any other person (called Harry or not — it could be James Bond for example) who you can easily imagine in various situations. When we mention Harry in a story, always picture this same person. At the moment all the stories have pictures with them, but later on we'll be getting you to visualize the stories yourself, and if you make objects and people *specific* and *particular* it will help to make the images you create as memorable as possible.



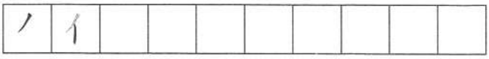


/ ***Harry** was chasing the tractor **wheel**, as fast as he could before it flattened the children. Luckily the **fairy** saw what was happening, and wrote a message **"Run!"** in the sky with her wand, so that the children scattered just in time.*

The second stroke starts just below the top of the first stroke, although in some typefaces the character looks symmetrical. There is a very similar character, "enter" (see 219a), which we'll meet much later in the book. When "person" is used as the left-hand side of a character it is compressed into the form 亻 (see 13a below).

13a 亻

person



When "person" (Character 12) is used as the left-hand side of a composite character it is compressed into this form.

13

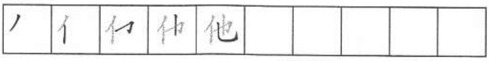
他

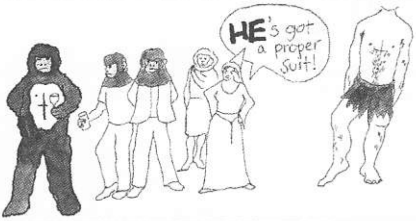
tā
he

Radical 亻
5 strokes

person 亻 (13a) **+ also 也**(8) **= he 他**

As explained, your chosen *particular* person is substituting for the abstract "person" here. We're calling this person "Harry" as we don't know who you've chosen — luckily this doesn't stop us drawing him as he's in a gorilla costume!




HE's got a proper Suit!

At the fancy dress party, **Harry also** came as a gorilla, but (unlike the others) **he** had a proper costume. / *The **giant** arrived dressed as **Tarzan**.*

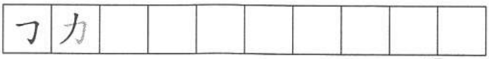
14

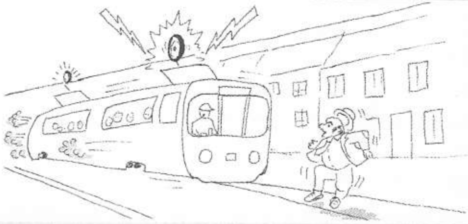
力

lì
power

Radical 力
2 strokes

Make sure you practice writing this with the correct stroke order.





*/ There was a **power** surge to the tram's **wheel** and it hurtled towards the **dwarf** who was crossing the road — he had to **leap** out of the way quickly before he was flattened (and he shouted angrily at the driver).*

15

女

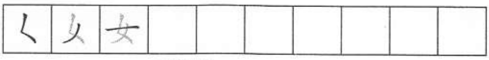
nǚ
woman

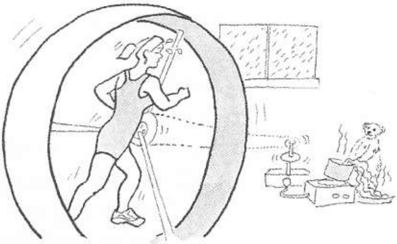
Radical 女
3 strokes

You might like to think of a *particular* woman when you visualize the stories with "woman" throughout the book, just as we have a particular "person" (who we're calling "Harry"). However "woman" appears as a part of far fewer characters than does "person".

The "**ü**" sound here is like the "ü" in German or the "u" in the French word "tu". Say "oo" and then, keeping your lips in the same position, try and say "ee". Since we don't have this sound in English, we just use an "oo" sound but have *pouring rain* in the pronunciation part of the story to indicate that it is really "**ü**" (you can think of the two dots above the "u" being rain drops). The rain-cloud icon will remind you to visualize the rain in the story. We will have more to say about these "**ü**" pronunciations later.

When drawing 女 watch the stroke order: the horizontal stroke is drawn last.

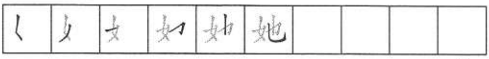




🌧 */ It is pouring with rain outside, so instead of going jogging the **woman** works out by running in a large treadmill **wheel**. **Teddy** uses the power it generates to cook his **noodles**!*

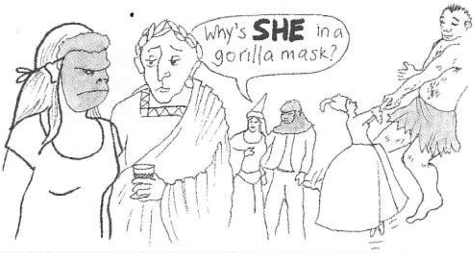
16 她 **tā** she

Radical 女
6 strokes

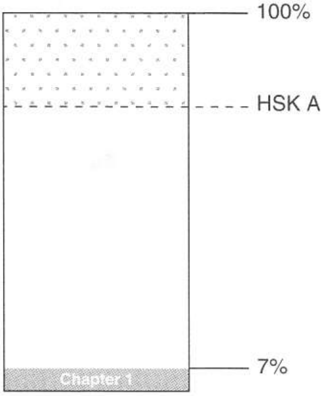


woman 女(15) + also 也(8) = she 她

The characters for "he" and "she" (Characters 13 and 16) are both pronounced **tā**, and so in *spoken* Chinese only the context makes clear which is meant. Obviously it is always clear in written Chinese.


Why's SHE in a gorilla mask?

At the fancy dress party, a **woman also** came as a gorilla! "What's **she** doing, dressed as a gorilla? / *If she'd come as Jane she could have danced with the* ***giant*** *dressed as* ***Tarzan****."*



So that was the first chapter! The 16 characters you have learned make up approximately 7% of written Chinese. As we go through the book, we will provide some charts like the one on the right to show the progress being made. By the end of the book you will have completed the whole of the HSK Level A set of characters, which as we have said covers 77% of written Chinese. (These numbers are averages taken from huge samples compiled on the internet — the actual numbers will vary from one piece of text to another of course).

To begin with there will be a fair number of basic building blocks, but as we go on, composite characters will predominate more and more. Already, with the basic building blocks we have met, we could build the characters 什, 休, 早, 但, 査 and 唱, which are all in Level A (as well as plenty of other characters in later HSK levels). But let's not be in too much of a rush to introduce every possible character we can form from the available building blocks just yet. As well as building characters up systematically, we also want to concentrate on introducing the most frequently used characters first.

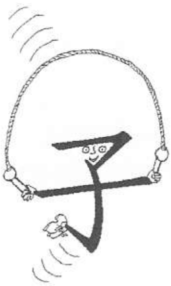
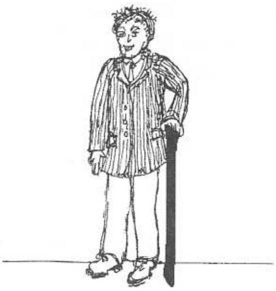
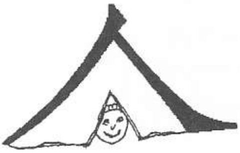
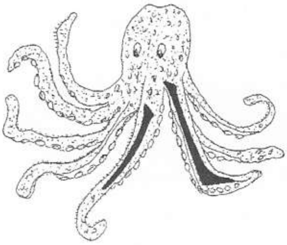
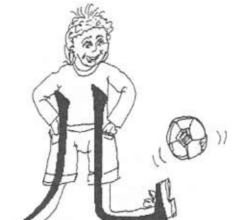
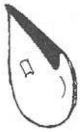
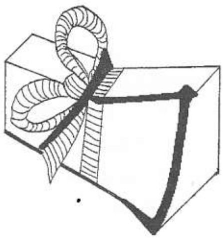
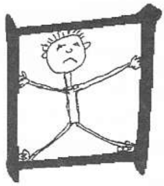
Time to see if you remembered the characters in Chapter 1! Test yourself by looking at the following block of characters — do you remember the meaning of each one? How about the pronunciations? The numbers next to the characters will let you look up any characters you've forgotten.

Test yourself:	十(4)	口(5)	不(9)	机(10)	人(12)	他(13)	女(15)
	力(14)	几(7)	她(16)	日(6)	三(3)	也(8)	杯(11)

Don't worry if you don't remember all of them! If the problem is a character picture, make sure you mentally superimposed the picture over the character (as described in the User Guide). It's all too easy just to glance at a picture and move on! If the problem is a story, make sure you visualize it by having a good look at the story picture — a good idea is to imagine yourself actually being there. Use your senses — can you hear any background noises? Can you smell anything?

Chapter 2

This chapter follows the same pattern as Chapter 1. On this first page there are some new basic building blocks. Learn their meanings using the character pictures given. The "wheel stories" (for remembering their pronunciations) are in the main part of the chapter, along with some composite characters which use these basic building blocks.

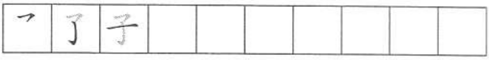
子 **child** 	丨 **stick** 
人 **tent** 	八 **eight** 
儿 **boy** 	丶 **a drop** 
勹 **wrap** 	口 **enclosed** 

17

子

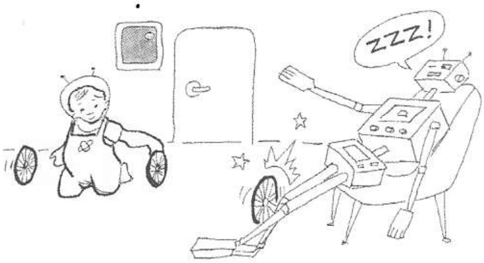
zi
child

Radical 子
3 strokes



Very occasionally characters have a “neutral” tone, and this is represented by a fifth archetype, a *robot*. There are only a few robot stories in this book.

The original meaning of this character was “child”, but it is nowadays more often seen as a noun suffix (that is, attached to a noun — and not implying that the noun is small).



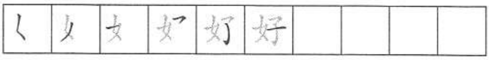
*/ (This story is set in the future) Imagine a small **child** playing at home, rolling **wheels** about on the floor. The **robot** babysitter emits a “zzz” sound, as though asleep, and then pretends to wake up with a start each time a wheel crashes into him.*

18

好

hǎo (hào)
good

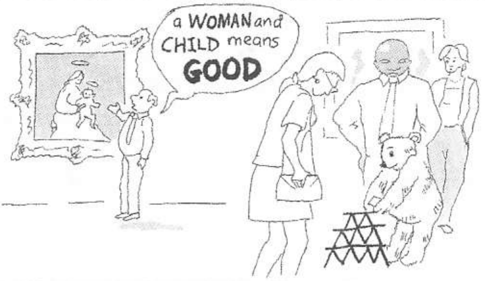
Radical 女
6 strokes



woman 女(15) + **child 子**(17) = **good 好**

In this story and the previous one, we have added phrases in brackets. These are non-essential parts of the story we sometimes add in, to explain and expand it. They are background detail to help you visualize the scene, and they’re only a means to an end. (The end is to remember the scene and hence remember the words in bold).

The gray pronunciation means that 好 can also be pronounced **hào** in HSK Level B, with a different meaning not covered in HSK Level A (see also Character 7).

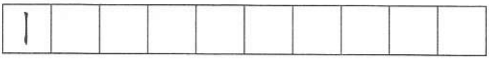

a WOMAN and CHILD means GOOD

(At an art gallery) “A **woman** with a **child** represents **good**,” the curator said (indicating a particularly dull picture). / *But nobody was listening, because they were all watching the **Teddy**, who was building a **house** of cards.*

19a

丨

stick



This is a *fragment*. Fragments are only ever *parts* of characters; they never appear on their own as characters, and so they do not have pronunciations. Fragments are always printed in gray. We only give them meanings so that we can use them in equations and stories.

A vertical stroke occurs in many characters of course, but we will not treat every vertical stroke as a “stick”. For example, it seems more natural to treat 十 “ten” as a basic building block, rather than trying to decompose it into “one” plus “stick”. Instead, we reserve “stick” for situations where it stands on its own (as in Character 19 below).

19b 人 "tent"

丿	人								

This fragment is found at the top of some characters. It has a symmetrical shape, unlike "person" (12) and "enter" (219a).

The meaning is given in quotes to indicate that the name "tent" is one we have invented for this fragment.

To draw it, draw each stroke downwards (rather than drawing a single stroke in an "up and over" movement).

---

19 个 **gè** number of items

Radical 人
3 strokes

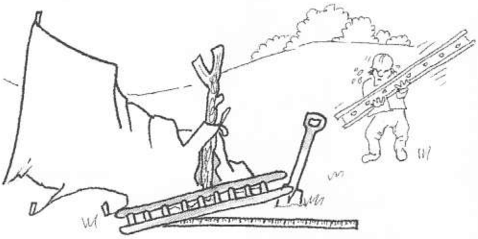
個

丿	人	个							

tent 人(19b) + **stick** 丨 (19a) =
number of items 个

Notice that in this character the two building blocks are one above the other, rather than being side by side.

This is a *measure word*. In English we don't say "two breads"; we say "two loaves of bread" or "two slices of bread". Words such as "slice" are called measure words, and all nouns in Chinese have to use measure words for counting. There are dozens of measure words for different types of things (see Character 188 for an example), but 个 is an all-purpose measure word which can be used with most nouns.



He tried to keep the **tent** up with a **stick** but it fell down, so he tried a **number of items** he had lying around. / *The **dwarf** got so fed up with the tent falling on him that he went and got an iron **girder** to make sure it didn't happen again!*

---

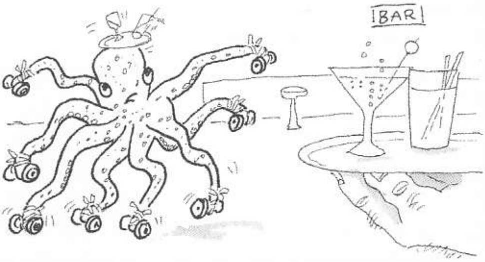
20 八 **bā** eight

Radical 八
2 strokes

丿	八								

In contrast to "person" and "tent", the two strokes here don't meet. The second stroke is slightly longer than the first. Both strokes are written downwards.

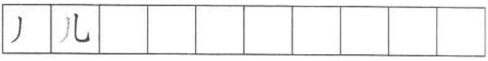
As with the unicorn standing in for "one", the character for "eight" is represented by an *octopus* in stories involving "eight".



*/ The octopus strapped **wheels** to all his **eight** tentacles so he could roller-skate around delivering drinks for the **giant barman**.*

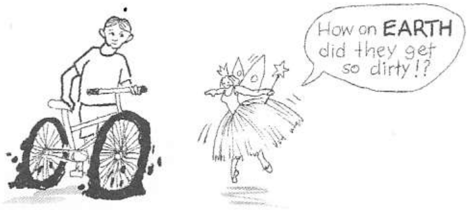
21 儿 **ér (r)** boy

Radical 儿
2 strokes
兒



This character means "boy", "son" or "child". It is also used as a suffix, and it is then pronounced as an "**r**" sound; for example the word 好儿 is pronounced **hǎor** instead of **hǎo'ér** (see the notes on combining characters, at the end of this chapter).

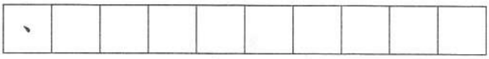
Notice the hook on the second stroke, which helps to distinguish this character from the previous one.


How on EARTH did they get so dirty!?

*/ The **boy's** bicycle **wheels** were filthy. "How on **earth** did you get them so dirty?" said the **fairy**, "I only cleaned them this morning!" (You might think she's a pretty hopeless fairy if she can't keep them clean by magic!)*

Test yourself:
子(17) 日(6) 一(1) 十(4) 八(20) 机(10) 二(2)
好(18) 也(8) 杯(11) 她(16) 个(19) 女(15) 不(9)

22a 丶 a drop

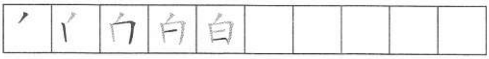


A small drop that can be written in various directions in different characters (as you will see shortly). It is represented by a drop of liquid in the stories.

---

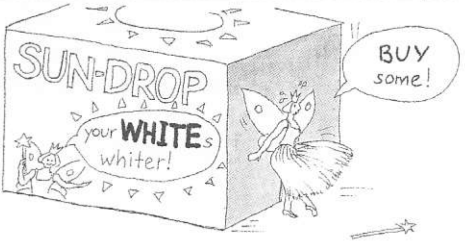
22 白 **bái** white

Radical 白
5 strokes



a drop 丶 (22a) + **sun** 日 (6) = **white** 白

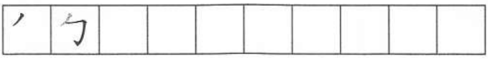
In this character the drop is written downwards and to the left.


SUN-DROP
your WHITEs whiter!
BUY some!

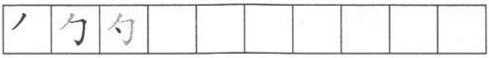
"**Sun-drop** will make your **white** clothes whiter." */ The **fairy** said, "**Buy** some today!"*

As a reminder, we'd like to check that you are still visualizing these stories by taking a good look at each of the story pictures. The stories and story pictures are only a means to an end — the end is to remember the meaning and pronunciation of the character. Because of this, we find that some people shortcut the process and start to learn the equations and pronunciations off by rote. Of course, you are perfectly at liberty to do this if you choose, and you will still find the structure of the book useful, in that everything is introduced in a helpful order and so on. However, you will be missing a really helpful technique which will save you untold hours in the long run. Some of the people we tested the stories on started out saying, "I'm not a visual person," but most of them found that when they gave it a try they did remember the stories after all. So give it a try — what do you have to lose?

23a 勹 wrap



23b 勺 **sháo** ladle

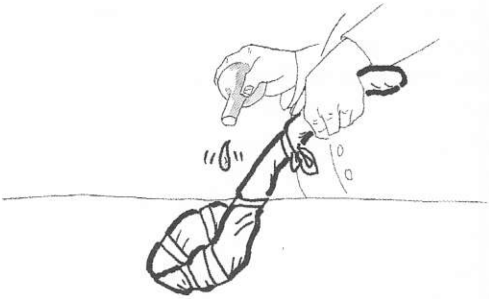


wrap 勹(23a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) = **ladle** 勺

So far, composite characters have been easy to split left-right or top-bottom into two parts, but in this character "wrap" encloses the drop (or, appropriately, "wraps" around it).

This composite character is not in HSK Level A (and is therefore printed in gray), so no pronunciation part of the story is needed.

We will meet "wrap" and "ladle" again later, but they have been introduced here in order to allow you to meet the next character, which is the most common character in Chinese.

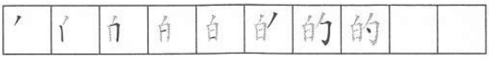


When he had **wrap**ped it up he put **a drop** of perfume on the package even though there was only a **ladle** inside. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

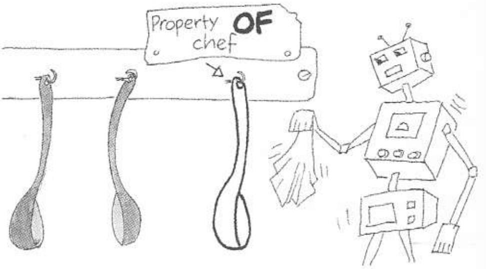
23 的 **de (dí)** of

Radical 白
8 strokes



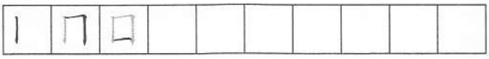
white 白(22) + **ladle** 勺(23b) = **of** 的

This is a particle which attaches to a noun or phrase to show that it is an attribute. A 的 B means "the B of A", "the B belonging to A", "the B of type A", "the B to which A refers", etc. (Particles are small words which can be hard to translate, but often give a flavor to whole phrases or sentences).



The Chef reaches for his **white ladle** — the one marked "Property **of** the Chef". / *His **robot** assistant rushes over to **dust** the ladle before he uses it.*

24a 囗 enclosed

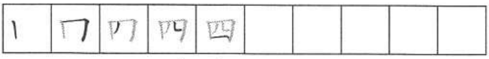


This is like mouth, only bigger! You can always tell them apart as "mouth" never has anything inside it, whereas "enclosed" always does.

You always delay writing the final stroke of "enclosed" until after the contents have been drawn in. The next character demonstrates this rule in action.

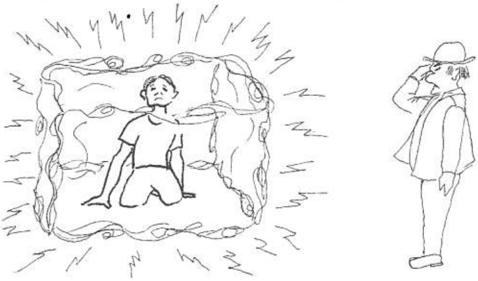
24 四 **sì** four

Radical 囗
5 strokes



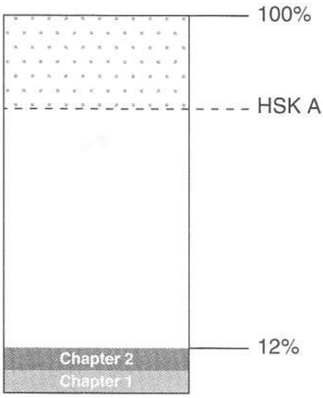
enclosed 囗(24a) + **boy** 儿(21) = **four** 四

We have now met several numbers — the other numbers up to ten follow shortly, in Chapter 4.



The kidnapped **boy** was **enclosed** by the force-field on all **four** sides. / *The **dwarf**, leading the rescue team, **saluted** when they found him (perhaps because he was the colonel's son).*

Here is another progress chart — you can see how much you have covered in this chapter to add to what was already achieved in Chapter 1.



Below is another "Test Yourself" quiz block of characters. We've included these blocks of characters throughout the book. It only takes a moment to stop and work through each block, and it is time well spent (and it's nice to be able to get most of them right!). There will be a mixture of recent characters and those you learned some time ago — and the same character may be tested more than once in the book.

Test yourself: 好(18) 二(2) 他(13) 儿(21) 也(8) 一(1) 几(7)
八(20) 十(4) 个(19) 人(12) 三(3) 口(5) 子(17)

Of course you may well want to test yourself systematically as well, by running through all the characters you have learned. It's a good idea at the end of a session to test yourself on the characters you've just learned, then do this again after an hour or two, then after 1 day, 3 days and a week. This repetition will really embed the characters in your long-term memory.

The characters will stay in your memory for longer after each testing. And this effect continues on after a week too. For example, if you checked a given chapter a week ago, it should last for a month, and then a monthly check will last for 3 months, etc.

We’ll end this chapter with a few words about compounds. As mentioned in the introduction, characters are used together to form “compounds” or multi-syllable words. Numbers are some of the easiest examples of compounds:

十二	**shíèr**	twelve	二十	**èrshí**	twenty
十四	**shísì**	fourteen	四十	**sìshí**	forty
三十一	**sānshíyī**	thirty one			

More generally, two-syllable words are formed by combining two characters:

女人	**nǚrén**	woman	儿子	**érzi**	son
杯子	**bēizi**	cup, mug, glass	女儿	**nǚ’èr**	daughter

The pronunciation of a compound is just given by the pronunciation of the characters spoken (or written) one after the other. Sometimes, in writing a compound in *pinyin*, an apostrophe is used to make it clear how to break the compound up into syllables. For example if we wrote the compound **píngān** without an apostrophe, we wouldn’t know whether it was **píng’ān** or **pín’gān**.

As we’ve said, the meaning of many compounds can be guessed from the meanings of the characters which make it up:

人力	**rénlì**	manpower

Some compounds, however, are not at all obvious:

人口	**rénkǒu**	(human) population	日子	**rìzi**	day, date; life

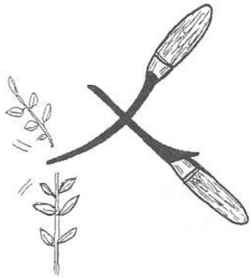
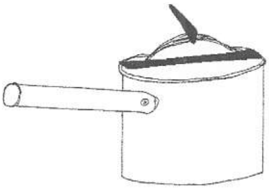
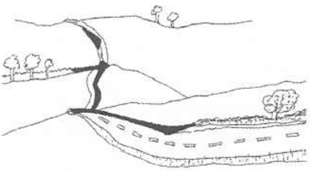
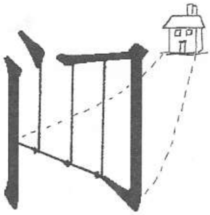
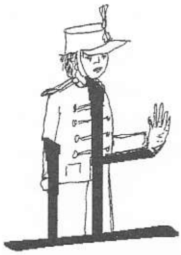
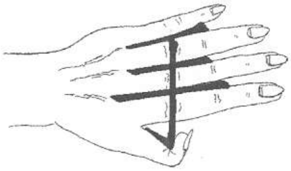
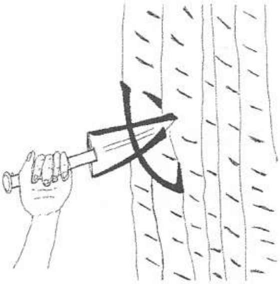
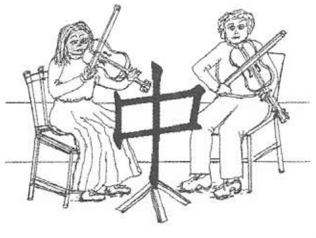
From now on, we will list compounds as part of the character entries. When we do so, any compounds which are not stipulated for HSK Level A will be printed in brackets [ ]. However all compounds, whether in the HSK Level A list or not, use only HSK Level A *characters*. In fact, all compounds only use characters introduced up to that point in the book.

Of the compounds listed so far, the following are in the HSK Level A list — can you remember what they mean?

儿子　杯子　日子　女儿

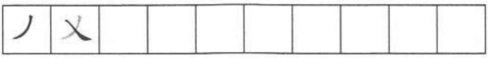
Chapter 3

In this chapter not all of the stories have story pictures, as we want you to start to visualize the stories yourself. Doing this should make the stories lodge in your memory more effectively than using the story pictures, as your brain will be "processing" the story more actively. We also list example words (compounds) with the characters from now on.

乂 **shears**		亠 **lid**	
辶 **road**		门 **gate**	
止 **stop**		手 **hand**	
戈 **dagger**		中 **middle**	

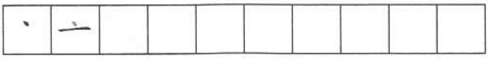
You've met all our archetype characters in action now, and as you go through the book you'll get to know them. At the end of this chapter we'll tell you a bit more about how their personalities developed.

25a 乂 shears



Note the stroke order. This illustrates another general rule: strokes drawn downwards and to the left come before strokes drawn downwards and to the right.

25b 亠 lid



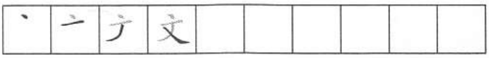
The "drop" is written downwards and to the right in this character. In some typefaces (fonts), however, the "drop" will look like a short vertical line.

Because it is used a lot we will treat this as a basic building block, although you could regard it as being made up of "drop" plus "one".

---

25 文 **wén** culture

Radical 文
4 strokes

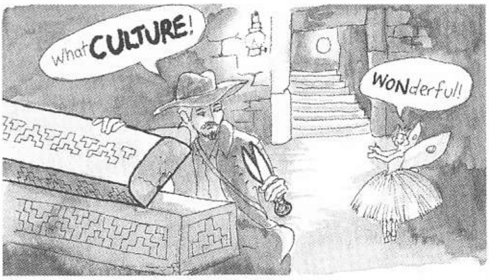


lid 亠(25b) + **shears** 乂(25a) = **culture** 文

This character refers particularly to written language and literature.

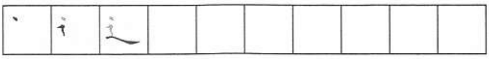
日文(6) **Rìwén** *(written) Japanese*

This is how we will list compounds from now on. The number 6 in brackets tells you that the other character in the compound (in this case, 日) is Character 6 in this book.


What CULTURE!
WONderful!

(Inside the ancient tomb) The archaeologist lifts the heavy **lid** and finds some beautiful ornamental **shears** — they will tell him a lot about the **culture** of the time. / *"**Wonderful**", says the **fairy**, "those are magic shears that cut the grass by themselves!"*

26a 辶 road



This shape always encloses other characters or fragments, which nestle above the long "tail".

Note that the zigzag shape above the long "tail" is all one stroke. "Road" is always drawn last, after the character or fragment it encloses.

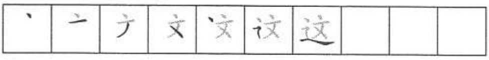
---

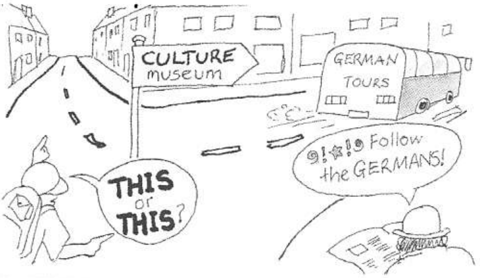
26 这 **zhè**
this
Radical 辶
7 strokes
這

road 辶(26a) + **culture** 文(25) = **this** 这

If you look at 这, you will probably think of it as “road” plus “culture”, even though you write “culture” then “road”. For this reason we will give “road” first in equations.

这个(19)	**zhègè**	*this (one)*
这儿(21)	**zhèr**	*here (spoken)*




CULTURE museum
GERMAN TOURS
THIS or THIS?
?!*!? Follow the GERMANS!

“Which **road** leads to the **culture** museum — **this** one, **this** one or **this** one?” / *The* ***dwarf*** *looks up from his newspaper, and says grumpily, “Follow those* ***Germans****.”*

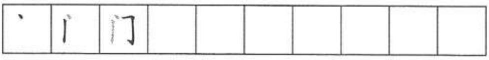
---

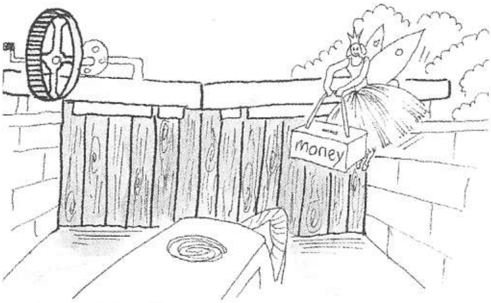
27 门 **mén**
gate
Radical 门
3 strokes
門

We regard this character as a basic building block even though it looks as if it is composed of three pieces. It was originally a picture of a door or gate. Often it acts as a three-sided enclosure (see, for example, Characters 289 and 290).

The stoke order is a relic from the traditional form of the character, and in this case overrides the left-to-right rule for drawing characters.

门口(5)	**ménkǒu**	*doorway*





/ *(On the canal) The lock* ***gate*** *has a* ***wheel*** *that must be turned to open it, but first you must pay* ***money*** *to the* ***fairy*** *when she flies over, and she will release the wheel.*

---

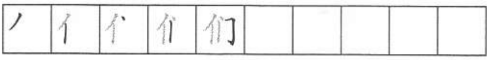
28 们 **men**
people
Radical 亻
5 strokes
們

person 亻 (13a) + **gate** 门(27) = **people** 们

Our first story without a picture — don’t just read it, visualize it!

This character is a plural ending for many nouns and pronouns which refer to people.

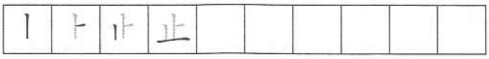
他们(13)	**tāmen**	*they; them*
她们(16)	**tāmen**	*they; them (female)*
人们(12)	**rénmen**	*people (in general)*



(The castle was being opened to the public for the first time) **Harry** opened the castle **gate** and found a long queue of **people** waiting outside. / *He programmed the* ***robot*** *to help collect the* ***money*** *so he didn’t have to do it all.*

29a

止 zhǐ
stop

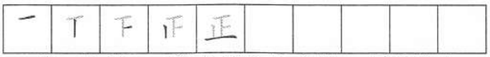


Sometimes this character takes the distorted form seen in 30a.

29

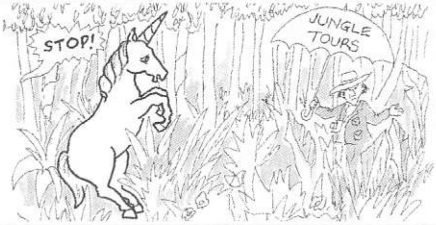
正 **zhèng**
upright

Radical 止
5 strokes



one 一(1) + **stop** 止(29a) = **upright** 正

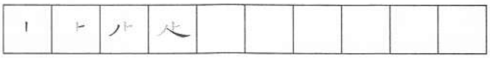
The meaning "upright" also extends to include "proper", "just so", "correct", etc.



The **unicorn**, dozing, heard someone shout "**Stop**!" and sat bolt **upright**. / *The **dwarf** had set up **jungle** tours for unicorn-watching (even though he knew the unicorn had hidden in the jungle to get a bit of peace).*

30a

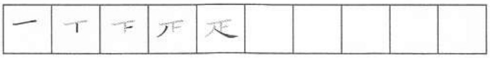
龰 stop



This is an alternative form of 29a.

30b

𤴓 upright

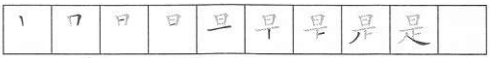


Similarly, this is an alternative form of Character 29.

30

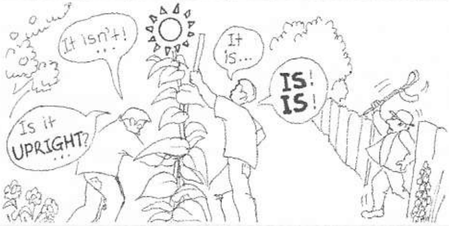
是 **shì**
is

Radical 日
9 strokes



sun 日(6) + **upright** 𤴓(30b) = **is** 是

This is the third most common character in Chinese (after 的 and 一). Its basic meaning is "is" (but as you will know if you're learning Chinese, it's not quite as simple as that ...).

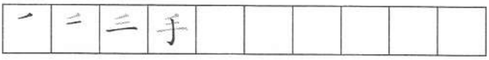

It isn't! ...
It is...
IS! IS!
Is it UPRIGHT? ...

(An argument is taking place in a back garden) They are staking a **sun**flower — is it **upright**? "It **is**," says one of the gardeners; "It isn't," says the other. "**Is, is, is!**" says the first, and so on. / *The **dwarf** who lives next door can't stand it any longer and comes round, brandishing his **shillelagh**.*

---

31 手 **shǒu**
hand

Radical 手
4 strokes



*/ **Teddy** takes one **hand** off the steering **wheel, showing** off his driving skills (and probably ends up in a ditch!)*

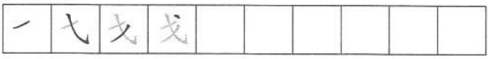
When this character appears as the left-hand side of other characters it usually takes the form 扌 (152a).

This is the second story without a picture — this time it's a "wheel" story. Read the story and then shut your eyes and try to picture it. See the car Teddy is driving — what type is it? By *picturing* this scene in your mind's eye, you are using one of the most potent systems the brain uses for memory — the same process your brain carries out automatically when you are reading a novel or listening to a story on the radio. If you picture the scene vividly, then when you next think of "hand plus wheel" it will trigger the story, which will in turn trigger the soundword for the pronunciation.

The brackets [ ] round the compound show that it is not a compound included in the HSK Level A list.

[手机(10) **shǒujī** *mobile phone*]

32a 戈 **gē**
dagger



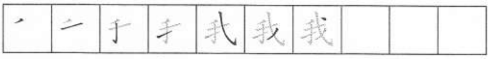
Watch the stroke order here. You finish up with the drop (after you finish writing the previous stroke downwards).

This is a picture of an ancient weapon, which was something like a cross between a dagger, an axe and a spear!

---

32 我 **wǒ**
I

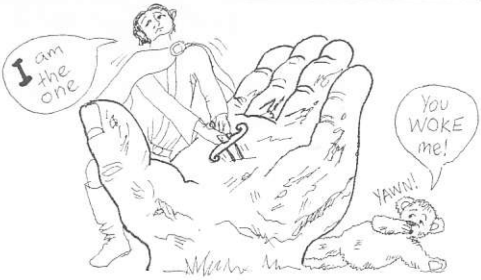
Radical 戈
7 strokes



hand 手(31) + **dagger** 戈(32a) = **I** 我

Here "hand" and "dagger" are fused together (notice that this is built into the story) and "share" a stroke (compare this with Character 152). This means the stroke order is something you have to be careful with and practice. But once you get it right you will find it is a great character to draw as your pen swoops up and down and around it.

我们(28) **wǒmen** *we; us*

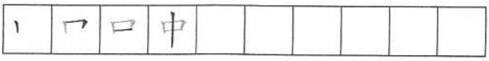

I am the one
You WOKE me!
YAWN!

The **dagger** was stuck in the huge stone **hand** (a bit like Excalibur) — he pulled it out and declared "**I** am the One!". */ This **woke Teddy** who had been asleep under the hand.*

Test yourself: 八(20) 力(14) 杯(11) 文(25) 白(22) 不(9) 机(10)
他(13) 门(27) 四(24) 好(18) 女(15) 的(23) 个(19)

33 中 **zhōng** middle

Radical 丨
4 strokes



A stroke which pierces through the whole character, such as the vertical one here, is generally drawn last.

This character often means "China" or "Chinese", from the Chinese way of referring to their country as the "middle kingdom".

/ In the ***middle*** *of each* ***wheel*** *of his car, the* ***giant*** *had etched a picture of a* ***jonquil****. (A jonquil is a type of small daffodil. You'll have to excuse us if we sometimes have to scratch around for soundwords — some sounds come at the start of very few English words!)*

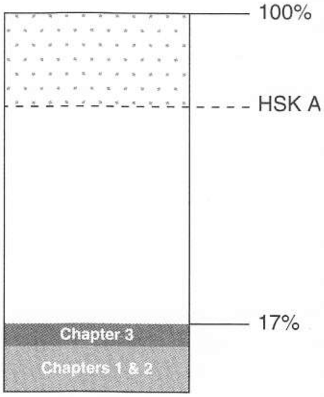
中文(25) **zhōngwén** *(written) Chinese*

Are you getting to know the archetypes yet? In the course of writing this book, we found that they developed personalities of their own, related to the original reasons we chose them:

Giant	Slow, placid, often found working as a handyman. The high, flat 1st tone represents his size and slowness to change.
Fairy	Flits about, tends to conjure up helpful objects rather than simply granting wishes. The upward sloping accent for 2nd tone resembles her wand.
Teddy	Somewhat mischievous and irresponsible, unlikely to take things too seriously. The down-up 3rd tone represents the way he bounces around playfully.
Dwarf	Rather grumpy and officious, likely to have some responsibility, to be a janitor or foreman, and to be trying to organise things or boss people around. The downward sloping accent of the 4th tone represents his dismissive tone of voice (as well as the fact that you look down at him because of his diminutive size).
Robot	Rather mechanical and soulless — as befits a neutral tone. Likes everything logical, "just so", and is somewhat fastidious.

We have tried to keep the stories consistent with these personality traits, to help you remember which archetype features in each story.

Here is our third progress chart to show you how you're doing. From now on the light gray area will show you where you'd got to when we last showed you, and the dark gray area shows you how much you've added since then. We'll just present the progress charts from now on without further comment.

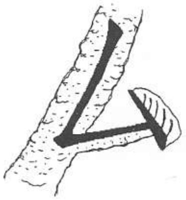


Chapter 4

As we continue, more of the stories will be given without story pictures, so that you will be visualizing the stories yourself. But this doesn't apply to character pictures — you can rest assured that there will be a character picture for every basic building block in the book.

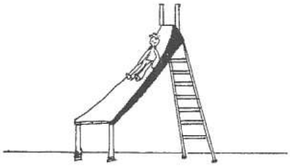
厶

cocoon



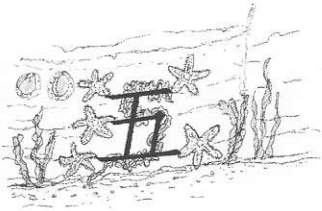
丿

slide



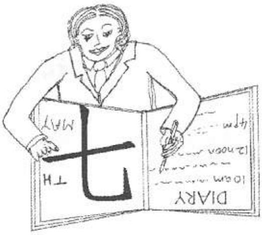
五

five



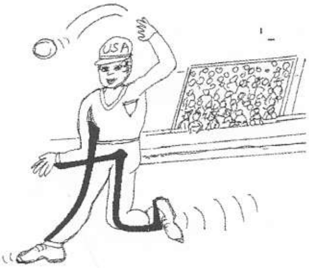
七

seven


MAY
TH
4pm
12 noon
10am
DIARY

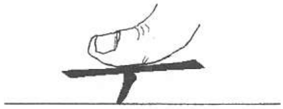
九

nine



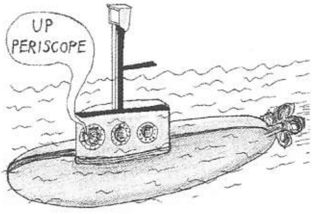
丅

thumb tack



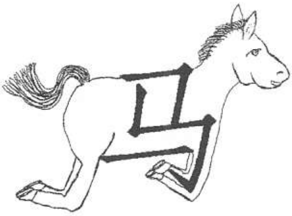
上

above


UP PERISCOPE

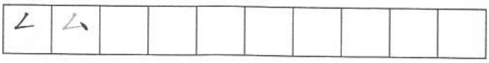
马

horse



34a

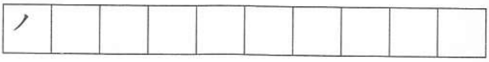
厶 cocoon



This character originally meant "cocoon", and from this it came to mean "to shut away", hence "self-centered" or "selfish".

34b

丿 "slide"



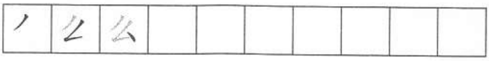
We will call this stroke "slide" (think of a children's playground slide). It is much longer than a drop, and is always drawn in a downward direction.

34

么 **me** "appendage"

Radical 丿
3 strokes

麼



The **cocoon** had been fixed to the top of the children's **slide**, as an **appendage** (perhaps so that the new butterfly, when she emerges, can use the slide like a ski-jump for her first flight!) / *This throws the* ***robot's*** *circuits into a dreadful* ***muddle*** *(as he wasn't allowed to remove it when he cleaned the slide).*

slide 丿(34b) + **cocoon** 厶(34a) = **appendage** 么

We've called this character "appendage" because it is used as a suffix, in words like **zhème** (see below) and **shénme** (see Character 35).

You will see that we are continuing to add phrases in brackets to some of the stories. These phrases are to help you visualize (and hence remember) the scene. Of course the words in bold are all you need to remember in the end, but you'll remember them more easily once you recall the scene.

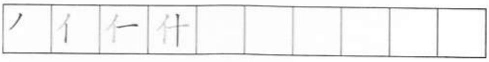
这么(26) **zhème** *like this, in this manner*

35

什 **shén** what?

Radical 亻
4 strokes

甚



Harry stands alone at the **crossroads** but nobody else turns up. **What** is wrong? **What** has he done? / *The* ***fairy*** *(hovering at a safe distance) tells him everyone will* ***shun*** *him until he has a wash and doesn't smell any more!*

person 亻(13a) + **ten** 十(4) = **what?** 什

Remember that "ten" (Character 4) is represented in stories by a cross, and "person" by "Harry" (see Character 12).

什么(34) **shénme** *what?*
[什么的(34, 23) **shénmede** *etc.*]

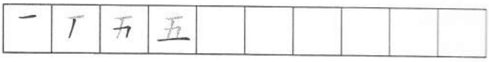
But *why*? This is a question people often ask — *why* is it that "person" plus "ten" equals "what?", or "road" plus "culture" equals "this"? There probably is a reason, if you delved deeply enough into the history of how each character evolved, but it is rarely sensible to demand explanations like this when learning a language. The wisest course is to relax and just accept that this is how it is. It happens in English too. After all, what has a carpet got to do with a car, or a pet?

36

五

wǔ
five

Radical 一
4 strokes



You will remember that the number “eight” is represented in stories by an octopus. We will have similar representatives for the numbers 5, 7 and 9 (otherwise it would be difficult to distinguish in your mind between a story with say “7 trees” and a story with “9 trees” or “5 trees”). The character for “five” will be represented in stories by a *starfish*.

*/ **Teddy** is splashing in a rock pool and sees a **five-**spoked **wheel** but when he goes to pick it up it turns out to be a starfish and it **wounds** his paw.*

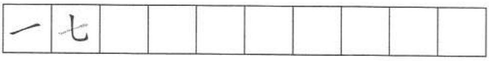
[五十(4) **wǔshí** *fifty*]
[十五(4) **shíwǔ** *fifteen*]
[五十五(4) **wǔshíwǔ** *fifty five*]

37

七

qī
seven

Radical 一
2 strokes



The character for “seven” is represented in stories by a *diary* (a weekly planner where you look seven days ahead to see appointments, rather than a personal journal).

When writing this character, notice that the sloping stroke extends well to both sides of the hook stroke, in contrast to 匕 which we’ll meet later (206a).

*/ You look in your diary, and notice that in **seven** days’ time your car is due for new **wheels**. The **giant** has offered to get them for you **cheap**.*

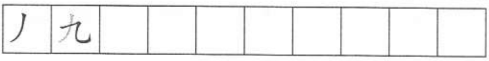
[七十(4) **qīshí** *seventy*]
[十七(4) **shíqī** *seventeen*]
[七十五(4, 36) **qīshíwǔ** *seventy five*]

38

九

jiǔ
nine

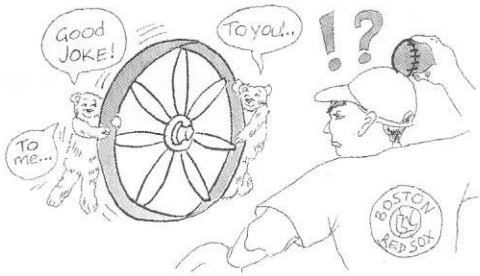
Radical ⺄
2 strokes



Why are there *two* teddies in this story? An explanation follows on the next page.

Compare this character with “power” (Character 14), and in particular compare the stroke orders. The character for “nine” will be represented in stories by a *baseball*.

[九十(4) **jiǔshí** *ninety*]
[十九(4) **shíjiǔ** *nineteen*]
[三十九(3, 4) **sānshíjiǔ** *thirty nine*]


Good JOKE!
To you!..
!?
To me...
BOSTON RED SOX

*/ During throwing practice each of the **nine** members of the baseball team has to throw the baseball cleanly through the spokes of a **wheel**. **Two teddies**, who are holding the wheel, keep moving it for a **joke**.*

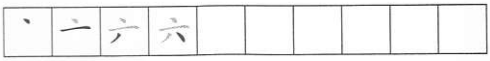
In Chinese some vowels are preceded by an “i” or “u” (these are called “on-glides”). The “i” is pronounced like the English “y” so that for example “**liang**” is pronounced “Iyang”. The problem is that in general no words in English begin with these sounds. So instead what we will do is to indicate an “i” by having *two of the archetype* in the story — two giants, two dwarves, etc. Try to picture them *both* as you visualize the story. When you find two archetypes in a story, you know you have to add in the “y” sound, for example converting a “pow” sound to “pyow”.

This system also helps with another problem, which is that there are no soundwords in English to distinguish between consonants such as “zh” and “j”. But the i on-glide does this for us. So for example the soundwords “joke”, “choker”, “show” would normally indicate the syllables **zhou**, **chou**, **shou** respectively — but if there are two of the archetype in the story then they indicate **jiu**, **qiu**, **xiu** instead. (It is cheating a little to use the same soundwords for “zh” and “j”, “ch” and “q”, “sh” and “x”, since these are different initial consonants in Chinese. But remember that the purpose of soundwords is to jog your memory as to the pronunciation of each character, rather than to reproduce it exactly, which isn’t possible in English). This is why there are *two* teddies in the story for 九.

We will deal with u on-glides in the next chapter.

39 六 **liù** six

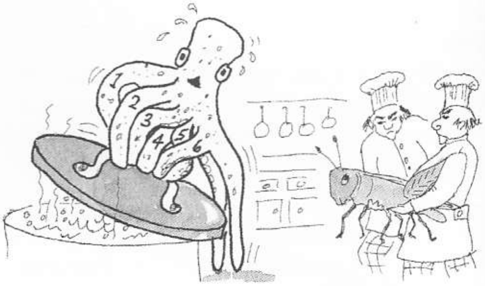
Radical 亠
4 strokes



lid 亠(25b) + **eight** 八(20) = **six** 六

The fact that there are *two* dwarves tells you that the “lo” sound (from the soundword) is pronounced “lyo”.

This completes the numbers from one to ten. We have story substitutes (the unicorn, octopus, etc.) for some of the numbers (1, 2, 5, 7, 8 and 9). Since the characters for 3, 4 and 6 don’t appear as a part of other characters, we don’t need story substitutes for them.

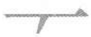


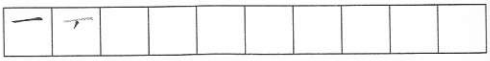
The **octopus** is trying to lift the **lid** of a huge cooking pot — he has to use **six** of his legs (leaving only two to stand on!) / ***Two dwarves*** *arrive carrying a huge* ***locust*** *to put in the pot.*

[六十(4) **liùshí** *sixty*]
[十六(4) **shíliù** *sixteen*]

Test yourself:	是(30)	人(12)	文(25)	儿(21)	正(29)	她(16)	这(26)
	中(33)	们(28)	我(32)	四(24)	门(27)	力(14)	手(31)

40a





“thumb tack”

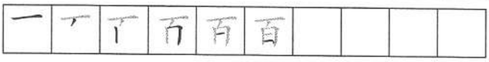
“Thumb tack” is our name for this shape which is found at the top of some characters, and which looks like a squashed nail which has got slightly bent.

40 百

bǎi
hundred

Radical 白
6 strokes

thumb tack 丆(40a) + **sun** 日(6) =
hundred 百



You see a **thumb tack** (on the road), glinting in the **sun**. When you look more closely, you can see there are a **hundred** of them. / ***Teddy** has sprinkled them on the new **bypass** (as a protest against it being built near his home).*

You might feel that this character could be split into "one" plus "white", and you'd be right. There will be quite a few cases where there might seem to be a choice as to how a character can be broken down into building blocks. There is no single correct way, and if you prefer an alternative then simply make up an alternative story to go with your choice.

[三百(3) **sānbǎi** *three hundred*]

---

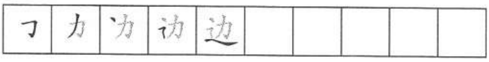
41 边

biān
side

Radical 辶
5 strokes

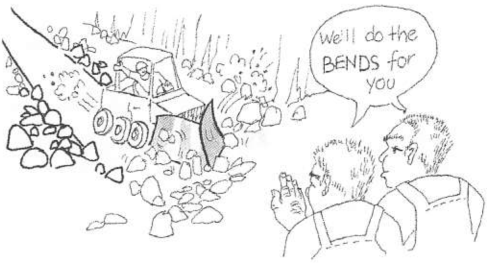
邊

road 辶(26a) + **power** 力(14) = **side** 边



Note that in Chinese the i on-glide changes an "an" sound to "yen", not "yan" (see the Appendix). This is why we use "bends" as a soundword rather than, say, "bands".

一边...一边...(1, 1) **yībiān A yībiān B**
doing A while also doing B
[这边(26) **zhèbiān** *this side; over here*]

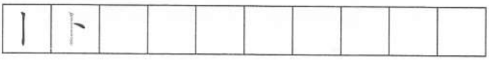

We'll do the BENDS for you

A **power**ful machine is clearing a path for a new **road** by pushing everything to the **side**. / *But it can only do the straight bits so **two giants** have to be called on to create the **bends**.*

42a 卜

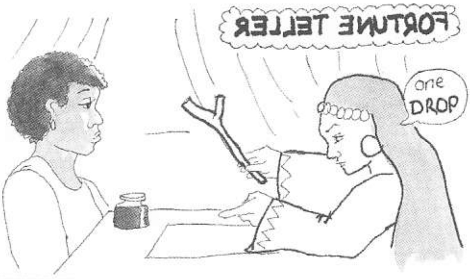
bǔ; bo
fortune teller

stick 丨(19a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) =
fortune teller 卜



When 卜 appears as a part of another character, "drop" sometimes turns into a short horizontal line (see Character 183 for an example).

You don't need to learn the pronunciation (as this is not an HSK Level A character), so there is no second half to the story.

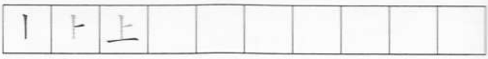


"Dip the **stick** in this ink and let **a drop** fall on here," says the **fortune teller** (she can tell your fortune by the pattern the ink makes). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

42

上 **shàng**
above

Radical ⺊
3 strokes



Although the basic meaning of this character is "above" or "on top of", it can also be used as a verb meaning to enter (a vehicle), attend (school), go to (work), etc.

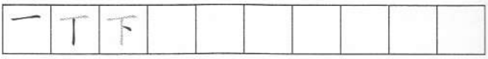
上边(41) **shàngbian** *above; high up*

*/ A huge **wheel** hovers **above Shanghai** with a **dwarf** sitting on it, directing the boats in the harbor.*

43

下 **xià**
below

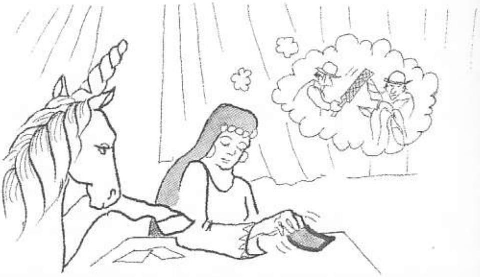
Radical ⺊
3 strokes



one 一(1) + fortune teller ⺊(42a) = below 下

In a similar way to Character 42, this character, which means "down", "below" or "under", can also be used as a verb meaning to alight (from a vehicle), finish (class or work), etc.

下边(41) **xiàbian** *below, under*
一下儿(1, 21) **yíxiàr** *briefly; casually*

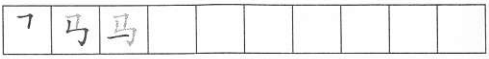


The **unicorn** goes to see the **fortune teller**, and she looks at what is **below** the card which he points to with his hoof. / *"I see **two dwarves sharpening** your horn for you."*

44

马 **mǎ**
horse

Radical 马
3 strokes
馬



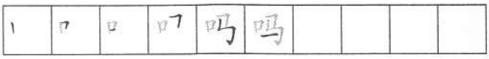
马上(42) **mǎshàng** *at once*

*/ **Teddy** has shown a **horse** how to balance on a **wheel** so they can earn money at the **market** (performing as street entertainers).*

45

吗 **ma**
question mark

Radical 口
6 strokes
嗎



mouth 口(5) + horse 马(44) = question mark 吗

This is a particle which is added to the end of a sentence to turn it into a question.

Imagine looking inside the **mouth** of a **horse** you are thinking of buying, and finding a **question mark** stamped on the horse's tongue. / *Your **robot** remarks, "It's not logical to buy horses at this **market**."*

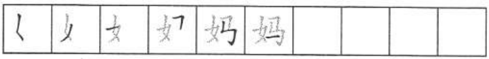
46 妈 **mā** mum

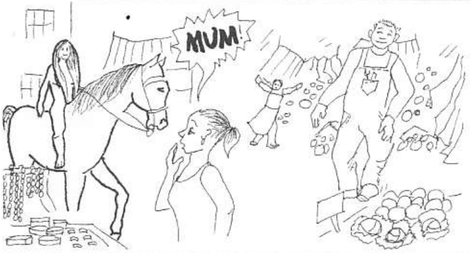
Radical 女
6 strokes

媽

woman 女(15) **+ horse 马**(44) **= mum 妈**

妈妈 **māma** *mum, mom, mummy*





A teenage girl is out shopping and she turns to see a **woman** on a **horse** — naked like Lady Godiva. "**Mum**!" the teenager cries, mortified. / *Fortunately at that moment the* ***giant*** *comes bumbling through the* ***market*** *(overturning stalls and distracting everyone's attention, giving the girl a chance to lead the horse away out of sight).*

Look at the last three characters (44–46). Do you notice anything? They all contain 马 and they are all pronounced "**ma**" (with various tones). This isn't a coincidence: 马 is acting as a *phonetic* and giving a clue to how to pronounce the character. In effect 妈 is "the character which has a meaning related to 女 and sounds like 马." One reason (among many) why the equations often don't seem to make any logical sense is that sometimes one part of the character is donating its *sound* rather than its *meaning*. A series of characters like this, with a phonetic component and with the same pronunciation, is called a *phonetic series*. We will always use the same soundword for all the pronunciations in a phonetic series — in the case of Characters 44–46 we used the soundword "market". We have already seen two small examples of phonetic series (他, 她 and 门, 们), and there are many more to come. But (as you probably guessed) this is not at all a reliable system, as you will see as we go along. For example, we have already seen that 他 and 她 are pronounced **tā**, but 也 was **yě**!

Test yourself:	也(8)	个(19)	六(39)	什(35)	们(28)	九(38)	么(34)
	的(23)	子(17)	五(36)	中(33)	力(14)	七(37)	白(22)
	马(44)	女(15)	百(40)	十(4)	下(43)	不(9)	日(6)
	边(41)	四(24)	妈(46)	八(20)	上(42)	正(29)	这(26)

Did you remember all these OK? If not, are you sure you *visualized* the story in each case rather than just *reading* it? It's true that you only need to recall the meaning (and soundword/archetype), not the whole story verbatim, but picturing the story will help you to remember these vital nuggets inside the story.

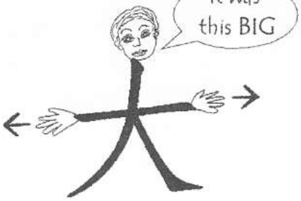
As an experiment you might try really visualizing (say) three stories from the next chapter, and then for three other stories simply read them through, *not* visualizing them. Then test yourself 24 hours later and see if there is any difference. Then test yourself again 3 days and 7 days later.

Chapter 5

If there is a basic building block you are having a real problem remembering, you might try this: photocopy the character picture and color it in, making sure you trace over the character in heavy black lines. It doesn't matter whether you then tear it up or frame it on your wall; the process will have helped to embed it in your memory.

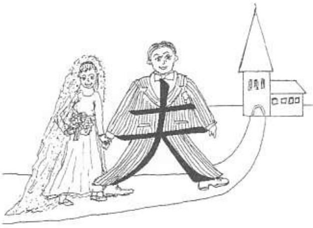
大

big


It was this BIG

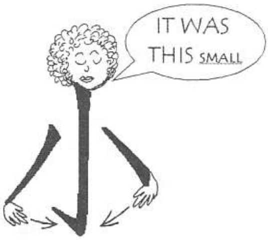
夫

husband



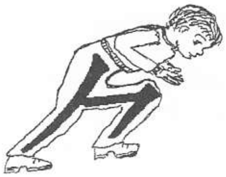
小

small


IT WAS THIS SMALL

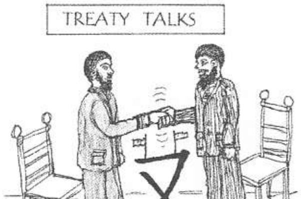
厶

to bow



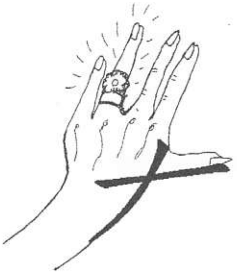
又

right hand


TREATY TALKS

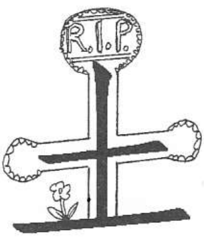
ナ

left hand



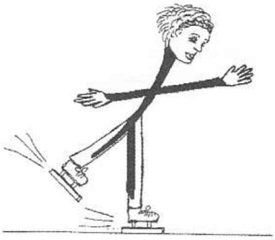
土

earth



才

talent

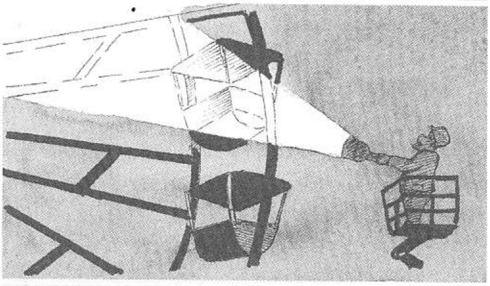


47 大 **dà (dài)** big **Radical 大** **3 strokes**

一	ナ	大							

The pronunciation of this character is basically **dà**, with the exception that it is pronounced **dài** in the word **dàifū** (see Character 49 below).

[大人(12) **dàrén** *adult*]



*/ The **Big Wheel** at the fairground is in use all day so the **dwarf** has to do the maintenance work at night in the **dark**. (Imagine him grumbling, "How do they expect me to see what I'm doing?").*

---

48 太 **tài** too much **Radical 大** **4 strokes**

一	ナ	大	太						

big 大(47) + a drop 丶 (22a) = too much 太

Note that the "drop" is *below* "big" — we will meet another story later (238a) which is also made up of "drop" and "big", but the "drop" is on top.

[太太 **tàitai** *wife; Mrs.*]

The fisherman throws his arms wide to show how **big** the fish was, but **a drop** of sweat falls from his brow and his friends know he is lying — they have seen **too much** of this in the past. */ The **dwarf** says, disdainfully, "Are you sure it wasn't a **tiger**?"*

---

49 夫 **fū** husband **Radical 大** **4 strokes**

一	二	扌	夫						

The second stroke of this character is longer than the first, just like in the character for "two" (Character 2).

大夫(47) **dàifū** *doctor (colloq.)*
夫人(12) **fūrén** *wife (formal)*

*/ She makes her **husband** use the exercise **wheel**. "You are fat because you eat as much **food** as the **giant**," she tells him.*

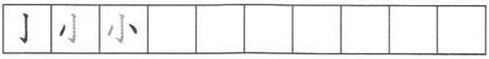
50 小 **xiǎo** small

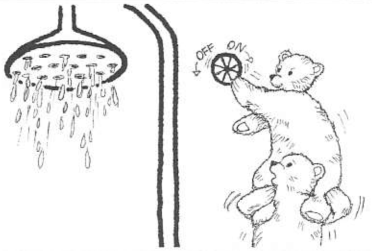
Radical 小
3 strokes

When "small" occurs at the top of other characters, it sometimes takes the form ⺌ (see Character 267). For using 小 with names, see the note on 老 **lǎo** (Character 264).

The stroke order for this character follows the "center before symmetrical sides" rule, which overrides the "left to right" rule.

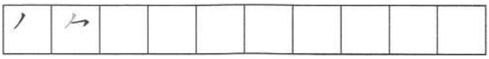
[大小(47) **dàxiǎo** *size*]





*/ The **small wheel** has to be turned to operate the **shower**, but the **two teddies** have to stand one on top of the other to reach it.*

51a 𠂉 to bow



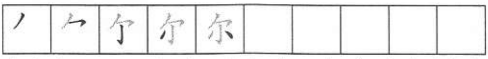
We use this in the following character, but then we won't need it again until Chapter 18.

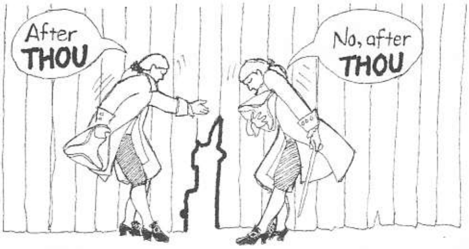
51b 尔 **ěr** thou

爾

bow 𠂉(51a) + **small** 小(50) = **thou** 尔

This is an old or literary word for "you" which we need for the next character.





Imagine two fastidious courtiers **bowing** to each other by a **small** gap in the fence. "After **thou**," one says. "No, after **thou**!" And so on. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

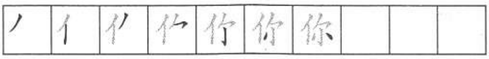
51 你 **nǐ** you

Radical 亻
7 strokes

person 亻(13a) + **thou** 尔(51b) = **you** 你

This is the everyday, modern word for "you" (there are also various polite ways of saying "you" which we will meet later).

你们(28) **nǐmen** *you (plural)*



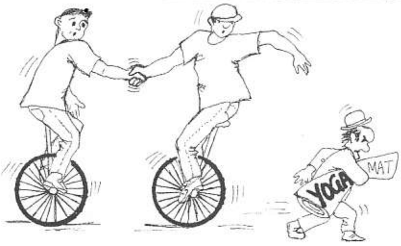
"**Harry**, **thou** art clever," says the wise man. "Why don't you just say "**you**"?" Harry replies. / ***Teddy** gets all excited and starts singing, "No need to **kneel**, no need to **kneel**."*

52 又 **yòu** right hand

Radical 又
2 strokes

㇇	又								

Although originally a picture of the right hand, this character now means "again" or "additionally" (there is also another word for "again"; see Character 217). We will use the old meaning "right hand" in stories, since it will be easier to create vivid stories using this than if we were to use the more abstract word "again". Moreover, we will usually use the image of shaking hands to distinguish it from stories involving "hand" in general (since this is something you do with your right hand, even if you are left-handed).



/ Two friends on unicycles meet in the street — each extends his ***right hand*** *while balancing on a single* ***wheel****, and they shake hands again and again. The* ***dwarf*** *comes rushing past (nearly sending them flying) — he's late for his* ***yoga*** *class and in no mood to be impressed.*

[又...又... **yòu A yòu B** *both A and B*]

53a 𠂇 left hand

一	𠂇								

"Left hand" forms a part of far fewer characters than "right hand".

To make "left hand" stand out from "hand" in general, we will often use stories involving wedding rings.

---

53 友 **yǒu** friend

Radical 又
4 strokes

一	𠂇	𠂇㇇	友						

left hand 𠂇(53a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **friend** 友

友好(18) **yǒuhǎo** *friendly*

They run along **(right) hand** in **(left) hand**, the best of **friends**. / *But the mischievous* ***Teddy*** *is waiting, and as they pass he flicks his* ***yoyo*** *out and they fall down in a tangle of string.*

54a 土 **tǔ** earth

一	十	土							

Once again (as in 夫, Character 49), the second stroke of this character is longer than the first. This time it really matters, for there is another character which looks just like 土, except that the first stroke is longer than the second (士, Character 487a).

When used as the left-hand side of other characters, 土 gets squashed so that the last stroke slopes upwards (see the next character for an example).

54 地 **dì; de** **Radical 土**
6 strokes
1. ground 2. -ly

1. **earth** 土(54a) + **also** 也(8) = **ground** 地

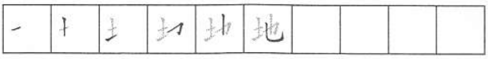
2. **earth** 土(54a) + **also** 也(8) = **-ly** 地

Now, here we have a character with two meanings, and two pronunciations to go with them! Whenever this happens (there are ten such characters in this book), we will simply provide two stories. However, one will be set in the Wild West, and one will be set on a large spaceship. No other characters, apart from these ten, will use either of these settings. So whenever you see a character and remember the story to go with it, if the setting is the Wild West or a spaceship, this will remind you that there is also another story (in the other setting). Of course, which meaning (and pronunciation) is appropriate will be for you to decide, depending on the context. This is like seeing the word "bow" in English: until you know the context (tying shoelaces? aboard a ship? archery?) you won't know which meaning, or which pronunciation, is appropriate.

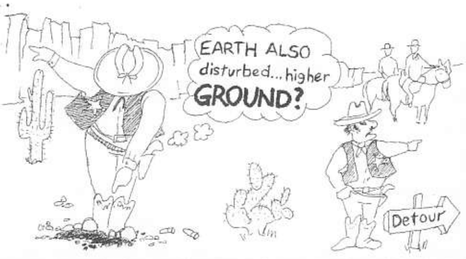
The second meaning, "-ly", is our name for how 地 helps to qualify verbs, like the "-ly" ending of adverbs in English.

You may wonder which of the two meanings to use in future equations. Fortunately this problem doesn't arise as this character never appears as part of another character.

[地下(43) **dìxià** *underground*]

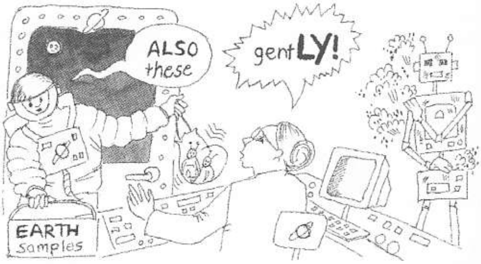


1.



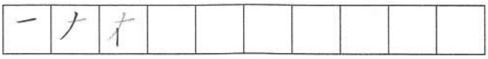
🌵 (A posse is pursuing bandits, and the sheriff dismounts to look at the spent bullets) "The **earth** has **also** been disturbed," he says, "they're heading for higher **ground**." / *His **dwarf** deputy takes a few men on a **detour** (to head them off at the pass ...)*

2.



🛸 (The landing party has returned to the spaceship from the planet) "We didn't just get samples of **earth**, we **also** found some great alien artefacts, so treat them gentle." "Gent**ly**," corrects the Chief Scientist (who is a stickler for grammar). / *"And can somebody go and sort out the **robot** — he's miserable because he's got so **dusty**" (collecting the earth samples).*

55a 才 talent



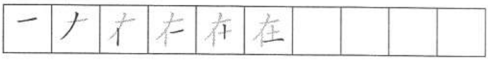
You might like to think of this as "left hand" plus "stick". But we think that our illustrator's character picture is a better and more vivid way to remember this. (We will have something else to say about this character when we get to Character 518).

55

在

zài
at

Radical 土
6 strokes



talent 𠂇(55a) + earth 土(54a) = at 在

This can mean both "in/at/on" and "to be in/at/on", or "to be in the middle of" (doing something).

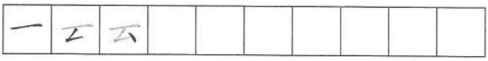
正在(29) **zhèngzài** *(used before a verb to denote action in progress)*

(An announcement at the flower show) "The expert gardeners, who have a special **talent** for growing things in the **earth**, will be **at** the main marquee to answer questions when the big "@" sign is displayed above it." / *The **dwarf** (who is organizing things) plays a couple of notes on his **xylophone** to end the announcement.*

56a

厶

"swoop"



one 一(1) + cocoon 厶(34a) = swoop 厶

The **unicorn** finds a **cocoon** on the path, and is just about to investigate when a bird **swoops** down to pluck it from under his nose. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

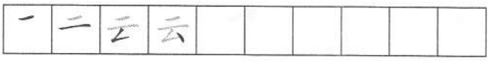
56

云

yún
cloud

Radical 二
4 strokes

雲



one 一(1) + swoop 厶(56a) = cloud 云

Alternatively, this character could be broken down into "two" plus "cocoon". If, looking at the character, this alternative seems more natural to you, then feel free to make up a story accordingly. For example, you could have a biplane pilot flying along, who sees a fluffy cocoon floating in the sky — until he realizes that it is a cloud.

A bird is teasing the **unicorn**, **swoop**ing under its tummy, but each time the unicorn looks round the bird hides in a **cloud**. / *The **fairy** is so impressed she makes the bird an honorary member of her aviators' **union**.*

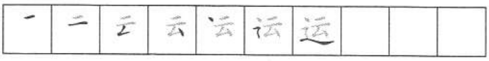
57

运

yùn
transport

Radical 辶
7 strokes

運



road 辶(26a) + cloud 云(56) = transport 运

The **road** is obscured by a **cloud** of dust as the big **transport** trucks roll past. / *The **dwarf** (covered in dust) calls after them, "I'll get the **union** on to you!"*

58 动 **dòng** move

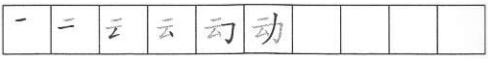
Radical 力
6 strokes

動

cloud 云(56) + power 力(14) = move 动

The previous two characters formed a mini-phonetic series, but this character breaks the pattern. This shows that phonetic series are not to be relied upon!

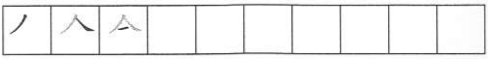
运动(57) **yùndòng** *(physical) exercise*
[动手(31) **dòng shǒu** *to start work*]



A tornado **cloud** has the **power** to **move** almost anything. / *It can even knock the **dwarf** off his **donkey**.*

59a 亼 combine

tent 𠆢(19b) + one 一(1) = combine 亼



The **unicorn** hides in his **tent**, frightened by the **combine** harvester working nearby. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

59 会 **huì** meeting

Radical 𠆢
6 strokes

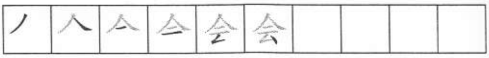
會

combine 亼(59a) + swoop 云(56a) = meeting 会

Alternatively, this character could be split into "tent" plus "cloud" (see the comment for Character 56). From now on, we won't keep pointing these alternatives out.

Another meaning of this character is "to know how to".

The pronunciation of this character is something like "hway" — the u on-glide is pronounced like the English "w". See the remarks after this character entry.



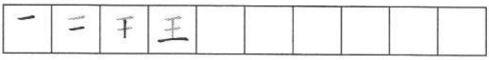
(The captain of the birds' aerobatic display team is speaking) "If we are going to **combine** our **swoop**ing maneuvers we need to have a **meeting** to discuss how we will do it." / *The **ghostly dwarf** (safety officer) is organizing the **hay** (to act as a safety cushion).*

机会(10) **jīhuì** *chance, opportunity*
[大会(47) **dàhuì** *congress, assembly*]
一会儿(1, 21) **yíhuìr** *(in) a moment*

To signal a u on-glide, as in Character 59, we have a *ghostly* archetype. We try to give ghostly figures a guarding or protecting role in the stories. When you find a ghostly archetype, add in the "w" sound, e.g. converting a "go" sound to "gwo". (Recall our discussion of i on-glides after Character 38).

Test yourself: 你(51) 我(32) 大(47) 正(29) 小(50) 手(31) 运(57)
太(48) 口(5) 吗(45) 夫(49) 几(7) 们(28) 是(30)

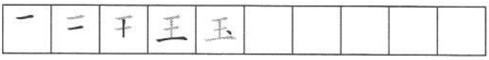
60a 王 **wáng** king



one 一(1) + **earth** 土(54a) = **king** 王

The **unicorn** (telling the story of Excalibur) sticks his horn into the **earth**, then withdraws it with a flourish to demonstrate how the young Arthur became **king**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

60b 玉 **yù** jade



king 王(60a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) = **jade** 玉

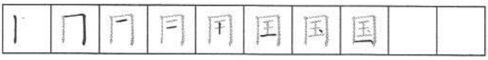
The **king** is out jogging and as each **drop** of sweat touches the ground it turns to **jade**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

This is similar to the situation for 太 (Character 48). In 玉 the drop is low down in the character, and the story reflects this. This is to keep it distinct in your mind from another character you'll meet later (主, Character 297), which has a drop *on top of* a king.

60 国 **guó** country

Radical 口
8 strokes

國



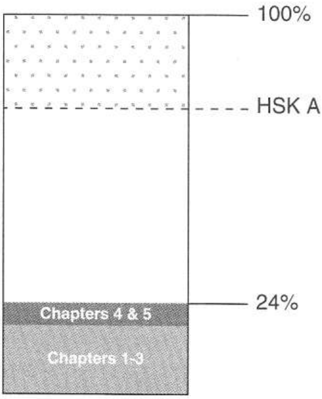
enclosed 口(24a) + **jade** 玉(60b) = **country** 国

The **jade** crown is **enclosed** in a theft-proof case at the exhibition as it is a very important part of the **country**'s heritage. / *The legendary **ghostly fairy** who came from the **Gobi** desert guards it.*

Here is another ghostly archetype, indicating the pronunciation is closer to "gwo" than "go" (see the text following Character 59).

[中国(33) **zhōngguó** *China*]

Because we are covering the most common characters early on in the book, we've already covered almost a quarter of the characters you'll find in an average piece of Chinese text! Of course, you won't be able to understand the average piece of text yet — in English the most common words are "and", "the" and so on, and knowing these wouldn't enable you to read English either. However, you are on your way now and most of the "mystery" and "fear of the unknown" should be gone. By now we hope you'll agree that there is actually nothing to stop you learning as many characters as you like!

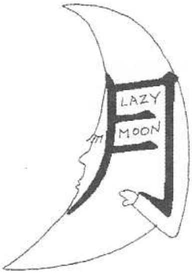


Chapter 6

Some characters have minor variations between typefaces which are not significant. For example, in the character for "moon" below, the two small horizontal lines almost meet the far side of the character, but in the main character entry (next page) the lines *do* reach the whole way across. The characters on these "basics pages" are also slightly "italic" compared with the main character entries. This will help you to recognize characters in these different fonts.

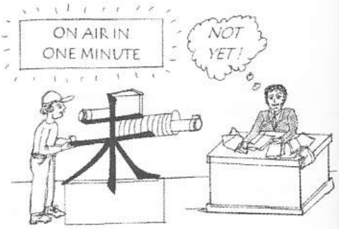
月

moon



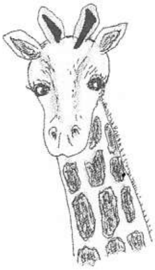
未

not yet


ON AIR IN ONE MINUTE
NOT YET!

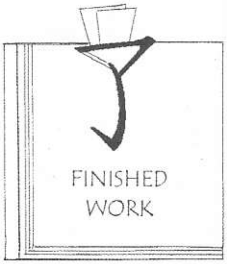
丷

horns



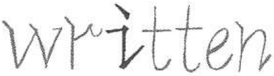
了

complete


FINISHED WORK

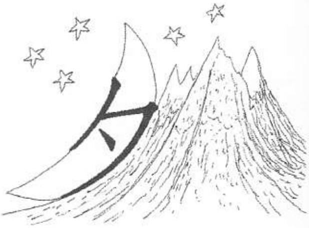
讠

words



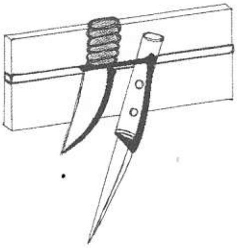
夕

evening



刀

knife



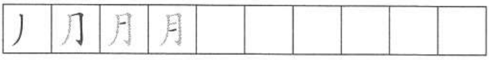
61

月 **yuè** moon

Radical 月
4 strokes

We would normally class this as a DIY pronunciation (one you have to memorize on your own as there is no reasonable soundword available in English). For most of these, it will be simplest if you just learn the pronunciation, rather than us inventing a new trick each time. But we'll try to give you some help when we can.

We saw that the character for "sun" also means "day" (Character 6), and in a similar way the character for "moon" also means "month".



/ *You are out walking at night when the **moon**light falling on a **wheel** lights up the **dwarf** who is sitting on it. "That **you, eh**?" he whispers gruffly.*

Occasionally 月 is distorted into 夕 (but we won't see this happening until much later, in Chapter 16).

[二月(2) **èryuè** *February*]
[三月(3) **sānyuè** *March*]
[三个月(3, 19) **sān ge yuè** *three months*]

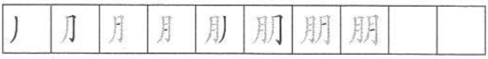
62

朋 **péng** companion

Radical 月
8 strokes

moon 月(61) + **moon** 月(61) = **companion** 朋

朋友(53) **péngyǒu** *friend*
朋友们(53, 28) **péngyǒumen** *friends*



"Why did you buy two moon-shaped balloons?" her mother asks. "Because the first **moon** needed another **moon** as a **companion**," the little girl says. / *But just then one of the moons gets **punctured**, but (before the child can start to cry) the **fairy** quickly flies over, flicks her wand, and it's as good as new.*

63

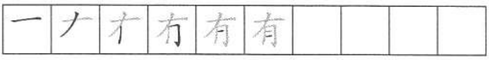
有 **yǒu** have

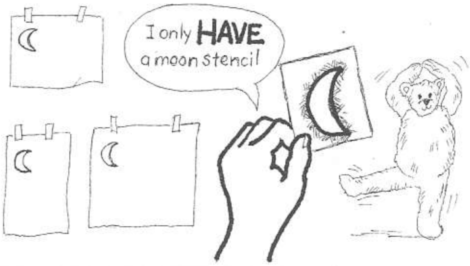
Radical 月
6 strokes

left hand 𠂇(53a) + **moon** 月(61) = **have** 有

This means both "have", "possess" and the impersonal "there is" or "there exists".

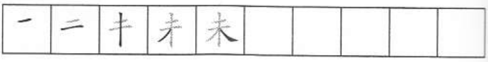
有的(23) **yǒude** *some*
[有力(14) **yǒulì** *strong, forceful*]




I only HAVE a moon stencil

"Why is there a **moon** on the **left hand** side of every picture?" the girl's mother asks. "Because I only **have** a moon stencil," the girl replies. / ***Teddy** practices his favorite **yoga** posture (and says "Why not draw me instead?")*

64a 末 **wèi** not yet



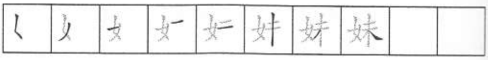
Yet again, as in 夫 (49) and 土 (54a), the second stroke of this character is longer than the first. This is another occasion where it *does* matter, because we shall be meeting the character 末 (793a) later.

It is unfortunately true that some small details like this do matter, whereas other small differences don't — as mentioned at the start of this chapter. We will do our best to draw attention to the differences that matter and you will soon get used to these; you will also soon be routinely recognizing minor variants of the same character.

---

64 妹 **mèi** younger sister

Radical 女
8 strokes



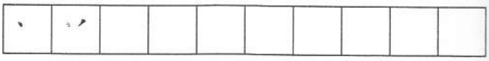
woman 女(15) + **not yet** 未(64a) = **younger sister** 妹

There is no character in Chinese for "sister"; instead we have this character for "younger sister" and another one (Character 444) for "older sister". The same thing happens for brothers.

(Two lads in the pub) "What about that **woman** over there — she's **not yet** married," says one. "You can't fancy her, she's my **younger sister**!" his mate replies. / *"Anyway the **dwarf** has his eye on her, and he's a **Major**."*

妹妹 **mèimei** *younger sister*

65a 丷 horns

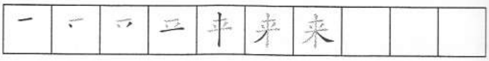


The "horns" usually come at the top of a character (but not always — see the following character).

---

65 来 **lái** come

Radical 一
7 strokes
來



horns 丷(65a) + **not yet** 未(64a) = **come** 来

The stags are going off on their hunt, but the fawn is too young. "Your **horns** are **not yet** grown so you cannot **come** yet," he is told. / *The **fairy** (who comes to babysit him) fixes up **lights** to amuse him and guide the returning hunters.*

上来(42) **shànglái** *come up*
下来(43) **xiàlái** *come down*

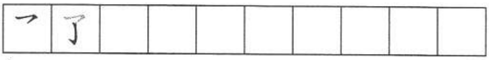
Test yourself: 么(34) 子(17) 妈(46) 又(52) 在(55) 他(13) 个(19)
友(53) 云(56) 十(4) 会(59) 地(54) 日(6) 动(58)

66

了

le; liǎo
1. transition
2. complete

Radical 乛
2 strokes



1.

🛸 / *For the expedition to the new planet, the **robot** has brought plenty of spare **wheels** so that he can change them whenever there is a **transition** to a different sort of terrain — just his **luck** that this is a water world!*

2.

🌵 / *(The stagecoach has broken down) When the repairs to the **wheel** are **complete** the **two teddies** rush around calling **loudly** to the passengers to get back on board.*

Notice how this differs from "child" (Character 17); here there is no third stroke through the middle.

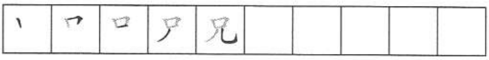
This is our second pair of Wild West and spaceship stories (see Character 54); in this case it is a pair of "wheel" stories.

le is a particle which comes at the end of a sentence to mark a transition, such as the completion of an action, or the emergence of a new situation. **liǎo** means "to complete" or "finish with (something)". For the character picture we've used "complete" as the meaning.

67a

兄

xiōng
older brother



mouth 口(5) + **boy** 儿(21) =
older brother 兄

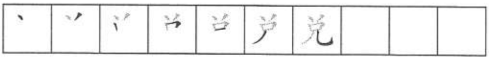
At the **mouth** of the cave the **boy** is acting as a look-out for his **older brother** (who has sneaked inside to see what's in there). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

There is also another character for "older brother" which we'll meet presently.

67b

兑

duì
to convert



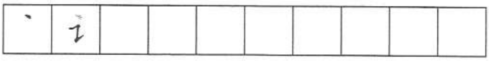
horns 丷(65a) + **older brother** 兄(67a) =
convert 兑

"I found these **horns**," the little girl says, holding them up proudly. "My **older brother** is going to **convert** them into something for me to play with." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

67c

讠

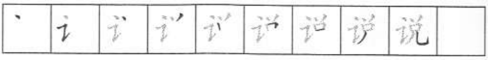
words



This common component, which appears on the left-hand side of characters, is a simplification of the character 言 which we'll meet later (Character 375). In our stories we usually refer to words which are written down rather than spoken.

67 说 **shuō**
say

Radical 讠
9 strokes
說



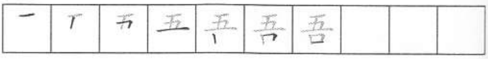
words 讠 (67c) **+ convert 兑**(67b) **= say 说**

Another ghostly archetype (see the text after Character 59), which means "sho" from the soundword is changed into "**shuo**". We won't mention this every time it occurs from now on.

[小说(50) **xiǎoshuō** *a novel*]

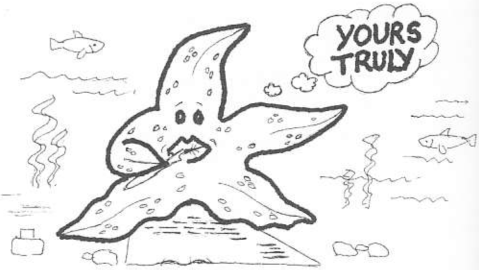
(A new aid for blind people has been invented) "All you have to do is run this gadget over the written **words** and it will **convert** them into signals which it can then **say** out loud." / *The **ghostly giant** (who is the guardian of this new device) **shows** the blind people how to use it.*

68a 吾 wú
yours truly



five 五(36) **+ mouth 口**(5) **= yours truly 吾**

A literary character for "I" or "we".

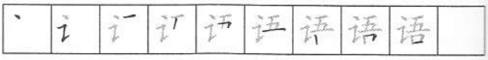


The **starfish** puts the pen nib in his **mouth** to lick it, and signs off the letter with a flourish, "**Yours truly.**" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

68 语 **yǔ**
language

Radical 讠
9 strokes
語



words 讠 (67c) **+ yours truly 吾**(68a) **= language 语**

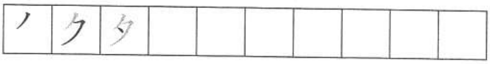
Notice the pouring rain: the "**u**" sound in "**yu**" is really "**ü**" (see Character 15).

口语(5) **kǒuyǔ** *spoken language*
日语(6) **Rìyǔ** *Japanese (language)*

🌧 (Writing a letter to your bank manager) You try to think of the correct **words** to finish with, and eventually write "**Yours truly**" — thinking that this is the sort of **language** that is expected. / ***Teddy**, realizing that the letter is finally finished, cries "**Eureka!**" (although it's pouring with rain so he'll get soaking wet posting it).*

69a

夕 xī
evening

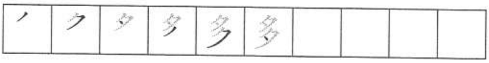


The final stroke is written in a downwards direction.

69

多 **duō**
many

Radical 夕
6 strokes



evening 夕(69a) + **evening** 夕(69a) = **many** 多

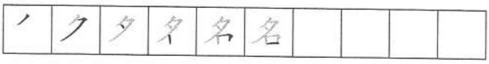
多么(34)	**duōme**	*How ..?; How ..!*
[多云(56)	**duōyún**	*cloudy*]

(Walking along the pier each night) The friendly policeman says "**Evening, evening**" to the **many** couples he passes. / *He even stops to call "Good evening" to the* ***ghostly giant*** *who guards the* ***dome*** *at the end of the pier.*

70

名 **míng**
name

Radical 夕
6 strokes



evening 夕(69a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **name** 名

This means "name" in the normal sense of someone's name, but also in the sense of "fame" or "repute".

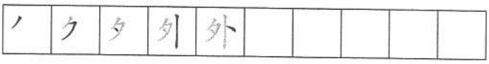
有名(63)	**yǒumíng**	*famous, well known*

(The worried young man is looking for his girlfriend) By **evening** he had reached the **mouth** of the cave and called out her **name**. / *The* ***fairy*** *brought her out, having conjured up a* ***mink*** *coat to keep her warm.*

71

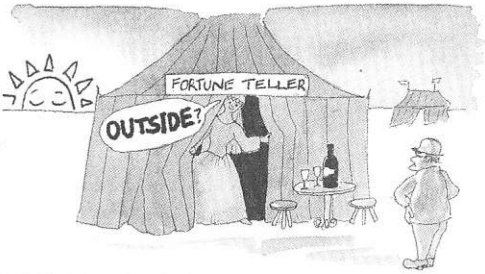
外 **wài**
outside

Radical 夕
5 strokes



evening 夕(69a) + **fortune teller** 卜(42a) = **outside** 外

外边(41)	**wàibian**	*outside*
外语(68)	**wàiyǔ**	*foreign language*
外文(25)	**wàiwén**	*foreign (written) language*
外国(60)	**wàiguó**	*foreign country*
[在外(55)	**zàiwài**	*excluded*]
[外人(12)	**wàirén**	*outsider, stranger*]
[外国人(60, 12)	**wàiguórén**	*foreigner*]



In the **evening** (after a hard day's work) the **fortune teller** likes to sit **outside** (and enjoy the fresh air). / *The* ***dwarf*** *from the next stall comes over to share her bottle of* ***wine*** *(he's too stingy to buy his own!)*

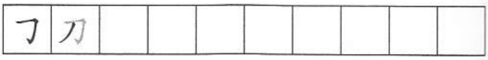
---

72 刀 **dāo** knife

Radical 刀
2 strokes

When appearing on the right-hand side of composite characters, this takes the form 刂 (see 74a).

[刀子(17) **dāozi** *knife*]



*/ The **giant** fixed a **knife** to the **wheel** as instructed, but he had grave **doubts** about whether it would really cut the crops as it rolled along.*

---

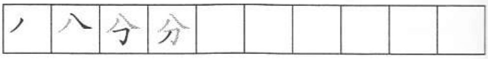
73 分 **fēn** (fèn) division

Radical 八
4 strokes

eight 八(20) + knife 刀(72) = division 分

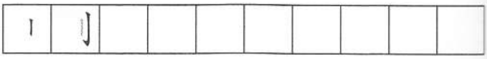
This can be a verb, "to divide", or a noun meaning a small division of something — it is used for a hundredth of a yuan or a minute (of time).

十分(4) **shífēn** *totally, 100%*



The **octopus**, with a **knife** in each tentacle, **divides** the huge pizzas into lots of equal pieces. / *The **giant** (who is on his tea break) finds it great **fun** to watch.*

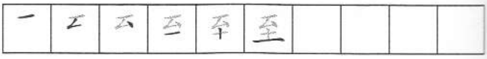
74a 刂 knife



When "knife" appears as the right-hand side of composite characters, it takes this form.

74b 至 **zhì** until

swoop 𠫔(56a) + earth 土(54a) = until 至



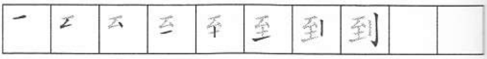
The birds (following the farmer sowing his seeds) **swoop** down to the **earth** one after another **until** there are no seeds left. */ [No pronunciation needed]*

---

74 到 **dào** arrive

Radical 刂
8 strokes

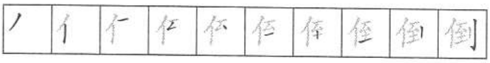
until 至(74b) + knife 刂(74a) = arrive 到



Until the magic **knife** has finished trimming the decorations it is not safe for the guests to **arrive**. / *The **dwarf** says, "I have grave **doubts** about the safety of using magic knives."*

75 倒 **dǎo; dào** topple; invert

Radical 亻
10 strokes



person 亻 (13a) **+ arrive 到** (74) **=**
topple; invert 倒

Here we have two meanings, and two pronunciations, but the pronunciations differ only in tone — so they share the same soundword but have different archetypes. As with Wild West/spaceship characters, the choice of which meaning/pronunciation is appropriate will depend on the context.

For this type of character (there are nine in this book) we will use *film set* stories. Each one takes place on the film set of a particular movie, and has two parts. The first part is a normal story, leading to a meaning, soundword and archetype as usual.

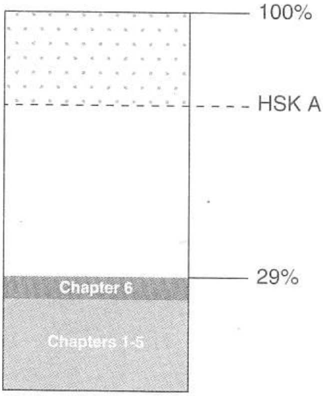
Harry arrives on the film set of a "Harry Potter" film, just as a burning candle **topples** over (and threatens to set light to everything). / ***Teddy** tries to **douse** the flames by flicking water from a fire bucket. But the **dwarf** shows him how to **douse** it properly.* \ "**Invert** the whole bucket over the fire, like this," he says.

In the second part the second archetype introduces the second meaning (remember, the soundword is the same). So if, when you see a character and the story you recall based on its parts takes place on a film set, then you know that the character has two possible meanings, with pronunciations that differ only in tone.

You may feel that with Wild West stories, ghostly dwarves and so on, and now film set stories, this is all getting too complicated. But film set stories are the last complication (honest!) and only apply to a few characters anyway. After this you can just sit back for the rest of the book.

You have already learned 75 characters, including all 20 of the "Top 20" most frequent characters in Chinese. The initial feeling of characters being "impenetrable squiggles" is behind you, and characters won't be scary ever again. Now you are into your stride, all you need to do is to keep going, slowly and steadily. Resist the temptation to race ahead; instead choose a modest schedule and stick to it, and remember to visualize the stories rather than just reading them and passing on.

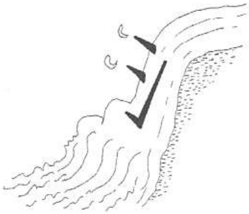
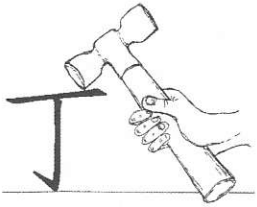
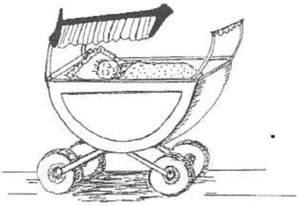
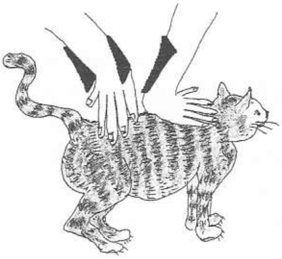
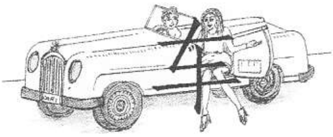
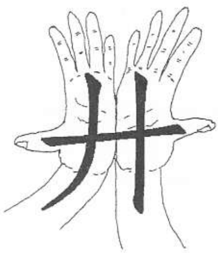
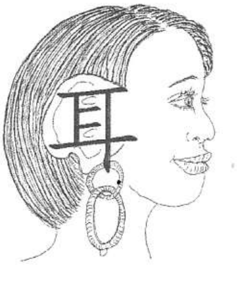
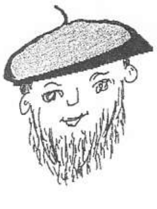
At this stage, if you were learning characters by rote, you would be running into the "too many and yet too few" problem: you would know too few characters as yet to read Chinese, but at the same time too many to keep them clear in your head. Well, the first part of this is still true for you, but the second part shouldn't be, if you have been visualizing the stories. Think about it — how many hundreds of movies have you seen and yet you can still remember which is which, and what happens in each?



Test yourself: 妹(64) 门(27) 国(60) 白(22) 是(30) 有(63) 中(33)
朋(62) 儿(21) 她(16) 来(65) 月(61) 了(66) 好(18)

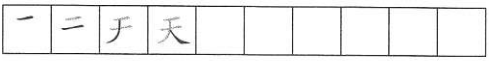
Chapter 7

On this page (as on the "basics" pages at the start of previous chapters) we have a mixture of "obvious" character pictures (such as "nail" and "cover") and others which are not (such as "car"). For the non-obvious ones, pay particular attention to what the various strokes correspond to in the character picture, so that when you see the character on its own you can imagine the character picture drawn around it.

氵 **water** 	丁 **nail** 
冖 **cover** 	⺍ **hands reaching down** 
车 **car** 	廾 **two hands** 
耳 **ear** 	一 **beret** 

76 **天** **tiān** heaven

Radical 一
4 strokes



one 一(1) + **big** 大(47) = **heaven** 天

Other common meanings for this character are "sky", "day" and "weather".

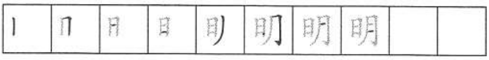
The **unicorn** was so **big** that his horn seemed to touch the **heavens**. / *But he made an ideal umpire for the* ***two giants*** *playing* ***tennis*** *(as he was tall enough to see clearly what was going on).*

[白天(22) **báitiān** *daytime*]
[天天 **tiāntiān** *every day*]

---

77 **明** **míng** bright

Radical 日
8 strokes

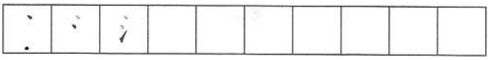


sun 日(6) + **moon** 月(61) = **bright** 明

It's the **sun** shining on the **moon** that makes it **bright**. / *The* ***fairy*** *likes to wear her* ***mink*** *shawl in the bright moonlight.*

明天(76) **míngtiān** *tomorrow*
说明(67) **shuōmíng** *explain, explanation*

78a **氵** water

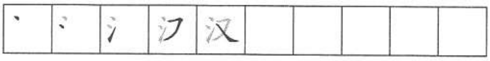


This very common fragment is an abbreviation of the character 水 which we'll meet later (Character 523) — it takes this form when appearing as the left-hand part of composite characters. Note that the final stroke is written in an upwards direction.

---

78 **汉** **hàn** Han Chinese

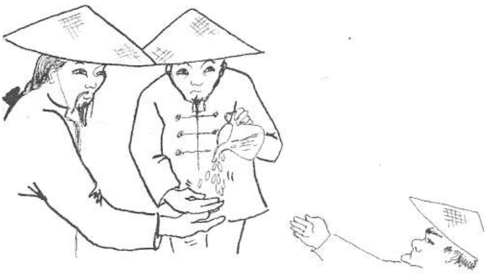
Radical 氵
5 strokes
漢



water 氵 (78a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **Han Chinese** 汉

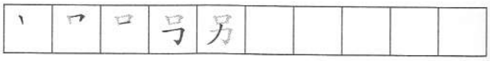
The Han Chinese are the majority ethnic group in China.

汉语(68) **Hànyǔ** *Chinese (language)*



They sprinkle **water** on their right hands before **shaking hands** to demonstrate that they are **Han Chinese**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *is reaching up his* ***hand*** *so that he can be included (because he doesn't like to miss out on things).*

79a 另 **lìng** other



mouth 口(5) + **power** 力(14) = **other** 另

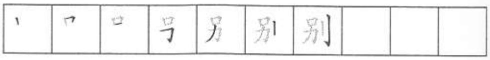
Sometimes (in older typefaces) you may see the "power" part of this character replaced by "knife" (Character 72).

"Man has two types of power: physical strength is one, but "**mouth power**", the power of persuasion, is the **other**." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

79 别 **bié** don't

Radical 刂
7 strokes
別



other 另(79a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **don't** 别

This character is another one meaning "other", but it is also used colloquially as a negative imperative, in phrases such as "Don't touch!".

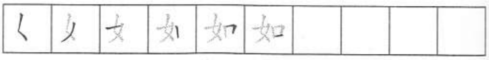
别的(23)	**biéde**	*other*
别人(12)	**biérén**	*other people*

"Use the **other knife**, **don't** use that one, we haven't sharpened it yet." / ***Two fairies*** *hold a* ***belt*** *between them to sharpen the knives on.*

---

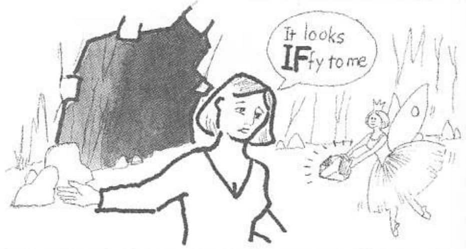
80 如 **rú** if

Radical 女
6 strokes



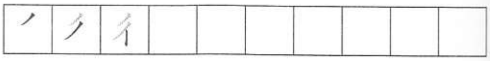
woman 女(15) + **mouth** 口(5) = **if** 如

不如(9)	**bùrú**	*not as (good) as*


It looks IFfy to me

The **woman** stands at the **mouth** of the cave, hesitating, "it looks **if**fy to me" she says. / *The* ***fairy*** *flutters over and gives her a magic* ***ruby*** *to keep her safe.*

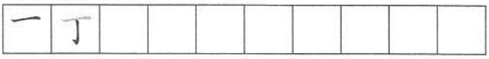
81a 彳 step forward



slide ㇒(34b) + **person** 亻(13a) = **step forward** 彳

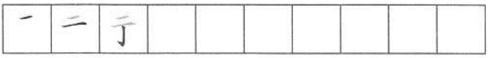
Harry is standing at the bottom of the **slide** ready to **step forward** and catch any children who are going too fast. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

81b 丁 dīng
nail



You will also see this used to mean fourth in a sequence, much as (d) or (iv) are used in English.

81c 亍
footstep



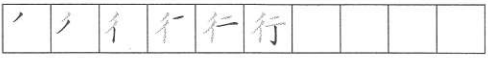
one 一(1) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **footstep** 亍

This is a distorted form of 81a (step forward) and combines with it to form the next character.

The **unicorn** has a **nail** stuck in his hoof so you can hear his **footsteps** clattering when he's walking along the road. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

81 行 **xíng; háng** **Radical 彳**
1. OK 2. line **6 strokes**



1. **step forward** 彳(81a) + **footstep** 亍(81c) = **OK** 行

2. **step forward** 彳(81a) + **footstep** 亍(81c) = **line** 行

See Character 54 if you need reminding about the significance of Wild West and spaceship stories.

The two halves of this character can bracket other characters between them (see Character 710 for an example).

[不行(9) **bùxíng** *not allowed, not OK*]
[行动(58) **xíngdòng** *to move; behavior*]

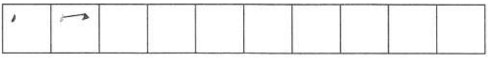
1.

🌵 The sheriff looks up and down the street before he dares to **step forward**, but then he thinks he hears a **footstep** behind him. He whirls round … but it's **OK**. / *It's just the **fairy** fixing up a **shingle** at the doctor's house (and she'd dropped it).*

2.

🛸 (Outside the sickbay, the morning after the planet-leaving party). You are about to **step forward** into the sickbay when you hear a **footstep** behind you. You look back and see a long **line** of people queueing up. / *The **fairy** is well known for her **hangover** cures!*

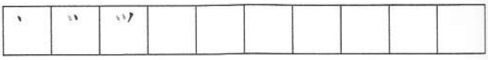
82a 冖
cover



Notice the difference between this and "to bow" (51a): "cover" is much flatter.

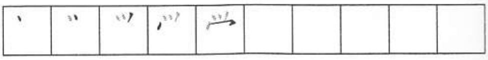
82b ⺍

hands reaching down



82c 𭕄

"unveil"



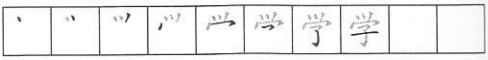
hands reaching down ⺍ (82b) +
cover 冖(82a) = **unveil** 𭕄

Imagine a row of people lined up along the roof of a new building — the band strikes up below then their **hands reach down** to pull on a **cover** to **unveil** the company's name on its new headquarters. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

82 学 **xué** study

Radical 子
8 strokes
學



unveil 𭕄(82c) + **child** 子(17) = **study** 学

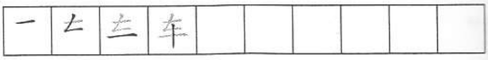
大学(47)	**dàxué**	*university*
中学(33)	**zhōngxué**	*high school*
上学(42)	**shàngxué**	*attend class*
文学(25)	**wénxué**	*literature*

(At the opening of the new college) a local celebrity **unveils** a statue of a **child** in front of the main building — the child is **study**ing a book. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

83 车 **chē** car

Radical 车
4 strokes
車



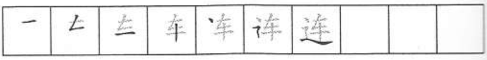
This character can mean any vehicle: a car, bus, train, etc.

*/ The **giant** is changing the **wheel** on his **car**, but he is careless when he takes the old wheel off and it rolls down the hill and demolishes the **church**!*

---

84 连 **lián** linked up

Radical 辶
7 strokes
連

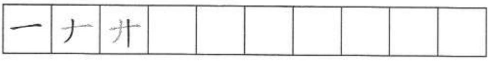


road 辶(26a) + **car** 车(83) = **linked up** 连

连...也...(8) **lián A yě B** *even A is/does B*

Imagine an isolated stretch of **road** with a single **car** on it that can't go anywhere because the road isn't **linked up** to the highway system yet. / *The **two fairies** take pity on the owner and magic up some dried **lentils** to use as gravel to make a temporary road surface.*

85a 廾 two hands

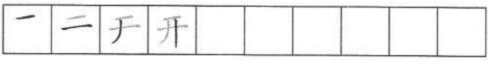


---

85 开 **kāi** open

Radical 廾
4 strokes

開



one 一(1) + **two hands** 廾(85a) = **open** 开

This also means to start, or operate (e.g. to drive a car).

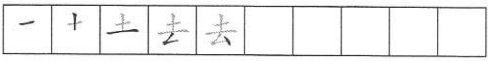
开学(82) **kāixué** *begin (school term)*
[开车(83) **kāi chē** *to drive a car*]

The **unicorn** is looking for the secret passageway and comes across **two hands** painted on the rock face. "This must mean that it needs two hands to **open** it." / *He looks around and sees the* ***giant's kite*** *flying nearby — he will be perfect for the job.*

---

86 去 **qù** go

Radical 土
5 strokes



earth 土(54a) + **cocoon** 厶(34a) = **go** 去

See Character 15 for a reminder about what "pouring rain" stories signify.

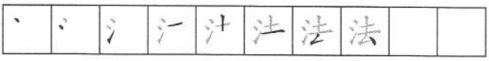
上去(42) **shàngqù** *to go up*
下去(43) **xiàqù** *to go down*

🌧 **Earth** covers her **cocoon** so the butterfly is getting worried. "I won't be able to **go** when the time comes," she thinks. / *Then, miraculously it starts to pour with rain and the earth is washed away, but the* ***dwarf*** *park attendant now mistakes the cocoon for a piece of* ***chewing*** *gum and puts it in his rubbish sack!*

---

87 法 **fǎ** law

Radical 氵
8 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **go** 去(86) = **law** 法

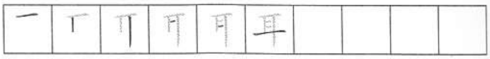
Because of its sound this character is also used to mean "France".

法语(68) **Fǎyǔ** *French (language)*
法文(25) **Fǎwén** *(written) French*
语法(68) **yǔfǎ** *grammar*

Water always **goes** anti-clockwise down the plughole — that's a **law** of physics. / *"Far out," says* ***Teddy***.

88a

耳 ěr
ear

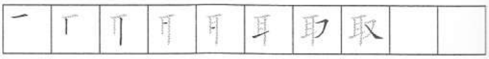


Note the stroke order here — it often seems to catch people out.

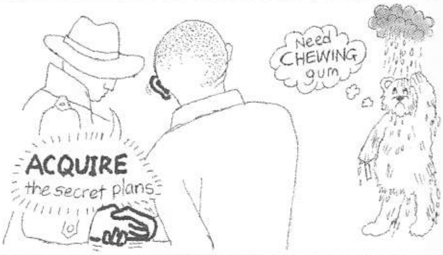
88

取 **qǔ**
acquire

Radical 耳
8 strokes



ear 耳(88a) **+ right hand 又**(52) **=**
acquire 取

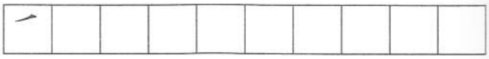


(The secret agent has been waiting for ages for his contact to show up). When the contact finally arrives they **shake hands** and he whispers in the agent's **ear**, "You must **acquire** the secret plans to the military base," and then he walks away. / *It starts to pour with rain so* ***Teddy*** *is keen to go, because he's getting soaking wet and his* ***chewing*** *gum has run out.*

89a

丿

"beret"

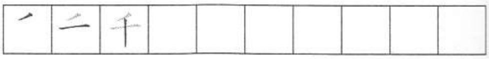


This is our name for the gently slanting stroke found at the top of some characters, such as the next one. The stroke is drawn from right to left.

89

千 **qiān**
thousand

Radical 十
3 strokes



beret 丿(89a) **+ ten** 十(4) **= thousand** 千

(Picture a war-grave cemetery at the site of a commando landing) — rows and rows of **crosses** with a regimental **beret** on each one — a **thousand** in neat rows. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

This is also used in a general sense to mean "numerous".

This is another "Do It Yourself" (DIY) pronunciation. There are something like fifty DIY pronunciations scattered through the book.

If you do want to construct a pronunciation part of this story for yourself then you will need a soundword for "chen". If it helps, the nearest we can find is "Chennai" (the city in India which used to be called Madras). If you have two giants from Chennai, make sure to give them some distinctive clothes or some other memorable features!

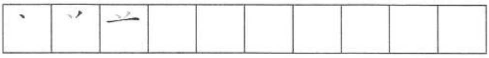
[三千(3) **sānqiān** *three thousand*]

90a

䒑

"feet"

horns 丷(65a) + **one** 一(1) = **feet** 䒑



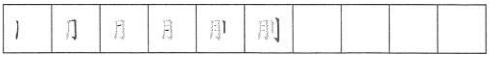
Sneaking up on a **unicorn** in the forest, he sees **horns**. "I thought unicorns only had one horn?" he says under his breath. But when he gets closer he realises that the unicorn is asleep on its back and what he'd seen was its **feet**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

90b

刖

canoe

moon 月(61) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **canoe** 刖



The **moon**light glinting on his **knife** shows him where he had dropped it — in his **canoe**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

90

前

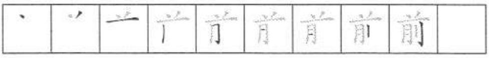
qián

in front of

Radical 丷

9 strokes

feet 䒑(90a) + **canoe** 刖 (90b) =
in front of 前



Your **feet** in a **canoe** are out **in front of** you! / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Another DIY pronunciation (see Character 89).

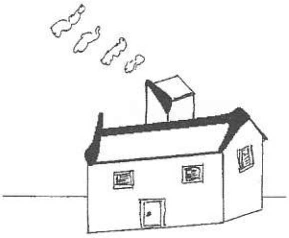
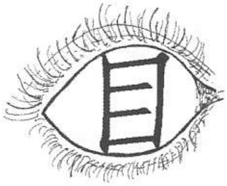
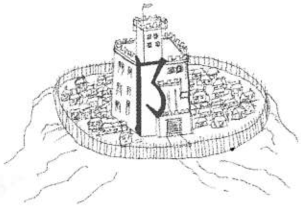
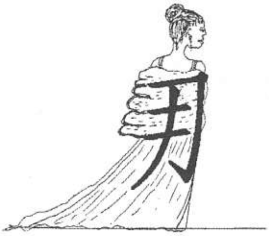
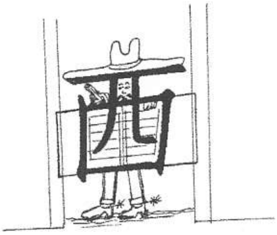
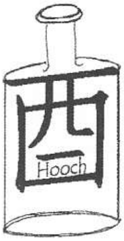
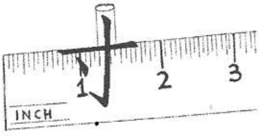
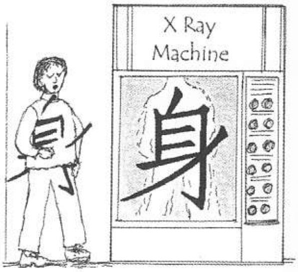
前边(41) **qiánbiān** *front, in front of*

Test yourself: 外(71) 去(86) 名(70) 这(26) 倒(75) 说(67) 别(79)
的(23) 语(68) 连(84) 多(69) 手(31) 天(76) 我(32)

We've had a few characters now where we've said that alternative stories are possible — in one case (Character 56) we've even given one. Alternative stories are fine, and not only where there is an alternative way of breaking a character down into basic building blocks. They are also perfectly acceptable if you simply don't like one of the stories for any reason — and in particular if you have problems visualizing or remembering it. At the end of the book we will give some hints for making up your own stories (for characters beyond this book) — but the main tips are to make the stories as vivid and quirky as you can — bizarre or silly even — and to make sure the parts of the story interact together (rather than just sitting there side by side, as it were).

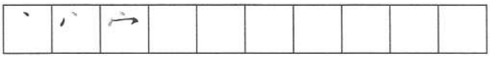
Chapter 8

Quite often there will be pairs of basic building blocks which are very similar to one another. An example is the pair "west" and "whisky bottle" below. So that you can compare them, we have tried to put such pairs together in the same chapter. Clearly it's a good idea when you are learning these to pay particular attention to the parts of the characters where any differences lie, so that you will remember which is which.

宀 **house** 	目 **eye** 
阝 **mound/city** 	尹 **furs** 
西 **west** 	西 **whisky bottle** 
寸 **inch** 	身 **body** 

91a 宀

house



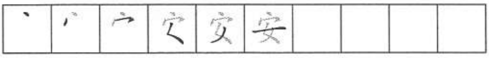
---

91 安 **ān** peace

Radical 宀
6 strokes

house 宀(91a) + **woman** 女(15) = **peace** 安

[天安门(76, 27) **Tiān'ānmén** *Tiananmen (Gate of Heavenly Peace) in Beijing*]



The **woman** is alone in the **house** at last, and looking forward to some **peace** and quiet. / *But the **giant** starts working on his **anvil** next door, and there is peace no more!*

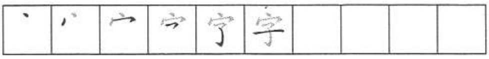
---

92 字 **zì** Chinese character

Radical 宀
6 strokes

house 宀(91a) + **child** 子(17) = **Chinese character** 字

汉字(78) **Hànzì** *Chinese character*
名字(70) **míngzì** *name, given name*



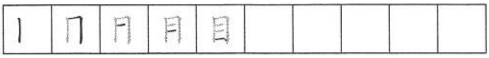
The **child** has to stay in the **house** to learn her **Chinese characters**. / *She recites them out loud until the **dwarf** babysitter dozes off, and when she hears the "zzz" sounds she sneaks out to play.*

---

93 目 **mù** eye

Radical 目
5 strokes

目前(90) **mùqián** *at present*



*/ In the factory the **dwarf** keeps his **eye** on the **wheel**. He's in a bad **mood** (because the relief shift hasn't turned up yet).*

---

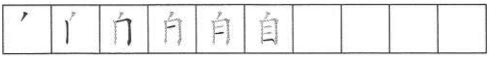
94 自 **zì** self

Radical 自
6 strokes

a drop 丶(22a) + **eye** 目(93) = **self** 自

Take care not to confuse this character with "white" (Character 22).

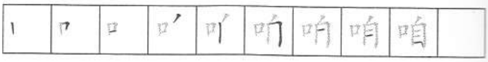
[自动(58) **zìdòng** *automatic*]
自行车(81, 83) **zìxíngchē** *bicycle*



"You'll need to put **a drop** of this in your **eye**," the doctor said, "but you'll have to do it your**self**. / *I can hear from the "zzz" sound that my **dwarf** assistant is asleep again."*

95 咱 **zán** we

Radical 口
9 strokes



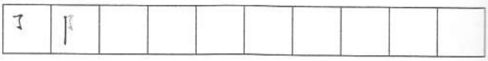
mouth 口(5) + **self** 自(94) = **we** 咱

This is used in situations where "we" includes both the speaker and the person being spoken to.

咱们(28) **zánmen** *we (including you)*

The two friends stand at the **mouth** of the cave. "I'm not going in there by my**self**," she says. "You don't have to, **we**'ll go together," says her friend. / *"If we don't go in, we won't find out what the **fairy** has brought back from **Zanzibar** for us."*

96a 阝 mound; city



This is the only component whose meaning depends on where it appears in a character. When it's on the left it means "mound", but when it's on the right it means "city". Examples of each follow in the next few characters. We realise that this is confusing but because everyone else observes this distinction, we will too. The situation arose because 阝 is an abbreviation of two completely different older characters, one which always appeared on the left and another which always appeared on the right. A similar situation applies to a few other characters, but modern Chinese doesn't distinguish between them so you don't have to worry about those!

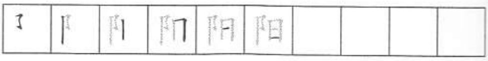
Nowadays this fragment is regarded as being written with only two stokes, but traditionally it was classed as having three strokes.

---

96 阳 **yáng** in the open

Radical 阝
6 strokes

陽



mound 阝(96a) + **sun** 日(6) = **in the open** 阳

When the **sun** shines, the creatures that live in the **mound** come out **into the open**. / *The **fairy** visits the mound in the day-time to develop her **yang** side.*

It's best to read this and the next story together. Yin and yang (this character and the following one) are the two opposing forces in Taoist philosophy. Yang is the force associated with being overt, in the sun, positive and masculine; and yin with things hidden or occult, cloudy, negative or feminine (insert here a comment of your choice about male chauvinism!). In the stories the fairy and the giant are getting in touch with their masculine and feminine sides, respectively.

太阳(48) **tàiyáng** *the sun; sunshine*

---

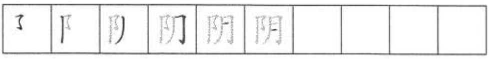
97 **阴** **yīn** hidden

Radical 阝
6 strokes

陰

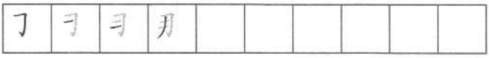
mound 阝(96a) + **moon** 月(61) =
hidden 阴

[阴天(76) **yīntiān** *a cloudy day*]



When the **moon** is up, the creatures burrow into the **mound** so that they are **hidden**. / *The* ***giant*** *now comes at night-time, to develop his* ***yin*** *side.*

98a **⺼** furs



---

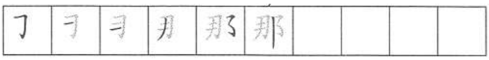
98 **那** **nà** that

Radical 阝
6 strokes

furs ⺼(98a) + **city** 阝(96a) = **that** 那

This character can (colloquially) also be pronounced **nèi**.

那个(19)	**nàge**	*that one*
那么(34)	**nàme**	*so, in that manner*
那儿(21)	**nàr**	*there (spoken)*
[那边(41)	**nàbiān**	*that side*]



Every time she sees a **fur** coat in a shop window in the **city** she says, "**That** one, I want **that** one." / *The* ***dwarf*** *is well and truly fed up with this. "It's enough to drive you to* ***narcotics****," he grumbles.*

---

99 **哪** **nǎ (na)** which?

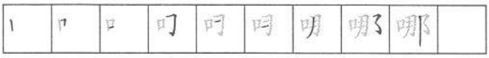
Radical 口
9 strokes

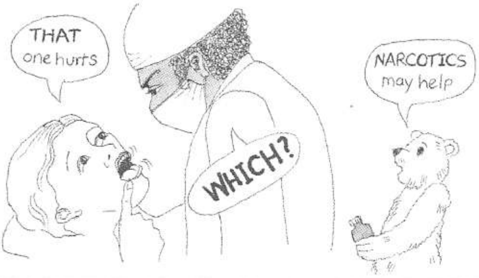
mouth 口(5) + **that** 那(98) = **which?** 哪

This character can also (colloquially) be pronounced **něi**.

It also has another role, for which the pronunciation is **na** with neutral tone. This is explained later (see 啊, Character 143).

哪儿(21)	**nǎr**	*where (spoken)*
[哪个(19)	**nǎge**	*which*]

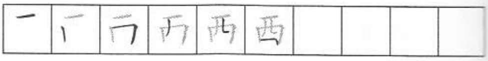




(At the dentist) She opens her **mouth** and points to a tooth, "It's **that** one which hurts." "**Which?**" asks the dentist (peering more closely). / ***Teddy****, trying to be helpful, has brought along some* ***narcotics*** *in case she needs some…*

100 西 **xī** west

Radical 覀
6 strokes



When this character appears at the top of other characters, the central two strokes are compressed into short vertical lines: this happens in the next character.

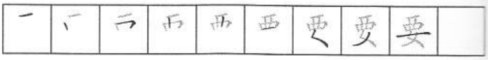
西边(41) **xībiān** *the west side*
[西安(91) **Xī'ān** *Xian (the city)*]

*/ The enormous **wheel** that hangs on the **west** gate of the city is the perfect size for the **giant** to use as a **shield** (so he pinches it!)*

---

101 要 **yào; yāo** want; ask for

Radical 覀
9 strokes



west 西(100) + **woman** 女(15) =
want; ask for 要

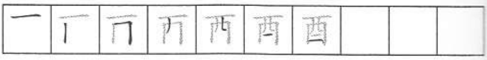
This is the second example of a character with two pronunciations, which share the same spelling and differ only in tone. Recall that this is signalled by a film set story: so the two meanings are associated with two different archetypes (see Character 75).

When it uses the fourth tone this character can sometimes be used with another verb, it then means "must" or "have to".

不要(9) **búyào** *Don't …*
要是(30) **yàoshì** *if*

🎞 As a **Western woman** alone in an Eastern culture, think of the King of Siam's tutor in "The King and I" — so this is a film set story. As the director calls "Cut!" for the umpteenth time, the actress playing the leading role shouts, "What do you **want** from me?" */ She storms off stepping on the **dwarf's** foot, causing him to shout "**Yeow**!" For good measure she also kicks the **giant's** foot and he says "**Yeow**!" too — (but more in surprise than pain).* \ "All I did was **ask for** her autograph!" he complains.

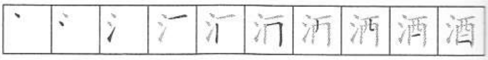
102a 酉 **yǒu** whisky bottle



---

102 酒 **jiǔ** liquor

Radical 氵
10 strokes



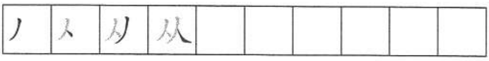
water 氵 (78a) + **whisky bottle** 酉(102a) =
liquor 酒

[酒杯(11) **jiǔbēi** *wine glass*]

They had put **water** in the **whisky bottle**, pretending it was **liquor**. */ The **two teddies** passed the bottle between them (pretending to be drunk) and thought this was a great **joke**.*

103 从 **cóng** from

Radical 人
4 strokes
從



Harry unwraps the large parcel — and inside is a statue of **Harry** himself. He looks through the packaging to see who it's **from**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

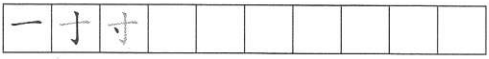
person 人(12) + **person** 人(12) = **from** 从

Note the second stroke, which is truncated into a drop. This is a rare occasion when "person" on the left-hand side of a character does not take the form 亻.

For pronunciations beginning with "c" see the note for Character 104 below.

从...到...(74)	**cóng A dào B**	*from A to B*
从前(90)	**cóngqián**	*the past*
自从(94)	**zìcóng**	*since (a time/date)*

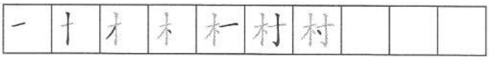
104a 寸 **cùn** inch



Note that the vertical stroke is off center and has a hook at the end.

104 村 **cūn** village

Radical 木
7 strokes



They have to measure the girth of the **tree** in **inch**es, to check that it will be the right size for the **village** square. / *The* ***giant*** *has offered to erect it for them and it will look* ***stunning*** *once it is decorated.*

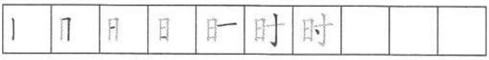
tree 木(10a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **village** 村

Pronunciations beginning with "c" (unless they begin "ch") give us a problem: the letter "c" in the Pinyin system stands for the sound "ts", but hardly any English words begin with "ts". Our solution to this problem is to use soundwords which begin "st" instead. So if a soundword begins "st" you must reverse the s and t to get the pronunciation. There are 14 such characters in the book; the next one isn't until Chapter 15.

[村子(17) **cūnzi** *village*]

105 时 **shí** time

Radical 日
7 strokes
時



The **sun**dial is marked out in **inch**es to tell the **time**. / *The* ***fairy*** *is sitting on it smoking a* ***cheroot****!*

sun 日(6) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **time** 时

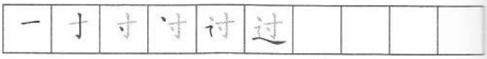
小时(50)	**xiǎoshí**	*hour*
[有时(63)	**yǒushí**	*sometimes*]

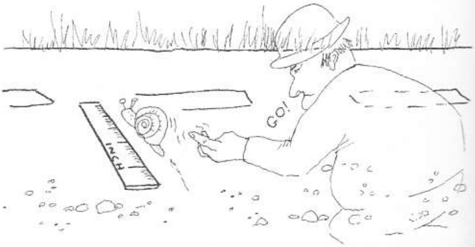
106 过
guò
to cross

Radical 辶
6 strokes
過

road 辶(26a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **cross** 过

过来(65) **guòlái** *come across*
过去(86) **guòqù** *in the past*





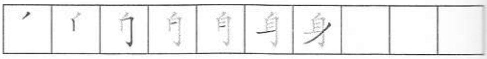
The snail on the **road** can only travel an **inch** every hour so it takes all day **to cross** the road. / *The **ghostly dwarf**, who's been assigned to protect him, urges him on, "**Go**, go, go!" (he wants to get home for his tea).*

107 身
shēn
body

Radical 身
7 strokes

It is worth writing this character a few times to get the hang of the stroke order.

[动身(58) **dòng shēn** *set off (on journey)*]
[身边(41) **shēnbiān** *on one's person*]

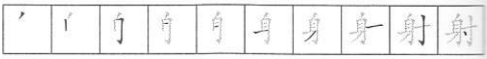


*/ (The railway has been attacked and there is a gap in the tracks over the bridge). The **giant** lets the **wheels** of the train run over his **body** and saves the day — but he's now too tired to go back to his usual job of **shunting** carriages.*

108a 射
shè
to shoot

body 身(107) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **shoot** 射

Note that the final stroke of "body" gets truncated here.



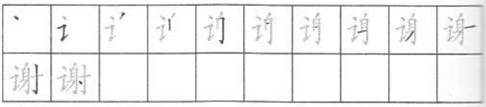
The sniper moves his **body** forward an **inch** at a time until he has a clear view and can **shoot** at his target. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

108 谢
xiè
thank

Radical 讠
12 strokes
謝

words 讠(67c) + **shoot** 射(108a) = **thank** 谢

[谢谢你(51) **xièxie nǐ** *thank you*]



The bank robbers had used their guns to **shoot** holes in the bank's door spelling out the **words** "**thank** you" before they left. / *The **two dwarves** agree to let them stash the money in their **shed** until the heat is off. (Try to visualize both of the dwarves — maybe one is holding open the shed door, while the other one keeps a look out for the cops!)*

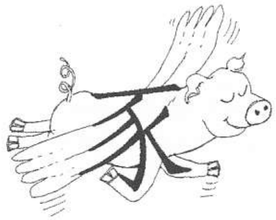
Chapter 9

The character picture for "of" on this page is a great example of how character pictures can work their magic.

If you just look at the shape of the character 之 on its own, does it suggest "of"? No, it doesn't. But if you look at the character picture for a moment, and then look back to the character itself, don't you now immediately see the prow of a ship and the swell of a wave on the ocean? This image is now probably with you for life, reminding you of the ship's name "Pride **of** the Seas". If this works for you, then the character picture has done its job! The fact that the character doesn't actually have anything to do with ships doesn't matter at all.

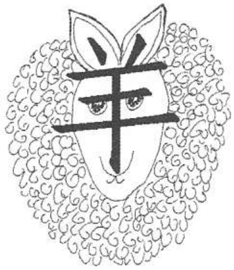
豕

pig



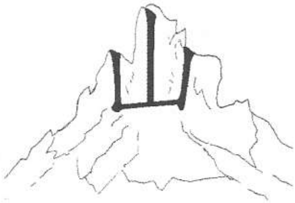
羊

sheep



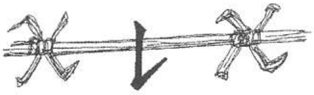
山

mountain



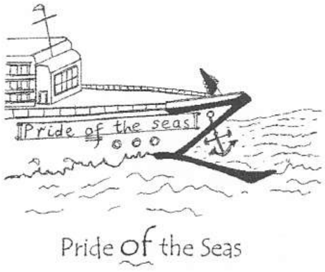
⺁

barb



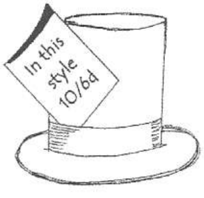
之

of

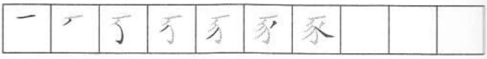


一

label



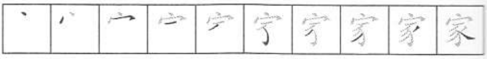
109a 豕 pig



---

109 家 **jiā** household

Radical 宀
10 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **pig** 豕(109a) =
household 家

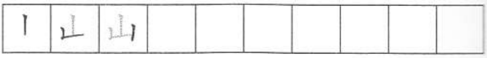
大家(47)	**dàjiā**	*everyone*
国家(60)	**guójiā**	*nation state*

"If you have a **pig** in your **house** it must be included in your **household**." / *The* ***two giants*** *debate the meaning of the* ***jargon*** *on the census form.*

---

110 山 **shān** mountain

Radical 山
3 strokes

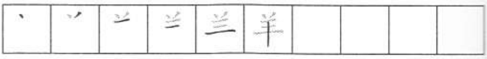


/ *Taking a break from pushing the huge* ***wheel*** *up the* ***mountain****, the* ***giant*** *stops for a swig of* ***shandy****.*

---

111 羊 **yáng** sheep

Radical 羊
6 strokes



We treat this as a basic building block as it is traditionally a picture.

[小羊(50)	**xiǎoyáng**	*lamb*]
[山羊(110)	**shānyáng**	*goat*]

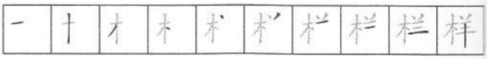
/ *The stupid* ***sheep*** *has got his head stuck in the spokes of the wagon* ***wheel****. The* ***fairy*** *has to come and* ***yank*** *him out.*

---

112 样 **yàng** appearance

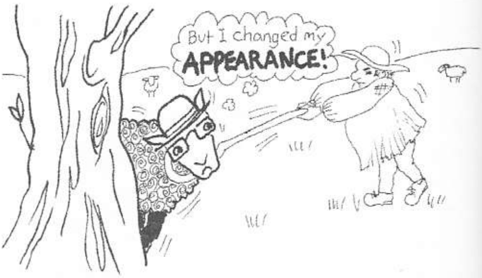
Radical 木
10 strokes

樣



tree 木(10a) + **sheep** 羊(111) =
appearance 样

那样(98)	**nàyàng**	*so, in that manner*
样子(17)	**yàngzi**	*appearance, manner*
一样(1)	**yíyàng**	*same, identical*
这样(26)	**zhèyàng**	*like this*



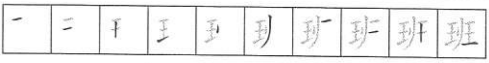
The **tree** is a good place for the escaped **sheep** to hide while he changes his **appearance**. / *But the* ***dwarf*** *(shepherd) finds him and* ***yanks*** *him off back to the flock.*

113 班 **bān** team

Radical 王
10 strokes

king 王(60a) + **knife** 刂(74a) + **king** 王(60a) = **team** 班

You will see that we have broken this character down into three parts, and so the equation and story have three components to them. We will only do this for a few characters where it seems "natural" to do so. When a character is made up of three parts ABC, it usually splits most naturally into A and BC, because the combination BC already means something. Examples are 倒, 哪, 谢 (Characters 75, 99 and 108).



At the inter-kingdom quiz, the **two kings** sit on either side of the beautiful jewelled **knife** that will be presented to the winning **team**. / *For the final deciding question the teams have to identify a picture of the* ***giant*** *in a* ***bandanna****.*

Note that the final stroke of the first "king" slopes upwards (compare 54a).

[上班(42)	**shàng bān**	*to go to work*]
[下班(43)	**xià bān**	*leave/finish work*]

---

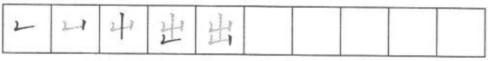
114 出 **chū** exit

Radical 山
5 strokes

mountain 山(110) + **mountain** 山(110) = **exit** 出

The stroke order shows that, despite appearances, this character is not *really* two mountains!

出来(65)	**chūlái**	*come out*
出去(86)	**chūqù**	*go out*
[出口(5)	**chūkǒu**	*exit; to export*]



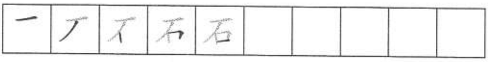
(Arriving in the train station in Switzerland) You can see **mountain** upon **mountain** out of each **exit**. / *The* ***giant*** *is sitting on one of them* ***chewing*** *gum.*

Test yourself: 友(53) 行(81) 汉(78) 刀(72) 如(80) 身(107) 分(73)
机(10) 阴(97) 明(77) 到(74) 法(87) 谢(108) 四(24)

115a 石 **shí** stone

thumb tack 丆(40a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **stone** 石

Notice how the thumb tack has slid off to the side — it is not fixed to the top of the character (as in, for example, 百, Character 40).



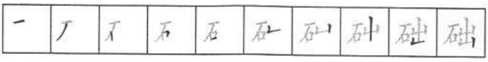
You're trying to fix up a notice saying "Slippery Stones" with a **thumb tack** at the **mouth** of the cave, but (ironically) it keeps slipping on the **stone**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

115 础 **chǔ** plinth

Radical 石
10 strokes
礎

stone 石(115a) + **exit** 出(114) = **plinth** 础

We include this character here (although it's comparatively rare) since it forms a mini-phonetic series with the previous character (114).



You crash your baggage cart into a huge cube of **stone** outside the **exit** (from the station) — it's a **plinth** for a new statue. / ***Teddy*** *quickly sticks his* ***chewing*** *gum on the plinth, and starts to help you gather up your things (but as usual his help is just what you don't need!)*

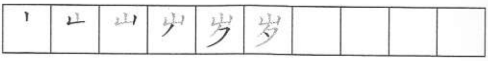
---

116 岁 **suì** years old

Radical 山
6 strokes
歲

mountain 山(110) + **evening** 夕(69a) = **years old** 岁

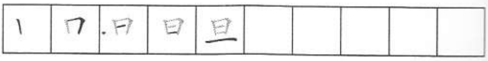
[三十岁(3, 4) **sānshísuì** *30 years old*]



(A mother is scolding her young son) "You must never be out by yourself on the **mountain** in the **evening** until you're 16 **years old**." / *The* ***ghostly dwarf*** *whose job is to protect climbers on the mountain (not young boys) is angry too, as he hands the boy back to his mother. "It's not* ***safe*** *to be on the mountain alone at your age," he tells him.*

117a 旦 **dàn** dawn

sun 日(6) + **one** 一(1) = **dawn** 旦



Picture the **sun** rising and glinting on the **unicorn**'s horn at **dawn**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

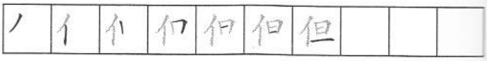
---

117 但 **dàn** but

Radical 亻
7 strokes

person 亻(13a) + **dawn** 旦(117a) = **but** 但

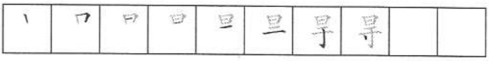
但是(30) **dànshì** *but*
不但(9) **búdàn** *not only …*



Harry says, "It's **dawn**, wake up!" His friend, still half asleep, mumbles, "**But**, **but**, **but** … it's still dark!" / *"We've got to go — the* ***dwarf*** *said the* ***dandelions*** *have to be picked at dawn." (And we all know how cross he'll be if they don't do it right…)*

118a 㝵 get

dawn 旦(117a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **get** 㝵



She wakes up at **dawn** and sees beautiful icicles an **inch** long at the window. "**Get** a camera, we must **get** a picture of these before the sun melts them," she says. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

118 得 dé; de; děi

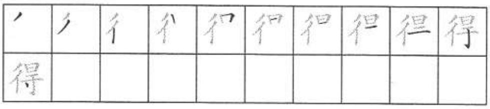
Radical 彳
11 strokes

1. obtain 2. way
3. must

1. **step forward** 彳 (81a) + **get** 㝵(118a) = **obtain** 得

2. **step forward** 彳 (81a) + **get** 㝵(118a) = **way** 得

3. **step forward** 彳 (81a) + **get** 㝵(118a) = **must** 得



1.

He **steps forward** to **get** the gold medal — he had won by **obtain**ing the best overall score. / *But there was a* ***dearth*** *of gold so the* ***fairy*** *had conjured up a temporary medal until a proper one could be made.*

2.

He **steps forward** to **get** the silver medal — the **way** he had performed had been the best (but he had lost technical marks). / *The* ***robot*** *polishes the medal as it's* ***dusty*** *and he likes all silver things (like himself) to be shiny.*

3.

He **steps forward** to **get** the bronze medal — he had done all the bits he **must** do (the compulsory bits) but nothing more. / ***Teddy*** puts the bronze medal on a ***daisy*** chain to try and cheer up the third place competitor.

This is the one and only character in HSK Level A which has *three* pronunciations — and three meanings to go with them. When 得 is pronounced **dé** it means "to obtain"; pronounced **de** it means "in such a way that", and pronounced **děi** it means "have to".

To keep these straight we have a special story with three parts: the setting is the medal presentation ceremony at the Olympic games (you can decide for yourself which event they have all taken part in or just make one up — the sillier it is, the better!) Now, whenever you see this character and break it down into "step forward" plus "get", picture the medal ceremony, and then you can run through the story for each of the medals, Gold, Silver and Bronze and recall each of the three meanings which go with them. You have to look at the context to see which of these is appropriate in each case — as you have to with characters which have *two* pronunciations (and which have Wild West/spaceship or film set stories). Of course you'll get used to seeing this character and knowing the pronunciation automatically before long.

得到(74)	**dédào**	*get, obtain*
取得(88)	**qǔdé**	*achieve, obtain*

Test yourself:
前(90) 过(106) 开(85) 咱(95) 车(83) 文(25) 村(104)
取(88) 样(112) 阳(96) 时(105) 千(89) 学(82) 哪(99)

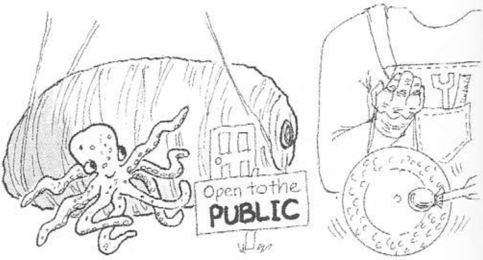
119 公 **gōng** public

Radical 八
4 strokes

ノ	八	公	公						

eight 八(20) + **cocoon** 厶(34a) = **public** 公

[公开(85) **gōngkāi** *open, public*]



The **octopus** lives in a **cocoon** which he is so proud of that he throws it open to the **public**. / *The* ***giant*** *sounds a* ***gong*** *to attract visitors.*

120a 𠄌 "barb"

𠄌									

This is used in the following character and we will see it again later in the book. Note that the downward vertical line and the hook together count as only one stroke.

---

120 以 **yǐ** using

Radical 人
4 strokes

𠄌	𠄌丶	以	以						

barb 𠄌(120a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) + **person** 人(12) = **using** 以

The meaning of this character is hard to pin down in English: depending on how it is used, it could be translated by words such as "using", "by means of", "according to", "in order to", etc. It is also used in "positional" compounds such as the two given here.

Harry puts **a drop** of colored wax on the **barb** of his fish-hook, **using** the bright colors of the wax to attract the fish. / ***Teddy*** *tries it too, and catches an* ***eel****.*

以前(90) **yǐqián** *before; a while ago*
以外(71) **yǐwài** *apart from, except*

---

121 之 **zhī** of

Radical 丶
3 strokes

丶	㇇	之							

This character is a literary equivalent of "of" (Character 23) and is found in certain fixed expressions.

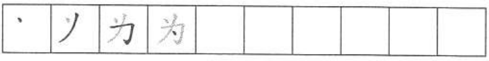
分之(73) **fēnzhī** *fraction of*
[之前(90) **A zhīqián** *before A*]
[之下(43) **A zhīxià** *below A*]
[之中(33) **A zhīzhōng** *among A*]

/ *The* ***giant*** *is playing the* ***Wheel Of*** *Fortune and wins a trip to* ***Japan*** *(he has always wanted to see Mount Fuji).*

122 为 **wéi; wèi** act as; for

Radical 丶
4 strokes

為



power 力(14) + **a drop** 丶 (22a) + **a drop** 丶 (22a) = **act as; for** 为

By now you'll be familiar with the idea of using film set stories for characters with two meanings and two pronunciations (which differ only in tone). In future we'll rely on the film icon to signal them for you.

Note that the stroke order for the "power" part of this character is non-standard. This is because it is inherited from the traditional form (shown in the box). Compare this with the stroke order for Character 123 which follows.

🎞 The potion which confers great **power** from only a **couple of drops** is the Gauls' magic potion in the film of "Asterix". On the film set the main actor has to **act as** if he is strong. / *The **fairy** conjures up fake **weights** for him to lift. The **dwarf** grumbles as he carries the **weights**.* \ "Why does somebody have to carry these things around **for** him?"

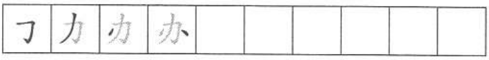
为了(66)	**wèile**	*for, because of*
以为(120)	**yǐwéi**	*think (wrongly)*
为什么(35, 34)	**wèishénme**	*why, what for*

---

123 办 **bàn** manage

Radical 力
4 strokes

辦



power 力(14) + **eight** 八(20) = **manage** 办

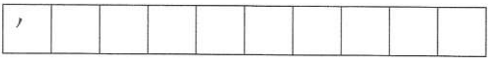
Both this and the previous character consist of "power" plus a couple of drops. To distinguish between them, we have cheated slightly here, and think of this one as being "power" plus "eight".

The "**power-octopus**" is a big eight-armed machine in the factory, so complicated that it needs someone to **manage** it full-time. / *The **dwarf banishes** everyone else from the vicinity.*

办法(87)	**bànfǎ**	*method*
[办公(119)	**bàngōng**	*(office) work*]

Test yourself: 行(81) 子(17) 西(100) 安(91) 班(113) 自(94) 正(29)
那(98) 家(109) 字(92) 力(14) 要(101) 口(5) 吗(45)

124a 丿 "label"

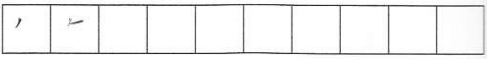


The "label" is always attached to a horizontal stroke, as in the following character. Compare this with "beret" (89a) which is a longer, more gently sloping stroke (usually attached to a vertical stroke), and "a drop" (22a) which is not attached to anything (unless sitting on top of something).

124b 𠂉

"clouds"

label ⁄ (124a) + **one** 一(1) = **clouds** 𠂉



There's a **label** on the side of the **unicorn** in the safari park (saying "unicorn"), because he usually has his head in the **clouds**. (People kept mistaking him for a horse because they couldn't see his horn when it was in the clouds). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

124 干 **gān; gàn** dry; work

Radical 一
3 strokes

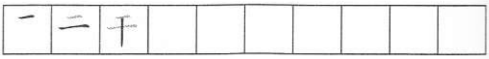
乾 幹

one 一(1) + **ten** 十(4) = **dry; work** 干

干 **gàn** also means the trunk or main part of something. **Gān** and **gàn** were once two separate characters (which is why there are two traditional forms).

When 干 appears as part of another character, we will use the meaning "dry" in the equation and the story.

[干杯(11) **gān bēi** *Bottoms up! (on drinking a toast)*]
[干吗(45) **gàn ma** *what (are you) doing?*]



🎞 Picture the **unicorn** standing on a white **cross** on the floor, which is his mark on the film set of "The Wizard of Oz" — they are filming in the Emerald City. Everything is ready but they must wait for **dry** weather. / *Then the* ***giant*** *can erect the lighting* ***gantry****. The* ***dwarf*** *kicks the* ***gantry*** *poles angrily.* \ "When are we going to get any **work** done?"

---

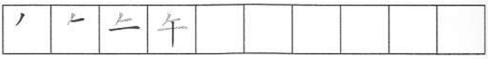
125 午 **wǔ** noon

Radical 丿
4 strokes

clouds 𠂉(124b) + **ten** 十(4) = **noon** 午

Another way of looking at this character is to see it as "label" plus "dry". Our rule, for deciding when to use clouds and when to use label, will be: if we can see clouds on the top of a character we will use clouds, otherwise we use label.

上午(42) **shàngwǔ** *morning*
中午(33) **zhōngwǔ** *noon*
下午(43) **xiàwǔ** *afternoon*



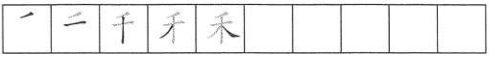
The morning **clouds** go in one direction, the afternoon clouds go in another direction, so when the clouds **cross** it must be **noon**. / ***Teddy whoops*** *with delight, as this means it's lunchtime.*

126a 禾 **hé** grain

beret 一(89a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **grain** 禾

Notice how "beret" differs from "label".

The meaning of "grain" embraces all cereal plants, including rice.



The **beret** (that they'd been using as a frisbee) is now stuck in a **tree** and they won't be able to retrieve it without trampling the **grain** growing around the tree. (Who's going to be the one to ask the farmer if they can get it?) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

126 和 **hé; huó** 1. with 2. mix

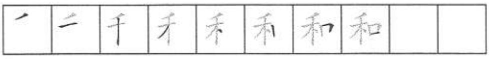
Radical 禾
8 strokes

1. **grain** 禾(126a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **with** 和

2. **grain** 禾(126a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **mix** 和

和 **hé** means "with" in the sense of "along with" and is often translated simply as "and".

[和好(18) **héhǎo** *become reconciled*]



1.

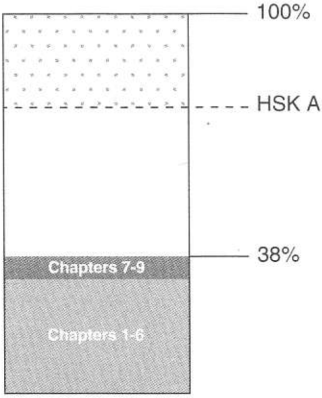
🌵 The cowboy rolls the **grain** around in his **mouth** and says, "This needs something to go **with** it." / *The **fairy** says, "Try it with some of my **herbs**."*

2.

🛸 (A baby alien has sneaked aboard the spaceship) They find it sitting on the storeroom floor, stuffing **grain** in its **mouth** and getting all the carefully-labeled grain samples **mix**ed up. / *The **ghostly fairy** who protects the planet comes to fetch the alien and take it **home**.*

You'll want to consolidate this progress so that you don't "lose" the characters you've learned. One way is to keep up with the "Test Yourself" blocks such as the one below, whenever you meet one in the book. You can also test yourself on the characters more systematically by writing out the characters from each chapter on a piece of paper or card (good writing practice too!).

When you forget a character (it happens), go back and visualize the story again. You will almost certainly find you had read through it previously without letting it sink in. Visualize it again and try and add one or two details to the scene to make it "your own".



Test yourself: 也(8) 山(110) 女(15) 酒(102) 以(120) 岁(116) 从(103)
目(93) 什(35) 羊(111) 础(115) 八(20) 出(114) 杯(11)

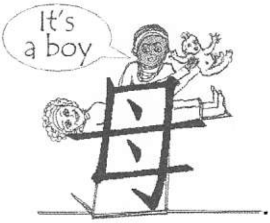
Chapter 10

You will see that "plant" on this page is the same as "earth" (10a) with an additional stroke. Similarly, "use" is the same as "moon" (61) with an extra stroke. As a refresher quiz, see if you can remember the meanings of these characters and fragments — in each pair the difference is a single stroke:

大	夫	上	止
了	子	大	天
十	千	木	禾
木	未	西	酉
日	白	目	自

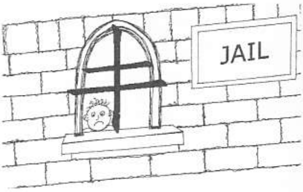
母

mother



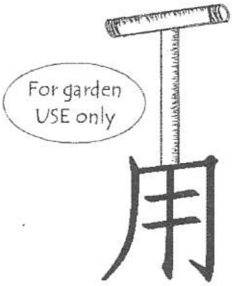
干

criminal



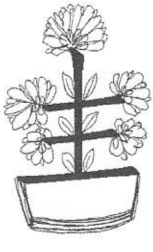
用

to use



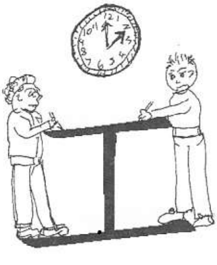
龶

plant



工

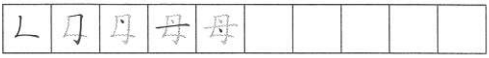
to work



---

127 **母** **mǔ** mother

Radical 母
5 strokes



*/ The **mother** is making a **wheel** out of icing for the birthday cake. **Teddy** has offered to make a chocolate **mousse** (but is spattering it all over the place).*

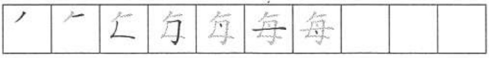
Watch the first two strokes here. Some books advocate a different order for writing the final three strokes. Sometimes, especially in handwriting, you may see the two drops merge to form a single vertical stroke.

[母语(68) **mǔyǔ** *native language*]
[字母(92) **zìmǔ** *alphabet*]

---

128 **每** **měi** every

Radical 母
7 strokes



clouds 𠂉(124b) + **mother** 母(127) = **every** 每

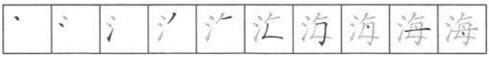
Mother looks at the **clouds every** single morning (to see if it will be fine for a walk in the park). / ***Teddy** wants to go to the **maze** (and get lost again).*

[每天(76) **měitiān** *every day*]
[每每 **měiměi** *often*]

---

129 **海** **hǎi** sea

Radical 氵
10 strokes

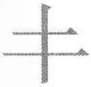


water 氵(78a) + **every** 每(128) = **sea** 海

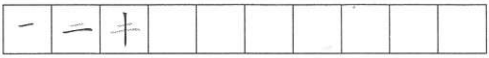
Water from **every** river ends up in the **sea**. / ***Teddy** is excited, and says, "With all that water, that's why you get the "**high** seas"!"*

[海边(41) **hǎibiān** *seaside*]
[上海(42) **Shànghǎi** *Shanghai*]

130a



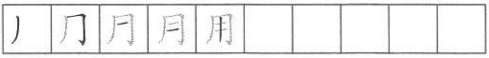
"criminal"



---

130 **用** **yòng** to use

Radical 冂
5 strokes



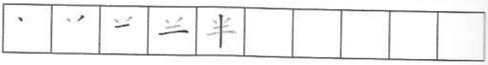
*/ The **dwarf** says, "You're too **young** to **use** the **wheel**."*

Try to visualize a particular setting for this story — what type of wheel are we talking about here?

不用(9) **búyòng** *don't have to*
[有用(63) **yǒuyòng** *useful*]

131 半 **bàn**
half

Radical 丨
5 strokes



horns 丷(65a) + **criminal** 丰(130a) =
half 半

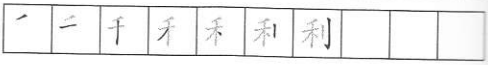
半天(76) **bàntiān** *a long time*
[多半(69) **duōbàn** *more often than not*]

(At the prison Christmas pantomime) The toughest **criminal** grabbed the **horns** as he wanted to be the front **half** of the pantomime bull. / *The **dwarf** governor (who suspected trouble) made them put **bandages** over the horns so that nobody could get hurt.*

---

132 利 **lì**
benefit

Radical 禾
7 strokes

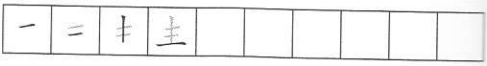


grain 禾(126a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **benefit** 利

利用(130) **lìyòng** *make use of*
[有利(63) **yǒulì** *advantageous*]

Each **grain** must be split open with a **knife** to get the full **benefit** of the nutrients. / *The **dwarf** cooks it in a **liter** of water and leaves it to soak.*

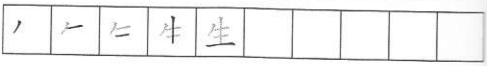
133a 龶 plant



---

133 生 **shēng**
life

Radical 丿
5 strokes

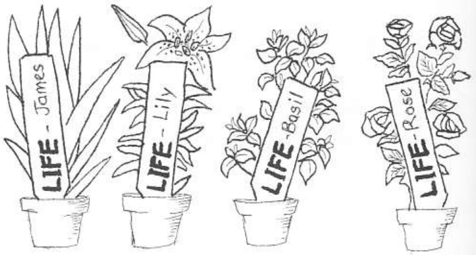


label 丿(124a) + **plant** 龶 (133a) = **life** 生

Recall the discussion (Character 125) about labels and clouds. Although you could see "clouds" in this character, they are not at the top of the character (which is where clouds rightfully belong), so we use label instead.

This character has various meanings connected with life, in particular birth and growth; it can also mean unripe, uncooked.

生日(6) **shēngrì** *birthday*
[出生(114) **chūshēng** *to be born*]
学生(82) **xuéshēng** *student, pupil*
[女生(15) **nǚshēng** *female student*]



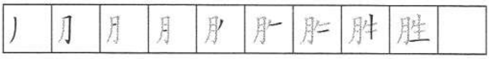
Every house in the village has **plants** with **labels** displayed in the windows. It's the custom that when a new child is born, a plant is chosen to symbolize their **life** (and labeled with the child's name). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

134 胜 **shèng** triumph

Radical 月
9 strokes
勝

moon 月(61) + **life** 生(133) = **triumph** 胜

胜利(132) **shènglì** *win; victory*
[名胜(70) **míngshèng** *a famous scenic spot*]



The astronauts who first discover **moon** **life** will return in **triumph**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

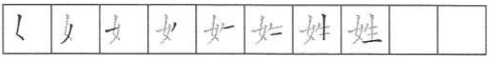
---

135 姓 **xìng** surname

Radical 女
8 strokes

woman 女(15) + **life** 生(133) = **surname** 姓

[姓名(70) **xìngmíng** *full name*]



(A group of women are talking together) "Even though it's the **woman** who gives birth to **life**, the baby still gets the man's **surname**." / *They have been watching the* ***dwarf*** *across the road putting up his name on a* ***shingle***.

---

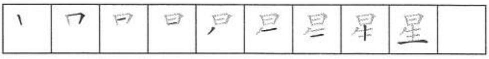
136 星 **xīng** star

Radical 日
9 strokes

sun 日(6) + **life** 生(133) = **star** 星

So here we have two mini phonetic series: Characters 133, 134 ("**sheng**"), and 135, 136 ("**xing**"). You can see from the similarity of these two sounds that they had a common origin.

[星星 **xīngxīng** *star*]
[明星(77) **míngxīng** *(movie) star*]

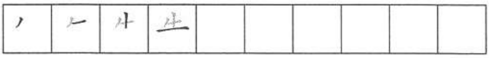


"Our **sun** is vital to all **life** on our planet, yet it is just a **star**." / *The* ***giant****, lying on his back on the* ***shingle*** *on the beach, looks up at the night sky and ponders.*

137a ⺧ "calf"

label 丿(124a) + **earth** 土(54a) = **calf** ⺧

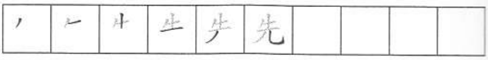
If you take the tail off the character for cow (Character 384) this is what you get!



You see a **label** lying on the earth — the **calf** has been newly tagged on its ear (but has managed to dislodge his label by rubbing his ear on the ground). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

137 先 **xiān** ahead

Radical 儿
6 strokes



calf ⺧(137a) + **boy** 儿(21) = **ahead** 先

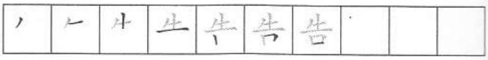
先生(133) **xiānshēng** *sir, Mr.; husband*

It looks as if the **calf** is taking the **boy** to market (rather than vice versa) because the calf keeps walking **ahead**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

138 告 **gào** inform

Radical 口
7 strokes



calf ⺧(137a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **inform** 告

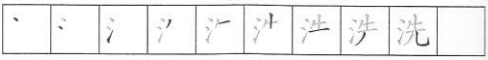
[告别(79) **gàobié** *to part with*]

(The cattle are all falling sick — only a calf is left standing) The **calf** goes to the **mouth** of the cave to **inform** the vet. / *The **dwarf** assistant listens to the symptoms and says dismissively, "All this fuss, it's probably only **gout**."*

---

139 洗 **xǐ** wash

Radical 氵
9 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **ahead** 先(137) = **wash** 洗

[干洗(124) **gānxǐ** *dry cleaning*]

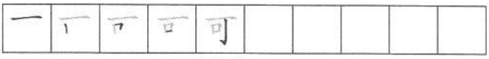
There's only limited hot **water** in the rooming house so she races to get to the bathroom **ahead** of everyone else and have a good **wash**. / *But **Teddy** has beaten her to it, and is washing his **sheets** in the sink.*

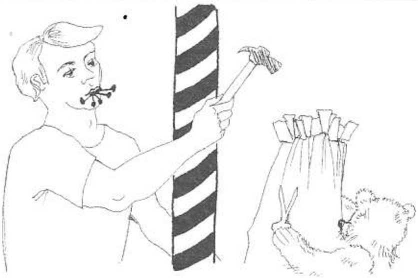
A word about how you can make use of the compounds we give with the characters. The compounds show you how the character in question combines to make words, when used together with other characters you've already learned. So you can use compounds as a revision aid for characters you've already learned: look at the compound and see if you can remember what the component characters mean. Sometimes it's interesting and instructive to see how the meaning of the compound as a whole relates to the meanings of the characters which make it up. A good example is that the literal meaning of 先生 is "ahead [in] life" (i.e. "senior").

You can also turn this around and use compounds as another way of remembering how to *pronounce* characters. You will probably recognize many words (such as **xiānshēng**) which you've come across in your Chinese language lessons. If you now realize that 先 is the first character in **xiānshēng** then you know it is pronounced **xiān**. Of course the soundwords are there to help you with pronunciations, but there's no such thing as too much help!

140 可 **kě** may

Radical 口
5 strokes





The carpenter holds **nail**s in his **mouth** while fixing up the **May**pole for the May celebrations. / ***Teddy*** *cuts up strips of* ***curtains*** *for the streamers.*

mouth 口(5) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **may** 可

The meaning is "may" in the sense of "being permitted to", but since this is a bit abstract we will cheat here and use a play on words: we will associate this character with Mayday celebrations in an English village, where children dance round a Maypole.

Note that the shaft of the nail is displaced to the right to make room for the mouth.

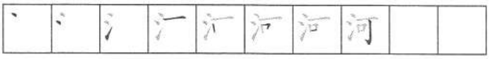
Some books advocate a different stroke order, where the whole of "nail" is drawn first, and then "mouth". Occasionally we point out alternative stroke orders (we already mentioned alternatives for Character 127). Sometimes the different versions exist because one is more firmly grounded in the "traditional" way of doing things and one is more "modern", but in other cases there simply seem to be two accepted ways of writing the character. Where we point out alternatives, either will produce a perfectly well-drawn character and so you can choose which to adopt. All this doesn't alter the fact that for the overwhelming majority of characters there is a single stroke order which is accepted as being "correct".

可以(120)	**kěyǐ**	*may, be allowed*
可是(30)	**kěshì**	*but (colloq)*

---

141 河 **hé** river

Radical 氵
8 strokes



Water for the dunking stool at the **May** celebrations has to be brought from the **river**. / *The **fairy** puts **herbs** into it to hide the smell!*

water 氵(78a) + **may** 可(140) = **river** 河

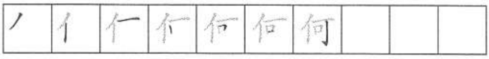
There is also another character for "river" (Character 148) at the end of this chapter.

[运河(57)	**yùnhé**	*canal*]
[星河(136)	**xīnghé**	*the Milky Way*]

---

142 何 **hé** what

Radical 亻
7 strokes

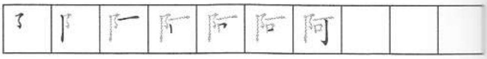


Harry arrives at the **May** celebrations, and a drink is pressed into his hand. He drinks, but splutters, "**What** is this stuff?" / *It's the **fairy's** new **herbal** drink (and the fairy looks piqued).*

person 亻(13a) + **may** 可(140) = **what** 何

143a 阿 ā
ah

mound 阝(96a) + **may** 可(140) = **ah** 阿



Up on the **mound** sits the **May** queen on her throne. Everyone goes “**Ah**” when they see her, she looks so splendid. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

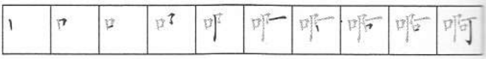
---

143 啊 ā (a)
eh!

Radical 口
10 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **ah** 阿(143a) = **eh!** 啊

This character is used as an exclamation, added to a sentence to express surprise, admiration, regret, etc. depending on the context. When at the end of a sentence, it has a neutral tone; if the preceding word ends in -n or -ng it changes into 哪 (Character 99) and is pronounced **na**.



The doctor says, “Open your **mouth** and say “**ah**” — yes, these tonsils will have to come out.” “That bad, **eh**?” the patient says in surprise. / *The **giant** says “**Ah**” in sympathy (he had to have his tonsils out as a child and he'd cried!)*

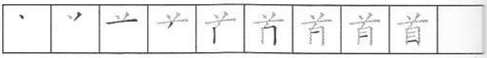
---

144 首 **shǒu**
head

Radical 八
9 strokes

feet 䒑(90a) + **self** 自(94) = **head** 首

[首先(137) **shǒuxiān** *first of all*]



You need to lift your **feet** right above the rest of your**self** if you're going to be able to stand on your **head**. / ***Teddy shows** you how ... show-off!*

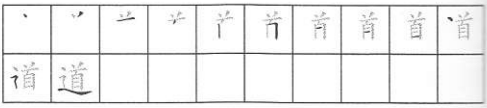
---

145 道 **dào**
way

Radical 辶
12 strokes

road 辶(26a) + **head** 首(144) = **way** 道

[一道(1) **yídào** *together*]
[人行道 (12, 81) **rénxíngdào** *pedestrian crossing*]



You emerge from the forest to find a **road** at last, but scratch your **head**: which **way** should you walk? / *The **dwarf** grumbles, “Whichever way we go, I **doubt** it will be the right one.”*

---

146 发 **fā** (fà) send out

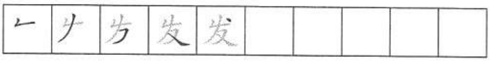
Radical 又
5 strokes

發

a drop 丶 (22a) + **friend** 友(53) = **send out** 发

This looks like a "drop" added to a modification of "friend" (Character 53) so we have used the idea of a "special friend" in the story to acknowledge this. Notice the unusual first stroke.

Pronounced **fā** this character means "to emit, send out, develop". With the other pronunciation **fà** (and another traditional form) it also means "hair".



She is writing her Christmas cards and puts **a drop** of perfume on the cards to her **special friends** before **send**ing them **out**. / *The **giant** gets a large drop on his as he lives **far**, far away (and the perfume has to last until the card gets there).*

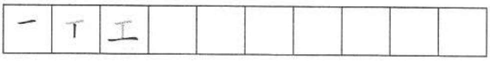
出发(114)	**chūfā**	*set out (on journey)*
[发出(114)	**fāchū**	*send out, emit*]
[发明(77)	**fāmíng**	*invent, invention*]
发生(133)	**fāshēng**	*happen, take place*

---

147 工 **gōng** to work

Radical 工
3 strokes

工人(12)	**gōngrén**	*worker*
[工会 (59)	**gōnghuì**	*trade union*]



*/ You trudge off every day to **work** at the **wheel** factory, and the only thing you look forward to is the **giant** sounding his **gong** for tea breaks and for the end of the shift.*

---

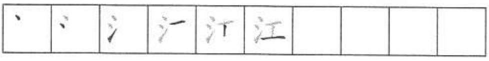
148 江 **jiāng** river

Radical 氵
6 strokes

water 氵 (78a) + **work** 工(147) = **river** 江

We have already seen the other character for river (Character 142).

[江山 (110)	**jiāngshān**	*landscape, scenery; country*]

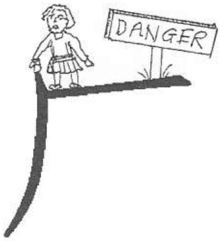
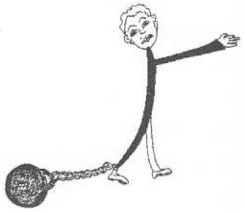
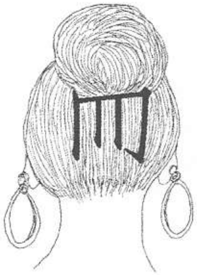
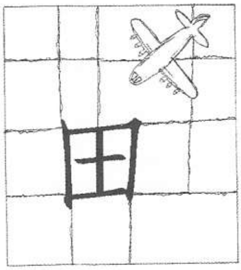
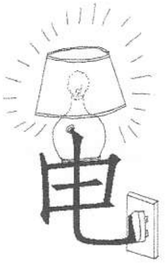
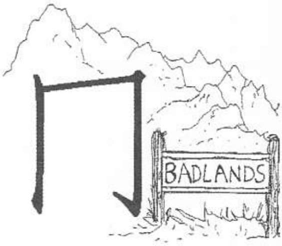
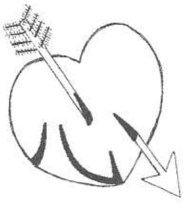
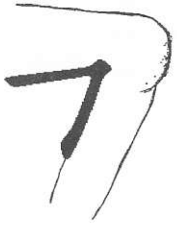


They needed **water** to **work** the mill so they built it by the **river**. / ***Two giants** do a rain dance with **jangling** keys and chains to keep the river flowing.*

Test yourself: 我(32) 百(40) 会(59) 但(117) 和(126) 胜(134) 边(41)
公(119) 午(125) 之(121) 得(118) 生(133) 个(19) 先(137)

Chapter 11

Ten chapters out of forty done now!

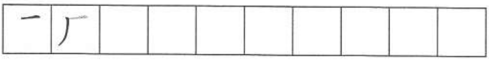
厂 **cliff**  	𠂆 **drag** 
罒 **comb** 	田 **field** 
电 **electricity** 	冂 **outer limits** 
心 **heart** 	乛 **knee** 

149 厂 **chǎng** cliff

Radical 厂 **2 strokes** 廠

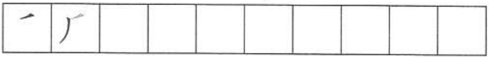
This character, whose basic meaning is "cliff", appears in quite a few composite characters. On its own, however, the character nowadays means "factory".

工厂(147) **gōngchǎng** *factory*



/ [DIY Pronunciation]. This is one of the very few basic building blocks that has a DIY pronunciation, so you can choose simply to learn the pronunciation, or make up a wheel story. Perhaps Teddy is rolling a large wheel off a cliff, almost hitting Mr Chang (Chang later tells this tale to his grandson, who we will meet in the next chapter working on the spaceship).

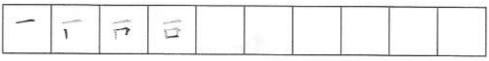
150a 厂 drag



"Drag" is different from "cliff" — the first stroke is a sloping line, and the angle between the lines is more than 90 degrees.

150b 𠮛 "piled up"

one 一(1) **+ mouth** 口(5) **= piled up** 𠮛



The **unicorn** has to use his **mouth** to pick up things to **pile** them **up** on the trash heap. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

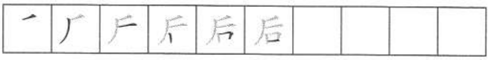
150 后 **hòu** rear

Radical 丿 **6 strokes** 後

drag 厂(150a) **+ piled up** 𠮛 (150b) **= rear** 后

Breaking up this character into "drag" and "piled up" is cheating a bit, as the horizontal stroke joined on to drag is actually something else.

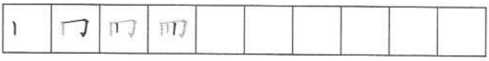
This character originally meant "empress" but has also taken on the role of the simplified form of 後 and is now mostly used in this sense.



"We must **drag** all the old furniture out and **pile** it **up** at the **rear** of the house. / *The **dwarf** is going to turn the house into a **hotel**."*

后边(41) **hòubiān** *rear, at the back*
以后(120) **yǐhòu** *after, later*
[后天(76) **hòutiān** *the day after tomorrow*]

151a 冊 "comb"

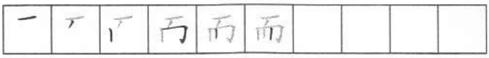


151 而 **ér** and yet
Radical 一
6 strokes

thumb tack 𠂇(40a) + **comb** 冂(151a) = **and yet** 而

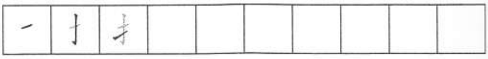
This character occasionally means simply "and", but usually indicates a contrast and so might be translated as "but", "yet", or "on the other hand".

[从而(103) **cóng'ér** *thus, thereby*]
[而后(150) **érhòu** *after that; and then*]



(Using a comb as a musical instrument) He had marked his notes on the **comb** with **thumb tacks**, **and yet** it still sounded awful. / *The **fairy** fled, saying "I've remembered an **urgent** appointment elsewhere!"*

152a 扌 hand



This is the form which 手 "hand" (Character 31) usually takes when it forms the left-hand side of a character. Note the stroke order (compared with that for 手), and also note that the final stroke is drawn upwards.

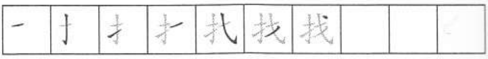
---

152 找 **zhǎo** look for
Radical 扌
7 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **dagger** 戈(32a) = **look for** 找

Compare 找 with the far more common character 我 meaning "I" (Character 32). Here the hand and dagger are separate, whereas in Character 32 they were fused together; a difference reflected in the stories for these two characters.

[找到(74) **zhǎodào** *to find*]



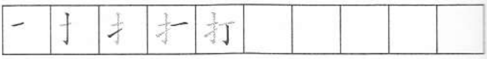
At the crime scene the detective pulls the policeman's **hand** away from the **dagger** saying, "We must **look for** fingerprints first." / ***Teddy's** alibi is that he was watching the **jousting** on TV.*

---

153 打 **dǎ** hit
Radical 扌
5 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **hit** 打

[打动(58) **dǎdòng** *to touch; move*]
[打倒(75) **dǎdǎo** *overthrow; Down with...!*]



He uses his **hand** to steady the **nail** before he **hits** it. / *It is difficult to get on with the work because **Teddy** keeps **darting** in and out between his legs.*

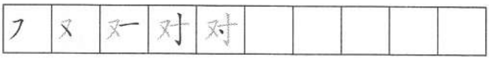
154 对 **duì**
correct

Radical 又
5 strokes
對

right hand 又(52) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **correct** 对

The basic meaning of this character is "facing towards" and it has also come to mean "line up", "match up", "to be correct" and "to treat" (a person in a certain way). It is also used as a measure word for pairs of objects.

[对手(31) **duìshǒu** *opponent*]
[对了(66) **duì le** *correct (at last); aha!*]



If, when you **shake hands**, you have your right hands lined up to the nearest **inch**, you will be doing it in the **correct** way. / *The* ***ghostly*** *etiquette-guarding* ***dwarf*** *makes the class practice* ***daily****.*

---

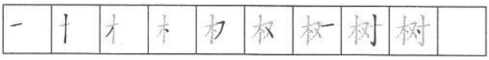
155 树 **shù**
tree

Radical 木
9 strokes
樹

tree 木(10a) + **correct** 对(154) = **tree** 树

This is the modern character for "a tree", rather than using 10a on its own.

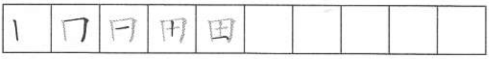
[树干(124) **shùgàn** *a tree trunk*]



(A little girl is insistently pointing to objects and naming them) "**Tree**!" "Yes, **correct**, it's a **tree**." / *Now* ***shoo****," says the* ***dwarf*** *grumpily, "and let me get on with my work."*

Test yourself:
几(7) 外(71) 姓(135) 母(127) 半(131) 办(123) 发(146)
星(136) 为(122) 利(132) 江(148) 干(124) 告(138) 们(28)

156a 田 **tián**
field



---

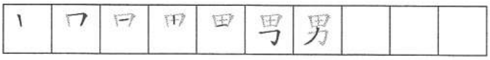
156 男 **nán**
male

Radical 田
7 strokes

field 田(156a) + **power** 力(14) = **male** 男

This and 女 (Character 15) are useful characters to know when identifying toilets!

[男人(12) **nánrén** *man (i.e. not woman)*]



Out in the **field** the farmer needs more **power** to work the churn. "I'll need another **male**," he says. / *The* ***fairy*** *flicks her wand and a* ***nanny*** *goat appears! ("Oops—wrong sort!" she says).*

157 里 **lǐ (li)** in

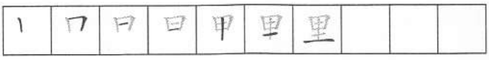
Radical 里
7 strokes

裏 裡

field 田(156a) + **earth** 土(54a) = **in** 里

Although this looks like "field" plus "earth", the stroke order shows that it isn't, really. (The same situation occurred for "exit", Character 114). In writing the character some books suggest writing the fifth and sixth strokes in the other order.

This character means "in", and is usually a suffix (i.e. it comes after a noun), where it often loses its tone. There are two variants of the traditional form. A 里 is also an old measure of distance (roughly half a mile).



"See that **field** with small round humps of **earth**? — that's the potato field." "But I don't see any potatoes!" "That's because they're **in** the humps!" / ***Teddy** runs to **leap** on the humps (crying, "Let's make mashed potatoes!")*

里边(41)	**lǐbiān**	*inside, in*
这里(26)	**zhèli**	*here*
哪里(99)	**nǎlǐ**	*where*
公里(119)	**gōnglǐ**	*kilometer*

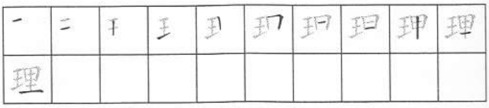
---

158 理 **lǐ** reason

Radical 王
11 strokes

king 王(60a) + **in** 里(157) = **reason** 理

道理(145) **dàolǐ** *principle, reason*



(The king's mother-in-law is visiting yet again) "Is the **king in**?" she asks the guard, and the guard has to think up a new **reason** each time why the king can't see her. / ***Teddy** peeks out to let the king know when she **leaves** (and the coast is clear).*

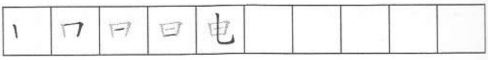
---

159 电 **diàn** electricity

Radical 日
5 strokes

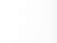
電

电车(83) **diànchē** *streetcar, tram*



*/ They wanted to convert the water **wheel** to run on **electricity** — the **two dwarf** experts from **Denmark** were called in (each connecting up one of the two wires).*

160a 冂 outer limits

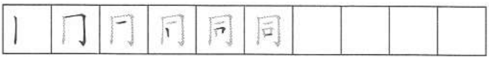


This usually forms a 3-sided enclosure, with another character inside it. Note the hook at the bottom of the second stroke. For the stories, think of the "outer limits of the kingdom" — a desolate, dangerous area of rocky hills, probably inhabited by bandits.

---

160 **同** **tóng** same

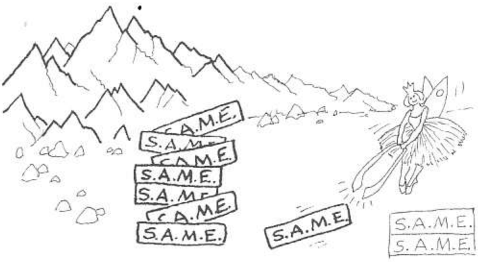
Radical 冂
6 strokes



outer limits 冂(160a) + **piled up** 𠮛(150b) = **same** 同

This also means "together with", "along with".

同时(105) **tóngshí** *simultaneously*
同学(82) **tóngxué** *classmate*
不同(9) **bùtóng** *different*
[同样(112) **tóngyàng** *same*]

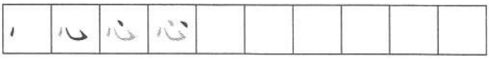

S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.
S.A.M.E.

At the **outer limits** of the kingdom were **piled up** heaps of discarded boxes, all the **same**. / *The **fairy** used her magic **tongs** to arrange them in neat piles.*

---

161 **心** **xīn** heart

Radical 心
4 strokes



This appears at the bottom of a large number of characters, when it takes a slightly squashed form. It can also take the form 忄 when appearing on the left-hand side of characters (see 339a).

Just like the English word "heart", it means not just the heart in your body, but also "core", "center", and "feelings".

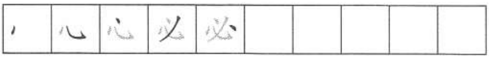
*/ The **heart** of the **wheel** (its hub) is as big as the **giant's shin** bone.*

[安心(91) **ānxīn** *to be content*]
[中心(33) **zhōngxīn** *center (often used in phrases like "shopping center")*]
[用心(130) **yòngxīn** *to apply oneself to*]
[小心(50) **xiǎoxīn** *cautious*]

---

162 **必** **bì** inevitably

Radical 丶
5 strokes



heart 心(161) + **slide** 丿(34b) = **inevitably** 必

It is natural to think of this as "heart" together with an extra stroke, but watch the stroke order.

[必要(101) **bìyào** *necessary*]
[不必(9) **búbì** *don't need to*]

In the theme park there is a huge **slide** through the **heart** of the forest — **inevitably** it gets clogged up (with twigs and leaves). / *Each day the **dwarf** has to send his **beaver** down the slide to clean it out.*

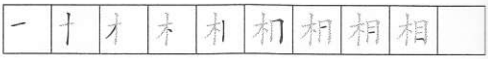
163 相 **xiāng; xiàng** mutual; appearance

Radical 木
9 strokes

tree 木(10a) + **eye** 目(93) = **mutual; appearance** 相

When this character appears as part of another character (for example in Character 164 which follows this one), we will use "mutual" (and not "appearance") in the equation and story.

[相同(160) **xiāngtóng** *identical, same*]



Eyes peering out from behind all the **trees** suggest Sherwood Forest, and the film set of "Robin Hood" — but this is a Chinese remake! At the auditions the actors are milling about, profuse with their **mutual** praise. / *Particularly **two giants** from **Shanghai**, auditioning for the part of Little John. **Two dwarves** from **Shanghai** are also competing for the role (sadly not having understood that the role of Little John calls for a giant rather than a dwarf).* \ They won't be told and are spending ages perfecting their **appearance**.

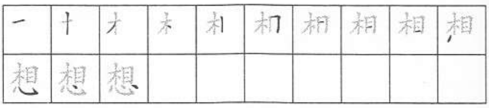
---

164 想 **xiǎng** think about

Radical 心
13 strokes

mutual 相(163) + **heart** 心(161) = **think about** 想

[理想(158) **lǐxiǎng** *an ideal, aspiration*]
[想法(87) **xiǎngfǎ** *(one's) opinions*]
[想一下(1, 43) **xiǎng yíxià** *give it some thought*]



The conjoined twins share a **mutual heart**. The surgeon has to **think about** how best to separate them. / *Fortunately he's practiced on **two teddies** in **Shanghai**!*

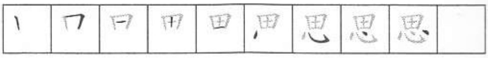
---

165 思 **sī** think

Radical 田
9 strokes

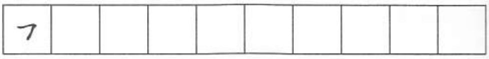
field 田(156a) + **heart** 心(161) = **think** 思

思想(164) **sīxiǎng** *thought, thinking*



One of the farmer's **fields** is **heart**-shaped and he always goes there to **think**. / *The **giant** had brought a (giant!) **sequoia** so that the farmer could sit under it (with his back against the trunk) to do his thinking.*

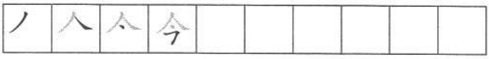
166a 乛 "knee"



166

今 **jīn**
now

Radical 人
4 strokes



combine 亽(59a) + **knee** ㇇ (166a) = **now** 今

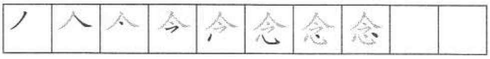
今天(76) **jīntiān** *today*
[今后(150) **jīnhòu** *from now on*]

It needs the **combined** strength of everyone in the operating theater to pull the **knee** back into position. The surgeon gets everyone ready and then says, "Ready, Steady … **Now**!" / *The **giant** had been drinking too much **gin** (so fell over and dislocated his knee).*

167

念 **niàn**
to study

Radical 心
8 strokes



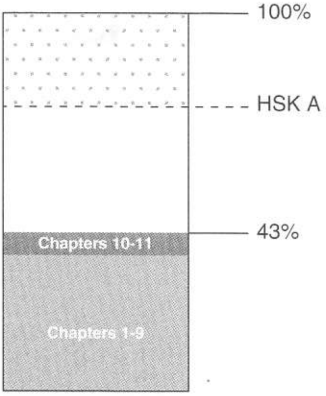
now 今(166) + **heart** 心(161) = **study** 念

[想念(164) **xiǎngniàn** *to miss, long for*]

"**Now** I think it is time for the **heart**," said the surgeon, as he turned to **study** his "Heart Transplant Manual" (imagine him with his nose in this blood-spattered book) / *[DIY pronunciation]*

What can you do when you find that you've forgotten a composite character (apart from resolving to go back at the first opportunity and visualize the story again)?

In the equation A+B=C you will know A and B, but can't remember C. The first step is to try to get the *scene*, that is, the setting for the story. What do A and B together evoke? Logic may help here: try combining A and B in different ways. Try A in B, A hits B, A uses B for something, etc. (and also the other way round: B in A as well as A in B — usually one will make sense much more than the other). We've tried to make the stories recoverable like this, as far as possible. Once you have the scene, C will follow. It is this second stage (getting from the scene to C) that is often bizarre, silly or illogical.



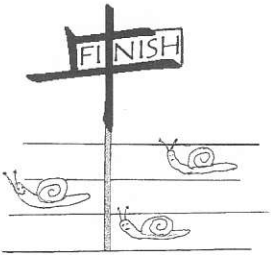
Test yourself: 后(150) 工(147) 用(130) 对(154) 可(140) 里(157) 海(129)
夫(49) 洗(139) 同(160) 每(128) 理(158) 打(153) 首(144)

Chapter 12

Notice how similar the character for "shelter" is to the character for "cliff" (in Chapter 11), and see how the character pictures help you remember which is which. The drop in the character for "shelter" is a drop of rain, which is much more relevant to "shelter" than it would be to "cliff".

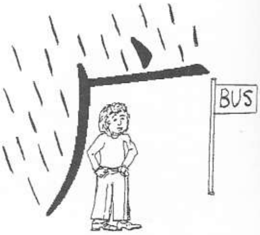
㐄

surpass



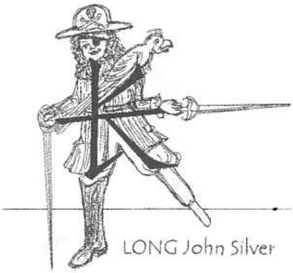
广

shelter



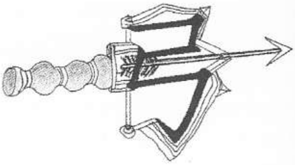
长

long


LONG John Silver

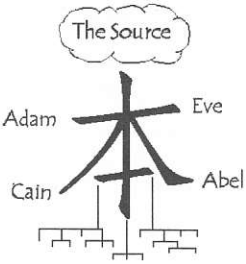
弓

a bow



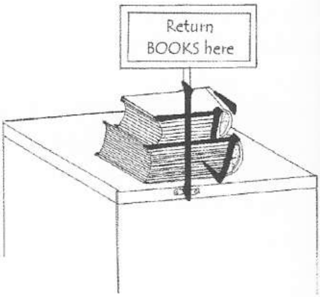
本

source


The Source
Adam
Eve
Cain
Abel

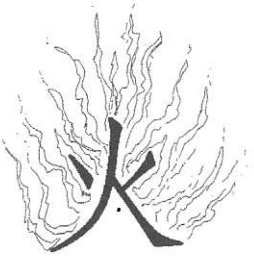
书

book

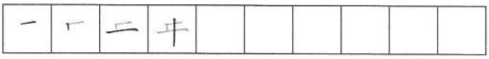

Return
BOOKS here

火

fire



168a 㐄 surpass

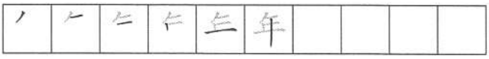


We use this fragment in the following character and will see it again much later, in Character 787.

---

168 年 **nián** year

Radical 丿
6 strokes

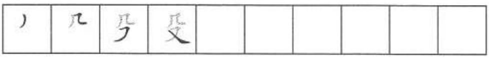


clouds 𠂉(124b) + **surpass** 㐄 (168a) = **year** 年

今年(166) **jīnnián** *this year*
去年(86) **qùnián** *last year*
明年(77) **míngnián** *next year*

"These **clouds surpass** anything we've seen all **year**." (Picture a group of glider pilots looking at the sky and judging which clouds will give the best thermal up-currents). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

169a 殳 to strike



several 几(7) + **right hand** 又(52) = **strike** 殳

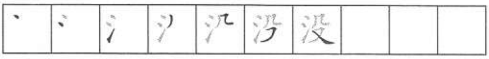
Think of striking something forcefully with a long pole (see 190a below).

(An attempt at a world record) The challenger **shakes hands** with **several** of the dignitaries who wish him luck, and then sees how many garden gnomes he can knock over with a single **strike** with his long pole. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

169 没 **méi** not

Radical 氵
7 strokes



water 氵 (78a) + **strike** 殳(169a) = **not** 没

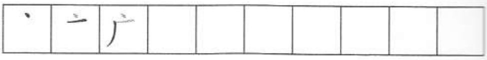
Although the literal meaning is "to sink" or "submerge", this is more commonly seen as a negator for **yǒu** (Character 63). "Not" for most other verbs is conveyed by Character 9.

没有(63) **méiyǒu** *have not, does not*
[没用(130) **méiyòng** *useless*]

(At the funfair) At one sideshow he had to **strike**, with a pole, anything that appeared out of the **water**, but everything stayed submerged and he complained, "There is **not** a thing to hit!" / *The **fairy** suggested to him that he should try his luck at the **maze** instead.*

170 广 **guǎng** shelter

Radical 广
3 strokes
廣



This character, whose basic meaning was a shelter (it is a picture of a lean-to structure), appears in quite a few characters, usually as an enclosure. On its own, however, the character nowadays means "broad". (Notice how "broad" also appears in the story).

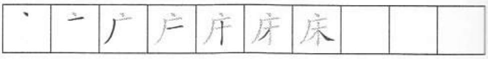
[广大(47) **guǎngdà** *vast; extreme*]
[广告(138) **guǎnggào** *advertisement*]

/ (At the Formula 1 team's secret test track) They have to build a ***shelter*** *for the spare* ***wheels*** *and other equipment, broad enough to accommodate the* ***ghostly teddy*** *and his* ***gang*** *(who guard it all).*

---

171 床 **chuáng** bed

Radical 广
7 strokes
牀



shelter 广(170) + **tree** 木(10a) = **bed** 床

[河床(141) **héchuáng** *riverbed*]
[机床(10) **jīchuáng** *machine tool*]
[床上(42) **chuángshang** *in bed*]

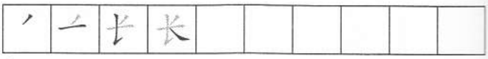
He took a **tree** into the **shelter** to make a **bed**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself:
手(31) 上(42) 正(29) 工(147) 不(9) 儿(21) 文(25)
何(142) 地(54) 厂(149) 河(141) 啊(143) 今(166) 道(145)

---

172 长 **cháng; zhǎng** 1. long 2. chief

Radical 丿
4 strokes
長



Normally "chang" would be a DIY pronunciation, but we need a spaceship story here!

When 长 appears as part of another character we will use "long" in the equation and story.

[长江(148) **chángjiāng** *the Yangtse River*]
[长大(47) **zhǎngdà** *to grow up*]
[生长(133) **shēngzhǎng** *to grow, grow up*]
[班长(113) **bānzhǎng** *leader (of team)*]

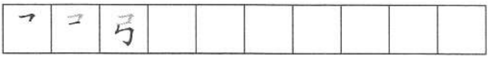
1.

🛸 */ On the bridge of the spaceship the captain looked at the* ***long*** *row of* ***wheels*** *on the engineer's desk. He had no idea which one to turn, so sent the* ***fairy*** *flitting off to find Mr* ***Chang****, the engineer.*

2.

🌵 */ "Big* ***Chief Wheel****" was so called because he collected wagon wheels from raids on the passing wagon trains.* ***Teddy*** *made* ***jangling*** *wind chimes out of the wheel bolts (so that the wind proclaimed how many wagons the Chief had raided).*

173a
弓
gōng
a bow



This is a (stringed) bow, for a violin or for archery.

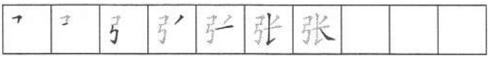
173
张
zhāng
sheet (of paper)

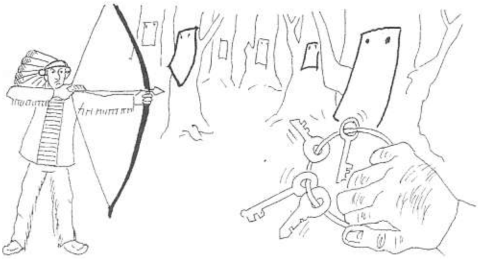
Radical 弓
7 strokes
張

a bow 弓(173a) + **long** 长(172) = **sheet** 张

This is another character which can act as a measure word, as shown by the following compound.

[一张床(1, 171) **yì zhāng chuáng** *a bed*]



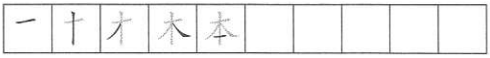


(In archery practice) The chief tries to show off by taking his **long bow** and aiming at **sheet**s of paper pinned to trees in the forest. / *The* ***giant*** *tries to put him off by* ***jangling*** *his keys loudly.*

174
本
běn
source

Radical 木
5 strokes

Originally this meant "root" of a tree, then "source" or "basis", hence "book". It can be used to mean "this", and is the measure word for books. This is a good illustration of the way in which characters can come to mean various things down the years.



/ The ***source*** *of the* ***wheel*** *(i.e. where it was made) was written round its edge, so* ***Teddy*** *looked to see where his* ***bun*** *was made!*

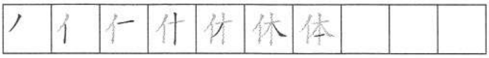
本子(17) **běnzi** *notebook*
[本来(65) **běnlái** *originally, at first*]
[本地(54) **běndì** *local*]
[日本(6) **Rìběn** *Japan*]

175
体
tǐ
body

Radical 亻
7 strokes
體

person 亻 (13a) + **source** 本(174) = **body** 体

身体(107) **shēntǐ** *human body; health*
[个体(19) **gètǐ** *(a person's) build*]

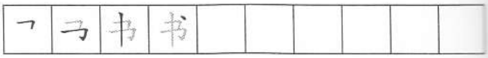


Harry was reading the **source** book on anatomy and when he opened it a hologram of a **body** floated out from the pages. / *Then* ***Teddy*** *hopped out dressed up as a* ***teacher*** *and started pointing out all the different body parts.*

176 书 **shū** book

Radical 丨
4 strokes
書

[书法(87) **shūfǎ** *calligraphy*]
[一本书(1, 174) **yì běn shū** *a book*]



*/ The **giant** balanced his **book** on the **wheel** but the wheel turned and the book fell on his **shoe-polish**.*

---

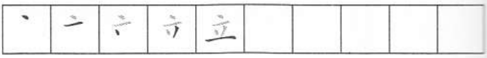
177 立 **lì** to stand

Radical 立
5 strokes

lid 亠(25b) + **feet** 䒑(90a) = **stand** 立

This can also mean "at once".

[自立(94) **zìlì** *stand on one's own feet; support oneself*]
[树立(155) **shùlì** *to erect, set up*]



He was trying to close the **lid** of his bulging suitcase, but in the end he had to use his **feet** and **stand** on it. / *When he got home, the **dwarf** realized he'd crushed his sun-cream, which had **leaked** out (and ruined his hat).*

---

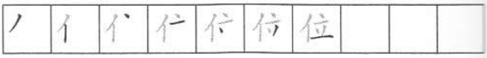
178 位 **wèi** place

Radical 亻
7 strokes

person 亻(13a) + **stand** 立(177) = **place** 位

Literally a place or seat, this character is more commonly used as a polite measure word for people.

[地位(54) **dìwèi** *status, position*]



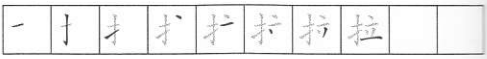
(At a group photo) **Harry** asks where to **stand** and they find him a **place**. / *"**Wait**!" cries the **dwarf** photographer, "I'll find him a place when I'm ready."*

---

179 拉 **lā (lǎ)** pull

Radical 扌
8 strokes

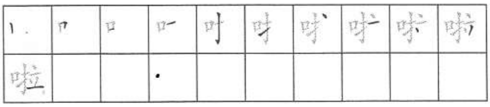
hand 扌(152a) + **stand** 立(177) = **pull** 拉



(On the slopes of a volcano) A huge **hand** appears and helps the boy to **stand**, giving him a strong **pull**. / *The **giant** points to the approaching **lava** (which the boy hadn't seen).*

180 啦 **la** exclamation

Radical 口
11 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **pull** 拉(179) =
exclamation 啦

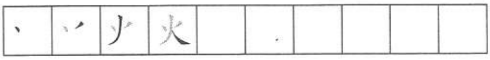
This is an abbreviation for 了啊 ("le" plus "a", Characters 66 and 143).

(Think of this as a continuation of the previous story) The boy points at the **mouth** of the cave, **pull**ing at his rescuer's sleeve. "Over there! Look!" he **exclaims**. / *The* ***robot****, covered in bits of* ***lava****, has reached the safety of the cave and is trying to clean himself up.*

---

181 火 **huǒ** fire

Radical 火
4 strokes



Supposedly a picture of a flame with two sparks, but you may prefer to think of it as a person running, hands in the air, shouting "fire!" It takes a severely squashed form when appearing at the bottom of characters (see 185a). Some books give a different stroke order.

火车(83) **huǒchē** *a train*

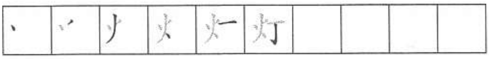
/ The ***wheel*** *is on* ***fire*** *but the* ***ghostly teddy*** *(who was supposed to be guarding it) can't put out the flames because when he tries to pick up the* ***hose*** *his paw passes straight through it!*

---

182 灯 **dēng** lamp

Radical 火
6 strokes

燈



fire 火(181) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **lamp** 灯

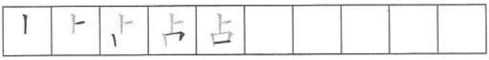
电灯(159) **diàndēng** *electric light*

(In an old castle) "If we could find a way of putting some **fire** on a **nail** in the wall we could have a **lamp** in the room." / *The* ***giant dunks*** *twigs in candle-wax to make the first rudimentary lamp. (Does this story sound familiar?)*

---

183 占 **zhàn** occupy

Radical 卜
5 strokes



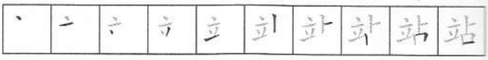
fortune teller 卜(42a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
occupy 占

The fortune teller's "drop" is a short horizontal line here (see the note for 42a).

The **fortune teller's** magic **mouth** was so popular that her tent was always **occupied**, and so a big crowd formed outside. / *The* ***dwarf janitor*** *had to be called to clear them away.*

184 站 **zhàn** station

Radical 立
10 strokes



stand 立(177) + **occupy** 占(183) =
station 站

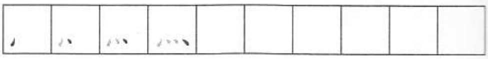
This also means a (bus) "stop", or "to stand".

Notice the final stroke of "stand" has a definite slope (compare the note for 54a).

车站(83) **chēzhàn** *(bus) stop, station*

You're **stand**ing impatiently outside the **occupied** toilets at the train **station** (and your train is due any minute). / *The **dwarf** is sitting in the **janitor's** office (and is in no mood to be helpful).*

185a



灬 fire

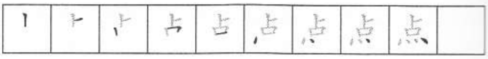
This is the form taken by "fire" when appearing as the bottom part of other characters.

---

185 点 **diǎn** speck

Radical 灬
9 strokes

點



occupy 占(183) + **fire** 灬(185a) = **speck** 点

This is used for any dot, point or speck, including the marks on a clock face, hence it also means "o'clock".

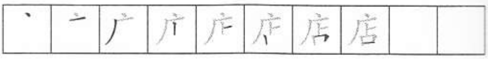
点心(161) **diǎnxīn** *dim sum, snack*
[地点(54) **dìdiǎn** *venue*]
一点儿(1, 21) **yìdiǎnr** *a bit, a tiny amount*
[有点儿(63, 21) **yǒudiǎnr** *slightly; somewhat*]

All the places round the camp **fire** were **occupied**, except two seats with white **specks** on them. / *It was toothpaste left by the **two teddies** who'd gone off to the **dentist**.*

---

186 店 **diàn** store

Radical 广
8 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **occupy** 占(183) =
store 店

This "store" is a shop where you buy things, not a place where you stash things away.

[书店(176) **shūdiàn** *bookstore*]
[酒店 (102) **jiǔdiàn** *liquor store; pub*]

If you **occupy** the **shelter** for a certain length of time, you are allowed to turn it into a **store**. / *The **two dwarves** set up a shop selling **dentist's** supplies (picture them surrounded by false teeth, drills, etc.)*

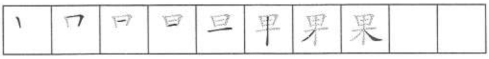
Chapter 13

There are no new building blocks needed for the characters in this chapter — you have already met and learned all the building blocks you will need.

---

187 果 **guǒ** fruit

Radical 木
8 strokes



field 田(156a) **+ tree 木**(10a) **= fruit 果**

Note that you don't simply write "field" then "tree" (this also happened for Character 157).

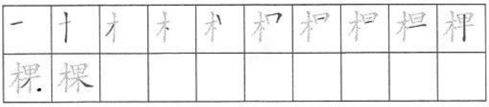
The developers want to dig up the **field** with the **tree** in it, but can't because the tree produces a rare **fruit**. / *The* ***ghostly teddy*** *who looks after the tree says, "****Go*** *away,* ***Go*** *away!"*

[如果(80) **rúguǒ** *if*]
[后果(150) **hòuguǒ** *consequence*]

---

188 棵 **kē** number of trees

Radical 木
12 strokes



tree 木(10a) **+ fruit 果**(187) **=**
number of trees 棵

A measure word for trees and plants. When the primary use of a character is as a measure word, we will give its meaning as "number of" something (we did this for Character 19 and another example is coming up: Character 223 in the next chapter).

Each **tree** only bore a few **fruits** so it took **a number of trees** to produce enough fruit for a pot of jam. / *The* ***giant*** *used the whole crop to make his lemon* ***curd****.*

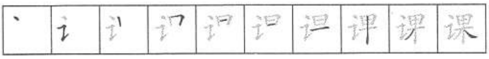
[三棵树(3, 155) **sān kē shù** *three trees*]

---

189 课 **kè** lesson

Radical 讠
10 strokes

課

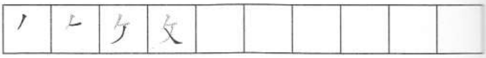


words 讠 (67c) **+ fruit 果**(187) **= lesson 课**

(In school) Next to their pictures, the **words** for the **fruit**s are written up during the **lesson**. / *In the next lesson the* ***dwarf*** *teaches them how to make lemon* ***curd*** *(and is irritated at having to sit in for the cookery teacher).*

课文(25) **kèwén** *(piece of) text*
上课(42) **shàngkè** *attend class*
课本(174) **kèběn** *textbook*
下课(43) **xiàkè** *finish class*

190a 攵 to tap



clouds 𠂉(124b) + **shears** 乂(25a) = **tap** 攵

This component always appears as the right-hand side of a character.

Compare it with "pursue" (506a) which looks similar but has one less stroke.

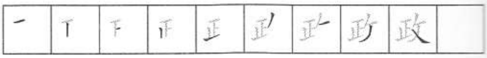
The meaning is "to tap" with a stick — think of it as tapping lightly, in the way that a magician might tap with a wand; as opposed to the heavy swiping motion of "to strike" (169a).

The topiarist was dreaming of trimming **clouds** with his **shears** (creating wonderful shapes) — until he felt a **tap** on his shoulder (waking him up as his lunch break was over). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

190 政 **zhèng** government

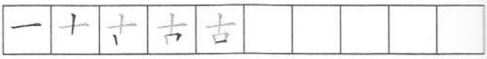
Radical 攵
9 strokes



upright 正(29) + **tap** 攵(190a) = **government** 政

A ranger stands by the **upright** stone and **tap**s it, saying, "You can't come in here — this is an area protected by the **government**." / *The* ***dwarf*** *has to take his* ***jungle*** *tours elsewhere.*

191a 古 **gǔ** old



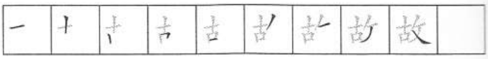
ten 十(4) + **mouth** 口(5) = **old** 古

A big **cross** has been painted above the **mouth** of one of the caves, to remind the forgetful **old** woman who lives there which cave is hers! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

191 故 **gù** former

Radical 攵
9 strokes

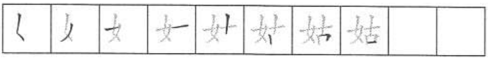


old 古(191a) + **tap** 攵(190a) = **former** 故

(The finale of the conjuror's act) "This time I'm going to use this very **old** wand to **tap** the hat, because it belonged to my **former** magic teacher." / *The* ***dwarf*** *assistant wondered what the conjuror would say when he pulled a* ***goose*** *from the hat (as the dwarf hadn't been able to find a rabbit).*

192 **姑** **gū** aunt

Radical 女
8 strokes



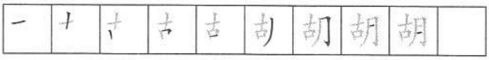
woman 女(15) + **old** 古(191a) = **aunt** 姑

[姑姑 **gūgu** *aunt (father's sister)*]

"Why does that **woman** look so **old**?" asks the little girl. "Shh! She's your **Aunt**!" her mother replies in a whisper. / *"If you're rude about her the* ***giant*** *will come and fill your mouth with sticky* ***goo****."*

193a **胡** **hú** beard

鬍



old 古(191a) + **moon** 月(61) = **beard** 胡

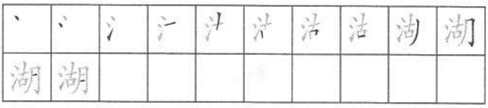
This can also mean "reckless" or "crazy" (in which case it acts as its own traditional form).

The **old moon** has become reckless and has let his **beard** grow. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

193 **湖** **hú** lake

Radical 氵
12 strokes



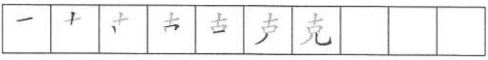
water 氵(78a) + **beard** 胡(193a) = **lake** 湖

The **water** gets in the wizard's **beard** as he drinks from the **lake**. / *The lake fairy appears and says, "****Who****'s that?* ***Who****'s there?"*

---

194 **克** **kè** gram

Radical 十
7 strokes



old 古(191a) + **boy** 儿(21) = **gram** 克

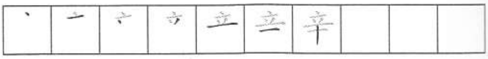
[马克(44) **mǎkè** *mark (in exam)*]

In school the **old boys** are being taught about **grams** (they'd learned to use ounces when they were younger). / *The* ***dwarf*** *teacher* ***curses*** *the newfangled metric system.*

Test yourself: 七(37) 车(83) 有(63) 没(169) 而(151) 念(167) 心(161)
张(173) 男(156) 找(152) 电(159) 必(162) 体(175) 树(155)

195 辛 **xīn** spicy

Radical 辛
7 strokes



stand 立(177) + **ten** 十(4) = **spicy** 辛

This also means "bitter" or "acrid" and hence also "hardship".

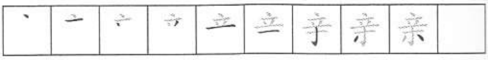
(At the children's party) The children have to **stand** on the **cross** painted on the ground until they get the signal to start, then they must follow the **spicy** smell trail. / *The **giant** had laid the trail by strapping a bag of curry powder to his **shin**!*

---

196 亲 **qīn** kin

Radical 立
9 strokes

親



stand 立(177) + **tree** 木(10a) = **kin** 亲

"Kin" here means blood relatives.

母亲(127)	**mǔqīn**	*mother*
[亲自(94)	**qīnzì**	*in person*]

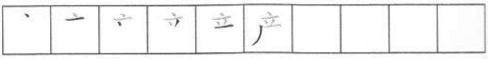
Imagine you are **stand**ing in a **tree** — not an ordinary tree but your family tree, and your **kin** are all around you. / *Some of your kin will be high enough to touch the **giant's chin**.*

---

197 产 **chǎn** to produce

Radical 亠
6 strokes

產



stand 立(177) + **cliff** 厂(149) = **produce** 产

Imagine **stand**ing on a **cliff** overlooking the sea — it's the ideal spot for a factory to **produce** buckets and spades. / *Teddy buys the first ones and slides down the **channel** leading to the beach.*

Notice that the bottom stroke of "to stand" has merged with the first stroke of "cliff". We will see this happening again in a couple of instances (Characters 295 and 640), but it doesn't always happen (see for example Character 257).

This is an example of the sort of decision we have had to make all the way through writing this book. Do we invent a new fragment made up of "lid" plus "horns", or do we use "stand" but point out when something slightly non-standard happens? In the end we have done the latter, for three reasons — we want to keep the number of fragments to a minimum, everyone else calls this "stand", and it *is* where the character 产 came from. But if you prefer (as always) you can make up stories to go with the other choice.

生产(133)	**shēngchǎn**	*to manufacture*
[产生(133)	**chǎnshēng**	*to produce, give rise to*]

---

198 卡

kǎ
card

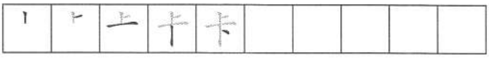
Radical 卜
5 strokes

above 上(42) + **fortune teller** 卜(42a) = **card** 卡

This character is actually the characters "above" and "below" (Characters 42 and 43), sharing the central horizontal stroke.

The compound below was coined because the sound **kǎ** resembles the English word "car".

卡车(83) **kǎchē** *truck, lorry*



Above the **fortune teller**'s head floats her business **card**. / *Teddy secretly borrows her magic **carpet** to fly up behind her and get a closer look.*

---

199 还

hái; huán
1. still
2. give back

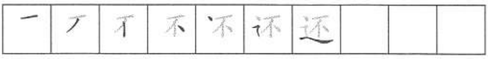
Radical ⻌
7 strokes

還

1. **road** ⻌(26a) + **not** 不(9) = **still** 还

2. **road** ⻌(26a) + **not** 不(9) = **give back** 还

还是(30) **háishì** *still, yet; or*



1.

🛸 The spaceship driving instructor says: "It's **not** a **road**, you don't have to observe the speed limits here." The pupil replies, "I'm **still** a bit nervous." / *"Just wait till the **fairy** shows you how to use the **hyper** drive!"*

2.

🌵 (The bandits have robbed a bank and are fleeing the posse) "Let's **not** use the **road** — we might meet the posse and we'd have to **give back** the gold." / *But the **ghostly fairy** who guards the bank catches up with them and calls out, "**Hands** up!"*

---

200 看

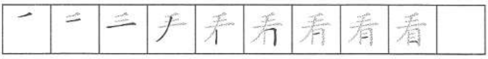
kàn
look at

Radical 目
9 strokes

hand 手(31) + **eye** 目(93) = **look at** 看

Note the slightly deformed form of "hand". Be careful not to confuse this character with Character 205 below.

好看(18) **hǎokàn** *good-looking; interesting*
[看来(65) **kànlái** *it looks as if*]
[看法(87) **kànfǎ** *(negative) opinion*]



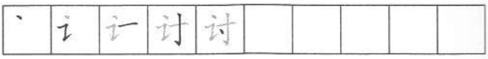
(On an old sailing ship) The Captain raises a **hand** to shade his **eyes** to **look at** the enemy ship. / *He sees the **dwarf** loading a **cannon**.*

201 讨

tǎo
ask for

Radical 讠
5 strokes

討



words 讠(67c) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **ask for** 讨

This also means "to explore".

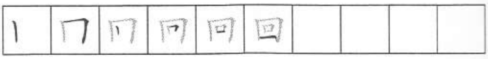
The young child is learning to read, and traces her finger along the **words inch** by **inch** — but has to **ask for** help when any big words crop up. / ***Teddy** has to keep quiet, and is building a **tower** of blocks in the corner (but every now and again there is a loud crashing sound!)*

---

202 回

huí
return

Radical 囗
6 strokes



enclosed 囗(24a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **return** 回

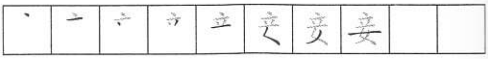
This means to return to a place; hence also "to come back" in the sense of to respond or reply; or the number of times an action is repeated.

回来(65) **huílái** *to return (here)*
回去(86) **huíqù** *to return (there)*
[来回(65) **láihuí** *return (journey), there and back*]

The tribe's oracle **mouth** is displayed in the museum in an **enclosed** area; people keep **return**ing to see it (because it's so unusual). / *The **ghostly fairy** conjures up a shimmering **halo** to protect it.*

203a 妾

concubine



stand 立(177) + **woman** 女(15) = **concubine** 妾

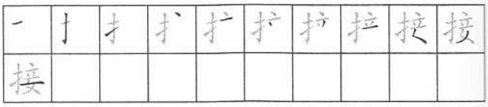
(In the old days) You had to **stand** with a foot on a **woman** to claim her as your **concubine**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

203 接

jiē
receive

Radical 扌
11 strokes

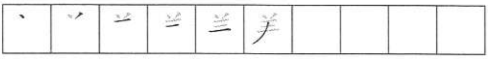


hand 扌(152a) + **concubine** 妾(203a) = **receive** 接

He stretches out his **hand** to the new **concubine** to **receive** her into his household. / *She has brought a huge plate of **jelly** as a gift which it took **two giants** to carry!*

204a ⺶

sheep



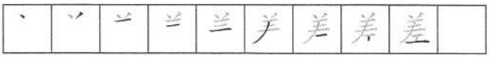
This modified form of "sheep" (Character 111) has the tail swept off to one side to make room for another character underneath. The vertical stroke remains one stroke when it is drawn at an angle, even though in some older fonts it looks as if it is broken into two.

---

204 差

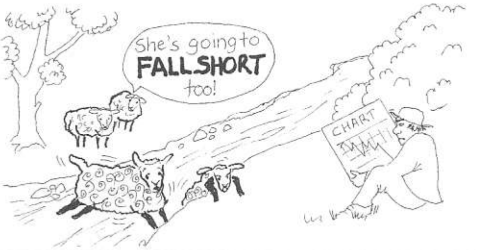
chà
fall short

Radical ⺶
9 strokes



sheep ⺶(204a) **+ work 工**(147) **=**
fall short 差

[差不多(9, 69) **chàbuduō** *more or less*]
[差点儿(185, 21) **chàdiǎnr** *almost, nearly*]


She's going to FALL SHORT too!
CHART

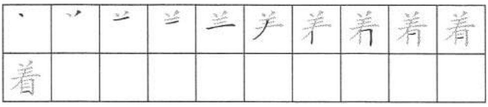
The **sheep** keep **work**ing at their long-jump practice by trying to jump across the river, but keep **falling short**. / *Their* ***dwarf*** *coach keeps a* ***chart*** *of their progress and he's not impressed!*

---

205 着

zháo; zhe (zhāo)
1. to catch
2. -ing

Radical ⺶
11 strokes



1. **sheep ⺶**(204a) **+ eye 目**(93) **= catch** 着

2. **sheep ⺶**(204a) **+ eye 目**(93) **= -ing** 着

Don't confuse this character with "look at" (看, Character 200 above).

Pronounced as **zháo**, this character can have a variety of meanings. "To catch" means "touch", "come into contact with", as in "catch a cold". Pronounced as **zhe**, it is used after a verb to indicate an action in progress, hence our choice "-ing" for the meaning.

接着(203) **jiēzhe** *and then; to catch*

1\.

In the cowboy town they were keeping an **eye** on the **sheep**, hoping **to catch** the sheep rustlers. / *The* ***fairy*** *is teaching the posse* ***jousting*** *skills (ready for the confrontation with the sheep rustlers).*

2\.

In the spaceship the **sheep** is patrolling the corridors, putting his **eye** to each door to see if he can catch anything funny go**ing** on. / *Imagine his surprise when he sees the* ***robot*** *practicing his* ***juggling****!*

Test yourself: 从(103) 刀(72) 政(190) 思(165) 广(170) 儿(21) 想(164)
书(176) 灯(182) 年(168) 相(163) 辛(195) 在(55) 点(185)

Chapter 14

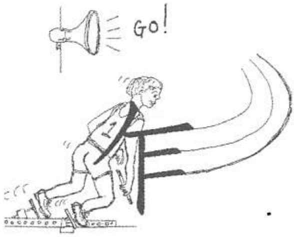
Abstract words such as "suddenly" and "again" are very hard to evoke directly with pictures. What we can do, though, is to use the shape of the character to remind you of something tangible and solid — and then link that with the abstract word. Look at the character picture for "suddenly" for example — hopefully in future when you see the fragment 乍 you will "see" the start of the running track, and hence remember that sprint races start "suddenly".

With "again", the shape of the character reminded us of the plunger used to detonate explosives, and so we used this in the character picture. You just have to remember that the particular thing being blown up is an old factory chimney, and the youngster is keen to see this demolition happen again — and again!

If you find that a basic building block strongly suggests to you a different object, then by all means use that image instead of our character picture. All you need to do is conjure up a (vivid!) situation to link this object with the meaning of the basic building block.

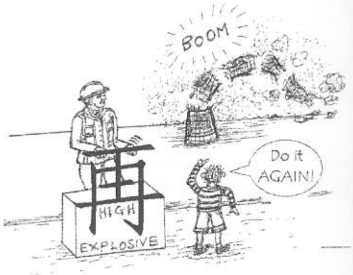
乍

suddenly



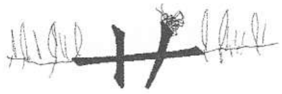
再

again



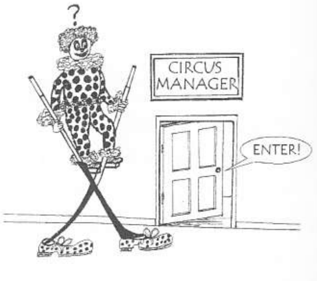
⺿

grass



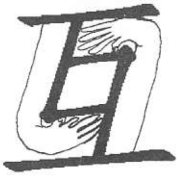
入

enter



互

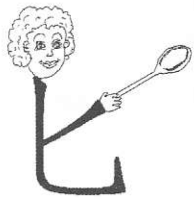
reciprocal



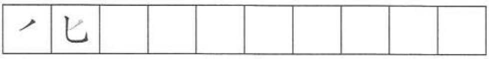
You scratch my back
and I'll scratch yours

匕

spoon



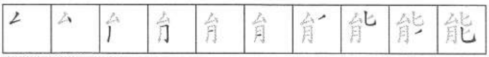
206a 匕 spoon



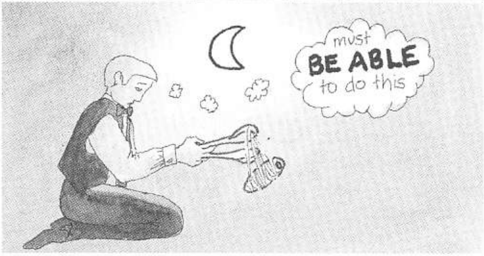
Notice how this differs from "seven" (Character 37) where the sloping stroke extends to both sides of the hook stroke. Many books give the stroke order as the other way round.

206 能 **néng** able to

Radical 厶
10 strokes



cocoon 厶(34a) + **moon** 月(61) +
two spoons 匕(206a) = **able to** 能

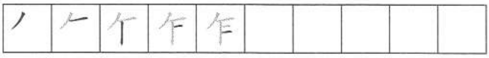


You see someone picking up a **cocoon** in the **moon**light … it's a waiter practicing picking things up using **two spoons** held in one hand — he has to be **able to** do this before he can pass his waitering exams. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

The one and only example in this book where a character is broken down into *four* parts which are then combined in a story.

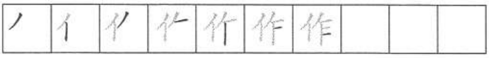
可能(140)	**kěnéng**	*may, possible*
[能干(124)	**nénggàn**	*capable*]
[能力(14)	**nénglì**	*ability*]

207a 乍 **zhà** suddenly



207 作 **zuò** do

Radical 亻
7 strokes



In a blinding flash, **Harry suddenly** knew what he had to **do**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

person 亻 (13a) + **suddenly** 乍 (207a) = **do** 作

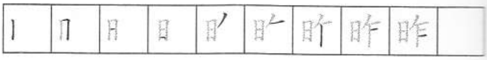
A general-purpose character meaning to do or make (see also Character 210 below).

We've gathered together here the 6 characters with pronunciation "zuo". Two pairs of these characters form mini phonetic series. You might like to have a go at constructing the pronunciation parts of stories for these six. You will need a ghostly archetype each time. If it is any help, the name "Zodiac" has been given to a make of car, and an inflatable boat. If you find this hard work, relax — normal service is resumed after the next six characters (and spare a thought for us as we tried to come up with well over 800 of these stories so that each of them would be memorable!)

工作(147)	**gōngzuò**	*work, job*
[作文(25)	**zuòwén**	*essay*]

208 昨 **zuó** yesterday

Radical 日
9 strokes



sun 日(6) + **suddenly** 乍(207a) = **yesterday** 昨

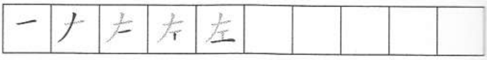
昨天(76) **zuótiān** *yesterday*

(At the all night birthday party) She sees the **sun** coming up and **suddenly** realizes it is a new day. It isn't her birthday any more — that was now **yesterday**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

209 左 **zuǒ** left (hand)

Radical 工
5 strokes



left hand 𠂇(53a) + **work** 工(147) = **left** 左

This means the left-hand side, on the left, etc. (rather than the actual hand with fingers).

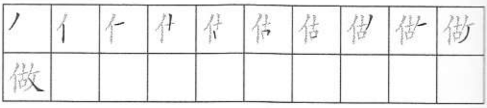
[左边(41) **zuǒbiān** *left-hand side*]
[左手(31) **zuǒshǒu** *the left hand*]

(Showing a new employee how to work the big machine in the factory) "Use your **left hand**, your wedding ring hand, to **work** the controls as they are all on the **left** side of the machine." / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

210 做 **zuò** do

Radical 亻
11 strokes



person 亻(13a) + **former** 故(191) = **do** 做

To do or make; the same meaning as Character 207 but more commonly used.

[做法(87) **zuòfǎ** *method*]

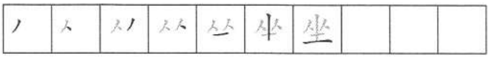
Harry's **former** wife runs into the church during the wedding ceremony just as he is saying, "I **do**." / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself: 同(160) 店(186) 床(171) 差(204) 位(178) 站(184) 张(173)
亲(196) 棵(188) 立(177) 讨(201) 火(181) 产(197) 长(172)

Character 210 is actually a fairly complicated character, but by now you are probably looking at characters like this and breaking them up automatically into parts without thinking. This just serves to show how far you've come. It may in fact be quite hard now to recall how you felt back at the beginning when characters were all "squiggles".

211 坐 **zuò** sit

Radical 土
7 strokes



from 从(103) + **earth** 土(54a) = **sit** 坐

This character doesn't split neatly left-right or top-bottom into its two parts; you could also see this as two people sitting on the earth.

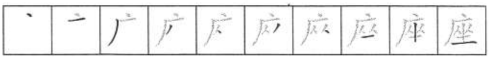
[坐班(113) **zuò bān** *keep office hours*]

From the **earth** rises a beautiful throne to **sit** on. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

212 座 **zuò** seat

Radical 广
10 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **sit** 坐(211) = **seat** 座

This is also used as a measure word for buildings and other large objects.

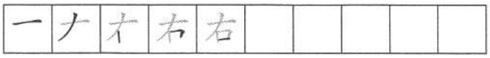
[座位(178) **zuòwèi** *a seat*]

You run into the **shelter** to **sit** out the storm — fortunately there's a **seat** to sit on. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

213 右 **yòu** right (hand)

Radical 口
5 strokes



left hand 𠂇(53a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **right** 右

This is the opposite of "left" (Character 209), not the right hand with fingers.

[右边(41) **yòubiān** *right-hand side*]
[右手(31) **yòushǒu** *the right hand*]
[左右(209) **zuǒyòu** *approximately*]

"Put your **left hand**, the one with your wedding ring on it, over your **mouth** and stretch your other hand out to the floor so that you lean to the **right**." / *The **dwarf** demonstrates how this **yoga** posture looks (Imagine what he looks like!)*

Sorry to keep on about this, but you are remembering to visualize the stories properly, aren't you?

For Character 211, for example, what is the situation? Who is present and what have they done to provoke the throne to rise out of the earth? Are they in a palace, in a clearing in a forest, or where? For Character 212, where are you? Can you "see" the shelter? What sort of shelter is it? Is the sky dark or light? Imagine you are telling a story to a small child who you are trying to keep amused — what details might you add to catch their interest?

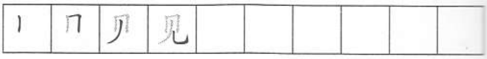
214 见 **jiàn** see

Radical 见
4 strokes
見

outer limits 冂(160a) + **boy** 儿(21) = **see** 见

Note that the top part of this character is not really "outer limits" (it is narrower and has no hook) — so we are cheating a bit here.

看见(200)	**kànjiàn**	*see, catch sight of*
[会见(59)	**huìjiàn**	*to meet (formally)*]
[接见(203)	**jiējiàn**	*grant an audience*]



(On a bus tour of the outer limits) In the **outer limits** the **boy** wants to go to the loo but won't go behind a bush. "Someone might **see** me!". [Notice the boy's legs are held together in the character!] / *The two **dwarf** passengers decide that **gentlemen** don't go in the bushes, so they will try to wait until the toilets at the next stop.*

---

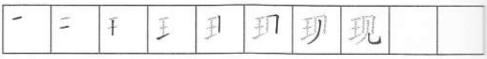
215 现 **xiàn** the present

Radical 王
8 strokes
現

king 王(60a) + **see** 见(214) =
the present 现

This means "the present time", "now", "current", or "ready to hand".

出现(114)	**chūxiàn**	*to appear*
现在(55)	**xiànzài**	*now*
发现(146)	**fāxiàn**	*discover*



The **king** has special powers and can **see** everything going on at **the present** time in his kingdom. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

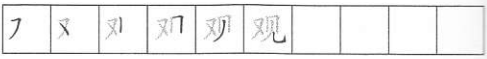
---

216 观 **guān** observe

Radical 又
6 strokes
觀

right hand 又(52) + **see** 见(214) =
observe 观

[观点(185)	**guāndiǎn**	*point of view*]



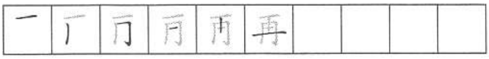
(In the evening you meet an old friend in the street) You **shake hands** and **see** that he's wearing a special watch, and he tells you he's off to **observe** the stars. / *In the observatory the **ghostly giant** will be up on the **gantry** readying the big telescopes and looking after them until your friend gets there.*

Test yourself:	还(199)	故(191)	果(187)	拉(179)	坐(211)	左(209)	姑(192)
	吗(45)	啦(180)	课(189)	卡(198)	个(19)	做(210)	占(183)

---

217 再 **zài** again

Radical 一
6 strokes



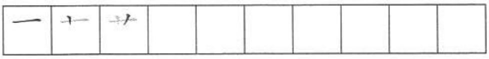
*/ The **dwarf** plans to run a small **wheel again** and **again** across his **xylophone** — and is looking forward to annoying the neighbors.*

This character means "again" when talking about something which might be repeated in the future. Character 52, on the other hand, means "again" when referring to something happening more than once in the past.

Some books differ in the order they suggest for drawing the last three strokes.

再见(214) **zàijiàn** *goodbye*
[再说(67) **zàishuō** *and what's more*]

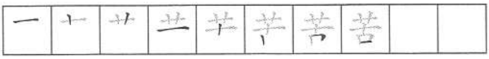
218a 艹 grass



---

218 苦 **kǔ** bitter

Radical 艹
8 strokes

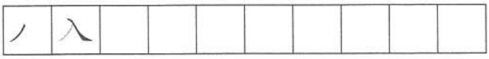


grass 艹(218a) + **old** 古(191a) = **bitter** 苦

The donkey finds that the **old grass** tastes **bitter**. / ***Teddy** says, "Mix it with **couscous** and it will taste better!"*

辛苦(195) **xīnkǔ** *hard (life, toil)*

219a 入 **rù** enter

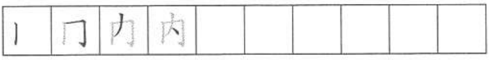


Compare this character with Characters 12, 19b and 20. Although it is not an HSK Level A character, it is useful to be able to recognize the sign 入口, "entrance".

---

219 内 **nèi** inside

Radical 冂
4 strokes



outer limits 冂(160a) + **person** 人(12) = **inside** 内

Harry is on a bus tour and is about to enter the **outer limits**. The driver announces, "All passengers must stay **inside** the bus while we travel through this dangerous area." / *The **dwarf** tour guide checks off the **names** of the passengers on his list (to make sure they're all accounted for).*

In some typefaces the central part of this character looks like "enter" rather than "person".

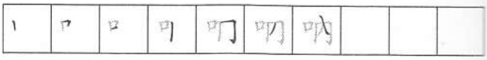
[以内(120) **yǐnèi** *during, within*]
[在内(55) **zàinèi** *included*]

220 呐 **nà (na)** [shout] **Radical** 口 **7 strokes**

mouth 口(5) + **inside** 内(219) = **shout** 呐

Recall that we use square brackets [ ] for the meaning of characters which you are only ever likely to see in compounds (see Character 557 for the compound in question, but it's not an important one).

呐 can also be used as a particle at the end of questions, in the same way as 呢 (see Character 268), and in this guise it is pronounced **na** with a neutral tone.



(A drugs bust) They are standing at the **mouth** of the cave when, from **inside**, comes a **shout**. / *"The* ***dwarf*** *has found a stash of* ***narcotics****!"*

The main reason we've introduced this character here is to show you what it looks like when "person" is replaced by "enter" (see the comment for Character 219). This only happens for Characters 219 and 220: it does not happen for any of the following characters (221–225).

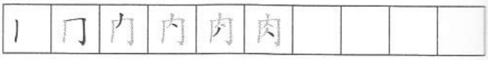
---

221 肉 **ròu** meat **Radical** 冂 **6 strokes**

outer limits 冂(160a) + **person** 人(12) + **person** 人(12) = **meat** 肉

Several characters containing "moon" are actually derived from this character instead.

[羊肉(111) **yángròu** *mutton*]



In the **outer limits** stands a totem pole made from one statue of **Harry** on top of another **Harry**: it's advertising Harry's **meat** stall. / *The* ***dwarf*** *ignores the rules and sneaks off the tour bus to buy meat for his Sunday* ***roast****.*

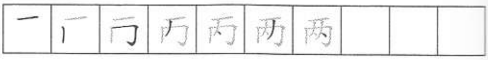
---

222 两 **liǎng** a couple **Radical** 一 **7 strokes** 兩

one 一(1) + **from** 从(103) + **outer limits** 冂(160a) = **couple** 两

二 (Character 2) is used in writing numbers, in isolation or in a telephone number for example. But 两 is used with measure words, when talking about "two of" something.

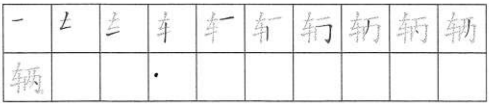
[两个人(19, 12) **liǎng ge rén** *two people*]
[两棵树(188, 155) **liǎng kē shù** *two trees*]



The zoo gets a **unicorn from** the **outer limits**, to obtain a **couple** of unicorns which they hope might breed (where have we heard this before?!) / *The* ***two teddies*** *are set the task of watching the unicorns' body* ***language****, to see if they are getting on!*

---

223 辆 **liàng**
number of cars
Radical 车
11 strokes
輛



car 车(83) **+ couple 两**(222) **= number of cars 辆**

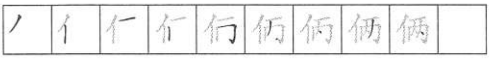
A measure word for vehicles.

[三辆车(3, 83) **sān liàng chē** *three vehicles*]

(In the car showroom) The elderly **couple** sit in the **car** that they like most, tired after having been shown a **number of cars**. / *The **two dwarf** salesmen had talked and talked, but the technical **language** (about big ends etc.) had been incomprehensible to them.*

---

224 俩 **liǎ**
two people
Radical 亻
9 strokes
倆

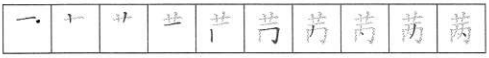


person 亻 (13a) **+ couple 两**(222) **= two people 俩**

[他们俩(13, 28) **tāmen liǎ** *the two of them (people)*]

Harry only invited **couples** to his party, so that every time the doorbell rang, there were **two people** standing there. / ***Two teddies** tried to gatecrash the party as a **lark**.*

225a 㒳
scales

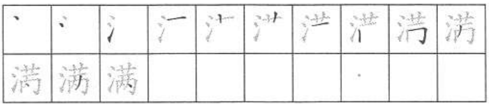


grass 艹(218a) **+ couple 两**(222) **=**
scales 㒳

The recipe calls for a **couple** of handfuls of **grass** — it is difficult to weigh it on **scales** as it is so light. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

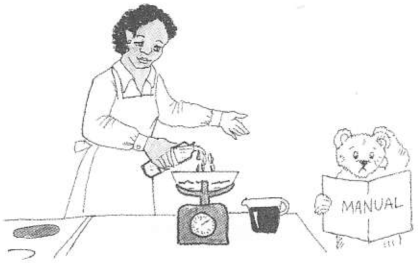
---

225 满 **mǎn**
full
Radical 氵
13 strokes
滿



water 氵 (78a) **+ scales 㒳** (225a) **= full 满**

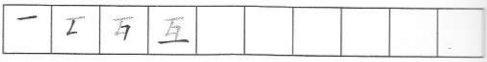
[满分(73) **mǎnfēn** *full marks*]



She has to measure the **water** on the **scales**, as her measuring jug is already **full** (of something else). / ***Teddy** doesn't know how to use the scales and has to read the **manual**.*

226 互 **hù** reciprocal

Radical 一
4 strokes



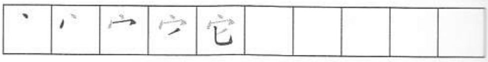
互相(163) **hùxiāng** *mutually, each other*
[相互(163) **xiānghù** *mutual, each other*]

/ (In the past a friend gave you their spare wheel when you had a flat tire) You now see this friend with a flat tire and stop to give them your spare ***wheel*** *as a* ***reciprocal*** *favor. Behind you a* ***dwarf hoots*** *impatiently, wanting to get past.*

---

227 它 **tā** it

Radical 宀
5 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) = **it** 它

This is the neuter form of he/she (Characters 13 and 16) — all three are pronounced **tā**.

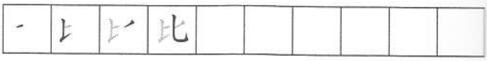
它们(28) **tāmen** *they, them (neuter)*

He builds a small **house** to accommodate his silver **spoon**. "Why does **it** get all the attention?" asks his pet dog jealously. / *"Because spoons* ***tarnish*** *and dogs don't!" replies the* ***giant****.*

---

228 比 **bǐ** compared with

Radical 比
4 strokes



spoon 匕(206a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) = **compared with** 比

Notice that the left-hand spoon has been squashed so that its hook has turned into a "barb" (see 120a).

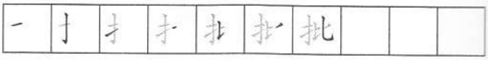
[比如(80) **bǐrú** *for example*]
[对比(154) **duìbǐ** *compare & contrast*]

He took one **spoon**, then another **spoon**, and **compared** one **with** the other. / ***Teddy*** *didn't care which one he had, as long as he got to eat his* ***beans****.*

---

229 批 **pī** criticize

Radical 扌
7 strokes



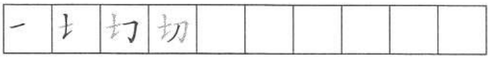
hand 扌(152a) + **compared with** 比(228) = **criticize** 批

[大批(47) **dàpī** *lots of*]

The teacher looked at the **hands** of the children and **compared** them **with** her own — she **criticized** any failings such as dirty nails. / *The ones with clean hands were allowed to take the* ***pizza*** *to the* ***Giant****.*

230 切 **qiè** (qiē)
to cut

Radical 刀
4 strokes



seven 七(37) + **knife** 刀(72) = **cut** 切

We've included this character here so you can compare it with Character 228. The left-hand side of Character 230 is "seven", not "spoon" (although it too has been squashed and has a "barb"). The telling detail is that the cross stroke in Character 230 extends to both sides of the vertical stroke.

一切(1) **yíqiè** *all, everything*
[亲切(196) **qīnqiè** *cordial*]

You look in your **diary** and see that seven days ago you met with the murder victim, so you use a **knife** to **cut** out the incriminating page. / *The **two dwarves** are going round **checking** on everyone's alibis.*

Test yourself:	日(6)	接(203)	能(206)	几(7)	座(212)	国(60)	湖(193)
	看(200)	这(26)	也(8)	回(202)	克(194)	再(217)	运(57)
	内(219)	右(213)	下(43)	辆(223)	着(205)	六(39)	昨(208)
	它(227)	苦(218)	动(58)	白(22)	见(214)	作(207)	明(77)

You will have realized by now that the concept of "basic building block" is a little fuzzy at the edges. This is not a major problem: the concepts of "animal" and "plant" in biology are also fuzzy at the edges (what are algae?) but in everyday life we all know what animals and plants are. Similarly, most of the time it is clear whether a character is composite or a basic building block: either it is "obviously" composed of two parts, or it is "obviously" a single entity. But there are gray areas at the boundaries.

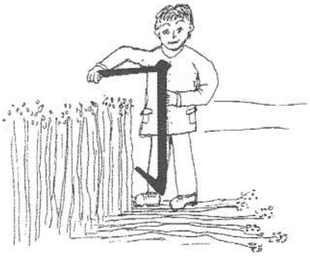
A particular case in point is when to regard "one" (a single horizontal stroke) as a separate part. When the stroke is completely "free floating" (not joined on at all) we always regard the character as composite. Thus 二, 云 and 旦 are composite. When the horizontal line is joined on, we have a gray area. The general rule we have adopted is to regard such characters as basic building blocks, unless there is a horizontal line at the *top* of the character *and* when you remove this line you get something recognizable. Thus 干, 王 and 下 are composite but 工 and 不 are basic building blocks. We don't try to detach a horizontal line at the *bottom* of a character unless it is completely free-floating. So 旦 is composite but 土 and 上 are basic building blocks.

Sticking to a rule like this (even if the choice of rule is somewhat arbitrary) makes it easier to decide confidently whether a character is a basic building block or composite.

Chapter 15

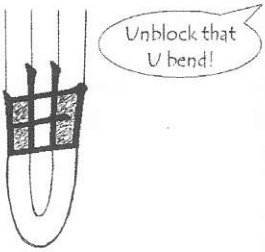
𠃌

blade



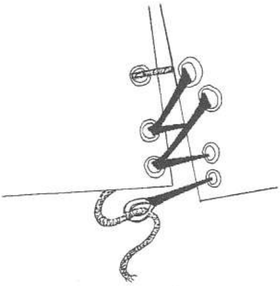
曲

bend


Unblock that U bend!

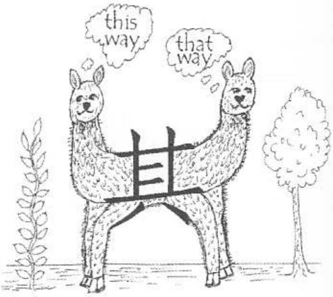
纟

thread



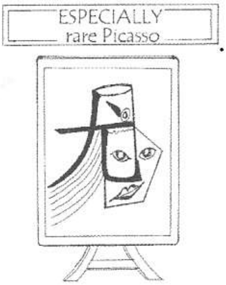
其

this or that


this way
that way

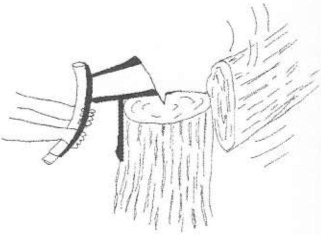
尤

especially


ESPECIALLY rare Picasso

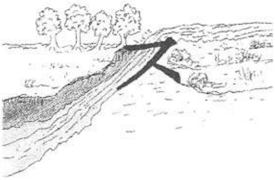
斤

axe



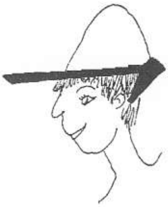
ス

underground river

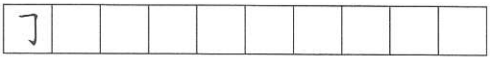


乛

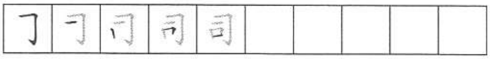
cap



231a 𠃌 "blade"



231b 司 sī department

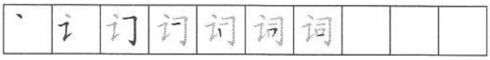


piled up 𠮛(150b) + **blade** 𠃌(231a) =
department 司

The **blades** were **piled up** in the production **department** because the sales department couldn't sell them fast enough. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

231 词 **cí** word

Radical 讠
7 strokes
詞



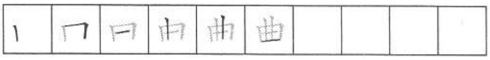
words 讠(67c) + **department** 司(231b) =
word 词

Recall that soundwords which begin "st" signal pronunciations which start with "ts" (written as "c" in the Pinyin system — see Character 104).

生词(133) **shēngcí** *a new word (in a language lesson)*
[名词(70) **míngcí** *noun*]
[动词(58) **dòngcí** *verb*]

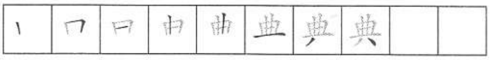
(A new boy is being shown round the factory) "The **words department** makes the words, so whenever you need a **word** they will supply it. / *The **fairy** keeps **statistics** on which words are being requested most often."*

232a 曲 bend



232 典 **diǎn** reference book

Radical 八
8 strokes



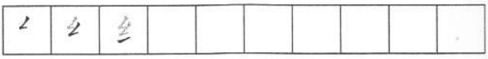
bend 曲(232a) + **eight** 八(20) =
reference book 典

Note that the horizontal line at the base of "bend" is extended on both sides.

词典(231) **cídiǎn** *dictionary*
[字典(92) **zìdiǎn** *character dictionary*]

One of the **octopus'** tentacles has a permanent **bend** in it, so he puts a heavy **reference book** on it to try to straighten it out. / *The **two teddies** try using the same method to get rid of the **dent** in their frisbee!*

233a 纟 thread



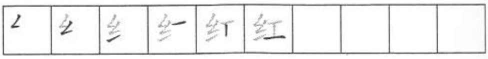
This fragment always appears as the left-hand side of composite characters. We will meet another form of it later (607b).

---

233 红 **hóng** red

Radical 纟
6 strokes

紅



thread 纟 (233a) + **work** 工(147) = **red** 红

[红海(129) **Hónghǎi** *the Red Sea*]

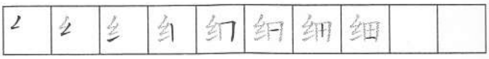
(A young girl is sewing a quilt) She rests for a moment with the **thread** trailing across her **work**. Then she looks down and sees a **red** stain spreading across the fabric — she has pricked her finger without realizing. / *Luckily the **fairy** knows a magic stain-removing spell that she learnt in **Hong Kong**!*

---

234 细 **xì** slender

Radical 纟
8 strokes

細



thread 纟 (233a) + **field** 田(156a) = **slender** 细

[细心(161) **xìxīn** *meticulous*]

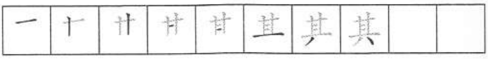
He strung the **thread** backwards and forwards across the **field** (to protect the crops from the birds). It was very **slender** so it would do the job without blocking the light. / *The **dwarf** was satisfied as this would **shield** the crops from the birds (and save him from trying to keep them away).*

Test yourself: 子(17) 点(185) 我(32) 比(228) 观(216) 俩(224) 批(229)
两(222) 本(174) 现(215) 又(52) 肉(221) 切(230) 的(23)

---

235 其 **qí** "this or that"

Radical 八
8 strokes



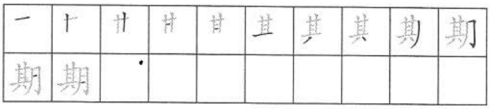
This character corresponds to a wide range of English words (this, that, he, she, it, etc.), depending on the context.

[其他(13) **qítā** *other*]

*/ "Do you want **this or that wheel**?" asked the salesman. "Whichever is **cheaper**," the **fairy** said.*

236 期 **qī** due

Radical 月
12 strokes



this or that 其(235) + **moon** 月(61) = **due** 期

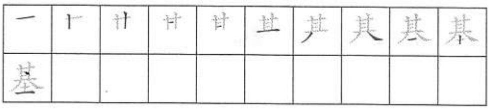
This means due (as in "due for an appointment"); an appointed time; or a period of time. It appears in the names for days of the week (note that there are two words for Sunday).

(Two telescopes are set up to watch the lunar eclipse) The curator says, "You can use **this or that** one to see the **moon** — but hurry, the eclipse is almost **due**." / *But clouds obscure the view, so the **giant**, on a nearby hill, holds up a lump of **cheese** with a bite out of it for them to look at instead!*

星期(136)	**xīngqī**	*week*
[日期(6)	**rìqī**	*date (of event)*]
[长期(172)	**chángqī**	*a long time*]
[学期(82)	**xuéqī**	*term, semester*]
星期日(136, 6)	**Xīngqīrì**	*Sunday*
[星期一(136, 1)	**Xīngqīyī**	*Monday*]
[星期二(136, 2)	**Xīngqī'èr**	*Tuesday*]
[星期三(136, 3)	**Xīngqīsān**	*Wednesday*]
[星期四(136, 24)	**Xīngqīsì**	*Thursday*]
[星期五(136, 36)	**Xīngqīwǔ**	*Friday*]
[星期六(136, 39)	**Xīngqīliù**	*Saturday*]
星期天(136, 76)	**Xīngqītiān**	*Sunday*

237 基 **jī** foundation

Radical 土
11 strokes

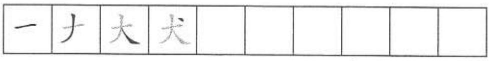


this or that 其(235) + **earth** 土(54a) = **foundation** 基

基本(174)	**jīběn**	*basic, fundamental*
基础(115)	**jīchǔ**	*base, foundation*

"Do you want to use **this or that earth** for the **foundation**?" the builder asks, pointing. / *"In either case we'll need so much that it'll take the **giant** and his **jeep** to transport it."*

238a 犬 **quǎn** dog



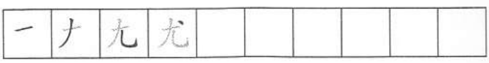
big 大(47) + **a drop** 丶(22a) = **dog** 犬

Compare this character with "too much" (Character 48), which was also formed out of "drop" and "big". It's the same fisherman, but notice how in the stories the drop is on top of him, or falling from him, as appropriate. When appearing on the left as a radical, this character uses the distorted form 犭 (see 263a), in which the drop disappears.

The **big** fisherman felt **a drop** of water on his arm (but there was no cloud in the sky). The **dog** was shaking itself after having been in the river. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

238 尤 **yóu** especially

Radical 尢
4 strokes



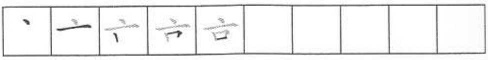
This is a deformation of the previous character.

尤其(235) **yóuqí** *especially*

*/ The **fairy** found the **wheel** useful, **especially** in her **yoga** class.*

239a 亠口 "tall"

lid 亠(25b) + **mouth** 口(5) = **tall** 亠口

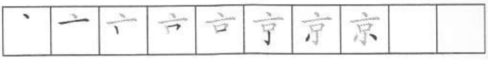


A wooden **lid** fits across the **mouth** of the cave, but (since it is hinged at the top) you need to be very **tall** to open and close it. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

239b 京 **jīng** capital

tall 亠口(239a) + **small** 小(50) = **capital** 京

That is, a capital city. This is not an HSK A character but you will see it in 北京, "Beijing".



There were both **tall** and **small** buildings in the **capital**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

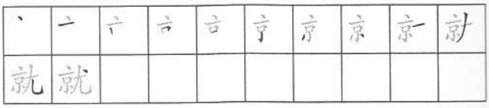
239 就 **jiù** right away

Radical 亠
12 strokes

capital 京(239b) + **especially** 尤(238) = **right away** 就

This character can also mean "regarding, concerning".

一…就…(1) **yī A jiù B** *no sooner A than B*
[就是(30) **jiùshì** *even if; exactly; precisely*]

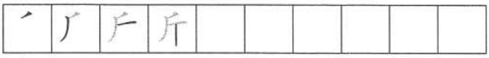


In the **capital** it is **especially** important to get on the train **right away**. / *The **two dwarf** attendants don't like people **joking** around (as everyone's in a rush).*

Test yourself: 厂(149) 么(34) 门(27) 了(66) 又(52) 互(226) 朋(62)
词(231) 大(47) 国(60) 满(225) 村(104) 比(228) 妈(46)

240 斤 **jīn** axe

Radical 斤
4 strokes



*/ The **giant** is sharpening his **axe** on the grinding **wheel**, and has a swig of **gin** every so often to keep up his strength!*

Often used to mean a unit of weight (equivalent to 500 grams).

公斤(119) **gōngjīn** *kilogram*

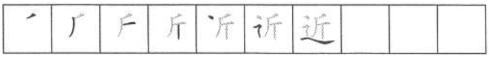
---

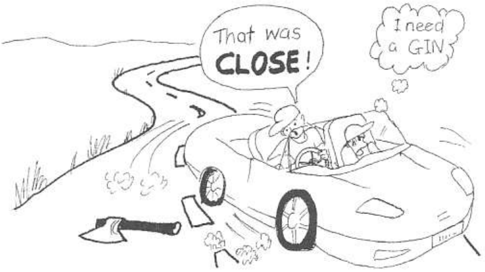
241 近 **jìn** close

Radical 辶
7 strokes

road 辶(26a) + **axe** 斤(240) = **close** 近

[近来(65) **jìnlái** *recently, nowadays*]
[接近(203) **jiējìn** *be close to*]





An **axe** was lying in the **road** and he swerved dramatically to avoid it. “That was **close**!” / *In the passenger seat the* ***dwarf*** *had a swift swig of his* ***gin*** *to recover!*

---

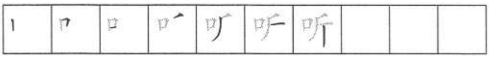
242 听 **tīng** listen

Radical 口
7 strokes

聽

mouth 口(5) + **axe** 斤(240) = **listen** 听

听见(214) **tīngjiàn** *to hear*
听说(67) **tīngshuō** *to hear of; people say (that)*



At the **mouth** of the cave he was working away with an **axe** (to clear the trees which had blocked it) when he thought he heard something and stopped to **listen**. / *A **tingle** ran up the **giant's** spine.*

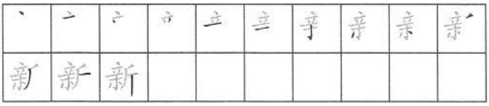
---

243 新 **xīn** new

Radical 斤
13 strokes

kin 亲(196) + **axe** 斤(240) = **new** 新

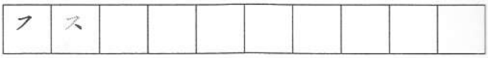
新年(168) **xīnnián** *New Year*



He was so fed up with his **kin** that he felt like taking an **axe** to them and finding a **new** lot. / *The* ***giant*** *chuckled to himself as he thought of the* ***shindig*** *that would create.*

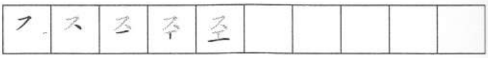
244a ス

underground river



244b 𢀖

channel



underground river ス(244a) + **work** 工(147) = **channel** 𢀖

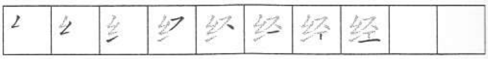
The **underground river** had become silted up so they had to **work** hard to clear a **channel** (so that the flood waters could drain away). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

244 经 **jīng** go through

Radical 纟
8 strokes

經



thread 纟 (233a) + **channel** 𢀖(244b) = **go through** 经

This means "to go through" in the sense of "to experience"; also "to manage"; and there are other derived meanings such as "scriptures" and "longitude".

经过(106) **jīngguò** *go through, pass by*
[经理(158) **jīnglǐ** *manager*]

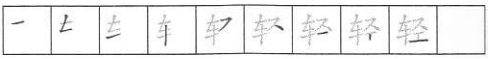
(On a potholing expedition) The leader tied a **thread** around his waist and swam along the **channel** to the next cave; this made it easier for the others to **go through** in turn after him. / *Sitting in the final cave was a* ***giant*** *who* ***jingled*** *some bells (to lead them to him). [Note that we will distinguish jingling (bells) from jangling (coins, keys, chains and all other objects)].*

---

245 轻 **qīng** lightweight

Radical 车
9 strokes

輕



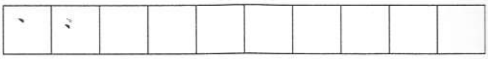
car 车(83) + **channel** 𢀖(244b) = **lightweight** 轻

年轻(168) **niánqīng** *young*

Cars are being allowed along the drainage **channel** but only **lightweight** ones. / *The* ***giant*** *who maintains the channel, has spotted a* ***chink*** *in the channel floor (and so has imposed a weight restriction).*

246a 冫

ice crystals



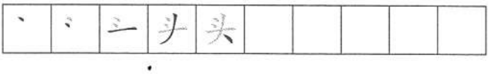
a drop 丶 (22a) + **a drop** 丶 (22a) = **ice crystals** 冫

Drop after **drop** of water in the icy cave slowly builds up a stalagmite of **ice crystals**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

246 头 **tóu** head

Radical 大
5 strokes
頭



ice crystals ⺀(246a) + **big** 大(47) = **head** 头

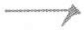
This means both literally a "head" and also more figuratively "chief" or "foremost".

Note that the last stroke is a drop; this character is not really "ice crystals" plus "big", but we've used this breakdown since this is what the character looks like at first glance.

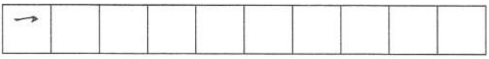
In the cavern, the **ice crystals** were so **big** that he hit his **head** on one. / *The **fairy** conjured up a lamp for him to see by, just as he was about to stub his **toe** on another one.*

[点头(185) **diǎntóu** *to nod one's head*]

247a



"cap"

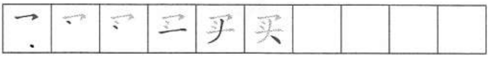


Compare this with "knee" (166a): this is a much longer stroke with a short hook at the end.

---

247 买 **mǎi** buy

Radical ㇖
6 strokes
買



cap ㇖(247a) + **head** 头(246) = **buy** 买

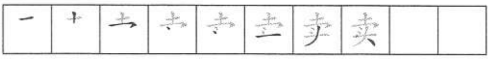
[买不到(9, 74) **mǎibudào** *out of stock*]

(A schoolboy is going out to get illicit cigarettes) He puts a large **cap** on his **head** so that when he **buy**s them he can smuggle them back in it. / ***Teddy** puts on a bishop's **miter** (trying to help, but only drawing attention to the two of them).*

---

248 卖 **mài** sell

Radical 十
8 strokes
賣



ten 十(4) + **buy** 买(247) = **sell** 卖

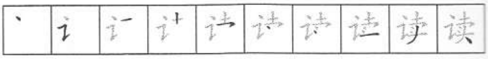
Careful: the top looks a bit like "earth" (54a), but it isn't!

(At the cathedral in Rome) The pilgrim wants to **buy** a **cross** — and there's no shortage of people to **sell** him one! / *One trinket seller, a **dwarf**, is wearing a bishop's **miter** in the hope that people will think his goods are more authentic.*

[买卖(247) **mǎimài** *trade, business*]

249 读 **dú** to read

Radical 讠
10 strokes
讀



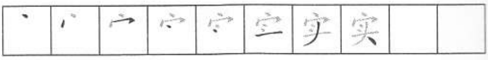
words 讠(67c) + **sell** 卖(248) = **read** 读

[读书(176) **dú shū** *to read, study*]

She has **words** written on flash cards, which she **sells** to schools to help children learn to **read**. / *The* ***fairy*** *sits on the children's* ***duvets*** *and listens to them reading at bedtime.*

250 实 **shí** real

Radical 宀
8 strokes
實



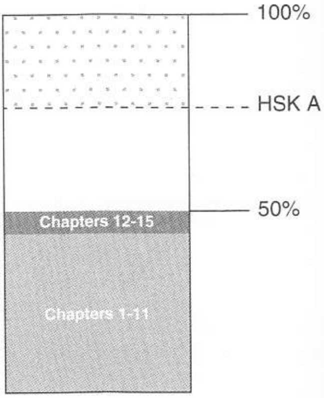
house 宀(91a) + **head** 头(246) = **real** 实

实现(215) **shíxiàn** *to materialize*
[实用(130) **shíyòng** *useful, practical*]
[实行(81) **shíxíng** *put into practice*]
[实在(55) **shízài** *honest; indeed*]

He dreamt that the **house** was falling on his **head**; he woke up and thought it was **real**, because his bed was covered in dust. / *But it was only ash — the* ***fairy*** *had been chain-smoking* ***cheroots****!*

Congratulations! Learning 250 characters is a real achievement. Did you really believe, right at the beginning, that you'd actually be able to get this far?

The flash cards mentioned in the story for Character 249 are actually a very good idea. They are small cards for testing yourself (say credit card sized) with the character on one side and its meaning and pronunciation on the other. Use them to test yourself at odd moments, in supermarket check-out lines for example. You can buy these cards in ready-made sets or make a set yourself. If you mix the cards together, adding the cards for each chapter as you go along, you will be creating the same effect as the Test Yourself panels in this book. Speaking of which:



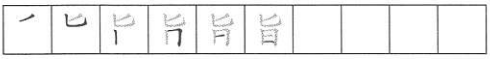
Test yourself:
语(68) 近(241) 五(36) 月(61) 典(232) 倒(75) 机(10)
这(26) 斤(240) 她(16) 汉(78) 妹(64) 啊(143) 轻(245)

Chapter 16

Once again, you have already learned all the basic building blocks you will need for this chapter.

251a 旨 **zhǐ** purpose

spoon 匕 (206a) + **sun** 日 (6) = **purpose** 旨



He left his **spoon** to warm in the **sun** — with the sole **purpose** of making it easier to bend back into shape. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

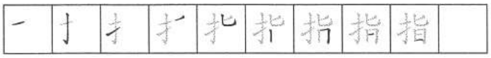
---

251 指 **zhǐ** point at

Radical 扌
9 strokes

hand 扌 (152a) + **purpose** 旨 (251a) = **point at** 指

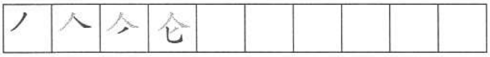
[手指(31)	**shǒuzhǐ**	*finger (incl. thumb)*]
[指出(114)	**zhǐchū**	*to point out*]



(In the school classroom the small children are doing hand-painting) The small boy puts his **hand** on the wall on **purpose** — and the others all **point at** the culprit. / ***Teddy*** *suggests that they turn the paint splodge into a picture of a* ***geranium***.

252a 仑 meditate

tent 人 (19b) + **spoon** 匕 (206a) = **meditate** 仑



“You must sit in your **tent** with a **spoon** balanced on your finger in order to **meditate** properly.” / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

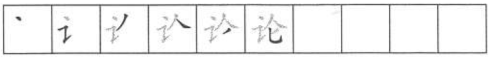
252 论 **lùn** discuss

Radical 讠
6 strokes

論

words 讠 (67c) + **meditate** 仑 (252a) = **discuss** 论

讨论(201)	**tǎolùn**	*discuss, discussion*
[论文(25)	**lùnwén**	*essay, thesis*]



“Read these inspirational **words** and **meditate** on them; afterwards we will **discuss** your insights. / *The* ***ghostly dwarf*** *from* ***London*** *(imagine him with bowler hat and umbrella) has agreed to materialize and join the discussion.”*

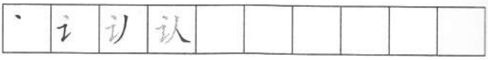
253 认 **rèn** recognize

Radical 讠
4 strokes

認

words 讠(67c) + **person** 人(12) =
recognize 认

认为(122) **rènwéi** *think (that)*
[认得(118) **rènde** *know, understand*]



Words have been scrawled up around the school, saying "**Harry** go home!" — but everyone **recognize**s the handwriting. / *The **dwarf** teacher finally spots the culprit in action and **runs** to apprehend him.*

254 只 **zhǐ; zhī** only; one of a pair

Radical 口
5 strokes

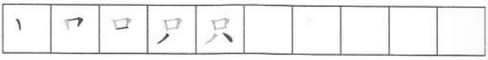
祇 隻

mouth 口(5) + **eight** 八(20) =
only; one of a pair 只

The two traditional forms 祇 and 隻 correspond to **zhǐ** and **zhī** respectively. **zhī** is a measure word, and is also used to refer to things which usually come in pairs.

When this character appears as part of another character we will use the meaning "only" in the equation and the story.

只好(18) **zhǐhǎo** *have to*
[只要(101) **zhǐyào** *provided that*]
[只是(30) **zhǐshì** *only, just, merely*]
[只有(63) **zhǐyǒu** *only if; have to*]
[一只手(1, 31) **yì zhī shǒu** *a hand*]



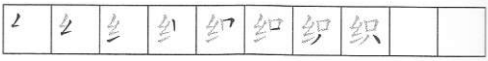
🎞 The **octopus** is at the **mouth** of the cave (it is an underwater cave and we are on the film set for "20,000 Leagues under the Sea"). The main scene will **only** work if they can film lots of swirling water. / ***Teddy** suggests using a **jacuzzi**. They go to see if they can film in the **giant's jacuzzi**.* \ He gives them **one of a pair** of his old gloves to make a squid costume out of!

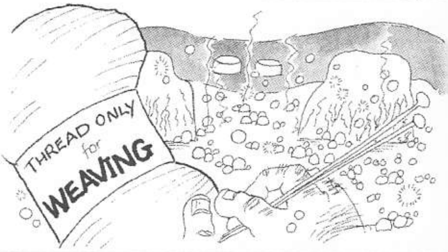
255 织 **zhī** weave

Radical 纟
8 strokes

織

thread 纟 (233a) + **only** 只(254) =
weave 织



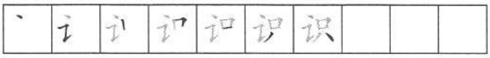


"This **thread** can **only** be used for **weav**ing, not knitting." / *The **giant** likes to relax in his **jacuzzi** and passes the time knitting (but finds this message written on the new thread he has just bought).*

Test yourself:
我(32) 得(118) 和(126) 正(29) 实(250) 了(66) 来(65)
别(79) 理(158) 细(234) 就(239) 时(105) 经(244) 名(70)

256 识 **shí** knowledge

Radical 讠
7 strokes
識



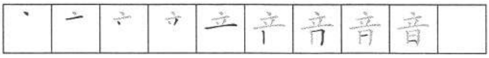
words 讠(67c) + **only** 只(254) = **knowledge** 识

认识(253)	**rènshí**	*know, understand*

(A cookery program on TV) "The **words** of a recipe **only** mean something if you have some **knowledge** of how to cook." / *The **fairy** holds up a **shallot** (and adds, "You have to know your onions!")*

257 音 **yīn** sound

Radical 音
9 strokes



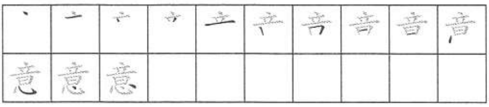
stand 立(177) + **sun** 日(6) = **sound** 音

[语音(68)	**yǔyīn**	*pronunciation*]
[口音(5)	**kǒuyīn**	*accent*]

"If you **stand** this in the **sun** for a while it will make a deep, resonant **sound**. / *But the **giant** won't like it because it upsets his **yin**!"*

258 意 **yì** idea

Radical 音
13 strokes

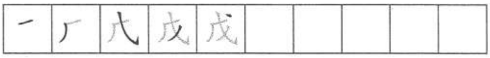


sound 音(257) + **heart** 心(161) = **idea** 意

满意(225)	**mǎnyì**	*satisfactory*
意见(214)	**yìjiàn**	*opinion, view*
同意(160)	**tóngyì**	*agree, approve*
意思(165)	**yìsī**	*meaning*
有意思(63, 165)	**yǒu yìsi**	*interesting*
没意思(169, 165)	**méi yìsi**	*uninteresting*

"If we listen to the **sound** of your **heart**, this will give us a better **idea** of what is going on," the surgeon said. / *The **dwarf** stands by with **ether** for anesthetic.*

259a 戊 **wù** fifth



cliff 厂(149) + **dagger** 戈(32a) = **fifth** 戊

"Dagger" and "cliff" are fused together here (similar to the situation for 我, Character 32).

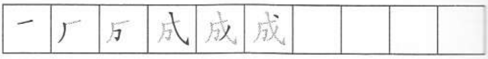
He embeds the **dagger** in the **cliff**, in the middle of the painted star, to indicate that he is of the **fifth** generation. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

259 成 **chéng** turn into

Radical 戈
6 strokes

blade 亅(231a) + **fifth** 戊(259a) =
turn into 成

[成长(172) **chéngzhǎng** *to grow up*]
[成就(239) **chéngjiù** *great achievement*]
[成果(187) **chéngguǒ** *positive outcome*]
[成立(177) **chénglì** *set up, establish*]



The **blade** of the **fifth** lord's dagger **turned into** chocolate. / *He looked around and there was a **chunky fairy** smiling mischievously — clearly she had done it.*

---

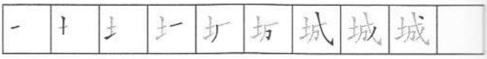
260 城 **chéng** town

Radical 土
9 strokes

earth 土(54a) + **turn into** 成(259) =
town 城

Originally this character meant "city wall", hence its appearance in the name for the Great Wall of China.

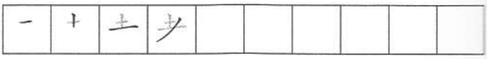
[长城(172) **chángchéng** *the Great Wall*]
[城里(157) **chénglǐ** *in town*]



(A property developer shows investors a site) "This whole expanse of **earth** will **turn into** a **town**," he says. / *The **chunky fairy** lands heavily at his feet and says, "Over my dead body."*

261a 耂 old man

earth 土(54a) + **slide** 丿(34b) = **old man** 耂



The children arrive at the park to find **earth** on their **slide**. It was the **old man** (who lives near the park and objects to the noise). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

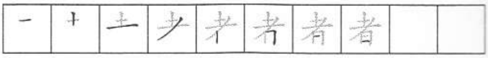
261 者 **zhě** specialist

Radical 耂
8 strokes

old man 耂(261a) + **sun** 日(6) =
specialist 者

This is used as a suffix meaning -ist or -er, i.e. the person doing something.

[作者(207) **zuòzhě** *author*]
[读者(249) **dúzhě** *reader (eg of newspaper)*]



The **old man** has been out in the **sun** for too long (and has a sunburnt head) — so he has to go and see a **specialist**. / ***Teddy** gives him a **jersey** to put over his bald head.*

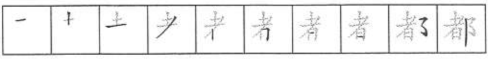
262 都 **dōu; dū** **Radical** 阝 **10 strokes**

1. all
2. metropolis

1. **specialist** 者(261) + **city** 阝(96a) = **all** 都

2. **specialist** 者(261) + **city** 阝(96a) = **metropolis** 都

首都(144) **shǒudū** *capital city*
连...都...(84) **lián A dōu B** *even A is/does B*



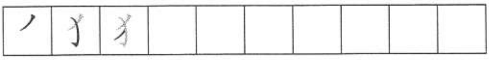
1.

The sheriff was wounded in the gunfight and had to go back East to the **specialist** in the **city** — **all** the people in the town clubbed together to pay for the treatment. */ The **giant** carried him so that the sheriff could **doze** on the way to the hospital.*

2.

The spaceship crew land on the planet looking for a **specialist** in the **city** — but get directed to the **metropolis**. */ The **giant** carries the sick alien wrapped up in a **duvet**.*

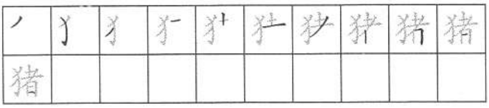
263a 犭 dog



Recall that this is a distorted form of 犬 "dog" (238a).

---

263 猪 **zhū** pig **Radical** 犭 **11 strokes** 豬



dog 犭 (263a) + **specialist** 者(261) = **pig** 猪

The **dog specialist** (in the poodle parlor) looked up, astonished, as a customer brought a **pig** into the shop. */ The **giant** wanted a **jeweled** collar (for his pet pig).*

Character 263 means "pig", but you probably remember that we already had a character for "pig" (109a). We have seen this happen already a number of times — for example, there were two characters for "river".

This isn't a problem, as we are always working in the Chinese to English direction. If you see Character 263 and remember the story, then you will remember that the character means "pig" (however many other characters there are that also mean "pig").

This is just as well, as a third pig will be coming along in Chapter 27!

[猪肉(221) **zhūròu** *pork*]

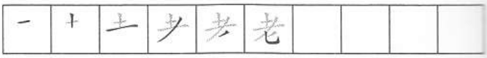
Test yourself: 干(124) 中(33) 每(128) 以(120) 是(30) 红(233) 咱(95)
分(73) 好(18) 新(243) 月(61) 小(50) 织(255) 克(194)

264 老 **lǎo** old

Radical 耂
6 strokes

old man 耂(261a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) =
old 老

"Old" here can mean either "elderly" or "long-standing". It can be used with an older person's surname (e.g. 老王, Lǎo Wáng) as a term of friendly respect. Conversely, xiǎo (Character 50) can be used as a casual, friendly way of talking about (or to) someone younger than you (e.g. 小李, Xiǎo Lǐ).



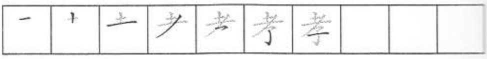
The **old man** ate everything with a **spoon**. He said, "You can do what you like when you are as **old** as I am." / ***Teddy** copies him, slurping **loudly**.*

老二(2) **lǎo èr** *second child*
[老实(250) **lǎoshí** *honest*]
[老人(12) **lǎorén** *elderly person*]
[老百姓(40, 135) **lǎobǎixìng** *the common people*]

265a 孝 **xiào** filial piety

old man 耂(261a) + **child** 子(17) =
filial piety 孝

This strange-sounding phrase means respect for parents and ancestors, which is a powerful tradition in China.



The **old man** was delighted to see that the **child** had been brought up to show **filial piety** ("Unlike most of the youth of today," he mutters). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

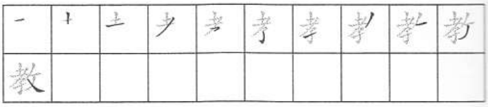
265 教 **jiāo; jiào** teach

Radical 攵
11 strokes

filial piety 孝(265a) + **tap** 攵 (190a) =
teach 教

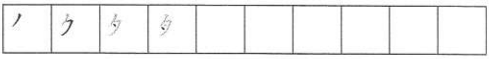
This character has two pronunciations but it means "teach" regardless! So (just this once) we have two different archetypes sharing the same story — except that as we are talking about an i- onglide, there are two of each, and so we end up with four altogether!

[教学(82) **jiàoxué** *teaching*]



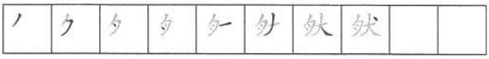
The **filial piety** teacher **taps** impatiently on his desk — he wants to get on and **teach** the lesson. / *But the pupils are all distracted, listening to the sounds of the **jousting** tournament next door — **two dwarves** and **two giants** are in the semi-finals.*

266a 夕 moon



You may recall that this is a distorted form of 月, "moon" (Character 61).

266b 肰 "dog food"



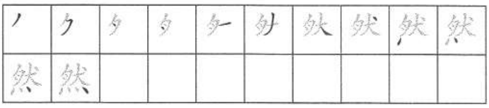
moon 夕(266a) + **dog** 犬(238a) = **dog food** 肰

During the fasting season even the **dog** has to wait until the **moon** is up, before he can have his **dog food**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

266 然 **rán** however

Radical 灬
12 strokes



dog food 肰(266b) + **fire** 灬(185a) = **however** 然

The **dog food** has gone bad so they throw it on the **fire** — **however**, the fire then goes out. / *The* ***fairy*** *can't bear the* ***rancid*** *smell (so conjures the fire into life again).*

This character also means "correct"; "but"; "so"; "this"; "-ly", depending on the context.

然后(150) **ránhòu** *after, and then*
[自然(94) **zìrán** *nature; natural*]
[必然(162) **bìrán** *inevitable, bound to*]
[不然(9) **bùrán** *or, otherwise*]

Test yourself: 如(80) 听(242) 期(236) 外(71) 读(249) 指(251) 过(106)
头(246) 时(105) 只(254) 连(84) 细(234) 在(55) 买(247)

If you are practicing writing characters (as you should), your first attempts will have been awkward, but as with most things you'll be getting better with practice. Try drawing large (1 inch or 2 cm) squares on a piece of paper and practice drawing the characters to fill these squares. What commonly happens otherwise is that your characters get smaller and smaller as you write a line of them.

Don't be too hard on yourself (we all draw gawky-looking characters when we start). Even now, you'll be able to look back at your early attempts and compare them with your most recent ones, and see just how much you've improved.

Finally, try writing out sentences, or just lines of characters, on ordinary paper. To begin with you can mark out squares to write in if you want to, but after that simply imagine the squares and try to keep your characters all equally sized and equally spaced.

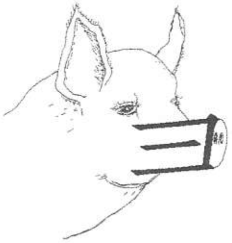
Chapter 17

The three characters 己 已 巳 are very similar but distinct. Look at their three character pictures — you might think of the first character as being a bit **self** conscious because he can feel himself turning into a **snake** — by the 已 stage he's **already** halfway there!

Also on this page, notice the small differences between the important fragments "gold" and "food".

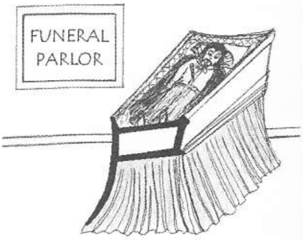
彐

snout



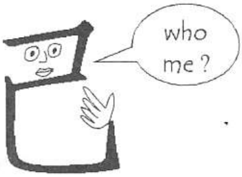
尸

corpse


FUNERAL
PARLOR

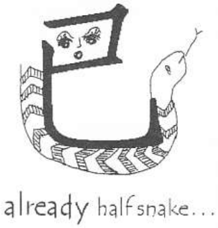
己

self



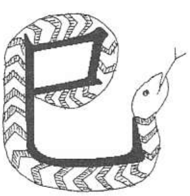
已

already


already half snake...

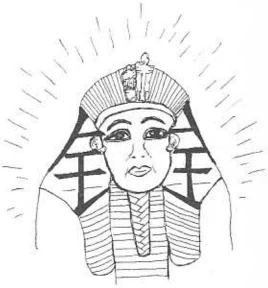
巳

snake



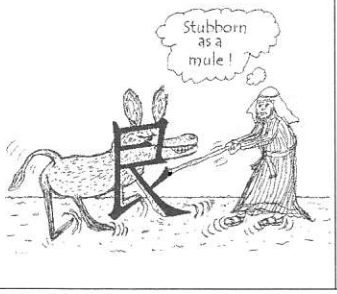
钅

gold



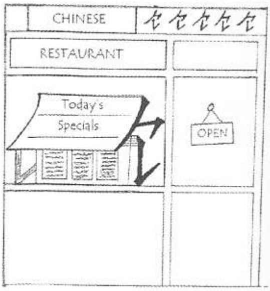
艮

stubborn


Stubborn as a mule!

饣

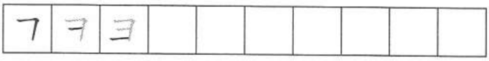
food


CHINESE
饣饣饣饣饣
RESTAURANT
Today's Specials
OPEN

267a

彐

snout



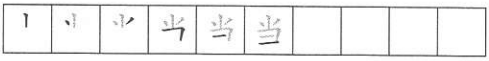
267

当

dāng (dàng)
act as

Radical 小
6 strokes

當



small 小(50) + **snout** 彐(267a) = **act as** 当

The top three strokes are a distorted version of “small” (Character 50).

The character means “to act as” and also “to regard as”.

当然(266)	**dāngrán**	*of course*
[当前(90)	**dāngqián**	*now, at present*]
[当地(54)	**dāngdì**	*local; at that place*]
[当做(210)	**dāngzuò**	*regard as, treat as*]
[当时(105)	**dāngshí**	*at that time*]
[当年(168)	**dāngnián**	*then; in those years*]

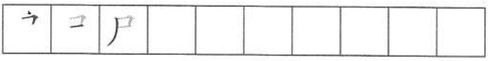
They look like **small snouts**, but **act as** gasmasks. / *The **giant** is handing them out; he has them all **dangling** from his fingers.*

268a

尸

shī
corpse

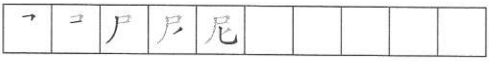
屍



268b

尼

ní
nun



corpse 尸(268a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) = **nun** 尼

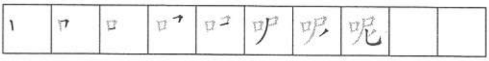
In the convent hospital each **corpse** is sprinkled with holy water from a **spoon** by the senior **nun**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

268

呢

ne
as for

Radical 口
8 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **nun** 尼(268b) = **as for** 呢

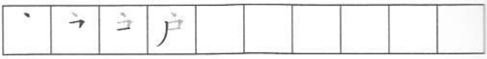
A particle, used at the end of questions. One use is to repeat the question, but now referring to a new subject. It can also be used in a rhetorical way, or to soften the tone of a question or sentence.

The **nun**’s **mouth** dropped open in disbelief. **As for** the other nuns, what about them? Had they noticed it? / *No — which was just as well, as they’d go **nuts** if they realized there was a **robot** creeping up behind them!*

---

269 户 **hù** door

Radical 户
4 strokes



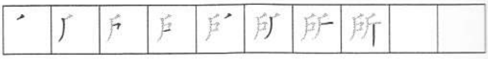
a drop 丶 (22a) + **corpse** 尸(268a) = **door** 户

They put **a drop** of oil on the **corpse** so that they could squeeze it through the **door**. / *The **dwarf**, outraged, said, "Remember **who** that is!"*

---

270 所 **suǒ** building

Radical 斤
8 strokes



door 户(269) + **axe** 斤(240) = **building** 所

The burglars broke down the **door** with an **axe** to gain access to the **building**. / *The **ghostly teddy** who guarded the building threw bars of **soap** at the intruders.*

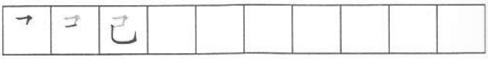
The left-hand side is an older version of "door" (Character 269), and does not appear in any other character in this book. Some books suggest writing the left-hand side of Character 270 by following the stroke-order used for Character 269.

所以(120) **suǒyǐ** *therefore, so*
所有(63) **suǒyǒu** *all*

---

271 己 **jǐ** self

Radical 己
3 strokes



*/ **Teddy** is fitting new special **self**-cleaning **wheels** to his **jeep** (and ends up in need of some cleaning, himself!).*

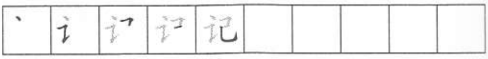
This, and the characters 274 and 275a, are all very similar — use the character pictures for the basic building blocks at the beginning of the chapter to help you remember which is which.

自己(94) **zìjǐ** *self; one's own*

---

272 记 **jì** note down

Radical 讠
5 strokes
記



words 讠 (67c) + **self** 己(271) =
note down 记

(Stuck in a traffic jam) He has no paper, so has to write the **words** down on him**self**, as he wants to **note down** what has occurred. / *In particular, he wants to report the **dwarf** who has blocked the road with his **jeep**.*

[记者(261) **jìzhě** *reporter*]
[日记(6) **rìjì** *diary*]

273 纪 **jì** discipline

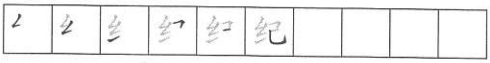
Radical 纟
6 strokes

紀

thread 纟 (233a) + **self** 己(271) =
discipline 纪

This character also means an "age" or "era".

年纪(168) **niánjì** *age*
[纪念(167) **jìniàn** *commemorate*]



(A driver is trying to develop good habits) He ties some color-coded **thread**s round the controls to encourage him to be more **self-disciplin**ed with his driving. / *The* ***dwarf*** *won't rent him a* ***jeep*** *until his driving improves.*

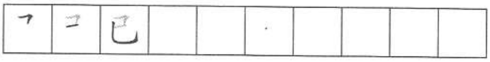
---

274 已 **yǐ** already

Radical 己
3 strokes

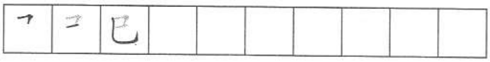
Here the last stroke half-closes the box at the top of the character; this is a halfway house between "self" and "snake" (271 and 275a).

已经(244) **yǐjīng** *already*



/ When they got to the fair, there was ***already*** *a long queue for the Big* ***Wheel***. ***Teddy*** *sat in the queue eating* ***Easter*** *eggs (getting chocolate everywhere).*

275a 巳 **sì** snake



Both this and Character 271 began as a picture of a snake. In fact "self" and "snake" tend to be used somewhat interchangeably in some composite characters.

---

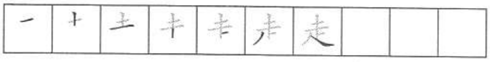
275 走 **zǒu** walk

Radical 走
7 strokes

earth 土(54a) + **stop** 龰(30a) = **walk** 走

We could also break this up into "ten" plus "upright"; make up a story for this alternative if you prefer.

[走道(145) **zǒudào** *footpath; sidewalk*]
[走动(58) **zǒudòng** *stretch one's legs*]

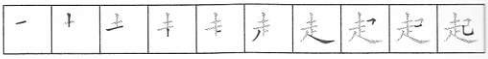


(On a mountain path there is a landslide and soil is pouring down across the path) He had to wait for the **earth** to **stop** moving before he could **walk** any further. / ***Teddy*** *was bouncing around, saying, "I should have come with someone who had the right* ***zodiac*** *sign!"*

276 起

qǐ
rise up

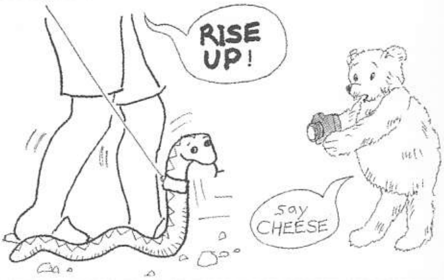
Radical 走
10 strokes



walk 走(275) + **snake** 巳(275a) = **rise up** 起

This is an example of a character where "snake" is often replaced by "self" (see 275a). In fact, using "self" is more usual nowadays (as shown in the main character entry here), but "snake" makes for a more memorable story!

起床(171)	**qǐ chuáng**	*to get up (from bed)*
一起(1)	**yìqǐ**	*together*
起来(65)	**qǐlái**	*stand up, rise up*
从...起(103)	**cóng A qǐ**	*starting from A*
对不起(154, 9)	**duìbuqǐ**	*excuse me, sorry*



You take your pet **snake** for a **walk** — you've trained it to **rise up** to greet your friends. / ***Teddy** wants to take a photo of it. "Say **Cheese**!" he says.*

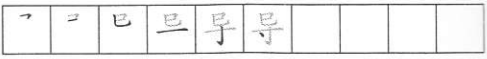
---

277 导

dǎo
guide

Radical 已
6 strokes

導



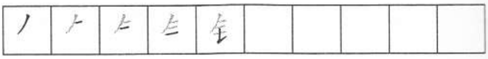
snake 巳(275a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **guide** 导

[指导(251)	**zhǐdǎo**	*supervise, direct*]

(A guided tour in the desert) Nobody saw the **snake inch**ing along the ground behind the tour **guide**. / *That is, until **Teddy** ran up and **doused** it with a bucket of water (and chaos ensued).*

278a 钅

gold



We will treat this as a basic building block. It is the form taken by the character 金 (which is in HSK Level B) when acting as the left-hand side of another character.

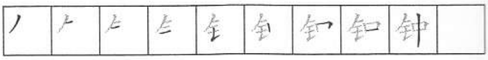
---

278 钟

zhōng
clock

Radical 钅
9 strokes

鐘

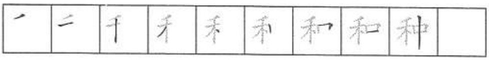


gold 钅 (278a) + **middle** 中(33) = **clock** 钟

点钟(185)	**diǎnzhōng**	*o'clock*
钟头(246)	**zhōngtóu**	*hour (spoken Chinese)*
分钟(73)	**fēnzhōng**	*a minute*

In the **middle** of a **gold** block is set a **clock**. / *The **giant** who made it had also etched his **jonquil** design into the gold. (Remember jonquils? See Character 33).*

279 种 **zhǒng (zhòng)** species — **Radical** 禾 **9 strokes** 種



grain 禾(126a) + **middle** 中(33) = **species** 种

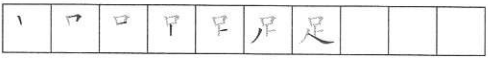
Also more generally "a kind, type, sort"; also "a seed" and "to plant or cultivate".

[种子(17) **zhǒngzi** *seed*]

The teacher says, "In the **middle** of the **grain** is the DNA which defines the **species**." / ***Teddy** jumps up waving a **jonquil** asking, "Does it work for this too?"*

---

280 足 **zú** foot — **Radical** 足 **7 strokes**



mouth 口(5) + **stop** 龰(30a) = **foot** 足

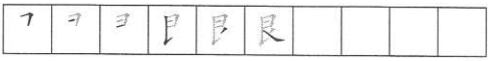
When foot appears as the left-hand side of another character, the bottom is distorted (and looks more like 29a than 30a — see Character 283 below for an example).

[满足(225) **mǎnzú** *satisfy*]

At the **mouth** of the cave they all **stop**ped — nobody dared put a **foot** inside. / *Only when the **fairy zoomed** in to check it out did they relax.*

Test yourself:
儿(21) 阴(97) 上(42) 走(275) 四(24) 者(261) 其(235)
什(35) 到(74) 当(267) 杯(11) 卖(248) 山(110) 洗(139)

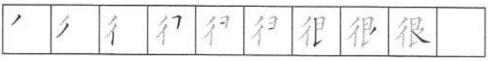
281a 艮 stubborn



Note the stroke order!

---

281 很 **hěn** very — **Radical** 彳 **9 strokes**



step forward 彳 (81a) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **very** 很

得很(118) **A dehěn** *very A*

(Volunteers are sought for a dangerous mission to capture the dragon) Sir Galahad **stepped forward stubborn**ly; he was **very** sure he wanted to do it. / ***Teddy** jumps around excitedly singing, "A dragon **hunt**, a dragon **hunt**!"*

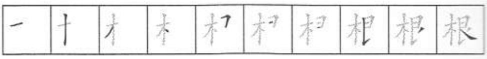
---

282 根 **gēn** root

Radical 木
10 strokes

tree 木(10a) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **root** 根

[根本(174) **gēnběn** *essence; basic*]



The **tree stubborn**ly refused to move a single **root**. / *The* ***giant*** *went to get his* ***gunpowder*** *to shift it.*

---

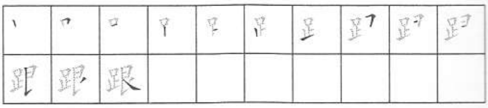
283 跟 **gēn** with

Radical 足
13 strokes

foot 足(280) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **with** 跟

This means "with" in the sense of "together with" (not as in "writing with a pen").

[跟前(90) **gēnqián** *in front of; close to*]



(Think of this as a continuation of the previous story) The landowner puts his **foot stubborn**ly in the door (at the police station). "I'm going to stay here until you come **with** me. / *There's a* ***giant*** *on my land threatening to blow things up with* ***gunpowder****!"*

---

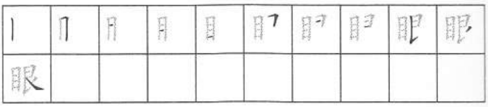
284 眼 **yǎn** eye

Radical 目
11 strokes

eye 目(93) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **eye** 眼

This is the normal character for a person's eye, rather than simply 目.

[眼前(90) **yǎnqián** *before one's eyes; at this very moment*]



The little girl plucked at the stuffed donkey's one remaining **eye** but it **stubborn**ly refused to budge. "I can't have a donkey with one **eye**!" / ***Teddy*** *had always had a* ***yen*** *to be a surgeon and found a new pair of eyes for it.*

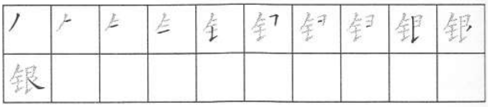
---

285 银 **yín** silver

Radical 钅
11 strokes
銀

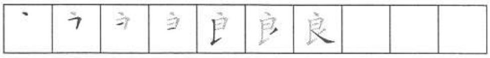
gold 钅(278a) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **silver** 银

银行(81) **yínháng** *bank (for money)*



(At a retirement ceremony) "I want a **gold** watch," he says **stubborn**ly, "**Silver** is for wimps." / *The* ***fairy*** *whispers, "Don't get stressed, it will upset your* ***yin****."*

286a 良 **liáng** good



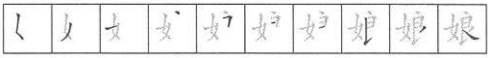
a drop 丶(22a) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **good** 良

A drop of oil on the **stubborn** hinge did a **good** job of loosening it up. ("Good," said the workman, relieved). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

286 娘 **niáng** young lady

Radical 女
10 strokes



woman 女(15) + **good** 良(286a) = **young lady** 娘

Also used to mean "aunt".

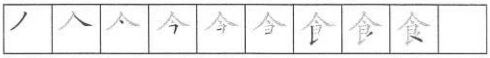
姑娘(192) **gūniáng** *girl, young woman*

(In a deportment class, balancing books on the head, etc) The **woman** in charge said, "**Good**, we'll make a **young lady** of you yet." / *[DIY pronunciation]*.

---

287 食 **shí** food

Radical 食
9 strokes

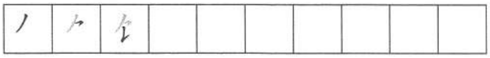


tent 𠆢(19b) + **good** 良(286a) = **food** 食

[食用(130) **shíyòng** *edible*]

(At the scout camp) "The **tent**'s up, that's **good**. Now I need **food**," said the scoutmaster. / *The **fairy** started peeling **shallots** for a meal.*

288a 饣 food

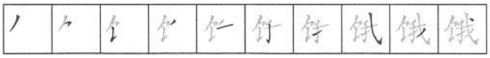


This simplified form of Character 287 is used when it forms the left-hand part of a composite character.

---

288 饿 **è** hungry

Radical 饣
10 strokes
餓



food 饣 (288a) + **I** 我(32) = **hungry** 饿

(In the factory canteen the food is late in arriving) "**Food**, **I** want food! I'm **hungry**!" shout the workers. / *The **dwarf** is the ringleader and **urges** them on.*

Chapter 18

Time to take stock. By now, not only do you understand how all the systems work, but you'll also have a good feel for your own habits and preferences, and what works best for you.

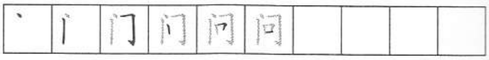
If you look back you'll see that some character pictures and some stories have worked particularly well for you, and you've got them for life. Others you will have tried to learn a few times and keep forgetting. Try looking to see if those that you remember easily have anything in common. It is valuable to know this, because you can tailor the character pictures and stories to suit your own style of learning. We do keep saying that you can replace any story or character picture with one of your own devising, and if you do then it is likely to be memorable, both because of the effort you have put into it, and because it will be personalized to you.

What next? You've learned enough characters now to be able to pick any character further on in the book and learn it straight away. The most you will need to do is learn a basic building block or two if the character uses parts you haven't learned yet. But if you can, then simply carry on, and you will be adding to your knowledge with each character. It will still seem a long way to go to get to 800, but all you need to do is persevere, keeping up a slow, steady routine.

---

289 问 **wèn** ask

Radical 门
6 strokes
問



gate 门(27) + **mouth** 口(5) = **ask** 问

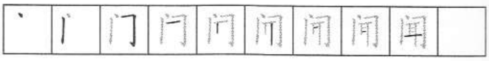
问好(18) **wènhǎo** *ask after; send regards to*

At the castle **gate** you put your **mouth** close to the grill and **ask** (politely) to be allowed in. / *"Just this **once**," says the **dwarf** gatekeeper grudgingly.*

---

290 闻 **wén** hear

Radical 门
9 strokes
聞



gate 门(27) + **ear** 耳(88a) = **hear** 闻

Characters 289 and 290 are actually a mini phonetic series, with 门 acting as the phonetic (even though it is now masquerading as the radical…)

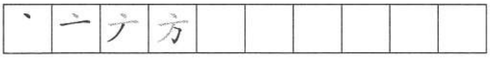
新闻(243) **xīnwén** *news (e.g. on TV)*

You put your **ear** to the **gate** to try and **hear** what's going on inside. / *The **fairy** is telling a fairy tale, starting with, "**Once** upon a time…"*

Test yourself: 门(27) 取(88) 然(266) 识(256) 运(57) 人(12) 跟(283)
其(235) 音(257) 已(274) 尤(238) 们(28) 都(262) 法(87)

291 方 **fāng** direction

Radical 方
4 strokes



lid 亠(25b) + **bow** 𠂊(51a) = **direction** 方

We have called the bottom part of this character "bow", but you might like to think of it as a form of "wrap" (23a) instead, in which case you can modify the story accordingly.

As well as "direction", this character also means "square (shape)". It gives rise to another good phonetic series, represented by Fang the dog.

Some books advocate writing the final two strokes in the reverse order.

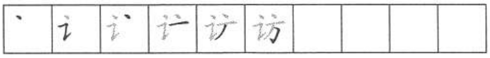
方法(87)	**fāngfǎ**	*method*
[四方(24)	**sìfāng**	*square*]
[西方(100)	**xìfāng**	*the West*]
[对方(154)	**duìfāng**	*the other side/party*]
[地方(54)	**dìfāng**	*place; aspect*]
[立方(177)	**lìfāng**	*cubic (e.g. meters)*]
[比方(228)	**bǐfāng**	*analogy*]

(The vet stops to ask the way from a strange old man who is sitting outside his house) The old man has a **lid** on his head (instead of a hat) and silently **bows** to show which **direction** the vet must go. / *The vet is off to meet the **giant** to attend to his dog, **Fang**. [Fang will appear in the next few stories: picture him as a huge soppy dog].*

---

292 访 **fǎng** visit

Radical 讠
6 strokes
訪



words 讠(67c) + **direction** 方(291) = **visit** 访

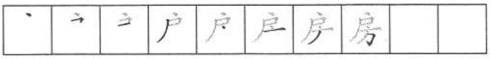
访问(289)	**fǎngwèn**	*visit, interview*

The **words** on the card are **directions**, as this is your first **visit** to these friends. / ***Teddy** and **Fang** (the dog) are mucking about in the back seat of the car.*

---

293 房 **fáng** house

Radical 户
8 strokes



door 户(269) + **direction** 方(291) = **house** 房

This can also mean a room, as well as referring to a complete building.

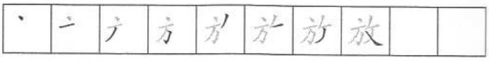
[房子(17)	**fángzi**	*house*]

You knock on the **door** to ask **directions** to your friend's **house**. / *The **fairy** opens the door and casts a spell on **Fang** the dog to enable him to show you the way.*

---

294 放 **fàng** release

Radical 方
8 strokes



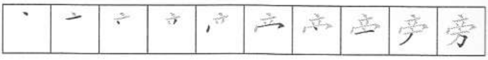
direction 方(291) + **tap** 攵(190a) =
release 放

The convicts communicate **directions** to their accomplice by **tap**ping (on the pipes in Morse code), so that he can carry out the plan to **release** them. / *The **dwarf** jailor sets **Fang** the dog to chase them as they try to escape.*

---

295 旁 **páng** beside

Radical 方
10 strokes



stand 立(177) + **cover** 冖(82a) +
direction 方(291) = **beside** 旁

The last stroke of "to stand" has merged with "cover" (we saw something similar in 产, Character 197).

He had to **stand** up tall to put the **cover** over the **direction** sign, and set up a new sign **beside** it. / *The **fairy** had asked him to divert passing traffic past her new **pancake** stall.*

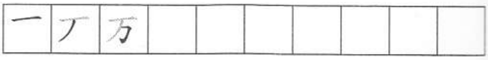
旁边(41) **pángbiān** *side*
[两旁(222) **liǎngpáng** *both sides*]

---

296 万 **wàn** ten thousand

Radical 一
3 strokes

萬



one 一(1) + **bow** 勹(51a) =
ten thousand 万

As well as the exact amount of "ten thousand", this is used to mean "very many" in a more general sense.

As with Character 291, you might like to think of the bottom of this character as "wrap" instead of "bow". The same comment on stroke order applies: some books suggest writing the last two strokes in the other order.

The village elder goes on a pilgrimage to see the fabled **unicorn**, **bows** to him and explains the plight of the village. "**Ten thousand** blessings will fall upon your village as a reward for your courage," says the unicorn magnanimously. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

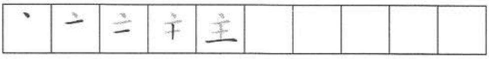
[百万(40) **bǎiwàn** *million*]
[万能(206) **wànnéng** *multi-purpose; all-powerful*]
[万岁(116) **A wànsuì** *Long live A!*]

Test yourself: 马(44) 而(151) 岁(116) 开(85) 论(252) 基(237) 你(51)
有(63) 谢(108) 地(54) 边(41) 起(276) 六(39) 呢(268)

---

297 主 **zhǔ** lord

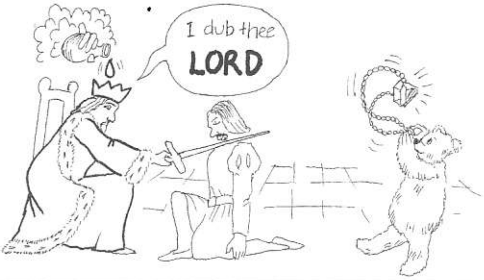
Radical 王
5 strokes



a drop 丶 (22a) + **king** 王(60a) = **lord** 主

Don't confuse this with "plant" (133a).

You will recall that "jade" (60b) was also formed out of "king" and "a drop". Notice how in this story for "lord" the drop is on top of the king, whereas in the story for "jade" the drop was falling from the king. If you keep this in mind you won't get the stories mixed up.



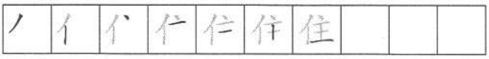
(At the ceremony) **A drop** of the special oil fell on the **king** when the man was presented, indicating that the man is to be made a **lord**. / ***Teddy** is playing around twirling the **jewel** of office until it's needed for the ceremony.*

主要(101) **zhǔyào** *main, major, chief*
[主意(258) **zhǔyi** *idea, view*]
[主观(216) **zhǔguān** *subjective*]
[主动(58) **zhǔdòng** *of one's own accord, on one's own initiative*]
[主人(12) **zhǔrén** *host; proprietor*]
[买主(247) **mǎizhǔ** *customer, buyer*]

---

298 住 **zhù** to live in

Radical 亻
7 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + **lord** 主(297) = **live in** 住

This character means to reside or live in a place (not simply to be alive).

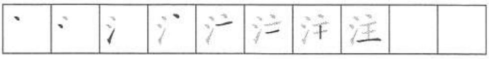
Harry is made a **lord** and given an official house to **live in**. / *The **dwarf** supervises the placing of the lordly **jewel** above the front door.*

[住口(5) **zhùkǒu** *Shut up!*]

---

299 注 **zhù** pour

Radical 氵
8 strokes



water 氵 (78a) + **lord** 主(297) = **pour** 注

This also means "to pay heed", "pay attention", "take notes".

Water is brought to the new **lord** who **pours** it into the ceremonial urn. / *The **dwarf** dips the lordly **jewel** into the urn to turn the water into wine.*

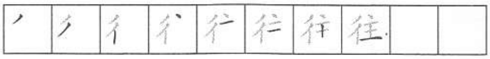
注意(258) **zhùyì** *pay attention to*

300 往
wàng; wǎng
towards; go

Radical 彳
8 strokes

step forward 彳 (81a) + **lord** 主(297) = **towards; go** 往

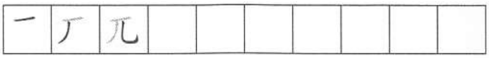
[往往 **wǎngwǎng** *often*]
[已往(274) **yǐwǎng** *in the past*]



"**Step forward**, **Lord** Vader, and walk **towards** the ewok," said the director (on the film set of "Star Wars"). But there is no ewok! / *"Wang! Where's **Wang** the **dwarf**?" calls the director. **Teddy** starts running around calling, "**Wang**! Wang! \* Somebody **go**, **go** and find him!"

301a 兀
"pedestal"

one 一(1) + **boy** 儿(21) = **pedestal** 兀



The **unicorn** uses his horn to lift the small **boy** onto the **pedestal** (so that people can see the new "chosen one"). / *[No pronunciation needed].*

301 元
yuán
yuan

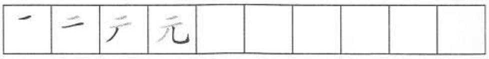
Radical 二
4 strokes

one 一(1) + **pedestal** 兀(301a) = **yuan** 元

This has several meanings: "first"; "chief"; "unit"; "yuan". The last of these is the unit of currency in China, and we will use "yuan" as the soundword in the resulting phonetic series.

Clearly we could also regard this character as "two" plus "boy". We will be meeting "pedestal" again in Chapter 39.

[公元(119) **gōngyuán** *A.D.*]
[日元(6) **Rìyuán** *(Japanese) yen*]



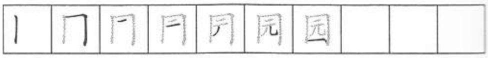
In the town square there is a statue of a **unicorn** on a **pedestal**; people throw **yuan** coins onto the pedestal for good luck. / *At night the **fairy** comes to collect the **yuan** coins for charity.*

302 园
yuán
garden

Radical 囗
7 strokes
園

enclosed 囗(24a) + **yuan** 元(301) = **garden** 园

公园(119) **gōngyuán** *park, public garden*



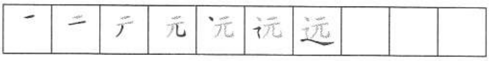
The historic **yuan** coin is **enclosed** in a display case in the memorial Chinese **garden**. / *The **fairy** sets up a souvenir stall to sell replica **yuan** coins.*

303 远 **yuǎn** distant

Radical 辶
7 strokes
遠

road 辶(26a) + **yuan** 元(301) = **distant** 远

[远亲(196)	**yuǎnqīn**	*distant relatives*]
[远近(241)	**yuǎnjìn**	*distance*]



You can see the **yuan** coins lying on the **road** sparkling into the **distance** like cat's eyes. / ***Teddy** tries to pick up all the **yuan** coins but can't hold them all.*

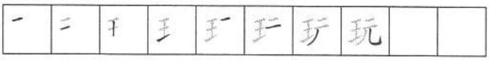
---

304 玩 **wán** play

Radical 王
8 strokes

king 王(60a) + **yuan** 元(301) = **play** 玩

玩儿(21)	**wánr**	*play, have fun*
[好玩儿(18, 21)	**hǎowánr**	*great fun*]



The **king** likes to sneak out with his pockets full of **yuan** coins and **play** the slot machines! / *[DIY pronunciation]*

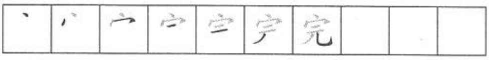
---

305 完 **wán** finish

Radical 宀
7 strokes

house 宀(91a) + **yuan** 元(301) = **finish** 完

完成(259)	**wánchéng**	*fulfil, accomplish*
[用完(130)	**yòngwán**	*use up*]



The high-class building firm has a custom, when building a new **house**, to cement a **yuan** coin to the roof when the work is **finish**ed (to show that they don't penny-pinch). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

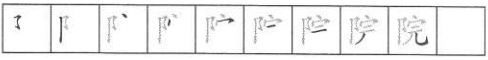
---

306 院 **yuàn** institute

Radical 阝
9 strokes

mound 阝(96a) + **finish** 完(305) =
institute 院

学院(82)	**xuéyuàn**	*college*
[住院(298)	**zhùyuàn**	*to stay in hospital*]
[院子(17)	**yuànzi**	*courtyard, compound*]

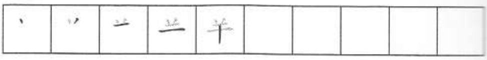


They built a temporary **mound** in front when they had **finish**ed building the **Institute**. / *The **dwarf** stood on it to place the commemorative **yuan** coin above the door, to declare the Institute for Dwarf Studies open.*

307a

𢆉 offend

horns 丷(65a) + **dry** 干(124) = **offend** 𢆉



The ram left his **horns** to **dry** so that there would be no smell to **offend** anyone. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

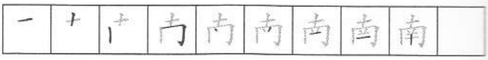
307

南 **nán** south

Radical 十
9 strokes

ten 十(4) + **outer limits** 冂(160a) + **offend** 𢆉(307a) = **south** 南

南边(41) **nánbiān** *the south side*
[南海(129) **Nán Hǎi** *the South China Sea*]



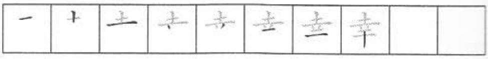
If you **offend** against the rules in the **outer limits**, by going in areas marked with a **cross**, you'll be sent to the **South** Pole (to help count the penguins). / *The **fairy** will conjure up a flying **nanny** goat to take you there!*

308

幸 **xìng** good fortune

Radical 土
8 strokes

earth 土(54a) + **offend** 𢆉(307a) = **good fortune** 幸



You take a pot of **earth** to the housewarming party, which seems to **offend** the new householder — this mystifies you as in your own culture it brings **good fortune**. / *The **dwarf** behind you has brought a pot of **shingle** (and wonders how this will be received ...)*

309

平 **píng** level

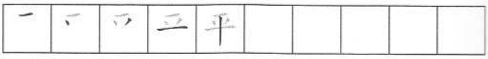
Radical 一
5 strokes

dry 干(124) + **horns** 丷(65a) = **level** 平

Note the "horns" are inside "dry" rather than on top (as in "offend", 307a) and notice once again that this difference is built into the story.

As well as "level", this character also means "flat" or "calm".

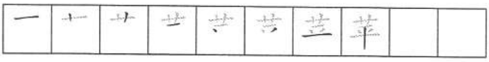
[平安(91) **píng'ān** *safe, safe and sound*]
[和平(126) **hépíng** *peace*]
[平方(291) **píngfāng** *square (e.g. meters)*]
[不平(9) **bùpíng** *unfair; resent*]



The cow put her **horns** inside the tumble **dryer** — which were such a weight that she had to check it was **level** before she could switch it on. / *The **fairy** used the level surface as a **ping-pong** table.*

310 苹 **píng** [apple]

Radical 艹
8 strokes
蘋



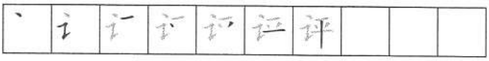
To test whether the **grass** is **level** he uses an **apple** (seeing if it rolls around). / *The **fairy** suggests using a **ping-pong** ball instead (so she can eat the apple!)*

grass 艹(218a) + **level** 平(309) = **apple** 苹

苹果(187) **píngguǒ** *apple*

311 评 **píng** comment on

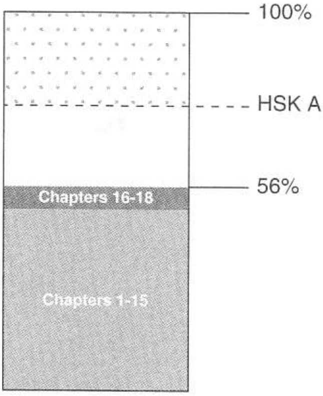
Radical 讠
7 strokes
評



A sign-writer trying to get his **words level** (on a shop sign) asks people across the street to **comment on** how he's doing. / *The **fairy** gives a definitive view by using her **ping-pong** ball as a spirit level.*

words 讠(67c) + **level** 平(309) = **comment on** 评

批评 (229) **pīpíng** *criticize; criticism*

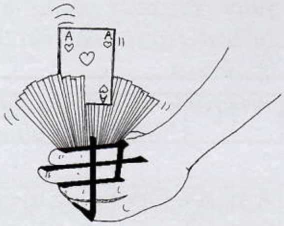


Test yourself: 后(150) 张(173) 那(98) 城(260) 安(91) 动(58) 下(43)
羊(111) 户(269) 认(253) 谢(108) 意(258) 语(68) 很(281)

Chapter 19

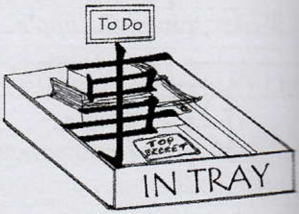
肀

dexterity



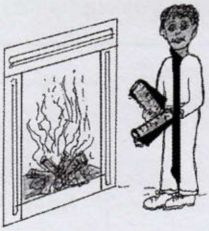
事

affair


To Do
TOP SECRET
IN TRAY

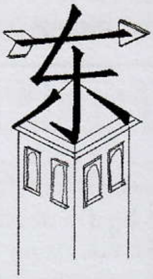
丬

firewood



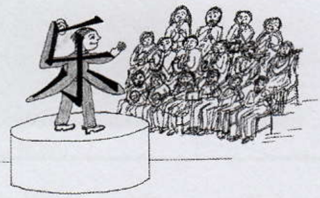
东

east



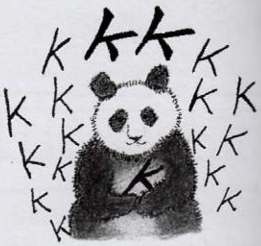
乐

music



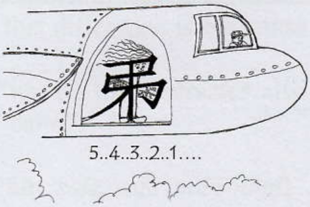
⺮

bamboo



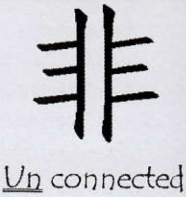
弚

sequence

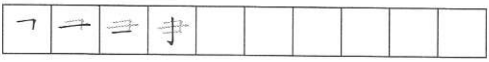


非

un-

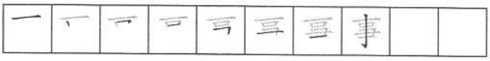

Un connected

312a 肀 dexterity



312 事 **shì** affair

Radical 一
8 strokes



This is a rather complex "basic" character! You can think of a story involving "piled up" (Character 150b) and "dexterity" for it if you prefer.

故事(191)	**gùshì**	*story, tale*
[做事(210)	**zuòshì**	*to work*]
[办事(123)	**bàn shì**	*to handle matters*]
[事实(250)	**shìshí**	*a fact*]
[没事儿(169, 21)	**méishìr**	*it doesn't matter, it's nothing; to have nothing to do*]

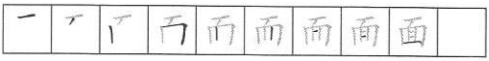
*/ "The **Affair** of the **Wheel**" is the title of a slushy romance between two cyclists. After a few pages the **dwarf** throws the book down in disgust, saying, "What a **charade**!"*

313 面 **miàn** face

Radical 一
9 strokes

麵

thumb tack 𠂇(40a) + **enclosed** 口(24a) + **eye** 目(93) = **face** 面



This character has two completely separate meanings: "face" or "surface"; and "flour" or "noodles". The traditional form only applies to the second meaning.

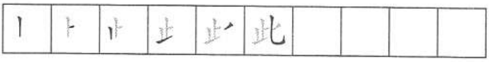
To write the character, notice that the "eye" touches the box of "enclosed" and so the stroke-order changes accordingly.

见面(214)	**jiànmiàn**	*to meet*
方面(291)	**fāngmiàn**	*side, aspect*
[外面(71)	**wàimiàn**	*the outside*]
[前面(90)	**qiánmiàn**	*the front*]
[对面(154)	**duìmiàn**	*the opposite side*]
[地面(54)	**dìmiàn**	*the earth's surface*]

(The children had been throwing flour at each other and some went in the girl's eye) They used a **thumb tack** to secure the bandages **enclosing** the **eye**, which made her **face** look very odd! / *The **two dwarves** grumbled to each other, "These children are a right **menace**," as they cleaned up the mess.*

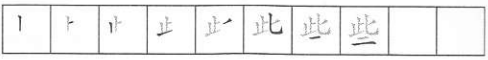
314a 此 **cǐ** this

stop 止(29a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) = **this** 此



"**Stop** using that **spoon** to eat your soup — use **this** one!" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

314 些 **xiē**
a few
Radical 二
8 strokes

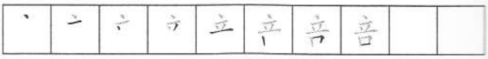


this 此(314a) + **two** 二(2) = **few** 些

那些(98)	**nàxiē**	*those*
一些(1)	**yìxiē**	*a small amount of*
这些(26)	**zhèxiē**	*these*
有些(63)	**yǒuxiē**	*some (items)*

(Air show commentary) “**This biplane** is one of the **few** of its type remaining. / *The **two giants** kindly carried it all the way from their **shed** so it can be here today.*”

315a 咅
spit



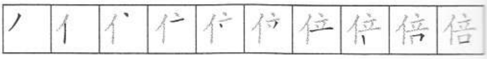
stand 立(177) + **mouth** 口(5) = **spit** 咅

Not only “to spit” but also “to vomit” — a pleasant character all round!

He had to **stand** on the creature’s **mouth** to stop it **spit**ting. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

315 倍 **bèi**
multiple
Radical 亻
10 strokes



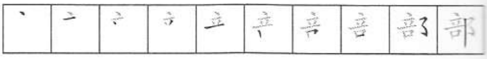
person 亻(13a) + **spit** 咅(315a) = **multiple** 倍

[四倍(24)	**sìbèi**	*four-fold*]

Harry had to **spit** to get rid of the vile taste — but as the spit hit the floor it turned into a tiny version of him. He kept spitting until there were **multiple** versions of him everywhere. / *The **dwarf** had to be called on to take the **baby** Harry’s away!*

---

316 部 **bù**
section
Radical 阝
10 strokes

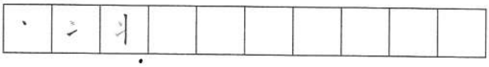


spit 咅(315a) + **city** 阝(96a) = **section** 部

部分(73)	**bùfen**	*portion, part*
干部(124)	**gànbù**	*cadre, party official*
[部门(27)	**bùmén**	*department*]
[内部(219)	**nèibù**	*the interior, inside*]
[部长(172)	**bùzhǎng**	*(govt.) minister*]
[南部(307)	**nánbù**	*southern part*]

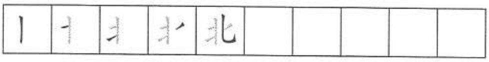
Spitting was not allowed in many parts of the **city** but the bylaw varied from **section** to section. / *The **dwarf** could **boot** out anyone found breaking the law.*

317a 丬 "firewood"



317 北 **běi** north

Radical 丨
5 strokes



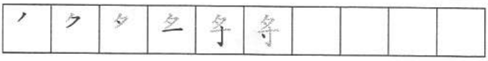
firewood 丬 (317a) + **spoon** 匕 (206a) = **north** 北

It is cheating to use firewood here — the left-hand side of this character is really derived from something else (and it has a different stroke order from "firewood").

北边(41) **běibiān** *the north side*
[北面(313) **běimiàn** *the north side*]
[西北(100) **xīběi** *northwest*]

He packed his **firewood** and his trusty **spoon** in his pack, and set off for the far **north**. / ***Teddy** ran after him crying, "You've forgotten your **bacon**."*

318a 夅 "to lay out"



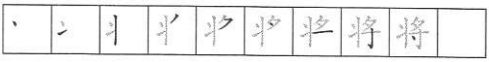
evening 夕 (69a) + **inch** 寸 (104a) = **lay out** 夅

In the fading light of the **evening**, the mountaineers **inch** along a ledge to find a place to **lay out** their sleeping bags for the night. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

318 将 **jiāng** going to

Radical 丬
9 strokes

將



firewood 丬 (317a) + **lay out** 夅 (318a) = **going to** 将

This time it really is firewood!

This character means "going to", "about to", but be aware that it also has a number of other meanings.

将来(65) **jiānglái** *(in the) future*
[将要(101) **jiāngyào** *about to; going to*]

"You should have brought the **firewood** and **laid out** the fire by now." "I was just **going to**!" / *The **two giants jangled** the hearth irons, impatient to have their fire made up.*

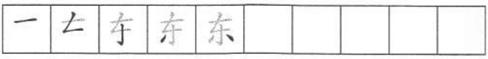
Test yourself: 手(31) 生(133) 灯(182) 教(265) 放(294) 大(47) 辛(195)
所(270) 来(65) 幸(308) 成(259) 闻(290) 朋(62) 期(236)

319 东 **dōng**
east

Radical 一
5 strokes
東

Notice how similar this character is to “car” (Character 83), “music” (Character 320 below), and especially to “select” (713a).

东边(41)	**dōngbiān**	*the east side*
东西(100)	**dōngxi**	*thing*
[东北(317)	**dōngběi**	*northeast*]
[东方(291)	**dōngfāng**	*the East, Orient*]



*/ The **giant** took the big **wheel** from the **east** gate of the city (to fix his cart) and made a quick getaway on his **donkey**!*

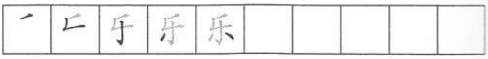
320 乐 **yuè** (**lè**)
music

Radical 丿
5 strokes
樂

This story is attempting to give you some help with what is really a DIY pronunciation.

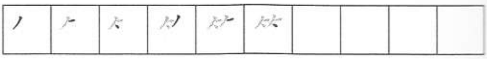
With the pronunciation **lè**, 乐 also means “happy”, as in the phrase “Happy Birthday”.

音乐(257)	**yīnyuè**	*music*



*/ The **music** box on **wheels** (that is, a barrel organ) has been set up outside the **dwarf**'s house again, and he comes out to complain: “**You, eh**? I've told you before, go and play somewhere else!”*

321a ⺮
bamboo

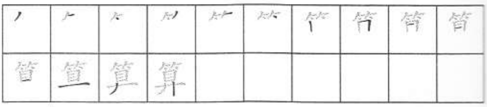


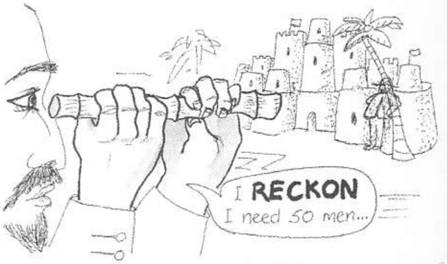
321 算 **suàn**
reckon

Radical ⺮
14 strokes

bamboo ⺮(321a) + **eye** 目(93) +
two hands 廾(85a) = **reckon** 算

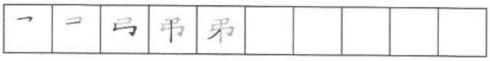
打算(153)	**dǎsuàn**	*plan; intend*





The pirate captain raised the **bamboo** telescope to his **eye** and steadied it with **two hands**. “I **reckon** I'll need fifty men to storm that castle,” he said to his crew. / *But it was actually a **sand** castle that the **ghostly dwarf**, who guarded the island, had built to deter pirates.*

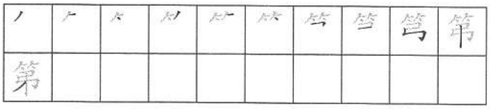
322a 𢎗 sequence



---

322 第 **dì** Number

Radical ⺮
11 strokes



bamboo ⺮(321a) + **sequence** 𢎗(322a) = **Number** 第

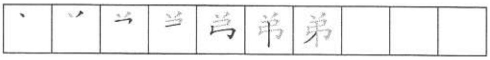
第一(1) **dìyī** *Number 1*

(In the panpipes factory) The **bamboo** pipes have to be sorted into the right **sequence** and labeled **Number** 1, **Number** 2, and so on. / *The* ***dwarf*** *has been* ***demoted*** *(so is given this job, which he thinks is beneath him).*

---

323 弟 **dì** younger brother

Radical 丷
7 strokes

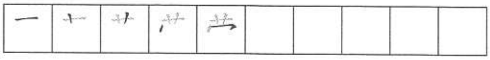


horns 丷(65a) + **sequence** 𢎗(322a) = **younger brother** 弟

弟弟 **dìdi** *younger brother*

The goats were all being lined up, the size of their **horns** determining their place in the **sequence**. One goat noticed that his **younger brother** had sneaked in above him. / *He told the* ***dwarf*** *(organizing the line-up), so that his brother was* ***demoted****.*

324a 𫇦 glowing



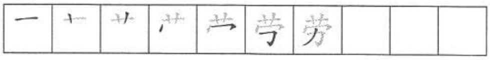
grass 艹(218a) + **cover** 冖(82a) = **glowing** 𫇦

They tried to hide the radioactive waste by putting a **cover** over it and putting **grass** on top of that, but it soon started **glowing**, which gave the game away. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

324 劳 **láo** toil

Radical 艹
7 strokes
勞



glowing 𫇦(324a) + **power** 力(14) = **toil** 劳

劳动(58) **láodòng** *do (manual) work*

Keeping the furnaces **glowing** at the **power** station was hard **toil**. / *The* ***fairy*** *played* ***loud*** *music for the workers (so that they could hear it over the roar of the furnaces while they worked).*

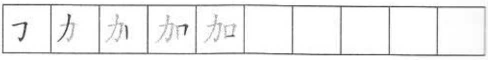
---

325 加 **jiā** add

Radical 力
5 strokes

power 力(14) + **mouth 口**(5) = **add 加**

[加以(120) **jiāyǐ** *moreover; ought to*]
[加工(147) **jiā gōng** *to process (unfinished products)*]



A **power** socket has been installed by the **mouth** of each cave, to **add** the cave dwelling area to the electricity grid. / ***Two giant*** *workmen arrive, carrying a huge* ***jar*** *of plugs and switches between them.*

---

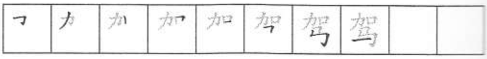
326 驾 **jià** drive (a vehicle)

Radical 马
8 strokes

駕

add 加(325) + **horse 马**(44) = **drive 驾**

劳驾(324) **láojià** *may I trouble you?*



The cart salesman says, "All you have to do is **add** a **horse** and you can **drive** it away!" / *The* ***two dwarves*** *who are thinking of buying the cart are now arguing over who should smash the* ***jar*** *against the side to "launch" it (like a boat) and who should drive it away.*

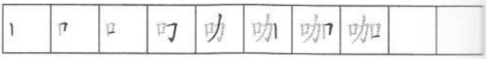
---

327 咖 **kā** [coffee]

Radical 口
8 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **add 加**(325) = **coffee 咖**

This character, and Character 329 below, are both used for their sound. You will only ever see them when they appear together in the word 咖啡 (**kāfēi**, "coffee").



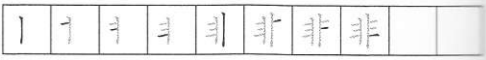
As he put the mug to his **mouth** he remembered that he must **add** milk to his **coffee**. / *The* ***giant*** *got a* ***carton*** *of milk from his fridge.*

---

328 非 **fēi** un-

Radical 非
8 strokes

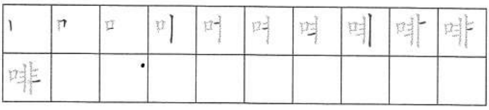
[非法(87) **fēifǎ** *unlawful, illegal*]



/ *"It's* ***un-wheel****" was the catch-phrase of the* ***famous giant*** *with the speech impediment!*

329 **啡** **fēi** [coffee]

Radical 口
11 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **un-** 非(328) = **coffee** 啡

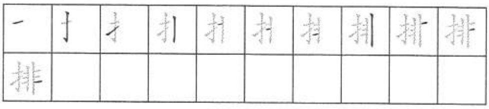
咖啡(327) **kāfēi** *coffee*

As he put the mug to his **mouth** he realized it was **un**sweetened **coffee**. / *The* ***famous giant*** *pulled a face.*

---

330 **排** **pái** line

Radical 扌
11 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **un-** 非(328) = **line** 排

安排(91) **ānpái** *arrange*

He had to use his bare **hands** to **un**couple the **line** of rail cars. / *The* ***fairy*** *whispered to him to disconnect the* ***pipes*** *too.*

Test yourself: 就(239) 饿(288) 今(166) 妹(64) 眼(284) 云(56) 名(70)
五(36) 根(282) 夫(49) 导(277) 猪(263) 为(122) 足(280)

Chapter 20

With this chapter you will have completed half the chapters in the book. Once again, we already have available all the basic building blocks we will need.

---

331 反 **fǎn** oppose

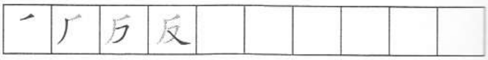
Radical 又
4 strokes

drag 厂(150a) + **right hand** 又(52) =
oppose 反

The older form of this character uses “cliff” instead of “drag” and you will still see this form around.

It is often translated as “anti-”, “counter-”.

反对(154) **fǎnduì** *oppose, object to*
[反动(58) **fǎndòng** *reactionary*]



The young prince has to be **drag**ged along to **shake hands** with all the dignitaries, but is **oppose**d to all the pomp and circumstance (and vows to do things differently when he is king). / ***Teddy*** *is happy though, as he gets to play* ***fanfares*** *on his trumpet.*

---

332 饭 **fàn** meal

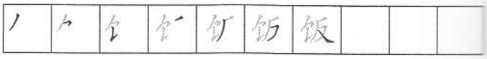
Radical 饣
7 strokes

飯

food 饣 (288a) + **oppose** 反(331) =
meal 饭

Used to mean “cooked rice”, or more generally, “a meal”.

午饭(125) **wǔfàn** *lunch*
饭店(186) **fàndiàn** *hotel; restaurant*



There were so many types of **food** that the fussy guest was **oppose**d to (on ideological grounds) that it was difficult to put together a **meal** for him. / *The* ***dwarf*** *chef demands that a* ***fanfare*** *be played (to accompany his entrance with the resulting meal, after all the trouble he’s gone to).*

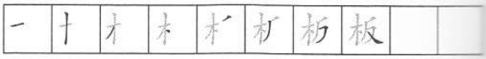
---

333 板 **bǎn** board

Radical 木
8 strokes

tree 木(10a) + **oppose** 反(331) =
board 板

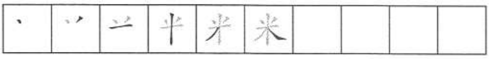
[老板(264) **lǎobǎn** *boss, proprietor*]



The **tree** is **oppose**d to the new highway and he is certainly opposed to them nailing a **board** to him announcing the development. / ***Teddy*** *pulls the board off and* ***bandages*** *up the holes.*

334 米 **mǐ** rice

Radical 米
6 strokes



horns 丷(65a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **rice** 米

Also means "meter", the unit of length; (see also 777a for another character for "meter").

[大米(47) **dàmǐ** *rice*]
米饭(332) **mǐfàn** *cooked rice*

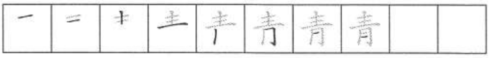
(A party game) "Animal **horns** have been hidden in the **tree**, with **rice** inside — you have to climb up, find a horn and bring it down without spilling any rice. Who wants to try it?" / *"**Me**", says **Teddy**, "**me, me, me!**"*

Test yourself: 己(271) 政(190) 学(82) 问(289) 首(144) 太(48) 老(264)
目(93) 他(13) 部(316) 院(306) 第(322) 房(293) 店(186)

---

335 青 **qīng** blue-green

Radical 青
8 strokes



plant 龶(133a) + **moon** 月(61) = **blue-green** 青

The character means either "blue" or "green" (though there are also separate characters for each of these two colors) so we have called it both!

This character gives rise to a good phonetic series, coming right up. In fact we have *two* phonetic series, one pronounced "qing" and the other "jing". We have already seen something like this with Characters 133 to 136.

(On a cliff face) The **plant** in the **moon**light looks **blue**, but it's actually **green**. / *Only the **giant** is tall enough to see into the **chink** of rock where the plant is growing.*

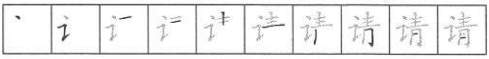
This situation arose because the pronunciations have gradually changed down the centuries (although you can see that the two sounds are still very similar), while the characters stayed the same.

青年(168) **qīngnián** *a youth*
[年青(168) **niánqīng** *young*]

---

336 请 **qǐng** please

Radical 讠
10 strokes
請



words 讠(67c) + **blue-green** 青(335) = **please** 请

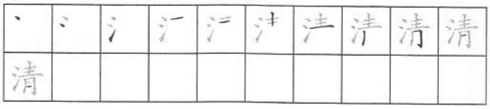
This is used in various phrases such as "Please come in", and also means "to invite".

请问(289) **qǐngwèn** *Excuse me, …*

The **words** are written in big **blue-green** metal letters on the cliff face: "**Please** don't disturb the plants." / ***Teddy** clambers up on the letters to peer into the **chink**.*

337 清 **qīng** transparent

Radical 氵
11 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **blue-green** 青(335) =
transparent 清

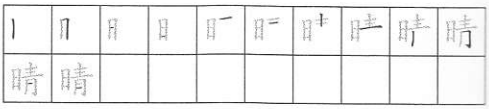
[清理(158) **qīnglǐ** *to put in order, sort out*]

When **water** falls on the **blue-green** plant it turns it **transparent**. / *The* ***giant*** *verifies this by peeping into the* ***chink*** *in the rock.*

---

338 晴 **qíng** fine weather

Radical 日
12 strokes

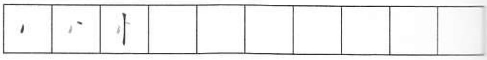


sun 日(6) + **blue-green** 青(335) =
fine weather 晴

[晴天(76) **qíngtiān** *a sunny day*]

The **sun** turning the plant **blue-green** again is the first sign of **fine weather**. / *The* ***fairy*** *keeps flitting up to the* ***chink*** *to check out this natural barometer.*

339a 忄 heart



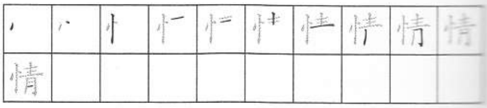
This is the form taken by Character 161 when it appears as the left-hand side of a character.

Some books suggest writing the strokes in the order left to right.

---

339 情 **qíng** state of affairs

Radical 忄
11 strokes



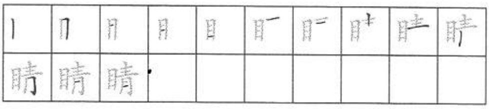
heart 忄(339a) + **blue-green** 青(335) =
state of affairs 情

This and the previous four characters form a phonetic series based on 青 (Character 335). The following two characters form a second series based on the same character but with a different pronunciation.

事情(312) **shìqíng** *affair, matter*
[同情(160) **tóngqíng** *sympathy*]
[心情(161) **xīnqíng** *mood, state of mind*]

The **heart** of the plant only turns **blue-green** when this **state of affairs** (the fine weather) persists. / *Only the* ***fairy*** *can get right inside the* ***chink*** *to see the color change.*

340 睛 **jīng** pupil (of eye) **Radical 目** **13 strokes**



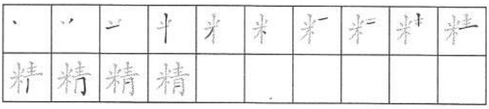
eye 目(93) + **blue-green** 青(335) = **pupil** 睛

眼睛(284) **yǎnjīng** *eye*

"Color your **eyes** with **blue-green** eye shadow to set off your **pupils**!" / *The **giant** fancies a job in advertising and is trying to write **jingles** (this is his first effort, for a cosmetics company).*

---

341 精 **jīng** splendid **Radical 米** **14 strokes**



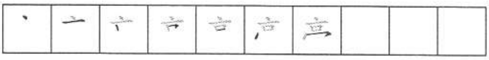
rice 米(334) + **blue-green** 青(335) = **splendid** 精

[精力(14) **jīnglì** *energy, vigor*]

"**Blue-green rice** is **splendid**!" / *Another of the **giant's** advertising **jingles**.*

Test yourself: 友(53) 说(67) 利(132) 平(309) 分(73) 倍(315) 样(112)
己(271) 本(174) 纪(273) 倒(75) 近(241) 种(279) 弟(323)

342a 亠口冖 "gazebo"

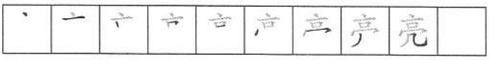


tall 亠口(239a) + **cover** 冖(82a) = **gazebo** 亠口冖

Erect **tall** poles and sling a **cover** over the top, and you have a **gazebo**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

342 亮 **liàng** shining **Radical 亠** **9 strokes**



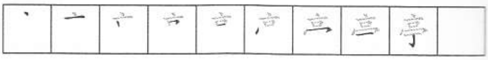
gazebo 亠口冖(342a) + **several** 几(7) = **shining** 亮

In some older typefaces "several" is replaced by "boy" (Character 21) in this character.

月亮(61) **yuèliàng** *the moon*

In the **gazebo** were **several** golden statues of a young boy, **shining** so brightly in the sun that they were dazzling passers by. / *The **two dwarves** had found the statues **languishing** in a back room at the museum and had polished them up (rather too well it seems!)*

343a 亭 tíng pavilion



gazebo 𠅘(342a) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **pavilion** 亭

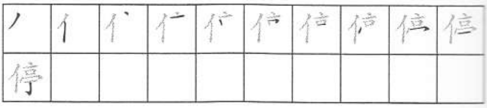
This character is also used for a small kiosk or stall.

Inside the **gazebo** is a box of **nail**s so the carpenter can convert it into a **pavilion** (by nailing up walls to it). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

343 亭 **tíng** halt

Radical 亻
11 strokes



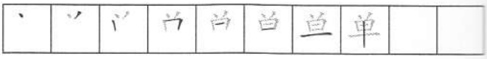
person 亻(13a) + **pavilion** 亭(343a) = **halt** 停

Harry wanders into the **pavilion** and **halt**s in his tracks. / *A beautiful* ***fairy*** *hovering near the ceiling sends a* ***tingle*** *down his spine.*

---

344 单 **dān** single

Radical 丷
8 strokes
單



horns 丷(65a) + **field** 田(156a) + **ten** 十(4) = **single** 单

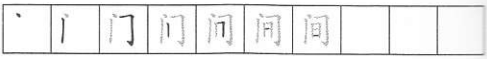
[单位(178) **dānwèi** *work unit*]
[单词(231) **dāncí** *a word*]
[单人床(12, 171) **dānrénchuáng** *single bed*]

They carried **horns** into the **field** and tied them to a **cross** which marked where the **single** rare flower would bloom. / *Unfortunately the* ***giant*** *came along and picked it, thinking it was a* ***dandelion****!*

---

345 间 **jiān** room

Radical 门
7 strokes
間



gate 门(27) + **sun** 日(6) = **room** 间

This also means "between".

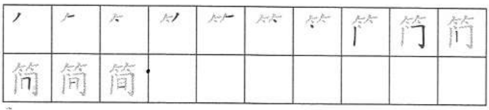
房间(293) **fángjiān** *a room*
中间(33) **zhōngjiān** *center; among*
时间(105) **shíjiān** *a period of time*
之间(121) **A B zhījiān** *between A and B*
[洗手间(139, 31) **xǐshǒujiān** *washroom, toilet*]

The huge city **gates** blocked the **sun** from the **room**. / *The* ***two giants*** *set up a* ***generator*** *to provide lighting.*

---

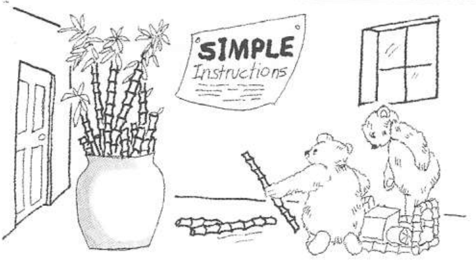
346 简 **jiǎn** simple

Radical ⺮
13 strokes
簡



bamboo ⺮(321a) + **room** 间(345) =
simple 简

简单(344) **jiǎndān** *simple*



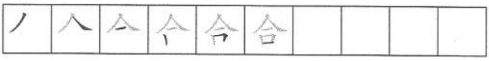
The **bamboo** stands ready in the **room** and a piece of paper headed "**Simple** Instructions" is pinned to the wall. / *The* ***two teddies*** *(rather optimistically) set about building their own* ***generator****.*

Test yourself: 算(321) 住(298) 记(272) 银(285) 理(158) 方(291) 排(330)
南(307) 钟(278) 亲(196) 娘(286) 访(292) 字(92) 完(305)

---

347 合 **hé** join together

Radical 人
6 strokes



combine 亼(59a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
join together 合

This means "to join together" or "combine"; hence also "to suit" or "suitable".

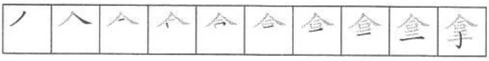
[合理(158) **hélǐ** *logical, reasonable*]
[合作(207) **hézuò** *co-operation*]
[合同(160) **hétong** *agreement, contract*]

(At the end of the marriage ceremony) They **combined mouths** in a kiss for so long that they found they had become **joined together**. / *All very embarrassing, as they had to shuffle along to the* ***fairy*** *who brewed up a* ***herbal*** *remedy to separate them.*

---

348 拿 **ná** using

Radical 手
10 strokes



join together 合(347) + **hand** 手(31) =
using 拿

This character means "to grasp" or "hold in the hand"; hence "using".

[拿去(86) **náqù** *to take (away)*]

To make a long table the carpenter **joined together** two pieces of wood — with a **hand** underneath to support them while **using** a screwdriver in the other hand. / *The* ***fairy*** *had supplied wood with a beautiful swirling grain from the* ***gnarled*** *tree.*

349 拾

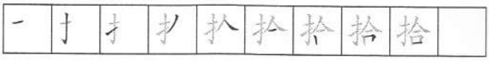
shí
pick up

Radical 扌
9 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **join together** 合(347) = **pick up** 拾

This character and the previous one are another pair of characters made up from the same components. Notice that in the previous story the hand is *underneath*, to reflect this difference.

拾 is used for "ten" (instead of 十) on bank checks, to prevent alterations.



(The king says to the princess) "You must accept the **hand** of the winning suitor and **join together** with him in matrimony. Each suitor will **pick up** the marital plate. / *The* ***fairy*** *will sit on the plate with a* ***shallot*** *balanced on her head, and the one who keeps it balanced there the longest will be the winner."*

---

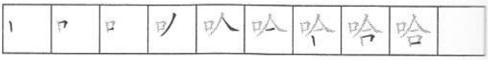
350 哈

hā
laugh

Radical 口
9 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **join together** 合(347) = **laugh** 哈

哈哈 **hāhā** *(sound of laughter)*



At the **mouth** of the cave the potholers are **joined together** with ropes so nobody can get lost, when they hear a **laugh** booming round the cave. / *They run in all directions, falling over the ropes, and the* ***giant*** *laughs even* ***harder***.

---

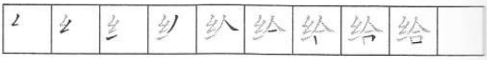
351 给

gěi (jǐ)
for (someone)

Radical 纟
9 strokes

給

thread 纟(233a) + **join together** 合(347) = **for** 给



He took colored **threads** which he **joined together**, plaiting them into a bracelet. But who is it **for**? / *For* ***Teddy's*** *new girlfriend, the* ***geisha***.

---

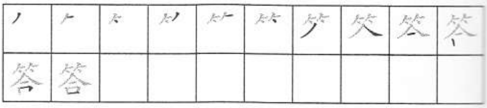
352 答

dá (dā)
answer

Radical ⺮
12 strokes

bamboo ⺮(321a) + **join together** 合(347) = **answer** 答

回答(202) **huídá** *to reply, answer*



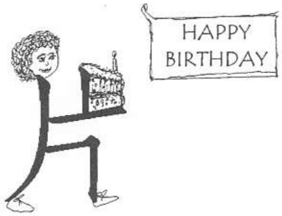
In the old days a couple had to ask the village **bamboo** pipe if they were suitable to **join together** in marriage — a lot depended on the **answer** it gave. / *But it was really only the* ***fairy*** *in the* ***dark*** *who was whispering the answers.*

Chapter 21

And so, after the first twenty chapters, onwards into the second twenty. This is where you need to keep to your routine, slowly and steadily, and after a few more chapters it will be all downhill.

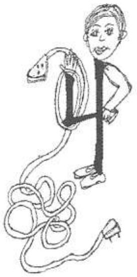
片

slice


HAPPY BIRTHDAY

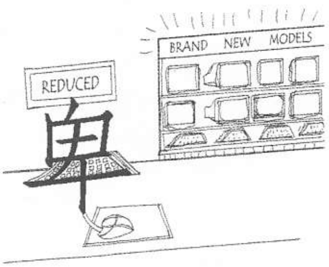
丩

entangle



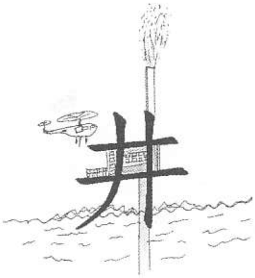
卑

inferior


REDUCED
BRAND NEW MODELS

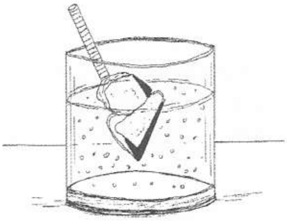
井

a well



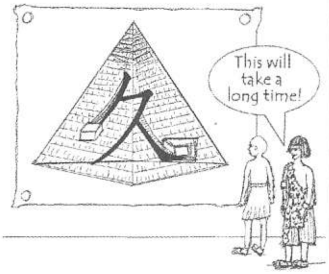
冫

ice



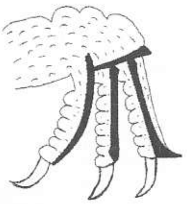
久

long time


This will take a long time!

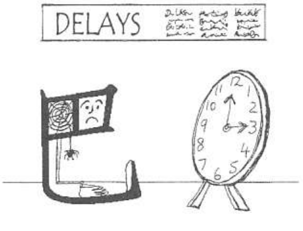
爪

claw

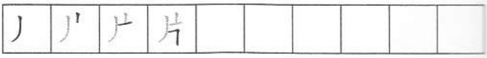


巴

wait for



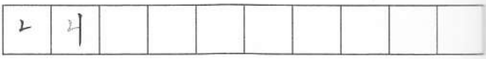
353 片
piàn
slice
Radical 片
4 strokes



[片面(313) **piànmiàn** *onesided, unilateral*]

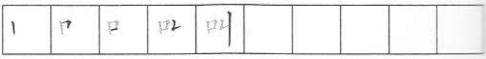
/ (It's the racing driver's birthday) They all want a ***slice*** *of the birthday cake, which is in the shape of a steering* ***wheel****. The* ***two dwarf*** *chefs carry the cake up to the* ***penthouse*** *where the party is in full swing.*

354a 丩
"entangle"



---

354 叫
jiào
call
Radical 口
5 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **entangle** 丩(354a) = **call** 叫

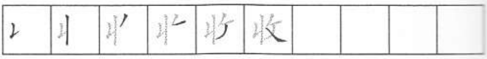
This can mean both "to call" and "to be called" (as in "I'm called Joe.")

[叫做(210) **jiàozuò** *be called, be known as*]
[叫门(27) **jiàomén** *call at the door*]

At the **mouth** of the cave you have become **entangled** in the brambles and **call** for help. / *Unfortunately the* ***two*** *mountain rescue* ***dwarves*** *are watching the* ***jousting*** *on TV (and can't hear you calling as they are too busy arguing over which is the better team).*

---

355 收
shōu
accept
Radical 攵
6 strokes

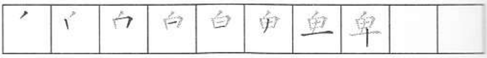


entangle 丩(354a) + **tap** 攵(190a) = **accept** 收

收拾(349) **shōushi** *put in order, tidy up*
[收音机(257, 10) **shōuyīnjī** *radio set (receiver)*]

(In a mountaineering contest) A climber gets **entangle**d in his ropes and has to **tap** on the rocks to attract attention — he has to **accept** help from his bitter rival. / *The* ***giant****, who would normally do the rescues, is away watching the* ***show-jumping***.

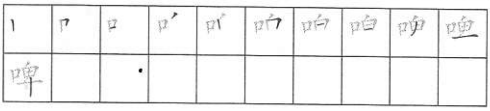
356a 卑
bēi
inferior



You could think of this as "drop" plus "field" plus a distorted form of "entangle".

356 啤 **pí** [beer]

Radical 口
11 strokes

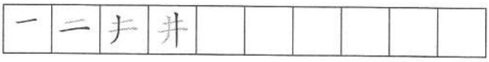


mouth 口(5) + **inferior** 卑(356a) = **beer** 啤

啤酒(102) **píjiǔ** *beer*

"Normally I don't let anything **inferior** into my **mouth**, but what I really fancy right now is a **beer**. / *It's just what I need to go with my **pizza**," said the **fairy** (slumming it a bit).*

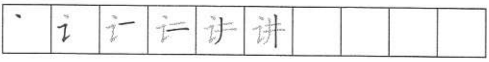
357a 井 **jǐng** a well



---

357 讲 **jiǎng** talk

Radical 讠
6 strokes
講



words 讠(67c) + **a well** 井(357a) = **talk** 讲

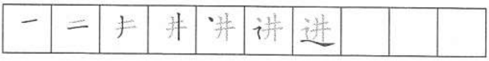
[讲座(212) **jiǎngzuò** *lecture, lecture course*]

Mysterious **words** have appeared, etched around the inside of the village **well**, and the villagers can **talk** about nothing else. / *The **two teddies**, eager to investigate down the well, **jangle** the chain as one lowers the other down in the bucket.*

---

358 进 **jìn** proceed

Radical 辶
7 strokes
進



road 辶(26a) + **a well** 井(357a) = **proceed** 进

进去(86) **jìnqù** *go in*
进来(65) **jìnlái** *come in*
进行(81) **jìnxíng** *to conduct, carry out*
[前进(90) **qiánjìn** *to advance*]
[请进(336) **qǐng jìn** *please come in*]
[先进(137) **xiānjìn** *advanced*]

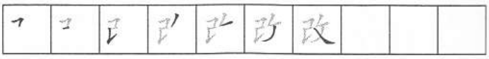
The **road** to the **well** was so full of people that you could only **proceed** slowly along it. / *The **dwarf**, stuck in the queue, was glad that he had brought his hip flask full of **gin**.*

Test yourself: 可(140) 七(37) 取(88) 听(242) 饿(288) 苹(310) 请(336)
站(184) 旁(295) 班(113) 劳(324) 食(287) 纪(273) 北(317)

---

359 改 **gǎi** alter

Radical 攵
7 strokes

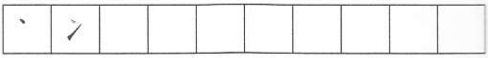


self 己(271) + **tap** 攵(190a) = **alter** 改

[改进(358) **gǎijìn** *improvement*]
[改期(236) **gǎiqī** *to change the date (of a meeting etc.)*]
[改日(6) **gǎirì** *another day (than today)*]
[改正(29) **gǎizhèng** *rectify*]

The magician needed merely to **tap** **himself** with his wand to **alter** his appearance completely. / ***Teddy*** *(dressed up as his assistant) cries, "Will you look at this* ***guy****!"*

360a 冫 ice

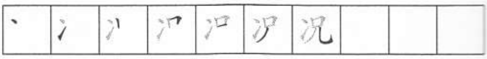


This is "water" (80a), but with one less drop.

---

360 况 **kuàng** situation

Radical 冫
7 strokes



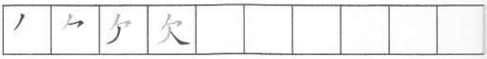
ice 冫(360a) + **older brother** 兄(67a) = **situation** 况

OK, so kangaroo may not be the best idea on ice, but how many choices for a soundword did we have?!

情况(339) **qíngkuàng** *situation*

His **older brother** fell head-first through the **ice**. "That's another fine **situation** you've got me into," he spluttered. / *The* ***ghostly*** *ice-guardian* ***dwarf*** *bounds across on his* ***kangaroo*** *to investigate.*

361a 欠 qiàn lacking



bow 𠂊(51a) + **person** 人(12) = **lacking** 欠

This HSK Level B character also means "to owe".

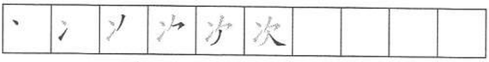
As he watched the man **bowing** to him, **Harry** found it difficult not to laugh as the man's trousers fell down, **lacking** a belt to keep them up! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

361 次 **cì** times

Radical 冫
6 strokes

ice 冫(360a) + **lacking** 欠(361a) = **times** 次

[其次(235) **qícì** *next, secondly; secondary*]
[两次(222) **liǎngcì** *twice*]



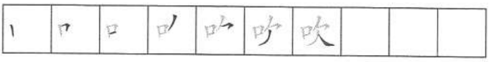
The **ice** in the rink was **lacking** depth for the umpteenth **time**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *started keeping* ***statistics*** *on the number of times it happened (so that he wouldn't be blamed by the management).*

---

362 吹 **chuī** puff

Radical 口
7 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **lacking** 欠(361a) = **puff** 吹



The **mouth** of the cave is **lacking** a door so every **puff** of wind comes in. / *But the owner wants to see who's coming to visit, so he can welcome them before the (overzealous)* ***ghostly giant****, who guards the cave,* ***chases*** *them away.*

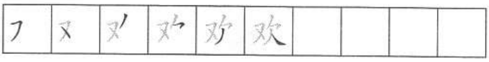
---

363 欢 **huān** joyful

Radical 又
6 strokes

歡

right hand 又(52) + **lacking** 欠(361a) = **joyful** 欢



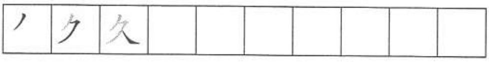
(The New Year celebration at the orphanage) They all **shake hands**, and despite **lacking** the basics they are all **joyful**. / *The* ***ghostly giant****, who guards the orphanage,* ***hands*** *out* ***handfuls*** *of* ***hand****-made streamers!*

---

364 久 **jiǔ** long time

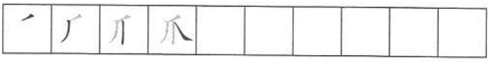
Radical 丿
3 strokes

不久(9) **bùjiǔ** *not long*
[好久(18) **hǎojiǔ** *a long time*]



/ *(A guided tour in an old mine) "This* ***wheel*** *hasn't turned in a* ***long time****." But then it moves!* ***Two teddies*** *had got it moving for a* ***joke*** *(and roll around laughing to see the tour guide's shocked face).*

365a 爪 **zhǎo; zhuǎ** claw

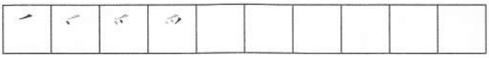


When it is used as the top of a composite character, "claw" takes the form 365b below.

365b 爫

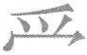
claw

beret 一 (89a) + **hands reaching down** ⺍ (82b) = **claw** 爫



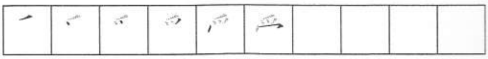
The old lady always puts a **beret** over her **hands** when she **reaches down** for something, so that nobody can see that her hand looks like a **claw**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

365c



hand down

claw 爫 (365b) + **cover** 冖 (82a) = **hand down** 爫冖



(The old crone is in the attic) She lifts the **cover** of the chest with her **claw**ed hand and **hands down** the precious heirloom (to her granddaughter waiting below). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

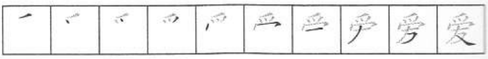
---

365 爱 **ài** love

Radical 爪
10 strokes
愛

hand down 爫冖 (365c) + **friend** 友 (53) = **love** 爱

爱人(12)	**àirén**	*spouse*
[爱情(339)	**àiqíng**	*(romantic) love*]
[可爱(140)	**kě'ài**	*lovely, lovable*]
[亲爱(196)	**qī'nài**	*darling, beloved*]



The dying duke says, "I intend to **hand down** all my possessions to you when I die; you have been a true **friend** to me and shown me the only **love** I've ever known." / *The **dwarf** butler actually smiles: this had melted the **ice** in his heart.*

---

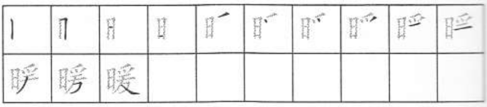
366 暖 **nuǎn** warm

Radical 日
13 strokes

sun 日 (6) + **love** 爱 (365) = **warm** 暖

If you look very closely, you will see that the "cover" in the middle of the right-hand side of this character has been abbreviated into a simple horizontal line.

暖和(126) **nuǎnhuo** *warm (weather)*

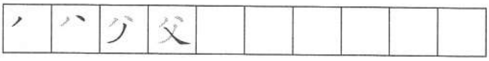


The holidaymakers lie in the **sun** and **love** the feeling of being so **warm**. / *The **ghostly teddy** (who guards their well-being) rides up and down the beach on a **nanny** goat (to warn people against getting sun burnt).*

---

367 父 **fù** father

Radical 父
4 strokes



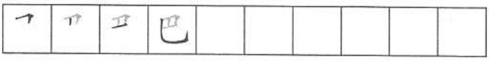
eight 八(20) + **shears** 乂(25a) = **father** 父

父亲(196) **fùqīn** *father*

(At the barber's) Picture the **octopus** wielding a pair of **shears**, giving a haircut to your **father**! / *In the next chair along, a **dwarf** is grumpily trimming the beard of **Fu Manchu** (he doesn't hold with all this personal vanity).*

Test yourself: 车(83) 生(133) 必(162) 将(318) 完(305) 万(296) 阳(96)
玩(304) 答(352) 青(335) 想(164) 停(343) 评(311) 主(297)

368a 巴 **bā** wait for

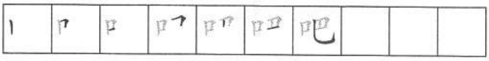


This means "to wait for" but also "to hope for".

---

368 吧 **ba** suggestion

Radical 口
7 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **wait for** 巴(368a) = **suggestion** 吧

This is a particle put at the end of a sentence to indicate a suggestion or a supposition. 吧 is also used for its sound, often with 1st tone, as in the following compound.

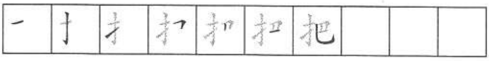
[酒吧(102) **jiǔbā** *bar (a place serving drinks)*]

You open your **mouth** and **wait for** the dentist to start work, but instead he says, "I have a **suggestion**. / *Perhaps you'd like to try my **robot** assistant — he can do this work at a **bargain** price."*

---

369 把 **bǎ** handle

Radical 扌
7 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **wait for** 巴(368a) = **handle** 把

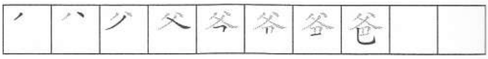
This character is also used to mark a direct object in a sentence.

[一把刀(1, 72) **yì bǎ dāo** *a knife*]

(There's a queue for the sale at the department store) You are at the front of the queue **wait**ing **for** the shop to open, your **hand** ready to grab the door **handle** as soon as the door is unlocked. / *Behind you, **Teddy** excitedly hops around, hoping to bag a **bargain**.*

370 爸 **bà** dad

Radical 父
8 strokes



father 父(367) + **wait for** 巴(368a) =
dad 爸

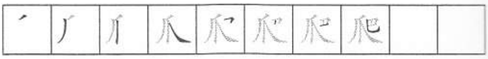
爸爸 **bàba** *dad, daddy, papa*

(In the queue for the sale at the department store) Imagine **wait**ing **for** your **father** to come (so that you will be allowed in). When he arrives you shout, "**Dad**!" / *You both race off to stop the **dwarf** grabbing all the **bargains**.*

---

371 爬 **pá** climb

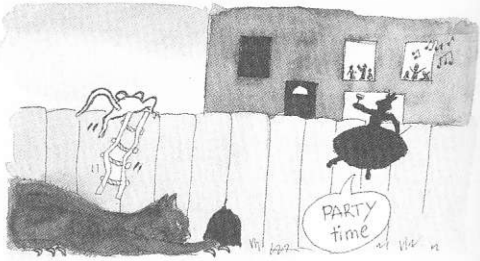
Radical 爪
8 strokes



claw 爪(365a) + **wait for** 巴(368a) =
climb 爬

This also means "to crawl".

[爬山(110) **pá shān** *to climb a mountain*]



The cat sits with its **claw**s at the ready, and **waits for** the mouse to come through the hole in the fence — but the mouse **climb**s over the fence instead. / *Nothing will stop him getting to one of the **fairy**'s legendary **parties**.*

Test yourself:
厂(149) 天(76) 先(137) 足(280) 注(299) 出(114) 单(344)
起(276) 进(358) 片(353) 加(325) 往(300) 欢(363) 清(337)

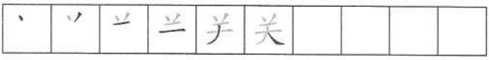
Chapter 22

This is another chapter where you've already learned all the basic building blocks you will need.

---

372 关 **guān** switch off

Radical 丷
6 strokes
關



horns 丷(65a) + **heaven** 天(76) =
switch off 关

This originally meant "a guarded mountain pass", which explains why today it can also mean "to shut" or "a barrier", but also "a connection".

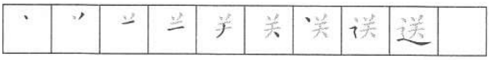
关心(161)	**guānxīn**	*care for, care about*
[海关(129)	**hǎiguān**	*(frontier) customs*]

(Arriving at a fancy dress party in Heaven) "You shouldn't wear **horns** in **Heaven** — especially not plastic ones with flashing lights — **switch** them **off** at once!" / *The voice came from a **ghostly giant** sitting on a **gantry** above the Pearly Gates.*

---

373 送 **sòng** deliver

Radical 辶
9 strokes



road 辶(26a) + **switch off** 关(372) =
deliver 送

This also means "to give" (as a gift).

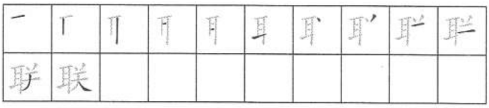
[送行(81)	**sòngxíng**	*see off (visitors)*]
[欢送(363)	**huānsòng**	*see off (visitors)*]

The delivery van driver's instructions read: "Park on the **road**, and **switch off** your engine before you **deliver** the packet. / *Otherwise the **dwarf** will make a **song** and dance about the fumes."*

---

374 联 **lián** connect

Radical 耳
12 strokes
聯



ear 耳(88a) + **switch off** 关(372) =
connect 联

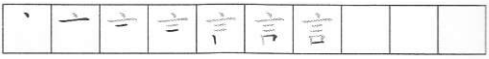
[联合(347)	**liánhé**	*unite, get together*]

(The bomb disposal expert has been called to deal with an old unexploded bomb) He puts his **ear** to the casing until he hears the mechanism **switch off**, then he can **connect** up the two wires to make it safe. / ***Two fairies** fly in with a bowl of **lentil** soup (to relax with, afterwards).*

---

375 言 **yán**
words

Radical 言
7 strokes



lid 亠(25b) + **two** 二(2) + **mouth** 口(5) = **words** 言

When this character appears as the left-hand part of other characters, it has the simplified form 讠, which we have already met (67c).

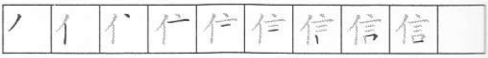
语言(68) **yǔyán** *language*
[发言(146) **fā yán** *(make a) speech*]

In the **biplane** you can see your co-pilot's **mouth** moving but can't hear what she's saying (because of the wind noise), so you fit a canopy or **lid** on top so you can hear each other's **words**. / *The **fairy** has a **yen** to go for a ride (and might do so now that the canopy will protect her hairdo!)*

---

376 信 **xìn**
letter

Radical 亻
9 strokes



person 亻(13a) + **words** 言(375) = **letter** 信

Notice that we have already met a character made up from "person" and "words" in the other order: 认 (Character 253). If you read the previous sentence and recognized the two forms of "person" and "words" without thinking about it, it just shows how familiar you are getting with Chinese characters!

相信(163) **xiāngxìn** *believe (in, that)*
[来信(65) **láixìn** *incoming letter*]
[回信(202) **huí xìn** *a reply*]
[信心(161) **xìnxīn** *confidence*]

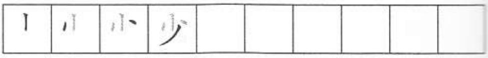
Harry is good at reading documents written using old **words**, and people often bring him old **letter**s to decipher. / *The **dwarf** brings him an old **shin** bone with writing on it (hoping to catch him out).*

Test yourself: 千(89) 见(214) 里(157) 础(115) 是(30) 情(339) 学(82)
园(302) 南(307) 久(364) 驾(326) 间(345) 事(312) 男(156)

---

377 少 **shǎo** (shào)
few

Radical 小
4 strokes



small 小(50) + **slide** ノ(34b) = **few** 少

This can also mean "seldom", "to be missing/lacking" or "young".

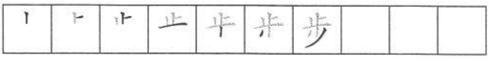
多少(69) **duōshǎo** *how many?*
[不少(9) **bùshǎo** *quite a few*]

The **small slide** is for small children only — but there are only a **few** slides like this in the whole country. / ***Teddy** clambers up and **shouts** with joy as he slides down. (Teddies are allowed on too as they're very light.)*

---

378 步 **bù** step

Radical 止
7 strokes



stop 止(29a) + **few** 少(377) = **step** 步

Note that the third stroke of "few" disappears in this character.

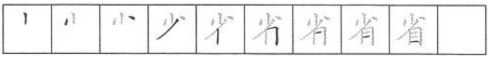
[进步(358) **jìnbù** *make progress*]

"**Stop**! — only a **few** may walk in the master's foot**steps**." / *The **dwarf** carefully removes his **boots** to lead the chosen few (placing his feet in the footprints).*

---

379 省 **shěng** province

Radical 小
9 strokes



few 少(377) + **eye** 目(93) = **province** 省

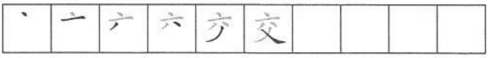
[省力(14) **shěnglì** *to save effort*]
[省会(59) **shěnghuì** *provincial capital*]

The governor chooses a **few** trusted officials to keep an **eye** on the **province** while he is away on his next foreign trip. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

380 交 **jiāo** pay

Radical 亠
6 strokes



lid 亠(25b) + **father** 父(367) = **pay** 交

The basic meaning is to "hand over" or "transfer"; hence "exchange" and (social) "intercourse".

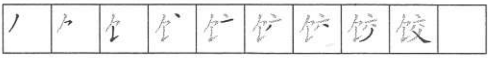
[外交(71) **wàijiāo** *foreign affairs*]

The boy bangs a saucepan **lid** by his **father**'s ear. "**Pay** me my pocket money!" / *But the father only grunts — he's watching the **two giants jousting** on TV.*

---

381 饺 **jiǎo** dumpling

Radical 饣
9 strokes
餃



food 饣 (288a) + **pay** 交(380) =
dumpling 饺

饺子(17) **jiǎozi** *stuffed dumpling*

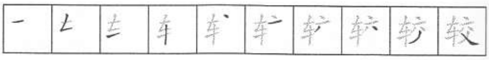
(In the canteen) "The **food** is a disgrace, you have to **pay** so much, and then all you get is **dumplings**." / *The **two teddies** (the cooks) are watching the **jousting** on TV (so haven't bothered to cook anything else).*

382 较 **jiào** comparison

Radical 车
10 strokes
較

car 车(83) + **pay** 交(380) = **comparison** 较

比较(228) **bǐjiào** *comparatively*



(At the freeway toll booths) The **car**s are queuing up to **pay**, with the drivers in the two queues making **comparisons** about how long they had been there. / *The queues are building up because the **two dwarves**, who man the two toll booths, are both watching the **jousting** on their TV sets.*

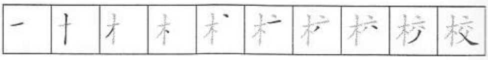
---

383 校 **xiào** school

Radical 木
10 strokes

tree 木(10a) + **pay** 交(380) = **school** 校

学校(82) **xuéxiào** *school*
[校园(302) **xiàoyuán** *campus*]



In the village there is a special **tree**, and the villagers make people **pay** to see it, using the money to build a **school**. / ***Two dwarves** go round the local area like town criers, **shouting** out news about the tree and drumming up business.*

---

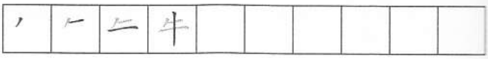
384 牛 **niú** cow

Radical 牛
4 strokes

label 丿 (124a) + **criminal** 干(130a) = **cow** 牛

When this forms the left-hand part of a composite character, the lower horizontal stroke is slanted, and drawn last (see Character 466 for an example).

[牛肉(221) **niúròu** *beef*]
[吹牛(362) **chuīniú** *to boast, brag*]



While the **criminal** was on parole he had to wear a **label** with a picture of a **cow** on it — to show that his job was to look after the cows. / *It took **two fairies** (working in shifts) to keep an eye on this **notorious** criminal.*

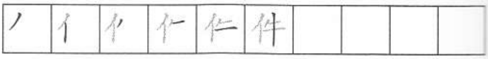
---

385 件 **jiàn** number of things

Radical 亻
6 strokes

person 亻(13a) + **cow** 牛(384) = **number of things** 件

This is a fairly general measure word for various objects such as items of clothing or pieces of furniture.



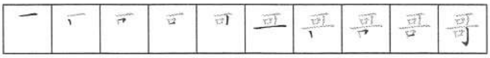
(In the "Best Trained Cow" competition at the village fete) **Harry** trains his **cow** to do a **number of things** (juggling, standing on its head, etc.) / *It finishes by **genuflecting** to the **two dwarf** adjudicators.*

386 哥 **gē** older brother

Radical 口
10 strokes

may 可(140) + **may** 可(140) =
older brother 哥

哥哥 **gēgē** *older brother*
[大哥(47) **dàgē** *eldest brother*]



At the May celebrations there are **two Ma**ypoles, one for the older children and one for the smaller children. A small boy dances round the smaller pole and looks across to where his **older brother** is dancing round the other one. / *The* ***giant*** *accompanies the dance with a tune on chimes made out of* ***girders****.*

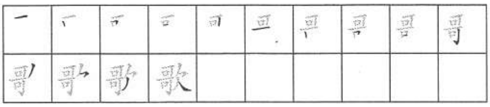
---

387 歌 **gē** song

Radical 欠
14 strokes

older brother 哥(386) + **lacking** 欠(361a)
= **song** 歌

[歌手(31) **gēshǒu** *(professional) singer*]
[儿歌(21) **érgē** *nursery rhyme*]

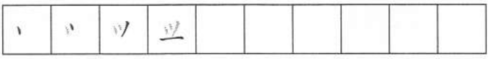


Your **older brother** is totally **lacking** in talent but insists on singing his favorite **song**. / *The* ***giant*** *accompanies him on the chimes made out of* ***girders*** *(but unfortunately can't quite drown him out).*

388a

业 "haul up"

hands reaching down ⺍ (82b) +
one 一(1) = **haul up** 业



The **unicorn** has fallen overboard from the Ark but there are soon friendly **hands reaching down** to **haul** it **up** onboard again. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

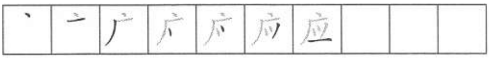
388 应 **yīng** (yìng) should

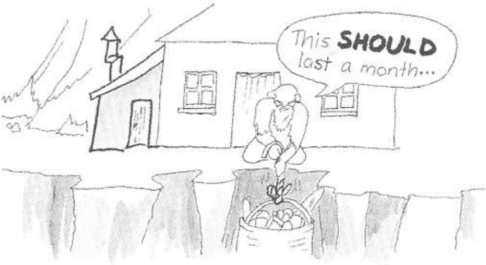
Radical 广
7 strokes

應

shelter 广(170) + **haul up** 业 (388a) =
should 应

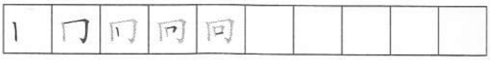
[应当(267) **yīngdāng** *should, ought to*]




This SHOULD last a month...

The hermit who lives in the mountains **hauls up** his supplies (in a basket on a rope) and stores them in a **shelter** next to his hut. Each delivery **should** be enough to last a month (but he always eats them up early). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

389a 冋 "skylight"



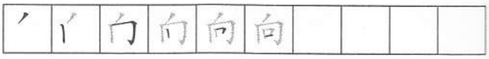
outer limits 冂(160a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **skylight** 冋

At the **outer limits** of the kingdom there is a special cave: from the **mouth** of the cave you can see daylight as this cave has a **skylight**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

389 向 **xiàng** towards

Radical 丿
6 strokes
嚮



a drop 丶(22a) + **skylight** 冋(389a) = **towards** 向

This character has various shades of meaning and the traditional form only applies to some of these.

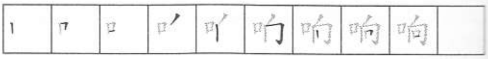
(Looking around caves, with a view to buying one) **A drop** of rain falls on the **skylight** and they realize it faces **towards** the prevailing winds. / *The* ***two dwarves*** *argue back and forth for a while but finally decide this is a small price to pay to live in* ***Shanghai***.

方向(291) **fāngxiàng** *direction*

---

390 响 **xiǎng** noisy

Radical 口
9 strokes
響



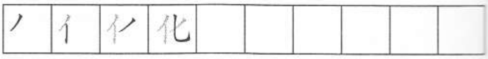
mouth 口(5) + **towards** 向(389) = **noisy** 响

The **mouth** of the cave faces **towards** a **noisy** part of town. / *The* ***two teddies***, *though, are excited: "We'll be able to see all the* ***Shanghai*** *goings-on."*

---

391 化 **huà** to change

Radical 亻
4 strokes



person 亻(13a) + **seven** 七(37) = **change** 化

This also means "to alter" and can sometimes be translated by using word endings such as "-ize" or "-ify".

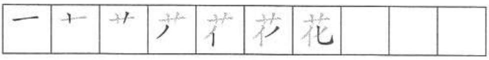
Harry looks in his **diary** and sees that in seven days he has to **change** the clock on the church tower (to daylight saving time). / *Last time he had forgotten and the* ***ghostly dwarf*** *who guards the tower had given him a* ***hard*** *time.*

化学(82) **huàxué** *chemistry*
文化(25) **wénhuà** *culture*

Test yourself: 晴(338) 元(301) 暖(366) 叫(354) 家(109) 反(331) 果(187)
关(372) 东(319) 何(142) 面(313) 灯(182) 哪(99) 咖(327)

392 花 **huā** flower

Radical 艹 **7 strokes**



grass 艹(218a) + **change** 化(391) = **flower** 花

[花园(302) **huā yuán** *garden*]
[种花(279) **zhòng huā** *to grow flowers*]

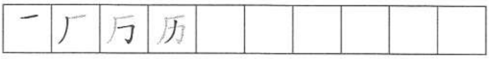
Rather than just having **grass**, she wants to **change** part of her garden into a **flower** bed. / *She employs the* ***ghostly giant*** *to look after the flowers, and he uses his* ***hard*** *hat to protect them from frost.*

---

393 历 **lì** experience

Radical 厂 **4 strokes**

歷 曆



cliff 厂(149) + **power** 力(14) = **experience** 历

This also means "calendar" (and if so the second traditional form applies).

[经历(244) **jīnglì** *experience*]

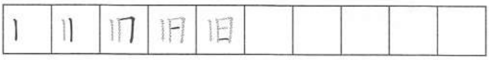
He builds the **power** plant at the bottom of the **cliff** — **experience** has taught him that this is a good place for a hydroelectric plant. / *The* ***dwarf*** *has to go round checking for* ***leaks*** *in the pipes.*

---

394 旧 **jiù** outdated

Radical 日 **5 strokes**

舊

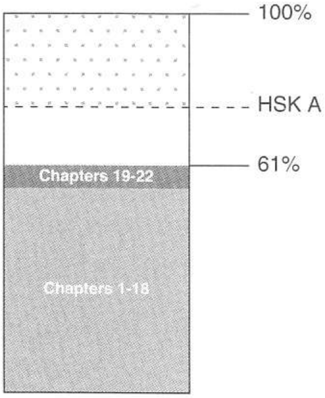


stick 丨 (19a) + **sun** 日(6) = **outdated** 旧

Another character for "old", which often means "traditional".

[旧历(393) **jiùlì** *lunar calendar*]

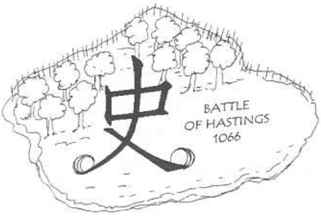
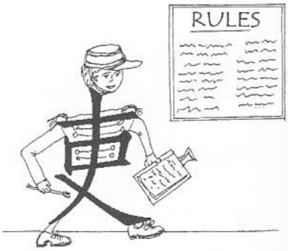
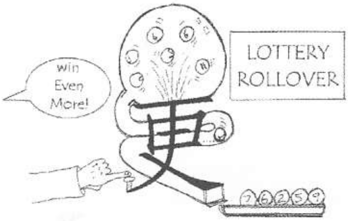
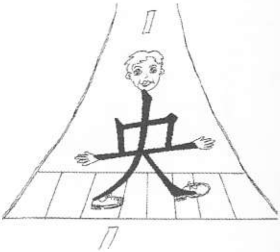
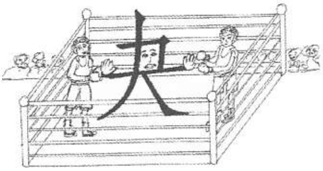
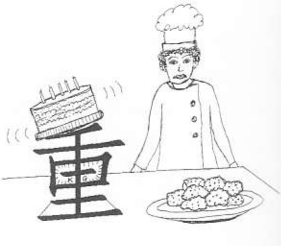
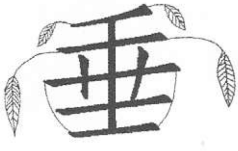
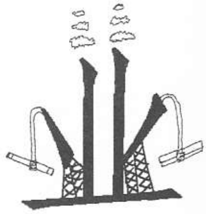
(In a town park) Using a **stick** and the **sun** is a very **outdated** way of telling the time. / *The* ***two dwarf*** *park keepers mutter to each other — they think it is a* ***joke*** *that something so outdated is still used, and in their park too.*



Chapter 23

Once again there are a few pairs of basic building blocks where it is worth paying particular attention to the small differences:

史 and 吏; 夬 and 央; 垂 and 重

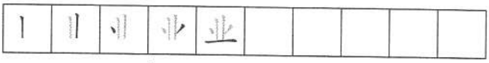
史 **history**  史 BATTLE OF HASTINGS 1066	吏 **an official** 
更 **even more**  win Even More! LOTTERY ROLLOVER 更	央 **center** 
夬 **to separate**  	重 **heavy** 
垂 **droop**  	业 **industry** 

395 业 **yè** industry

Radical 业
5 strokes

業

工业(147) **gōngyè** *(manufacturing) industry*
作业(207) **zuòyè** *homework, assignment*
[事业(312) **shìyè** *career; cause, undertaking*]

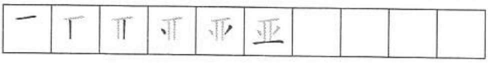


*/ The **dwarf** had created a whole **industry** out of making **wheels**, employing **yetis** to do the work.*

396a 亚 yà Asia

亞

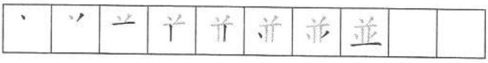
one 一(1) + **industry** 业(395) = **Asia** 亚



The **unicorn industry** churns out plastic unicorns, each with "Made in **Asia**" stamped underneath. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

396b 並 stand side by side

horns 丷(65a) + **Asia** 亚(396a) = **stand side by side** 並



In the high plateaus of **Asia** they play tunes on animal **horns** — **stand**ing **side by side** (like a huge set of pan-pipes). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

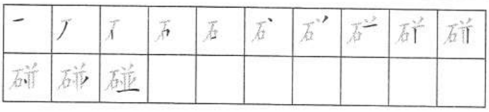
---

396 碰 **pèng** bump into

Radical 石
13 strokes

stone 石(115a) + **stand side by side** 並(396b) = **bump into** 碰

This can mean "to encounter", or to literally "bump into" something.



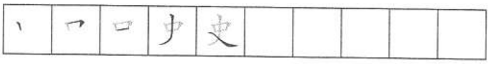
Imagine setting up large (Stonehenge-type) **stone**s like a huge domino run — they **stand side by side** so that when each one falls it will **bump into** the next one. / *The **dwarf** warns people to be **punctual** or they will miss this big event.*

---

397 史 **shǐ** history

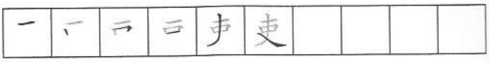
Radical 口
5 strokes

历史(393) **lìshǐ** *history*



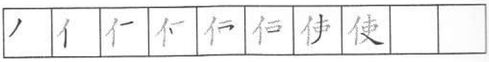
*/ The **history** lesson was about the invention of the **wheel**. **Teddy** is bored by this class and sits munching **shallots** at the back. (Smell his breath!)*

398a 吏 an official



398 使 **shǐ** use

Radical 亻
8 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + **an official** 吏(398a) = **use** 使

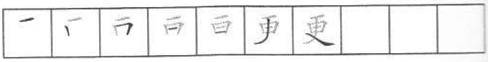
This also means "to send" or "an envoy".

使用(130) **shǐyòng** *use, apply*

(In the gallery of modern art) **Harry** asks the **official** if he can **use** his camera. / *He wants a picture of the sculpture* ***"Teddy*** *sitting on a pile of* ***shallots****".*

399 更 **gèng** even more

Radical 一
7 strokes

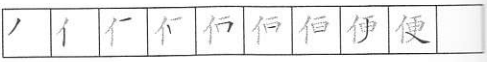


[更加(325) **gèngjiā** *still more, even more*]

/ (At the tire shop) ***Even more wheels*** *than yesterday are being returned by the customers. The* ***dwarf*** *orders them to be coated with* ***gunk*** *and resold …*

400 便 **pián; biàn**
1. advantageous
2. convenient

Radical 亻
9 strokes



1. **person** 亻 (13a) + **even more** 更(399) = **advantageous** 便

2. **person** 亻 (13a) + **even more** 更(399) = **convenient** 便

方便(291) **fāngbiàn** *convenient, handy*
[便利(132) **biànlì** *convenient*]

1.

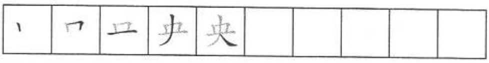
🌵 In the saloon **Harry** had had a lot to drink, but his opponent had drunk **even more** — Harry would find this **advantageous** if it came to a gunfight. / *The* ***two fairies*** *wanted to avoid bloodshed so each conjured up a bullet-proof vest so that any bullets wouldn't* ***penetrate****.*

2.

🛸 On the spaceship **Harry** has **even more** room in his cabin than the Captain, which is **convenient** (as he can accommodate large aliens and get to know them). / *The* ***two dwarves*** *complain that they have to share a cabin, with barely enough room for a* ***bench****.*

Test yourself:
太(48) 些(314) 很(281) 电(159) 情(339) 非(328) 简(346)
饺(381) 远(303) 爱(365) 新(243) 亮(342) 再(217) 啤(356)

401a 央 yāng
center



---

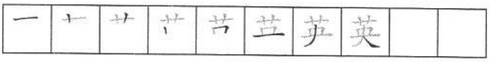
401 英 **yīng**
hero

Radical 艹
8 strokes

grass 艹(218a) + **center** 央(401a) = **hero** 英

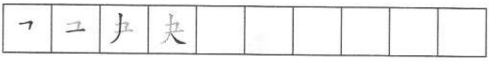
This character is also (from its sound) used to mean "England" or "English". By the way, 美 **měi** (not in HSK Level A) is the corresponding character for America or the USA.

英语(68) **yīngyǔ** *English (language)*
英文(25) **yīngwén** *(written) English*
[英里(157) **yīnglǐ** *a mile*]



Who's that standing in the **center** of the **grass**? It's a statue of the English **hero**, Nelson. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

402a 夬
to separate



---

402 块 **kuài**
lump

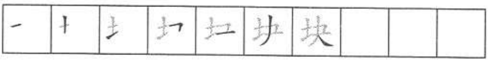
Radical 土
7 strokes

塊

earth 土(54a) + **separate** 夬(402a) = **lump** 块

Also (colloquially) used to refer to a yuan, the unit of currency in China.

一块儿(1, 21) **yíkuàir** *together*



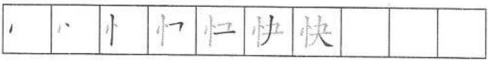
(Someone sneaks into the vegetable gardens) He **separates** the good **earth** from the **lumps** which he dumps on a neighboring plot. / *The **ghostly dwarf**, who looks after the gardens, hoists a red **kite** to alert the authorities.*

---

403 快 **kuài**
quick

Radical 忄
7 strokes

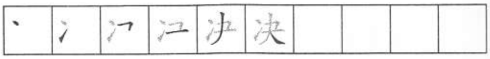
heart 忄(339a) + **separate** 夬(402a) = **quick** 快



If conjoined twins are joined near the **heart** then the operation to **separate** them has to be **quick**. / *The **ghostly dwarf** (who has been assigned to protect the twins) decides that he can't be expected to hang around and watch so goes outside to fly his **kite** during the operation.*

404 决 **jué** decide

Radical 冫
6 strokes



ice 冫(360a) + **separate** 夬(402a) =
decide 决

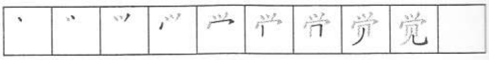
This is a DIY pronunciation. In this book the pronunciation "jue" only applies to this character and the following one.

[决心(161) **juéxīn** *be determined, make up one's mind*]

(You're out skating on a frozen lake) The **ice** starts to **separate**, and you have one foot on each side of the gap so have to **decide** very quickly which way you're going to jump! / *[DIY pronunciation]*

405 觉 **jué; jiào** 1. feel 2. sleep 覺

Radical 见
9 strokes



1. **unveil** ⺍(82c) + **see** 见(214) = **feel** 觉

2. **unveil** ⺍(82c) + **see** 见(214) = **sleep** 觉

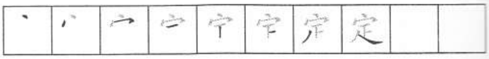
觉得(118) **juéde** *feel, think (that)*
[自觉(94) **zìjué** *being aware of; voluntary*]

1.
🌵 They **unveil**ed the new name on the front of the saloon so that everyone could **see** — it had been named after the local outlaw. But how would this make the relatives of the outlaw's victims **feel**? (Picture a widow bursting into tears). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

2.
🛸 The spaceship captain **unveil**ed the statue (to be left behind on the planet) and wondered why everyone was laughing — they could **see** the sculptor who had been **sleep**ing under the cover. / *The crew wondered why a statue of **two dwarves jousting** was appropriate.*

406 定 **dìng** decide on

Radical 宀
8 strokes



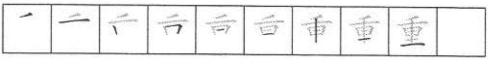
house 宀(91a) + **upright** 𤴓(30b) =
decide on 定

决定(404) **juédìng** *decide; decision*
一定(1) **yídìng** *fixed, specified*

Since the **house** was on a riverbank he checked carefully that it was **upright** before **deciding on** whether to buy it. / *The **dwarf** was happy that he could tie up his **dinghy** alongside.*

Test yourself:
火(181) 取(88) 乐(320) 合(347) 送(373) 样(112) 啡(329)
较(382) 父(367) 要(101) 睛(340) 板(333) 化(391) 饺(381)

407 重
zhòng (chóng)
heavy
Radical 丿
9 strokes

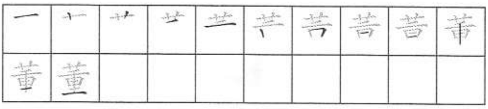


This is another character where there is a choice — we can regard it as a somewhat complicated basic building block, or try to split it up into parts. We've chosen to regard it as a basic building block, but you can regard it as "thousand" plus "in" (Characters 89 and 157) if you like: a bag with a thousand pebbles in it would be heavy!

重要(101) **zhòngyào** *important*
[重点(185) **zhòngdiǎn** *main point, emphasis*]
[重大(47) **zhòngdà** *major, great*]

*/ "The **heavy wheel** on your tractor squashed this rare **jonquil**," said the policeman. The **dwarf** can't see what the fuss is about ("It was only a flower, for goodness' sake," he mutters).*

408a 董
dǒng
director

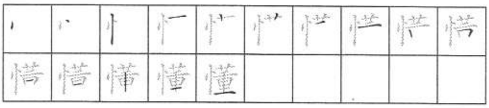


grass 艹(218a) + **heavy** 重(407) =
director 董

(The young office workers have sneaked into the washrooms for a "cigarette" break) "This **grass** is **heavy**, man," says one. But the other one sees that the **director** is coming! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

408 懂
dǒng
understand
Radical 忄
15 strokes

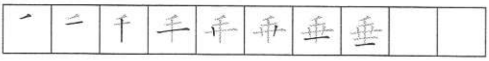


heart 忄(339a) + **director** 董(408a) =
understand 懂

[懂得(118) **dǒngde** *understand, grasp*]

The **heart director** (head of the cardiac unit) is trying to get his students to **understand** irregular heartbeats. / *He gets **Teddy** to lead a **donkey** round the lecture hall (so that the hoofbeats drum out an irregular rhythm).*

409a 垂
chuí
droop

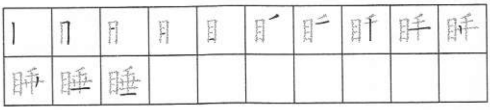


Notice how this differs from 重 (Character 407 above), and be careful with the stroke order.

The two small vertical strokes on either side are joined on at the top and bottom in some typefaces (this is shown in the large character here) and not in others (as shown in the stroke-order diagrams).

409 睡 **shuì** sleep

Radical 目
13 strokes



eye 目(93) + **droop** 垂(409a) = **sleep** 睡

His **eyes** began to **droop** and all he wanted to do was **sleep**. / *Fortunately the* ***ghostly dwarf*** *(guarding the emperor's palace) was wearing* ***shades****, so nobody could see his eyes close.*

睡觉(405)	**shuìjiào**	*sleep; go to bed*
[睡着(205)	**shuìzháo**	*to fall asleep*]

Test yourself: 用(130) 年(168) 爬(371) 化(391) 饭(332) 响(390) 拿(348)
但(117) 收(355) 课(189) 联(374) 湖(193) 精(341) 经(244)

At the end of Chapter 11 we gave you some tips for what to try when you have forgotten the meaning of a character. What if you can't remember the pronunciation? Here are some suggestions:

First, can you remember the archetype? Sometimes you will find that you can, and then you can ask yourself — what would a dwarf (fairy, etc.) do here? If you can picture the scene, with the archetype in that scene, this may be enough to trigger the soundword.

If you can't remember the archetype, try using the personality traits. Does a mischievous or grumpy archetype seem to belong in this story? Were there two archetypes? (Does the story seem to need two — e.g. were they arguing or holding each end of something?) Is the archetype ghostly? (Was it guarding or protecting something?) One particular point to bear in mind is that two archetypes are never ghostly — an archetype can be ghostly, or duplicated, but not both (that would be silly!). If you really can't remember the archetype, don't worry too much — the tone is the least important part to remember, less important than the meaning and pronunciation.

Another avenue is to go back to the first half of the story for clues which we have sometimes been able to put in (for example when we had the soundword "tandoori" we had an Indian theme to the first half of the story).

Can you remember the pronunciation of other similar characters? It's possible that the character you're thinking of is part of a phonetic series (see the comments after Character 46).

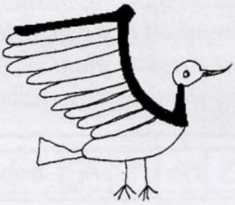
Finally, try saying the story, or the part of the story which you remember, to yourself out loud — this sometimes brings back other details of the story, including the soundword (we tried this ourselves a number of times, and were surprised how much easier it was to remember things about the story when we started relating it out loud).

Chapter 24

Note that while "thirty" is simply three tens, "twenty" is not simply two tens. The extra stroke in "twenty" is necessary to distinguish it from "grass" (218a in Chapter 14).

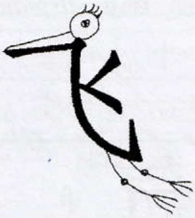
⺄

bird's wing



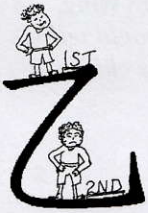
飞

to fly



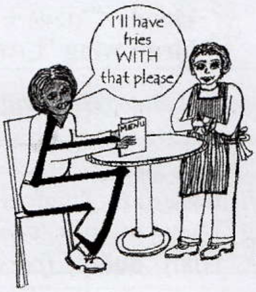
乙

2nd



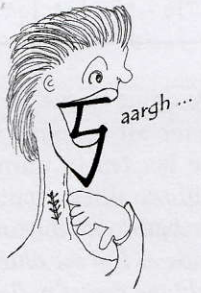
与

with


I'll have fries WITH that please
MENU

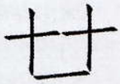
丂

choke



廿

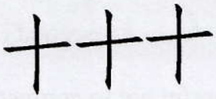
twenty



two tens joined together make 20!

卅

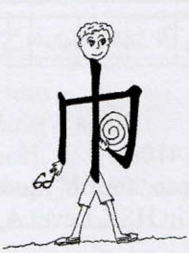
thirty



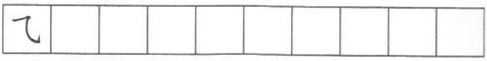
3 x 10 = 30

巾

towel



410a ⺄ "bird's wing"



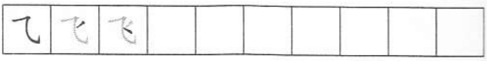
---

410 飞 **fēi** to fly

Radical ⺄
3 strokes

飛

飞机(10) **fēijī** *airplane*



/The chairman of a car component company is reporting to shareholders) "We were prepared to ***fly*** *the* ***wheel*** *long-distance to the* ***famous giant*** *— it was worthwhile to get the celebrity endorsement."*

---

411 气 **qì** air

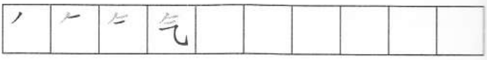
Radical 气
4 strokes

氣

clouds 𠂉(124b) + **one** 一(1) +
bird's wing ⺄(410a) = **air** 气

This can also mean "angry".

天气(76) **tiānqì** *weather*
[力气(14) **lìqì** *physical strength*]
[暖气(366) **nuǎnqì** *central heating*]
[火气(181) **huǒqì** *(person's) temper*]



Clouds gathered above the **unicorn** when he discovered the dead bird with a broken **wing**. He sniffed the **air** angrily. / *He would tell his suspicions to the* ***dwarf*** *police* ***chief*** *when he arrived.*

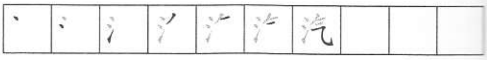
---

412 汽 **qì** steam

Radical 氵
7 strokes

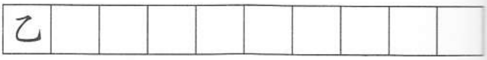
water 氵(78a) + **air** 气(411) = **steam** 汽

汽车(83) **qìchē** *car, automobile*



(A crime scene in a bathroom) "**Water** in the **air** becomes **steam** — so if we run the hot tap to warm the room again, we will see if the victim wrote a message on the bathroom mirror," the junior detective said. / *"I'm the* ***chief****, I'll give the orders," said the* ***dwarf*** *police chief in charge.*

413a 乙 **yǐ** second



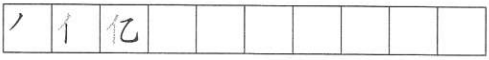
Be careful not to confuse this with "bird's wing" (410a).

The character 丁 ("nail", 81b) is also used to mean "fourth", and we will meet 丙 "third" later (510a). Strangely, 甲 "first" does not appear in HSK Level A, even as a fragment.

413 亿
yì
hundred million
Radical 亻
3 strokes
億

person 亻(13a) + second 乙(413a) = hundred million 亿

[十亿(4) **shíyì** *a billion*]



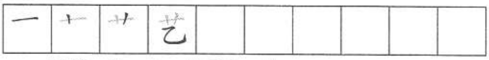
Harry came **second** in the contest to guess the distance from the Earth to the Sun. He said a **hundred million** miles. / *The **dwarf** logged the guesses on a blackboard set up on an **easel**.*

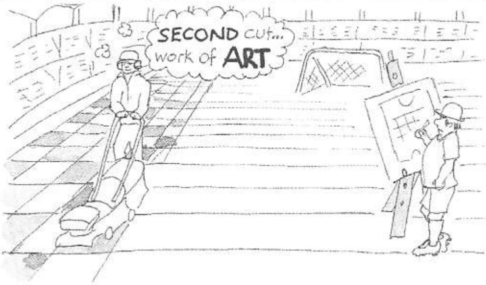
---

414 艺
yì
art
Radical 艹
4 strokes
藝

grass 艹(218a) + second 乙(413a) = art 艺

文艺(25) **wényì** *the arts*

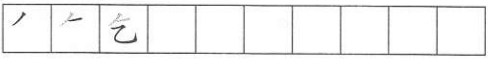




(In the soccer stadium) When cutting the **grass** it is the **second** cut that creates the patterns and turns it into a work of **art**. / *The **dwarf** planned the design out on an **easel**.*

415a 乞
qǐ
beg

clouds 𠂉(124b) + second 乙(413a) = beg 乞



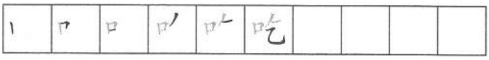
The **clouds** had a competition to make interesting shapes. **Second** prize went to a cloud who took the form of a person **beg**ging. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

415 吃
chī
eat
Radical 口
6 strokes

mouth 口(5) + beg 乞(415a) = eat 吃

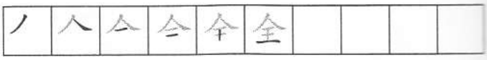
好吃(18) **hǎochī** *delicious*
[吃饭(332) **chīfàn** *to have a meal*]
[小吃(50) **xiǎochī** *snack*]
[吃完(305) **chīwán** *eat up, finish eating*]



The refugee didn't speak the local language so pointed to his **mouth**, to **beg** for something to **eat**. / *The **giant** took pity on him and gave him a **chapati**.*

416 全 **quán** whole

Radical 人
6 strokes



tent 人(19b) + **king** 王(60a) = **whole** 全

This is a unique DIY pronunciation; in other words it is the only character in the book with this pronunciation.

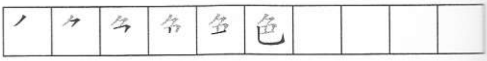
完全(305) **wánquán** *complete*
全部(316) **quánbù** *all, without exception*
全体(175) **quántǐ** *all (of a group of people)*
[安全(91) **ānquán** *safety, security*]

The **king** sat in his **tent** — he was so plump that he took up the **whole** space. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

417 色 **sè** color

Radical 刀
6 strokes



bow ⺈(51a) + **wait for** 巴(368a) = **color** 色

This may also mean "scene" or (someone's) "looks".

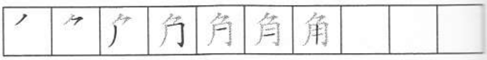
[红色(233) **hóngsè** *the color red*]

The monk was **bow**ing at the pedestrian crossing, **wait**ing **for** the lights to change **color**. / *His **dwarf servant** (fed up of this) impatiently pressed the button!*

---

418 角 **jiǎo** "dime"

Radical 角
7 strokes



bow ⺈(51a) + **use** 用(130) = **dime** 角

You will sometimes see this character in an older form where the middle vertical line does not extend beyond the bottom horizontal line (so the inside part looks like "earth" rather than "criminal").

This character means 1/10 of a yuan, or ten cents — another character (毛, Character 453) is used colloquially for the same thing. Other meanings for 角 are "angle", "corner" or (actor's) "role".

[九角五分(38, 36, 73) **jiǔ jiǎo wǔ fēn** *ninety five cents*]
[三角(3) **sānjiǎo** *triangle*]

The beggar **bows** to passers by and says, "Buddy, I could **use** a **dime**." / *He's a bit miffed as further down the sidewalk **two teddies** are **jousting** to amuse the crowds (and raking it in).*

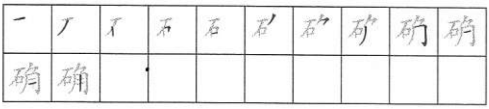
419 确 **què** certain

Radical 石
12 strokes
確

stone 石(115a) + dime 角(418) = certain 确

Another unique DIY pronunciation.

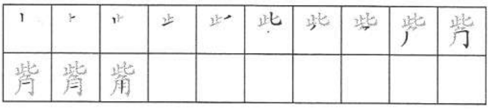
确实(250) **quèshí** *indeed, veritably*
正确(29) **zhèngquè** *correct, accurate*



(They tossed for it) The **dime** landed on the **stone**. "Heads — I win!" "Let me see — are you **certain**?" / *[DIY pronunciation]*

420a 觜 heron

this 此(314a) + dime 角(418) = heron 觜



(A zookeeper is showing off his collection of strange objects) "**This** is the **dime** I found in the stomach of a **heron**." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

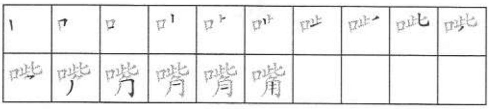
420 嘴 **zuǐ** mouth

Radical 口
16 strokes

mouth 口(5) + heron 觜(420a) = mouth 嘴

An almost-unique DIY pronunciation, shared only by this character and the next one.

This is the character which is usually used to refer to a person's mouth (rather than 口).



The **heron** had a fish in its **mouth**, which it took back to its nest to put into the **mouth** of its young chick. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

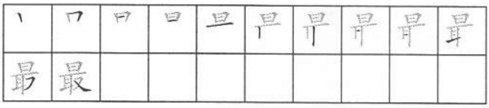
---

421 最 **zuì** utmost

Radical 日
12 strokes

sun 日(6) + acquire 取(88) = utmost 最

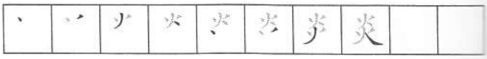
最后(150) **zuìhòu** *finally, final stage*
最近(241) **zuìjìn** *recently, recent time*



"I would **acquire** the **sun** for you if I could, to prove my **utmost** love," he said (while she reached for the sick bag!). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself: 不(9) 刀(72) 种(279) 读(249) 言(375) 座(212) 便(400)
吧(368) 河(141) 米(334) 织(255) 哈(350) 校(383) 岁(116)

422a 炎 **yán** inflammation



fire 火(181) + **fire** 火(181) = **inflammation** 炎

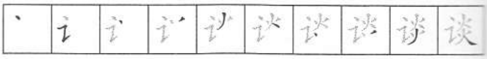
"I can't believe it — a **fire** on top of last week's **fire**, now the **inflammation** on my burnt hand is even worse." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

422 谈 **tán** talk over

Radical 讠
10 strokes

談



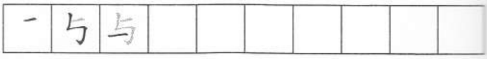
words 讠 (67c) + **inflammation** 炎(422a) = **talk over** 谈

[会谈(59) **huìtán** *hold (formal) talks*]
[座谈(212) **zuòtán** *have an informal meeting/discussion*]

(In a hospital) The nurse said, "I've written down a few **words** for you about this **inflammation** but our burns expert can **talk over** the details with you. / *I'll get the **fairy** to fly off and arrange a **tannoy** call for him."*

423a 与 **yǔ; yù** with

與

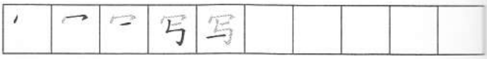


---

423 写 **xiě** write

Radical 冖
5 strokes

寫

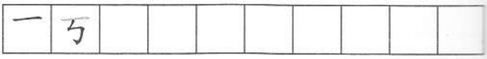


cover 冖(82a) + **with** 与(423a) = **write** 写

听写(242) **tīngxiě** *dictation*
[写作(207) **xiězuò** *to write; writing*]
[书写(176) **shūxiě** *to write; handwriting*]
[大写(47) **dàixiě** *uppercase letter; capital letters*]

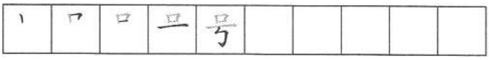
(In the school exam) The boy **covers** his paper **with** his hand so that his neighbor can't see what he **writes**. / *The **two teddies** have been put one at each end of the **shelf** (so that they can't distract anyone during the exam).*

424a 丂 "choke"



424 号 **hào** date

Radical 口
5 strokes
號



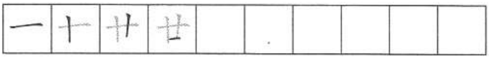
mouth 口(5) + **choke** 丂(424a) = **date** 号

Also used more generally to mean "Number" (as in "Number 3") or "symbol".

[单号(344) **dānhào** *an odd number*]
[口号(5) **kǒuhào** *slogan*]

(Reading the newspaper at breakfast) He's just put a spoonful of cereal in his **mouth**, and **choke**s when he spots the **date** on the newspaper (he's forgotten their wedding anniversary!) / *The* ***dwarf*** *butler is very* ***houseproud****, and mutters as he sweeps up the cornflakes from the floor.*

425a 廿 **niàn** twenty

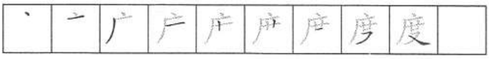


Notice the stroke order (and number of strokes) — this is not "pit" (see 626a) plus "one".

---

425 度 **dù** degrees

Radical 广
9 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **twenty** 廿(425a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **degrees** 度

"Degrees" can refer to temperatures or to angles.

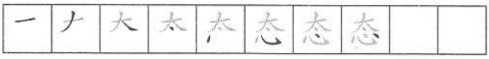
[度过(106) **dùguò** *spend (time)*]

The farmer agrees to buy **twenty shelters** for his cows and **shakes hands** on the deal; under the agreement they'll be delivered when the temperature drops to twenty **degrees**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *salesman says he'll also throw in a* ***duvet*** *jacket for the cowherd.*

---

426 态 **tài** attitude

Radical 心
8 strokes
態



too much 太(48) + **heart** 心(161) = **attitude** 态

态度(425) **tàidu** *attitude, approach*

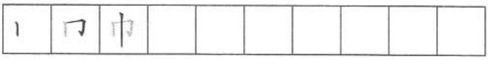
(At the vet's surgery) "**Too much** food is bad for your **heart** — you need to develop a more healthy **attitude** to eating." / *The* ***dwarf*** *tells the* ***tiger*** *to eat smaller portions (not noticing the tiger sizing him up ...)*

Test yourself:

西(100) 青(335) 况(360) 气(411) 食(287) 吹(362) 历(393)
拾(349) 公(119) 啦(180) 讲(357) 平(309) 牛(384) 重(407)

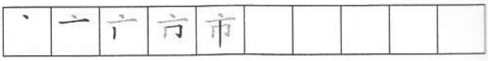
427a 巾 **jīn** towel

Radical 巾
3 strokes



427 市 shì market

Radical 亠
5 strokes



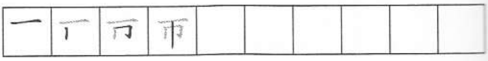
lid 亠(25b) + **towel** 巾(427a) = **market** 市

Take care to distinguish between this character, "encompass" (428a) and "sash" (429b).

城市(260) **chéngshì** *city*
[都市(262) **dūshì** *city*]

He puts a **lid** on the box of **towels** (before loading it onto the cart) to take it to **market**. / *Last time the towels had got wet and the* ***dwarf*** *had hit him with a* ***shillelagh****!*

428a 帀 "encompass"



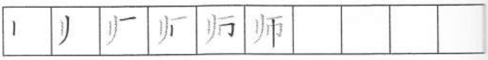
one 一(1) + **towel** 巾(427a) = **encompass** 帀

The grateful villagers made the **unicorn** a large **towel** which was big enough to **encompass** him (even his horn). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

428 师 shī master

Radical 丨
6 strokes
師

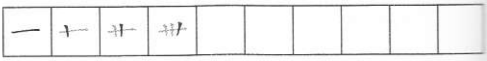


knife 刂(74a) + **encompass** 帀(428a) = **master** 师

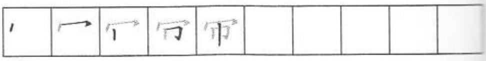
老师(264) **lǎoshī** *teacher*
[教师(265) **jiàoshī** *teacher*]

(At the murder crime scene) They drew a chalk line round the body which **encompassed** the **knife** he was holding — they would need a **master** detective to solve this. / *The* ***giant*** *spotted a blood-soaked* ***shillelagh*** *on top of a wardrobe ("I didn't need to be a master detective to spot this," he said).*

429a 卅 thirty



429b 巿 sash

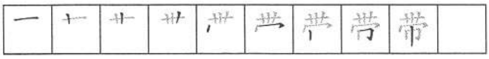


cover 冖(82a) + **towel** 巾(427a) = **sash** 巿

The ambassador had just had a shower, and so was **cover**ed only in a **towel** when the doorbell rang. But at least he put on his **sash** before answering the door! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

429 带 **dài**
belt

Radical 巾
9 strokes
帶



thirty 卅(429a) + **sash** 帀(429b) = **belt** 带

[地带(54) **dìdài** *zone*]

(In the embassy laundry) At the end of each month they had to wash **thirty** **sash**es for the ambassador, a different one for each day. "Why can't he just wear a **belt**?" the laundry worker complained. / *The **dwarf** (supervisor) told him that they were all **dyed** different colors (and it was important for protocol reasons to have the right one for each occasion).*

You probably know at least vaguely what a radical is (see the User Guide, and the comments about "phonetic series" at the end of Chapter 4). The radical often gives a clue to the meaning of a character. For example the heart radical suggests something to do with feelings or emotions, the water radical something to do with liquids, and so on. Thus it is more a classification device than an insight into the root meaning of individual characters. Many authors feel that the word "radical" (from the Latin for "root") is misleading, and use other words such as "classifier" or "signific". But radical is by far the most commonly used word.

The radical doesn't always appear on the left-hand side of a character. Sometimes it's on the right, or on the top or on the bottom. Here are some examples:

Character	Radical	Position of radical
都	阝	right
星	日	top
您	心	bottom
这	辶	left and bottom

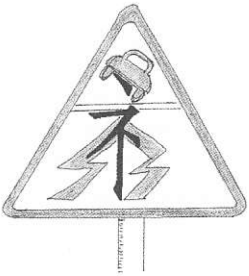
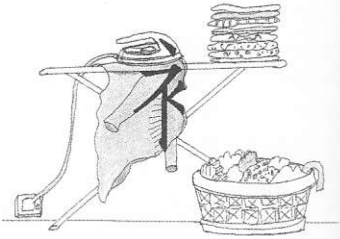
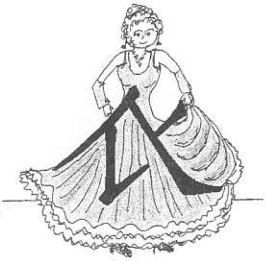
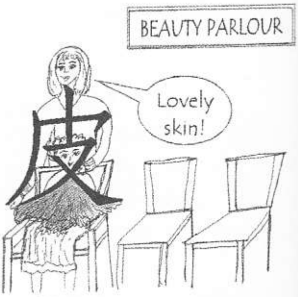
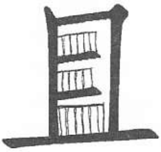
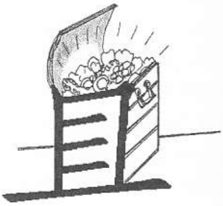
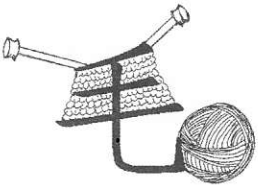
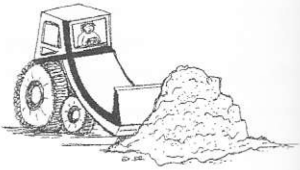
Because it's not always easy to tell what the radical is for a particular character, the radical is listed for each of the characters in this book. As you learn more characters, you'll find you can often guess the radical just by looking at a character. If you've been looking at the radicals as you worked through this book, you'll probably already have a good feel for this.

Why bother with radicals? The main use of radicals if for grouping characters together so that they can be organized in dictionaries. For hundreds of years Chinese dictionaries have used the radical components of the characters as a way of grouping them. All characters, even the really simple ones, are assigned one radical or another (mainly just for the purpose of placing them within the index of a dictionary). We will say more about looking up characters in dictionaries at the end of Chapter 27.

Traditional characters all had a universally agreed (although sometimes not at all obvious) radical from a set of 214. For simplified characters the situation has been much more fluid, with dictionaries adopting their own lists of radicals which vary from about 180 to around 230. More recently there has been some convergence towards a set of 189 and this is the set which we have used in this book. However, note that there are plenty of characters where two (or more) choices for the radical are possible (and dictionaries might then list them under both).

Chapter 25

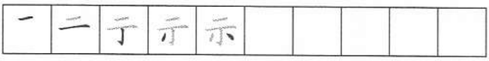
The basic building blocks "bookcase" and "treasure" are very similar. Clearly one has an extra stroke; but how do you remember which is which? Think of ordering your books by the color of their covers — you put red, white and blue books on the top, middle and bottom shelves respectively. Color in the picture of the bookcase like this, with red and blue pens or pencils. You'll then remember that "bookcase" has three shelves, not four.

礻 **sign** 	衤 **clothes** 
𧘇 **a dress** 	皮 **skin**  BEAUTY PARLOUR Lovely skin!
且 **bookcase** 	目 **treasure** 
毛 **wool** 	七 **pile of earth** 

---

430 示 **shì** sign

Radical 示
5 strokes



two 二(2) + **small** 小(50) = **sign** 示

When this appears as the left-hand side of other characters it takes the form 礻 (see 433a below).

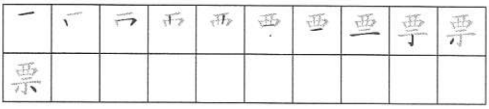
[示意(258) **shìyì** *to signal, hint*]

A **small** (remote-control model) **biplane** is flying around, doing **sign** writing in the sky. / *The **dwarf** smokes his **cheroot** (and sulks now that nobody's interested in his smoke rings any more).*

---

431 票 **piào** ticket

Radical 西
11 strokes



west 西(100) + **sign** 示(430) = **ticket** 票

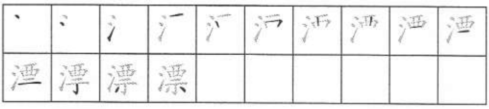
[票子(17) **piàozi** *banknote, bill*]
[门票(27) **ménpiào** *admission ticket*]
[飞机票(410, 10) **fēijī piào** *airplane ticket*]
[火车票(181, 83) **huǒchē piào** *train ticket*]

(Tours of the White House) At the entrance to the **West** Wing, the **sign** says "Special **tickets** beyond this point". / *The **two dwarves** see a ticket on the ground and both **pounce** on it.*

---

432 漂 **piào** pretty

Radical 氵
14 strokes

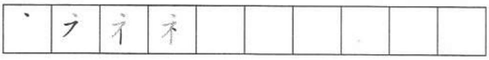


water 氵(78a) + **ticket** 票(431) = **pretty** 漂

漂亮(342) **piàoliàng** *pretty, good-looking*

On the **water** floats a **ticket** to see the "**Pretty** Maids" dancing troupe. / *The **two dwarves** both **pounce** on this ticket too.*

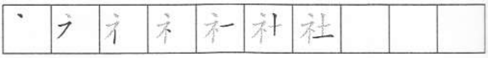
433a 礻 sign



This is the form which Character 430 takes when appearing as the left-hand side of other characters. This is easy to mistake for "clothes" 衤 (439a), which has one more stroke.

433 社 **shè** society

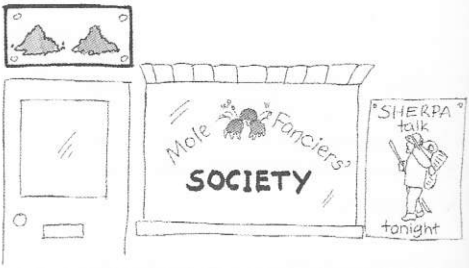
Radical 礻
7 strokes



sign 礻(433a) + **earth** 土(54a) = **society** 社

This can mean a club or association, as well as society in general.

社会(59) **shèhuì** *society (in general)*

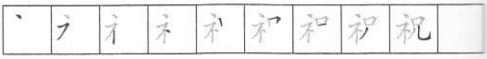


"Look for the **sign** on the building depicting little heaps of **earth** — that's the house where the mole-fanciers' **society** meets. / *The **dwarf sherpa** is giving a talk tonight on 'Mountains and Mole-hills'.*"

---

434 祝 **zhù** best wishes

Radical 礻
9 strokes



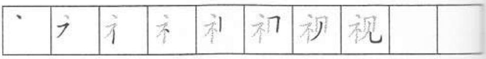
sign 礻(433a) + **older brother** 兄(67a) = **best wishes** 祝

A **sign** in the sky — his **older brother** had organized a skywriting airplane to send him **best wishes** for his birthday. / *The **dwarf** said it was **juvenile** (probably because he hadn't thought of it).*

---

435 视 **shì** to watch

Radical 礻
8 strokes
視



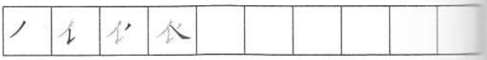
sign 礻(433a) + **see** 见(214) = **to watch** 视

电视(159) **diànshì** *television*
[近视(241) **jìnshì** *near-sighted*]

(At the zoo) The **sign** says, "This is the place to **see** the feeding of the tigger" — so all the children stop **to watch**. / *The **dwarf** feeds it **shallots** (for this is what tiggers like best) whilst grumbling to himself that people in his position shouldn't have to feed the animals that are there purely for entertainment.*

Test yourself: 米(334) 几(7) 云(56) 父(367) 面(313) 向(389) 最(421)
件(385) 把(369) 汽(412) 英(401) 给(351) 花(392) 看(200)

436a 𧘇 "a dress"



Notice that the second stroke has a "barb" (120a), and notice the order for writing the las
two strokes.

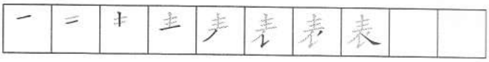
436 表 **biǎo** indicator

Radical 衣
8 strokes
錶

plant 龶 (133a) + **dress** 𧘇 (436a) = **indicator** 表

This character can mean "to show" or "a surface", and is used for any chart such as a timetable; also for an instrument such as a gauge, meter or wristwatch (only for the last of these meanings does the traditional form apply).

表示(430) **biǎoshì** *show, indicate*
手表(31) **shǒubiǎo** *wrist watch*
表现(215) **biǎoxiàn** *display, show*
[发表(146) **fābiǎo** *publish, publicize*]
[表面(313) **biǎomiàn** *a surface*]
[表明(77) **biǎomíng** *make clear, demonstrate*]



The little girl puts an old **dress** on a **plant** in her front garden, as an **indicator** of which house is holding the birthday party. / ***Two teddies*** *stand on either side of the front gate,* ***bowing*** *to guests as they arrive.*

---

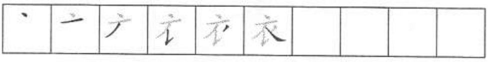
437 衣 **yī** clothes

Radical 衣
6 strokes

lid 亠(25b) + **dress** 𧘇 (436a) = **clothes** 衣

When this appears as the left-hand side of characters it is squashed into the distorted form 衤 (see 439a below). Originally it was a cloak, but now it can be any piece of clothing.

[大衣(47) **dàyī** *overcoat*]
[洗衣机(139, 10) **xǐyījī** *washing machine*]



She lifts the **lid** of the box to reveal a beautiful **dress** — she has never been given **clothes** like this as a present before. / *She doesn't know that the* ***giant*** *is her secret admirer and that he wants to see her looking her best at the* ***Easter*** *parade.*

---

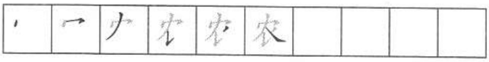
438 农 **nóng** farm

Radical 冖
6 strokes
農

cover 冖(82a) + **dress** 𧘇 (436a) = **farm** 农

This is very easy to mistake for Character 437, to see the difference look at the stroke order diagrams.

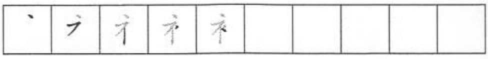
农业(395) **nóngyè** *agriculture*
农村(104) **nóngcūn** *farming area, countryside*



She wears overalls to **cover** her **dress** when she is working on the **farm**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

439a 衤

clothes

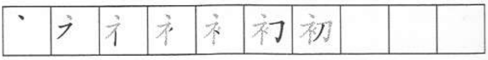


This is the form which Character 437 takes when appearing as the left-hand side of characters. Compare this carefully with "sign" 礻 (433a), which is very similar but has one less stroke.

---

439 初 **chū** beginning

Radical 衤
7 strokes

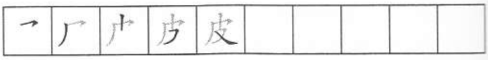


clothes 衤 (439a) + **knife** 刀(72) = **beginning** 初

最初(421) **zuìchū** *initially, initial stage*
[初步(378) **chūbù** *initial, tentative*]

The doctors cut away his **clothes** with a **knife** before **beginning** their examination (of the road accident victim). / *The **giant** tries to stick the clothes together again with **chewing** gum!*

440a 皮 **pí** skin

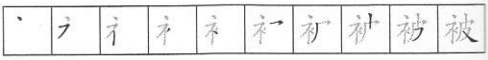


Watch the stroke order for this one.

---

440 被 **bèi** by

Radical 衤
10 strokes



clothes 衤 (439a) + **skin** 皮(440a) = **by** 被

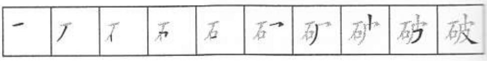
[被子(17) **bèizi** *quilt, blanket*]

A caveman sees his friend wearing new **clothes** made of animal **skin**. Who were they made **by**? **By** Ugg? **By** Zugg? Or **by** Nugg? / *Actually, by the **dwarf** who lives down in the **basement** of his cave.*

---

441 破 **pò** damage

Radical 石
10 strokes



stone 石(115a) + **skin** 皮(440a) = **damage** 破

[破产(197) **pòchǎn** *go broke; come to naught*]

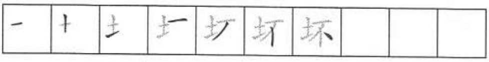
Rubbing a **stone** on his **skin** was **damaging** it. / *But the **dwarf** itched where he had been scratched by the **porcupine**.*

442 坏 **huài**
bad

Radical 土
7 strokes
壞

earth 土(54a) + not 不(9) = bad 坏

[破坏(441) **pòhuài** *to damage, vandalise, sabotage*]



(An archaeologist is digging) “This is **not earth** — I’ve got a **bad** feeling about this.” / *At that moment a **ghostly dwarf**, who guards the tombs, appears and unleashes a **hyena** to chase him off.*

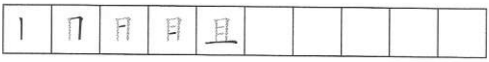
---

443 且 **qiě**
“bookcase”

Radical 一
5 strokes

“Bookcase” is our name for this character which was originally a stand with shelves. Nowadays its meaning is more abstract: “moreover”, “yet”, “still”; or “while …-ing”.

而且(151) **érqiě** *moreover*



*/ They really needed **wheels** to move the heavy **bookcase** but all the **two teddies** could find were **chestnuts** to put underneath it!*

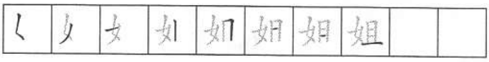
---

444 姐 **jiě**
older sister

Radical 女
8 strokes

woman 女(15) + bookcase 且(443) = older sister 姐

姐姐 **jiějie** *older sister*
小姐(50) **xiǎojiě** *Miss*
[姐妹(64) **jiěmèi** *sisters*]



“Who’s that **woman** cleaning the **bookcase**?” “That’s my **older sister**. / *She’s cleaning up after the **two teddies** had a **jelly** fight.”*

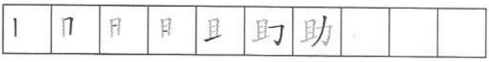
---

445 助 **zhù**
to help

Radical 力
7 strokes

bookcase 且(443) + power 力(14) = help 助

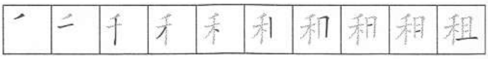
[助手(31) **zhùshǒu** *assistant, aide*]



“We need more man**power** to move the heavy **bookcase** — we need some **help**.” / *The **dwarf** takes a swig of his magic **juice** and picks up the bookcase nonchalantly with one hand. (At last, his chance to shine!)*

446 租 **zū** rent

Radical 禾
10 strokes



grain 禾(126a) + **bookcase** 且(443) =
rent 租

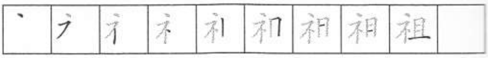
出租汽车(114, 412, 83) **chūzū qìchē** *taxi*

Some **grain** is left on the **bookcase** every month to pay the **rent**. / *The **giant** landlord accepts this from his **Zulu** lodger (but would rather have money).*

---

447 祖 **zǔ** ancestor

Radical 礻
9 strokes



sign 礻(433a) + **bookcase** 且(443) =
ancestor 祖

祖国(60) **zǔguó** *ancestral land*

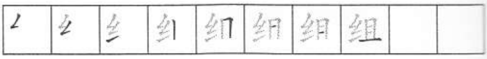
(In the library) The **sign** on the genealogy **bookcase** shows where to look for books on the **ancestors**. / ***Teddy** dresses up as a **Zulu** (as he has heard his ancestors came from Africa).*

---

448 组 **zǔ** organize

Radical 纟
8 strokes

組



thread 纟(233a) + **bookcase** 且(443) =
organize 组

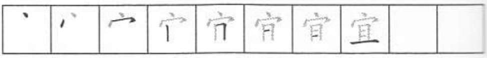
组织(255) **zǔzhī** *organize, organization*

You decide to put different colors of **thread** on the shelves of the **bookcase** to **organize** its contents. / *When the thread runs out, **Teddy** offers to dress up as a **Zulu** to mark the African section for you.*

---

449 宜 **yí** appropriate

Radical 宀
8 strokes



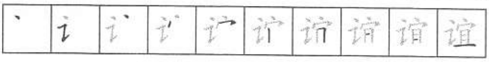
house 宀(91a) + **bookcase** 且(443) =
appropriate 宜

便宜(400) **piányi** *cheap, inexpensive*

The new **house** has lots of **bookcases**, and it is going to take a long time to find an **appropriate** place for each book. / *"**Easy** if you know how," says the **fairy** as she waves her magic wand.*

450 谊 **yì** friendship

Radical 讠
10 strokes
誼

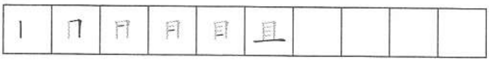


words 讠(67c) + **appropriate** 宜(449) = **friendship** 谊

友谊(53) **yǒuyì** *friendship*

He was looking for a greeting card with **words** which would be **appropriate** to show his **friendship** (but they were all soppy birthday cards). / *The **dwarf** gave up and sent an **email** instead.*

451a 且 "treasure"

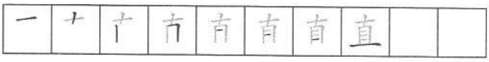


Not to be confused with "bookcase" (Character 443) — "treasure" has an extra horizontal stroke inside.

---

451 直 **zhí** straight

Radical 十
8 strokes



ten 十(4) + **treasure** 且(451a) = **straight** 直

This means "straight" and can take on related meanings such as "direct", "frank" or "upright".

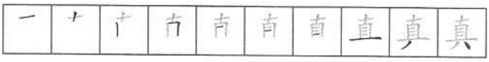
一直(1) **yìzhí** *always, all the time*

(The girl has found a map) "At the **cross**roads there is hidden **treasure**! Let's go **straight** there and dig it up **straight** away!" / *The **fairy** says, "Hang on, I'll come too, just give me a minute to get out of the **jacuzzi**."*

---

452 真 **zhēn** truly

Radical 十
10 strokes



straight 直(451) + **eight** 八(20) = **truly** 真

This means "true", "genuine"; hence "really" or "clearly".

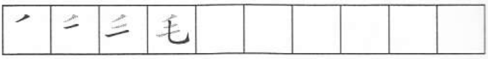
真正(29) **zhēnzhèng** *real, genuine*
认真(253) **rènzhēn** *conscientious*
[真理(158) **zhēnlǐ** *truth*]
[真实(250) **zhēnshí** *true, real, authentic*]

(The octopus pickpocket has been caught red-handed and is being handcuffed by the police: picture them needing four sets of handcuffs …) "I'll go **straight** from now on," the **octopus** says, "**truly** I will." / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

453 毛 **máo** wool

Radical 毛
4 strokes



Compare this with "hand" 手 (Character 31). The hook here has a longer base and goes to the right instead of the left.

The character 毛 means "wool", "fur" or "hair"; and is also a colloquial measure word meaning 1/10 of a yuan.

[羊毛(111) **yángmáo** *wool*]
[毛衣(437) **máoyī** *(woollen) sweater*]

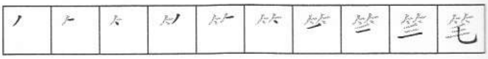
*/ The **fairy** spins **wool** on her spinning **wheel**, to make a pulllover for her pet **mouse**.*

---

454 笔 **bǐ** pen

Radical ⺮
10 strokes

筆



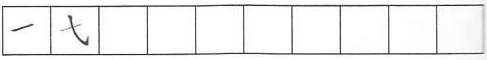
bamboo ⺮(321a) + **wool** 毛(453) = **pen** 笔

This can also mean "to write" or (when talking about Chinese characters) "a stroke".

[毛笔(453) **máobǐ** *writing brush*]
[笔记(272) **bǐjì** *notes (e.g. of meeting)*]

A length of **bamboo** with **wool** tied around it (to give a good grip) makes a colorful **pen**. / ***Teddy** cooks up **beetroot** to make ink for the pen.*

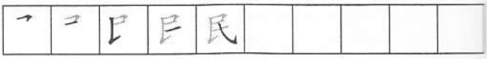
455a 乇 "pile of earth"



---

455 民 **mín** the people

Radical 乙
5 strokes



corpse 尸(268a) + **pile of earth** 乇(455a) = **the people** 民

Notice that in this character the last stroke of "corpse" has a barb at the end.

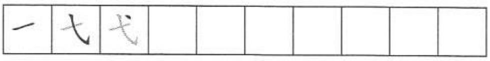
农民(438) **nóngmín** *farmer, peasant*
人民(12) **rénmín** *the people*
[民主(297) **mínzhǔ** *democracy, democratic*]
[民歌(387) **míngē** *folk song*]
[民用(130) **mínyòng** *for civilian use*]

(At the Gettysburg address) Imagine Abraham Lincoln standing among the **corpses** buried under **piles of earth**, making his famous speech about government "of **the people**, by **the people**, for **the people**." */ A **fairy** records the **minutes** (preserving the words for posterity).*

456a 弋 stake

pile of earth 七(455a) + **a drop** 丶 (22a) = **stake** 弋

This is like "dagger" (32a) but with a stroke missing.



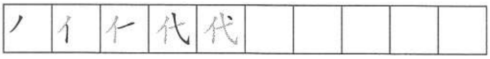
The builders are marking out a building site, using **a drop** of red paint on a small **pile of earth** to indicate where each **stake** should go. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

456 代 **dài** substitute **Radical** 亻 **5 strokes**

person 亻 (13a) + **stake** 弋(456a) = **substitute** 代

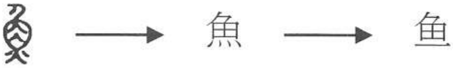
现代(215)	**xiàndài**	*modern*
代表(436)	**dàibiǎo**	*to represent; a delegate*
[时代(105)	**shídài**	*epoch, age, era*]
[年代(168)	**niándài**	*a decade (of a century)*]



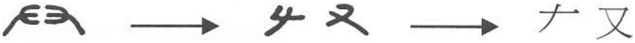
Harry is playing football and hurts himself by running into a large **stake**, so they have to bring on a **substitute** for him. / *The* ***dwarf*** *team manager rolls* ***dice*** *to determine who should replace him.*

Test yourself: 牛(384) 千(89) 上(42) 亮(342) 到(74) 音(257) 旧(394)
交(380) 改(359) 信(376) 业(395) 之(121) 懂(408) 爸(370)

Many books give sequences of pictures showing how characters have evolved over thousands of years, from their earliest forms to their current form. An example is the following sequence for "fish" (which we will meet in Chapter 30):



Sometimes knowing how characters have developed tells you something about the character. For example, you may find it interesting to see how the characters for left hand and right hand have developed from primitive pictures of the two hands:

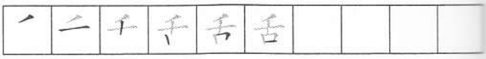


You can then notice, for example, that the intermediate form of "left hand" has the "special" stroke that appears in the character for "send out" (Character 146). Many people find this sort of thing fascinating but we believe that it is not the best way to learn the modern forms of characters when you are starting out. It's like tracing the Latin or Greek roots of English words. It may be interesting to know that the English word "bus" came from "omnibus" (which is Latin for "for all"), but this is not how you would teach a class in English for beginners. These derivations may give some help with remembering the meanings of basic building blocks, but are less use for composites, and give little if any help with pronunciations. In any event, if you are interested in seeing how Chinese characters have developed, there is no shortage of books available covering this topic.

Chapter 26

Another chapter where you already know all the basic building blocks you'll need. As you progress, you will find more and more characters which are made up of building blocks you already know. You have learned about 150 basic building blocks now, which gives a huge number of combinations (even counting just the composite characters which only contain two or three basic building blocks). There are now only 60 or so basic building blocks remaining in this book. After that, you would only need a further 30 or so to get you through the whole of HSK Level B.

457a 舌 shé
tongue



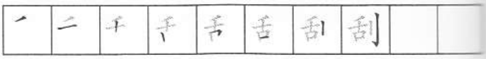
thousand 千(89) + **mouth** 口(5) =
tongue 舌

A **thousand** believers flocked to the **mouth** of the cave, hoping to hear the famous magical **tongue** speak. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

457 刮 **guā**
to blow

Radical 刂
8 strokes



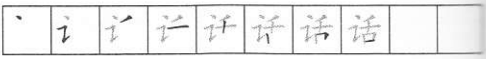
tongue 舌(457a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **blow** 刮

The young chef runs his **tongue** along the **knife** to lick it clean and then **blows** on it to dry it. / *The **ghostly giant**, guardian of kitchen cleanliness, excuses this as he loves the taste of **garlic** too!*

---

458 话 **huà**
speech

Radical 讠
8 strokes
話



words 讠(67c) + **tongue** 舌(457a) =
speech 话

会话(59) **huìhuà** *talk (with), conversation*
电话(159) **diànhuà** *telephone*
[对话(154) **duìhuà** *(have a) dialogue*]
[公用电话(119, 130, 159) **gōngyòng diànhuà** *public phone, payphone*]

(In an ancient tomb) The explorer can read the ancient **words** written above the door, but has to get his **tongue** round them, as the door will only open if he recites the whole **speech** in one go. / *The **ghostly dwarf** guarding the tomb plays the **harmonica** to put him off.*

---

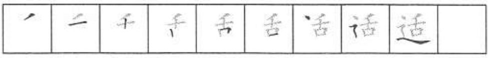
459 适 **shì** suitable

Radical 辶
9 strokes

適

road 辶(26a) + **tongue** 舌(457a) = **suitable** 适

合适(347) **héshì** *appropriate*
[适合(347) **shìhé** *to suit, to fit*]
[适当(267) **shìdāng** *suitable, appropriate*]
[适用(130) **shìyòng** *applicable, suitable*]



(The king likes to walk barefoot about his kingdom) He has a team of lackeys to lick the **road** with their **tongues** to check that it is **suitable** for his dainty feet. / *The* ***dwarf*** *is dismissive, “What a* ***charade****!”*

---

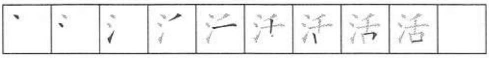
460 活 **huó** alive

Radical 氵
9 strokes

water 氵(78a) + **tongue** 舌(457a) = **alive** 活

This also means “lively” or “active”.

活儿(21) **huór** *(manual) work, job*
活动(58) **huódòng** *activity, (physical) exercise*
生活(133) **shēnghuó** *a life; to live (a life)*



(In the desert you find someone lying on the sand) You put your last drops of **water** on their **tongue** to revive them, hoping they’re still **alive**. / *The* ***ghostly fairy*** *who guards desert travelers suddenly notices what’s going on, and flies up with a magic* ***hosepipe*** *(to refill your water bottle).*

---

461 术 **shù** craft

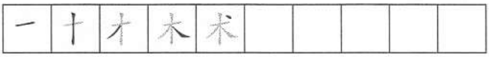
Radical 木
5 strokes

術

tree 木(10a) + **a drop** 丶(22a) = **craft** 术

This also means “skill” or “method”.

艺术(414) **yìshù** *art*
[手术(31) **shǒushù** *operation*]
[术语(68) **shùyǔ** *terminology, technical terms*]

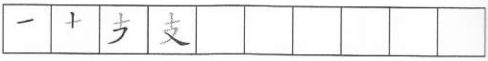


She saw **a drop** of rain on the **tree**, and it gave her the idea of making drop-like Christmas-tree decorations to sell at the **craft** fair. / *They draw grudging admiration from the* ***dwarf*** *selling* ***shoes*** *at the next stall.*

Test yourself: 足(280) 子(17) 你(51) 天(76) 牛(384) 北(317) 占(183)
谈(422) 初(439) 亿(413) 碰(396) 况(360) 史(397) 票(431)

462 支 **zhī** branch

Radical 十
4 strokes



ten 十(4) + **right hand** 又(52) = **branch** 支

This also means "to prop up", "support" and also acts as a measure word for long, thin things.

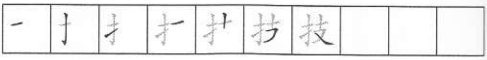
[一支笔(1, 454) **yì zhī bǐ** *a pen*]

At the **crossroads** in the maze the two friends **shake hands** and each chooses a **branch** of the maze to head down. / *The first one to reach the center of the maze where the **giant** sits in his **jacuzzi**, is the winner.*

---

463 技 **jì** skill

Radical 扌
7 strokes

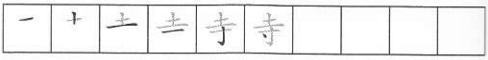


hand 扌(152a) + **branch** 支(462) = **skill** 技

技术(461) **jìshù** *technology, skill, technique*

The expert can tell, simply by putting his **hand** on each **branch**, what each type of wood can be used for — a rare **skill**. / *The **dwarf** then tells the workers which **jeep** to load it on to.*

464a 寺 temple



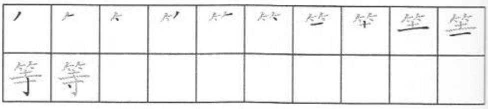
earth 土(54a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **temple** 寺

The pilgrims kneel on the **earth** and move forward **inch** by **inch** towards the holy **temple**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

464 等 **děng** wait for

Radical ⺮
12 strokes



bamboo ⺮(321a) + **temple** 寺(464a) = **wait for** 等

Two other major meanings are "grade" and "etc"; notice that we have sneaked these meanings into the story too.

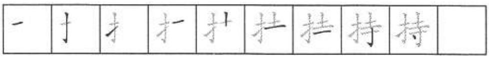
[平等(309) **píngděng** *equality, equal status*]
[久等(364) **jiǔděng** *to wait for a long time*]

He takes the **bamboo** to the **temple** but has to **wait for** the chief monk to come and grade it, etc. / ***Teddy** is bored, and plays in the **dung**. (Yuk!)*

---

465 持 **chí** maintain

Radical 扌
9 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **temple** 寺(464a) = **maintain** 持

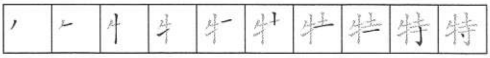
[支持(462) **zhīchí** *to support*]

"We need a **hand** over at the Indian **temple** — we need to do some work to **maintain** it." / *The* ***fairy*** *conjures up* ***chapatis*** *for all those who come to help.*

---

466 特 **tè** special

Radical 牛
10 strokes



cow 牛(384) + **temple** 寺(464a) = **special** 特

To write the left-hand part, see the comment for Character 384.

特别(79) **tèbié** *special, especially*

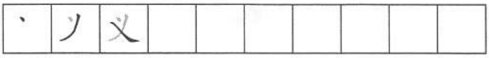
The **cow** who lived in the **temple** was **special** (a sacred cow!) / *The* ***dwarf's*** *job is to bring in special* ***turf*** *for it each day. ("It's just a cow!" he grumbles).*

---

467 义 **yì** just

Radical 丶
3 strokes

義



a drop 丶(22a) + **shears** 乂(25a) = **just** 义

This means "just" in the sense of "right and proper", or "righteous". It can also mean the "meaning or significance" of something.

意义(258) **yìyì** *significance*

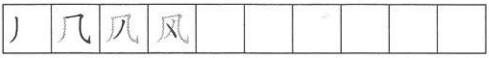
When one worker asked for **a drop** of oil on his **shears**, they all wanted one, claiming that that would be only **just**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *supervisor reluctantly agreed, saying, "These days, workers have it too* ***easy****."*

---

468 风 **fēng** wind

Radical 风
4 strokes

風



several 几(7) + **shears** 乂(25a) = **wind** 风

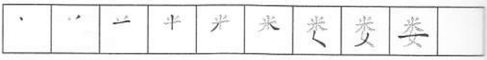
[风力(14) **fēnglì** *wind power, wind force*]

Several pairs of **shears** have been stuck in the ground to start making a **wind** break. / *The* ***giant*** *brings some* ***fungus*** *to fill in the gaps between them.*

469a 娄

trouble

rice 米(334) + **women** 女(15) = **trouble** 娄



(At the wedding) So much **rice** was thrown at the **woman** that she had **trouble** seeing where she was going. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

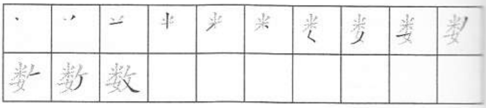
469 数

shù; shǔ
number; to count

Radical 攵
13 strokes
數

trouble 娄(469a) + **tap** 攵 (190a) = **number; count** 数

数学(82) **shùxué** *mathematics*
[少数(377) **shǎoshù** *minority*]



🎞 The actor is in **trouble**, and **taps** on the rock face in the cave, furiously trying to get the secret door to work — it is the film set of an "Indiana Jones" movie. But it keeps jamming and the **number** of takes is rising. / *The **dwarf** is standing behind the door, ready to **shoot** the hero as he comes through (and is getting fed up at the delay). **Teddy** jumps up and down and urges him to **shoot** anyway.* \ He gets so excited that he forgets to **count** the number of takes.

---

470 楼

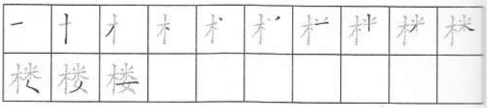
lóu
story

Radical 木
13 strokes
樓

tree 木(10a) + **trouble** 娄(469a) = **story** 楼

This means a multi-story building, or a floor (story) in such a building.

[楼上(42) **lóushàng** *upstairs*]
[楼下(43) **lóuxià** *downstairs*]



The **tree** is in **trouble** — it has been spotted knocking bricks off the building next door as the workmen are trying to build the latest **story** (which would overshadow the tree). / *The **fairy** negotiates with the building's owners to use a picture of the tree as their new **logo** (so then the tree is happy).*

---

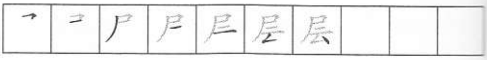
471 层

céng
tier

Radical 尸
7 strokes
層

corpse 尸(268a) + **cloud** 云(56) = **tier** 层

[一层楼(1, 470) **yì céng lóu** *the first floor*]



The **corpse** rose up on a **cloud**, carrying it up past each **tier** of the building in turn. / *The **fairy** flew alongside announcing to the people watching at each level: "This is what happens when you are **stung** by a killer bee."*

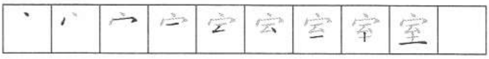
---

472 室 **shì** a room

Radical 宀
9 strokes

house 宀(91a) + **until** 至(74b) = **a room** 室

教室(265) **jiàoshì** *classroom*
办公室(123, 119) **bàngōngshì** *office*



(Searching for a place to stay the night) He went from **house** to **house until** he found **a room** he liked. / *The **dwarf** proudly showed off the amenities: "It has a heater, a cooker, a sink — the whole **shebang**."*

---

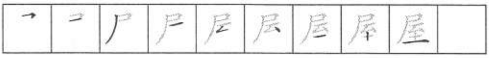
473 屋 **wū** accommodation

Radical 尸
9 strokes

corpse 尸(268a) + **until** 至(74b) = **accommodation** 屋

Depending on the context (and area of China) this can mean "house" or "room".

屋子(17) **wūzi** *room; house*
[同屋(160) **tóngwū** *roommate, flatmate*]



"We'll have to find somewhere to keep the **corpse until** the funeral — and we need to find **accommodation** for all the mourners before we can set a date." / *The **giant**, who has been fatally **wounded**, had been very popular...*

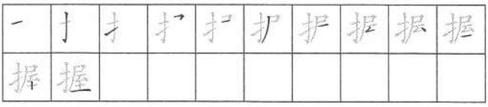
---

474 握 **wò** grasp

Radical 扌
12 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **accommodation** 屋(473) = **grasp** 握

握手(31) **wòshǒu** *shake hands*



In one **hand** he clutched the **accommodation** guide, while the other **grasp**ed the reins of his horse. / *"**Whoa!**" shouted the **dwarf**, as his horse trotted straight past all the good hotels.*

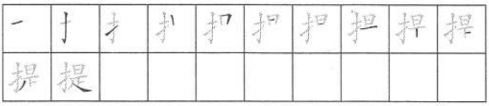
---

475 提 **tí** carry

Radical 扌
12 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **is** 是(30) = **carry** 提

This character means "carry", "lift", "raise"; and also has a range of derived meanings.

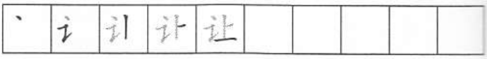


"A **hand is** designed to **carry** things." / *The **fairy** (giving etiquette lessons) demonstrates by carrying a **tea** cup.*

476 让 **ràng** allow

Radical 讠
5 strokes

讓



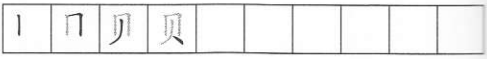
words 讠(67c) + **above** 上(42) = **allow** 让

[让座(212) **ràngzuò** *offer seat to; invite guests to be seated*]

The number of **words** in her essay went **above** the **allow**ed limit. / *She would have to **wrangle** with her supervisor the **dwarf**, to see if it would be accepted.*

477a 贝 **bèi** sea shell

貝



outer limits 冂(160a) + **person** 人(12) = **sea shell** 贝

The top part of this character isn't *really* "outer limits" (see Character 214).

This character often has connotations of money (as cowrie sea shells were once used as money).

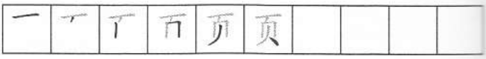
Harry journeyed to the **outer limits** of the kingdom carrying the magic **sea shell** (for protection against the bandits). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

477 页 **yè** page

Radical 页
6 strokes

頁



thumb tack 丆(40a) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) = **page** 页

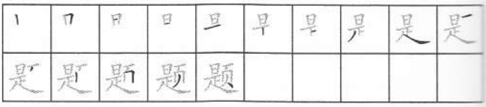
The small boy tried to use a **thumb tack** to pin the **sea shell** to the **page**. / *The **dwarf** (teacher) said, "I told you **yesterday** that wouldn't work!"*

---

478 题 **tí** topic

Radical 页
15 strokes

題



is 是(30) + **page** 页(477) = **topic** 题

Notice how "is" curls around the bottom of "page" in this character (and is written first, unlike "road" which is written after the part it encloses).

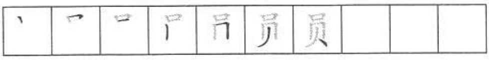
问题(289) **wèntí** *question*
[题目(93) **tímù** *(exam) question*]

Teacher to schoolchild: "I told you to write a page, this isn't a page!" "It **is**, it **is** a **page**," said the child, "just not a full page. It's all I can write on this **topic**." / *The **fairy** said to the teacher, "You have to admit, there's not a lot you can write about **teaspoons**."*

---

479 员 **yuán** member

Radical 口
7 strokes
員



mouth 口(5) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) =
member 员

This character is often used to mean "employee", or a person performing a role.

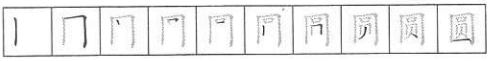
You have to hold a **sea shell** in your **mouth** (during the initiation ceremony) before you can become a **member** of the seafood club. / *The **fairy** then gives you a commemoration **yuan** coin.*

[人员(12) **rényuán** *staff, personnel*]
[店员(186) **diànyuán** *shop assistant*]

---

480 圆 **yuán** circle

Radical 囗
10 strokes
圓



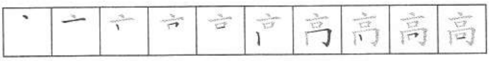
enclosed 囗(24a) + **member** 员(479) =
circle 圆

(At the summer seafood fair) The **enclosed** area "for **member**s only" was shaped like a **circle**. / *All members had to show their special **yuan** coins to the **fairy** to gain entry.*

---

481 高 **gāo** high

Radical 亠
10 strokes



tall 亠口(239a) + **skylight** 冋(389a) = **high** 高

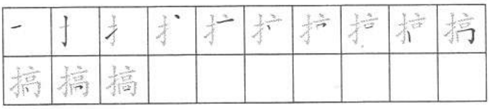
You have to be very **tall** to reach the **skylight** as it is so **high** up. / *The **giant** would normally open it for you, but he's laid up with **gout**.*

提高(475) **tígāo** *to raise, increase*
[高度(425) **gāodù** *altitude; highly*]

---

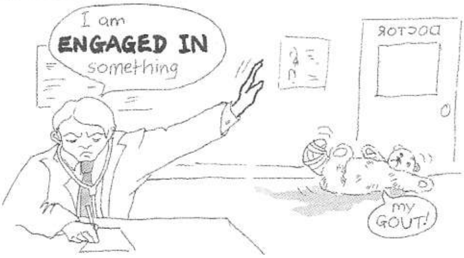
482 搞 **gǎo** engaged in

Radical 扌
13 strokes



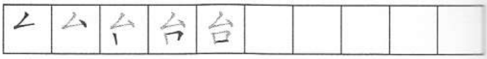
hand 扌(152a) + **high** 高(481) =
engaged in 搞

[搞好(18) **gǎohǎo** *make a good job of*]



The doctor held his **hand** up **high**, palm out, to indicate that he was **engaged in** something and couldn't be interrupted. / ***Teddy** didn't want to wait so rolled around on the floor pretending to have **gout**.*

483a 台 **tái** platform 臺



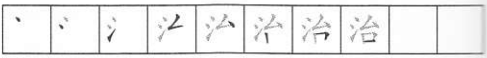
cocoon 厶(34a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
platform 台

This character has a number of meanings and at least three traditional forms to go with them. It can refer to things like TV stations; it is used as a measure word; and it is also the "tai" in "Taiwan" and the "ty" in "typhoon".

The ants each brought a **cocoon** to the **mouth** of the cave, where they stacked them up to form a **platform** (for their annual rock concert — they use the cave as it has good acoustics!). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

483 治 **zhì** treat (disease) Radical 氵 8 strokes



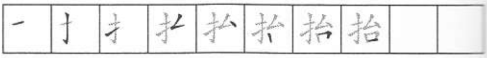
water 氵(78a) + **platform** 台(483a) =
treat 治

政治(190) **zhèngzhì** *politics*

(A snake-oil salesman) The colored **water** was ready on the **platform** for the demonstration of how to **treat** diseases. / *His **dwarf** assistant dipped a wilted **geranium** in the water, to demonstrate the water's reviving powers.*

---

484 抬 **tái** raise Radical 扌 8 strokes



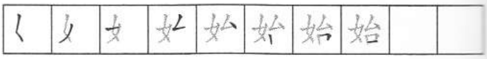
hand 扌(152a) + **platform** 台(483a) =
raise 抬

[抬高(481) **táigāo** *to raise prices*]

"Give me a **hand** with the **platform** to **raise** it up" (The parts are lying assembled on the ground). / *The **fairy** then waves her wand and a magnificent **tiger** appears on the platform for all to see and admire.*

---

485 始 **shǐ** start Radical 女 8 strokes

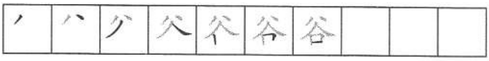


women 女(15) + **platform** 台(483a) =
start 始

开始(85) **kāishǐ** *to start; beginning*

A **woman** walks onto the **platform** to **start** the performance (with an operatic aria). / *__Teddy__ (in the audience and impatient to see the main attraction) throws a **shallot** at her.*

486a 谷 **gǔ**
valley



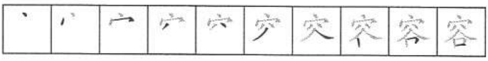
eight 八(20) + **tent** 𠆢(19b) +
mouth 口(5) = **valley** 谷

The **octopus** climbs on top of his **tent**, but even here the water comes up to his **mouth**. It had been a silly idea to pitch his tent in the **valley**. (It's a strange octopus who doesn't like water!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

486 容 **róng**
tolerate

Radical 宀
10 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **valley** 谷(486a) =
tolerate 容

If you have a **house** in the **valley**, you have to **tolerate** the noise of the air force jets practicing their low level flying. / *The **fairy** thinks it's **wrong**. (She can fly quietly, so why can't they?)*

内容(219) **nèiróng** *contents, substance*
[容人(12) **róngrén** *broad minded*]

Test yourself: 内(219) 住(298) 正(29) 中(33) 决(404) 次(361) 史(397)
社(433) 写(423) 破(441) 少(377) 东(319) 爬(371) 睡(409)

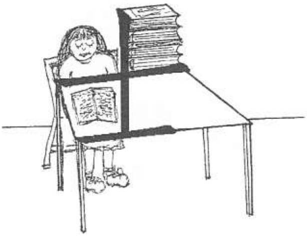
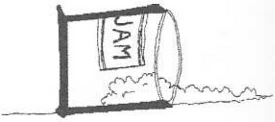
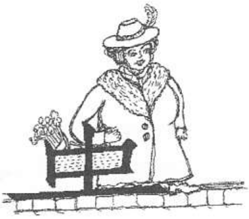
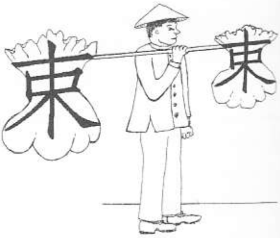
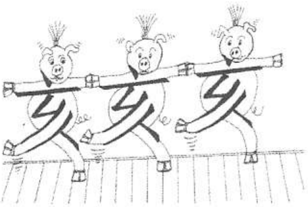
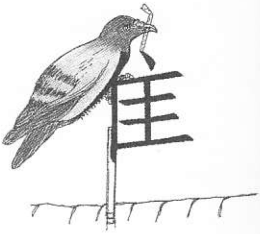
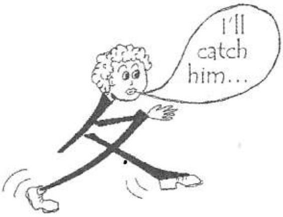
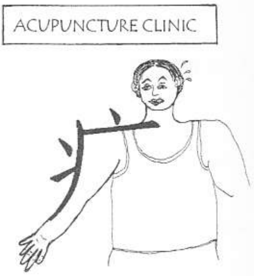
If you have been looking at the traditional characters, you may have spotted the main methods used to derive simplified characters from the traditional ones. In many cases, the simplified forms were based on widely-used existing abbreviations, which were just given a more official status.

Sometimes the radical was simplified:	詞	⟶	词
Sometimes the remainder:	燈	⟶	灯
Sometimes both:	錢	⟶	钱
Occasionally the same symbol is used as an abbreviation for several more complicated forms:	難 觀	⟶ ⟶	难 观
Sometimes there were more drastic changes:	頭	⟶	头
Finally, many simpler characters were left unchanged:	本	⟶	本

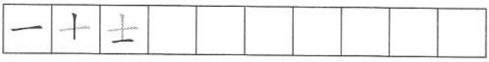
This process of simplification is another reason why the equations "don't make sense". As you can perhaps imagine, it also disrupted some traditional phonetic series (while also creating new ones). Many older books used to admonish you against learning the simplified characters without learning the traditional forms; but learning the simplified ones first is fine, and you can easily pick up the traditional ones later if you want to.

Chapter 27

The picture for "pigeon" on this page, like so many others in this book, does not follow the historical origins of the character — hardly surprising, as the character developed before houses had rooftop TV aerials! But if the picture reminds you, next time you see this basic building block, that its meaning is "pigeon", that's all we need. It doesn't matter that the strokes on the right-hand side originally represented a bird's tail feathers ...

士 **scholar** 	匚 **container** 
由 **shopping basket** 	束 **bundle** 
亥 **pig** 	隹 **pigeon** 
夂 **pursue**  I'll catch him...	疒 **illness** 

487a 士 **shì**
scholar



This character differs from "earth" (Character 54a) in that here the first (upper) horizontal stroke is longer than the second (lower) one.

---

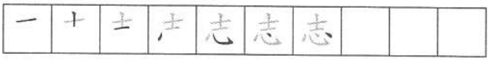
487 志 **zhì**
intention

Radical 士
7 strokes

scholar 士(487a) + **heart** 心(161) =
intention 志

This also means "to record" or "a (written) record".

同志(160)	**tóngzhì**	*comrade*
[意志(258)	**yìzhì**	*(the human) will*]



The **scholar** has set his **heart** on carrying out his latest project: "It's my **intention** to record every species of orchid in the world." / *His assistant the* ***dwarf*** *(who thinks if he's going to be dragged around, it might as well be in the sun) says, "Let's start in* ***Jamaica****."*

"**Tóngzhì**" is rarely used nowadays as a form of address, although it used to be the most common form of address in China.

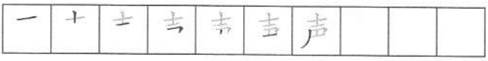
---

488 声 **shēng**
voice

Radical 士
7 strokes
聲

scholar 士(487a) + **corpse** 尸(268a) =
voice 声

大声(47)	**dàshēng**	*in a loud voice*
声音(257)	**shēngyīn**	*voice, sound of voices*

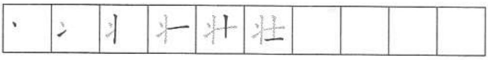


The **scholar** stands over the **corpse** ready to give his anatomy lesson — but a **voice** speaks from the corpse and makes him jump! (One of the students has put a small speaker inside it — if you look at the "corpse" you will see the extra stroke that is the microphone). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

489a 壮 **zhuàng**
sturdy

壯

firewood 丬(317a) + **scholar** 士(487a) =
sturdy 壮

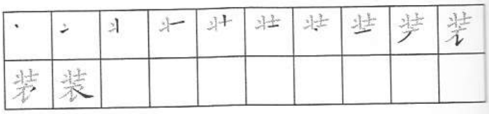


The **scholar** was so unworldly that when sent for **firewood** he came back with **sturdy** poles instead of kindling. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

Test yourself: 厂(149) 白(22) 坏(442) 号(424) 哥(386) 省(379) 着(205)
漂(432) 术(461) 使(398) 直(451) 艺(414) 快(403) 飞(410)

489 装 **zhuāng** pretend

Radical 衣
12 strokes
裝

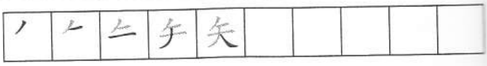


sturdy 壮(489a) + **clothes** 衣(437) = **pretend** 装

[装样子(112, 17) **zhuāng yàngzi** *put on an act, do for appearance sake*]

The children put on **sturdy** boots and warm **clothes** and sneak into the indoor ski slope at night with ropes, so they can **pretend** to be climbing Everest. / *The **ghostly giant** (guarding the ski slope) **jangles** his keys to scare them off.*

490a 矢 **shǐ** arrow



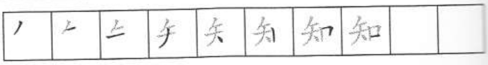
clouds 𠂉(124b) + **big** 大(47) = **arrow** 矢

The TV weatherman was given new symbols for **clouds**, but they were so **big** that he hardly had any space left on the map to put the wind **arrows**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

490 知 **zhī** know

Radical 矢
8 strokes

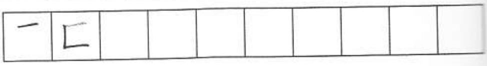


arrow 矢(490a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **know** 知

知道(145)	**zhīdào**	*know, be aware of*
知识(256)	**zhīshí**	*knowledge*

He shoots an **arrow** into the **mouth** of the cave, so that anyone inside will **know** he's there (there are no doorbells on caves). / *The **giant** appears, complaining, "I was just relaxing in my **jacuzzi**!"*

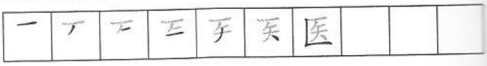
491a 匚 container



---

491 医 **yī** heal

Radical 匚
7 strokes
醫



container 匚(491a) + **arrow** 矢(490a) = **heal** 医

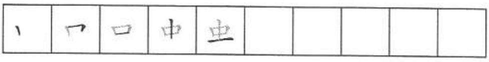
医生(133)	**yīshēng**	*doctor*
医院(306)	**yīyuàn**	*hospital*

The tribal doctor has a **container** full of **arrows** (like acupuncture needles, tipped with various drugs) with which to **heal** his patients. "This won't hurt," he says. / *"**Easy** for you to say," says the **giant**, apprehensively.*

492a

𠂇

“shopping basket”



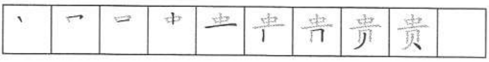
492

贵

guì
expensive

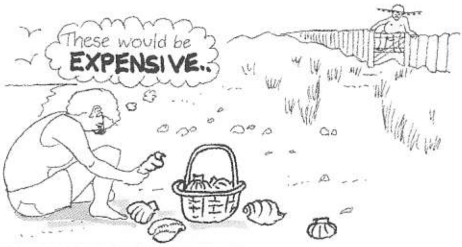
Radical 贝
9 strokes

貴



shopping basket 𠂇(492a) **+**
sea shell 贝(477a) **= expensive 贵**

贵姓(135) **guìxìng** *(your) family name*



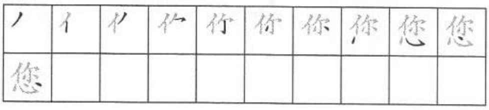
On the beach the girl collects **sea shells** in her **shopping basket** — they’d be **expensive** if bought in the shop. / *The* ***ghostly dwarf*** *who guards the beach sits on the* ***gate*** *(on the path to the beach) watching to make sure she doesn’t take too many.*

493

您

nín
you (polite)

Radical 心
11 strokes



you 你(51) **+ heart 心**(161) **= you 您**

[您贵姓(492, 135) **nín guìxìng** *what is your surname? (polite)*]

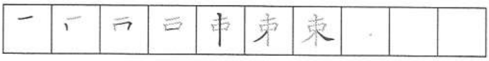
When you say “**you**” and put your **heart** into it, it is a much more polite way of saying “**you**”. / *You would use this form of address to a* ***ninja*** *or a* ***fairy*** *(or indeed a fairy ninja!)*

494

束

shù
bundle

Radical 木
7 strokes

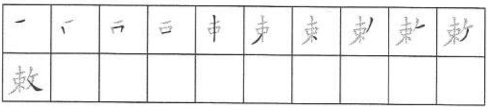


/ *The* ***dwarf*** *loads* ***bundle****s of little* ***wheels*** *into his clay-pigeon launcher to practice his* ***shooting****.*

495a

欶

suck

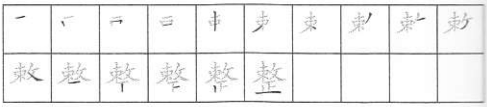


bundle 束(494) **+ tap 攵**(190a) **= suck 欶**

The magician **tap**ped the **bundle** of rags, and the audience **suck**ed in their breath (gasping at what appears … use your imagination!). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

495 整 **zhěng** entire

Radical 止
16 strokes

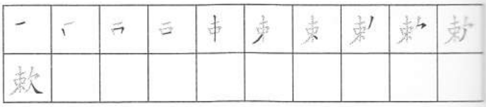


suck 敕(495a) + **upright** 正(29) = **entire** 整

[完整(305) **wánzhěng** *complete, integrated*]
[整理(158) **zhěnglǐ** *put in order, tidy up*]

The fat admiral **sucks** in his tummy and stands **upright** — and has to hold this position while the **entire** fleet sails past. / *Last in line is **Teddy** in his **junk**.*

496a 敕 imperial decree



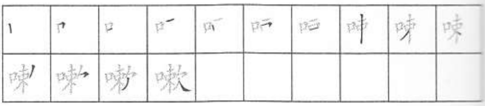
bundle 束(494) + **lacking** 欠(361a) = **imperial decree** 敕

The old people complain that they were **lacking** their **bundles** of firewood (which they are traditionally given each winter). An **imperial decree** has to be issued to rectify the situation. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

496 嗽 **sòu** cough

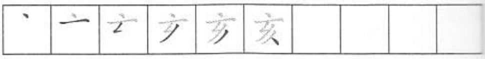
Radical 口
14 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **imperial decree** 敕(496a) = **cough** 嗽

The town crier opens his **mouth** to proclaim the **imperial decree** but can only **cough**. / *The **dwarf** thrusts a **soda** into his hand before he ruins the whole occasion.*

497a 亥 **hài** pig



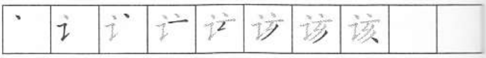
Yet another pig! (See Characters 109a and 263 for the others.)

---

497 该 **gāi** ought

Radical 讠
8 strokes

該



words 讠(67c) + **pig** 亥(497a) = **ought** 该

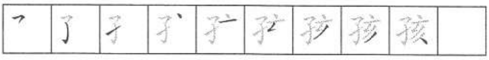
应该(388) **yīnggāi** *should, ought to*

(In the old church, looking for the famous tomb) The floor is covered with **words** carved into the flagstones, and the **pig** snuffles about. "It **ought** to be here somewhere," he says. / *He asks the **giant** if he can borrow his **guidebook**.*

---

498 孩 **hái** youngster

Radical 子
9 strokes



child 子(17) + **pig** 亥(497a) = **youngster** 孩

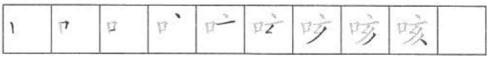
孩子(17) **háizi** *child*
小孩儿(50, 21) **xiǎoháir** *child*

"That **child**'s riding on a **pig**!" "It's OK, he's only a **youngster**." / *The* ***fairy*** *sits on a* ***hydrant****, laughing.*

---

499 咳 **ké** cough

Radical 口
9 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **pig** 亥(497a) = **cough** 咳

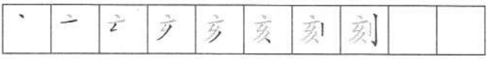
咳嗽(496) **késòu** *to cough*

At the **mouth** of the cave the **pig coughs** discreetly to announce his presence. / *The* ***fairy*** *emerges from behind her* ***curtain*** *to see who it is.*

---

500 刻 **kè** quarter (hour)

Radical 刂
8 strokes



pig 亥(497a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **quarter** 刻

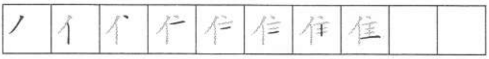
This character also means "carve" or "engrave".

立刻(177) **lìkè** *at once*
[刻苦(218) **kèkǔ** *hardworking, painstaking*]

The **pig** uses a **knife** to cut his lunch apple neatly into **quarters**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *fixes up a* ***curtain*** *round the pigsty (so that passers-by can't see his prissy pig).*

Test yourself: 表(436) 作(207) 意(258) 歌(387) 破(441) 块(402) 吃(415)
代(456) 棵(188) 度(425) 觉(405) 更(399) 步(378) 为(122)

501a 隹 pigeon



This is a picture of a bird, but looks like a composite character made up of "person" plus "lord with an extra stroke". Feel free to make up a story along these lines if you like. (Also, compare this character with "to live in", Character 298).

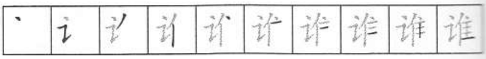
501 谁 **shuí** (shéi) who?

Radical 讠
10 strokes
誰

words 讠 (67c) + **pigeon** 隹(501a) = **who?** 谁

This also has the (colloquial) pronunciation **shéi**.

[谁的(23) **shuíde** *whose?*]



(In the dusty tomb) The **pigeon** writes **words** in the dust with his beak, asking "**Who** is in the tomb?" / *The **ghostly** **fairy** who guards the tomb answers, "The **sheikh**."*

---

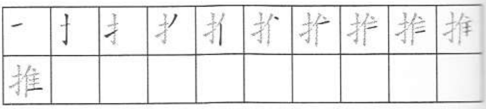
502 推 **tuī** push

Radical 扌
11 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **pigeon** 隹(501a) = **push** 推

This can also mean "grind", "to clip", "deduce", "shirk", "postpone", "elect" or "esteem"!

[推广(170) **tuīguǎng** *spread; popularize*]
[推动(58) **tuīdòng** *promote, push*]



(She had nursed the wounded pigeon back to health) She took the **pigeon** in her **hand** and gave it a **push** to launch it into the air. / *The **ghostly giant**, who would look after it, attached a piece of colored **tape** to its leg (so he could see which one to keep an eye on).*

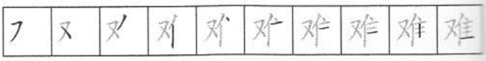
---

503 难 **nán** difficult

Radical 又
10 strokes
難

right hand 又(52) + **pigeon** 隹(501a) = **difficult** 难

[难过(106) **nánguò** *sad, grieved*]
[难看(200) **nánkàn** *ugly*]



The toddler tries to **shake hands** with the **pigeon** — but is finding it **difficult** as the pigeon doesn't have hands! / *The **fairy** takes the lad back to his **nanny**.*

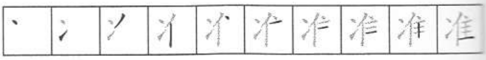
---

504 准 **zhǔn** accurate

Radical 冫
10 strokes
準

ice 冫(360a) + **pigeon** 隹(501a) = **accurate** 准

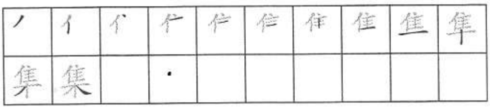
[准确(419) **zhǔnquè** *accurate, exact*]
[准时(105) **zhǔnshí** *punctual, on time*]



Landing on the **ice**, the **pigeon** slides neatly to a stop (exactly in the right place); it has done this so often that it's now very **accurate**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

505 集 **jí** assemble

Radical 隹
12 strokes

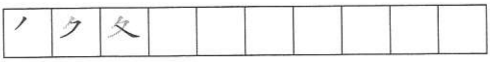


pigeon 隹(501a) + **tree** 木(10a) =
assemble 集

集合(347)	**jíhé**	*to assemble, gather together*
[集中(33)	**jízhōng**	*concentrate, focus*]

The **pigeon** flies to the **tree** to join the others who are already **assemble**d ready for the performance. / *The **fairy**, wearing a **G-string**, comes out to announce the first act.*

506a 夂 pursue



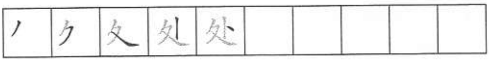
In the following character (506), "pursue" encloses the fortune teller to the left and bottom sides. But more usually "pursue" tends to be on the top (as in Character 507) or on the bottom. Compare this with "to tap" (190a), which always appears as the right-hand side of characters. Notice also that "pursue" has 3 strokes while "to tap" has 4.

---

506 处 **chù (chǔ)** place

Radical 夂
5 strokes

處



pursue 夂(506a) + **fortune teller** 卜(42a) =
place 处

Another meaning is "manage" (a business or situation).

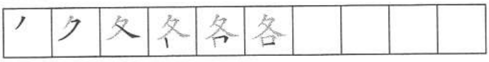
好处(18)	**hǎochù**	*benefit*
[处理(158)	**chùlǐ**	*handle, deal with*]
[坏处(442)	**huàichu**	*disadvantage*]
[用处(130)	**yòngchu**	*to use*]

He **pursue**s the **fortune teller** from **place** to **place** (to ask more details about her predictions). / *He asks the **dwarf**, "Which way did she go?" But the dwarf ignores him and just sits **chewing** his gum.*

---

507 各 **gè** each

Radical 夂
6 strokes



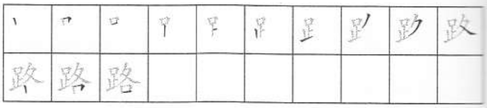
pursue 夂(506a) + **mouth** 口(5) = **each** 各

各种(279)	**gèzhǒng**	*all kinds of*

The police **pursue** the thieves to the **mouth** of the cave and then stand guard at **each** of the exits. / *The **dwarf** is determined to retrieve the stolen **gherkins**!*

508 路 **lù** path

Radical 足
13 strokes



foot 足(280) + **each** 各(507) = **path** 路

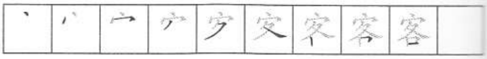
[道路(145) **dàolù** *road, path*]
[路上(42) **lùshang** *en route*]
[问路(289) **wèn lù** *ask the way*]
[公路(119) **gōnglù** *public road, highway*]
[马路(44) **mălù** *street, avenue*]
[路口(5) **lùkǒu** *(road) intersection*]

(At the fork in the road) "If you really can't decide which way to go, try putting a **foot** on **each path**." / *"This is **lunatic**," says the **dwarf**.*

---

509 客 **kè** guest

Radical 宀
9 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **each** 各(507) = **guest** 客

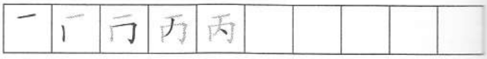
The meaning includes "visitor" and "customer".

客气(411) **kèqì** *modest, polite*
[会客(59) **huì kè** *to receive visitors*]
[做客(210) **zuò kè** *to visit, be a guest*]
[客人(12) **kèren** *guest*]
[请客(336) **qǐng kè** *to invite for dinner*]

The old duke has given a **house** to **each** of his children, providing he can stay with each of them as a **guest** whenever he wishes. / *The **dwarf** brings the duke's **curtains** along (so that everywhere he stays, he will feel at home).*

Test yourself: 九(38) 小(50) 快(403) 社(433) 第(322) 态(426) 刮(457)
应(388) 谊(450) 全(416) 道(145) 定(406) 活(460) 农(438)

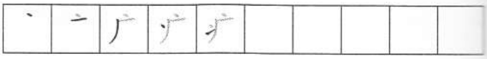
510a 丙 **bǐng** third



one 一(1) + **inside** 内(219) = **third** 丙

When the **unicorn** gets **inside** the Ark he sees that he is only the **third** creature aboard (after Noah and his wife). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

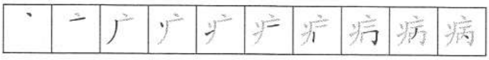
510b 疒 illness



Compare this with "shelter", Character 170.

510 病 **bìng** disease

Radical 疒
10 strokes



illness 疒(510b) **+third** 丙(510a) = **disease** 病

This can also mean a “fault” or “defect”.

看病(200)	**kànbìng**	*to see a doctor*
[病人(12)	**bìngrén**	*patient, sick person*]
[病房(293)	**bìngfáng**	*(hospital) ward*]
[毛病(453)	**máobìng**	*problem*]

After seeing the same mysterious **illness** for the **third** time, he is finally able to diagnose the **disease**. / *“Bingo,” says the **dwarf** doctor’s assistant sarcastically, “I knew what it was all along.”*

You may have been wondering how to look up characters in a Chinese dictionary, since there is no “alphabetical order” for characters. Many dictionaries today are organized alphabetically by (pinyin) pronunciation, so if you want to look up a character in a dictionary and you know its pronunciation, then it’s easy. But when you don’t know the pronunciation of a character, there’s a problem.

When you don’t know the pronunciation of a character, one way to look it up is to use a radical index — and this is why radicals are useful. To use a radical index you have to know which part of the character is the radical, and you’ll also need to be able to count the number of strokes that make up the character. To look up 姓, for example, 女 is the radical (which has 3 strokes) and the remainder 生 has 5 strokes. So first you find the radical 女 amongst the 3-stroke radicals in the radical index. Then, if there are lots of characters under 女, look for 姓 in the subsection which lists all the characters which have 5-stroke remainders. You would also use this method for the more traditional character dictionaries which are organized by radical (instead of by pinyin).

Many dictionaries also have a pure stroke count index (i.e. ignoring the radical). To use this you must count up the strokes in the character as a whole and look the character up under that number (so 姓 would come under the 8-stroke characters). As you can imagine, this type of index can leave you with columns of characters to scan before you find the one you’re looking for, so it’s usually a last resort!

Dictionaries sometimes use a sub-classification based on the first stroke of the character (whether it is a horizontal stroke or a vertical stroke, etc.) — which is another reason for knowing the correct stroke-orders for characters.

Words (compounds) are often listed under the leading character. But when a dictionary lists words as separate entries, beware that the “pinyin alphabetical order” often works by syllable/character, rather than following “strict” alphabetical order. For example, these words would appear in this order:

... ta ... tamen ... tai ... taiyang ... tan ... tanhua ... tang ...

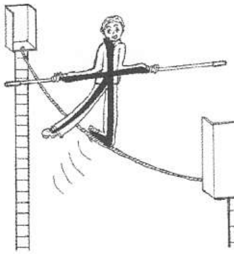
All these methods have their pitfalls and complications, so recently a completely new way of looking up characters has been devised. The Chinese Character Fast Finder (see the inside back cover) organizes characters purely by their shapes so that you can look up any one of 3,000 characters very quickly without knowing its meaning, radical, pronunciation or stroke-count! The Fast Finder Index at the back of this book is organized using the same principles.

Chapter 28

Once again, we have collected together in one place a number of similar characters so that you can compare them and learn to look for the small details which differ from one to another.

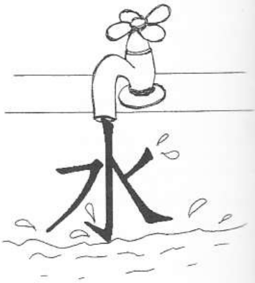
才

only just



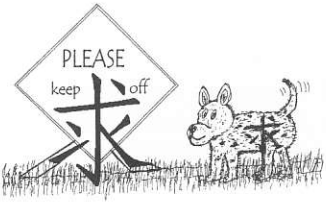
水

water



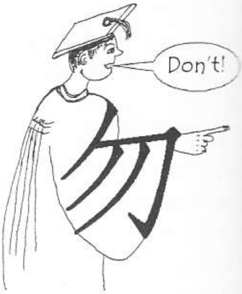
求

request


PLEASE
keep
off

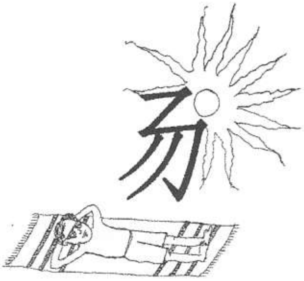
勿

don't!



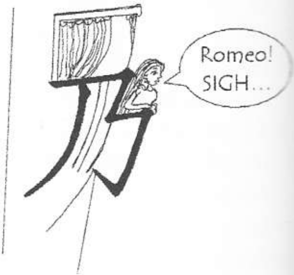
昜

sunny



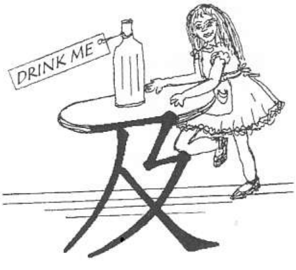
乃

sigh



及

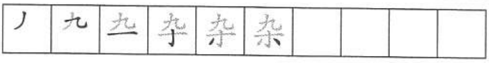
reach



511 杂 **zá** mixed

Radical 木
6 strokes
雜

several 九(38) + **tree** 木(10a) = **mixed** 杂



The **baseball** has got stuck in the **tree**; when you climb up to get it, you find all kinds of stuff **mixed** together up there. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

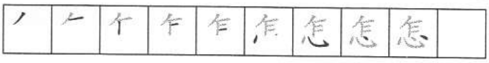
This character and the following five have pronunciations beginning with "z" for which there are no sensible words in English to use as soundwords. We have collected them together here, and while we could make up another "trick" for remembering them, it is probably simpler if you just treat them as DIY pronunciations.

---

512 怎 **zěn** how?

Radical 心
9 strokes

suddenly 乍 (207a) + **heart** 心(161) = **how?** 怎



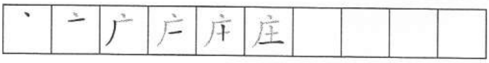
Suddenly his friend's **heart** stopped. He would have to get it restarted. Yes, but **how?** / *[DIY pronunciation]*

怎么(34) **zěnme** *how, in what manner*
怎样(112) **zěnyàng** *how*
怎么样(34, 112) **zěnmeyàng** *how, how about*

513a 庄 zhuāng premises

莊

shelter 广(170) + **earth** 土(54a) = **premises** 庄



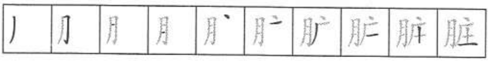
The **shelter** protected the **earth** so that work could begin on the new **premises** (regardless of the weather). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

513 脏 **zāng** (zàng) dirty

Radical 月
10 strokes
髒

moon 月(61) + **premises** 庄(513a) = **dirty** 脏



With the **moon** shining on the **premises**, you can see the shopkeepers taking their **dirty** washing out. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

This character can also mean an organ of the body when it is pronounced **zàng** (and it then has a different traditional form).

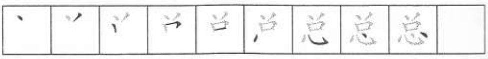
514 总 **zǒng** always

Radical 心
9 strokes
總

horns 丷(65a) + **mouth** 口(5) + **heart** 心(161) = **always** 总

This character has a variety of other meanings including "general", "chief", "anyway" and "to sum up".

总适(459) **zǒngshì** *always*
[总理(158) **zǒnglǐ** *premier, prime minister*]



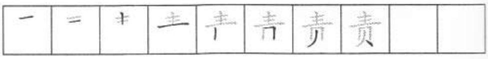
They hung **horns** above the **mouth** of the cave, and placed an animal's **heart** underneath, in accordance with tradition. "Now we will **always** have enough to eat." */ [DIY pronunciation]*

---

515 责 **zé** duty

Radical 贝
8 strokes
責

plant 龶 (133a) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) = **duty** 责



The prize exhibit at the art gallery is a **plant** growing in a **sea shell**; it's the night watchman's **duty** to top up the water. */ The **fairy** has given him a **zircon**-encrusted watering can to use.*

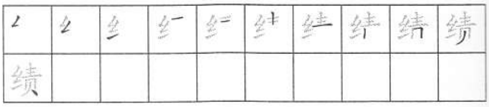
---

516 绩 **jì** achievement

Radical 纟
11 strokes
績

thread 纟 (233a) + **duty** 责(515) = **achievement** 绩

成绩(259) **chéngjì** *achievement*



The spider developed a way of making particularly strong **thread** and felt it was his **duty** to teach it to all the other spiders too — a great **achievement**. */ Even so, his whole team could only just make a **G-string** which did not satisfy the **dwarf**.*

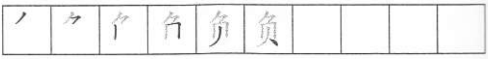
---

517 负 **fù** to shoulder

Radical 贝
6 strokes
負

bow ⺈(51a) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) = **shoulder** 负

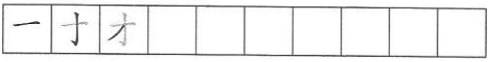
负责(515) **fùzé** *to be in charge*



The men on the beach **bow** down to pick up **sea shells** to put in sacks which they then **shoulder**. */ The **dwarf** has to sample the seafood but gets **food** poisoning (and takes out his temper on the poor men).*

518 才 **cái** only just

Radical 一
3 strokes
纔



One of the more dramatic simplifications of a traditional character! In its own right 才 also means "ability, talent", and the fragment "talent" (55a) is actually a deformation of this character.

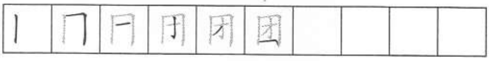
[人才(12) **réncái** *talented person*]
[天才(76) **tiāncái** *genius*]

*/ The **fairy** has **only just** got brand new **wheels** for her bike — she's proud of them too as they are the latest **style**.*

---

519 团 **tuán** group

Radical 囗
6 strokes
團



enclosed 囗(24a) + **only just** 才(518) = **group** 团

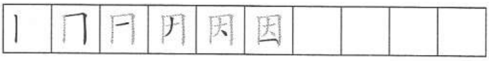
This means a group of people, but also "unite", "ball" or "dumpling".

(An exhibition of precious jewels from the Taj Mahal must be enclosed in a secure glass case; imagine the museum staff scurrying around trying to get everything ready) They **only just** get the jewels **enclosed** when the first **group** of people arrives. */ The **ghostly fairy** (who's going to guard the exhibit) complains that it smells of **tandoori**.*

---

520 因 **yīn** because

Radical 囗
6 strokes



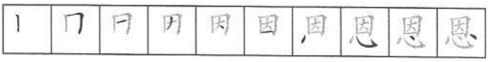
enclosed 囗(24a) + **big** 大(47) = **because** 因

Be careful not to mix this up with the previous character.

因为(122) **yīnwèi** *because*
[因而(151) **yīn ér** *so, therefore*]

"He's so **big**, he'll have to be **enclosed**." "Why?" "**Because** he'll frighten everyone." */ Poor **giant**, that will upset his **yin**.*

521a 恩 **ēn** a favor

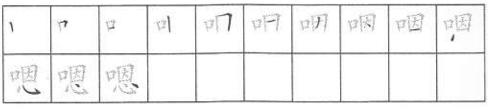


because 因(520) + **heart** 心(161) = **favor** 恩

Because she has such a kind **heart** she is always doing **favors** for people. */ [No pronunciation needed]*

521 嗯 **ng** eh

Radical 口
13 strokes



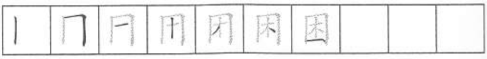
mouth 口(5) + **favor** 恩(521a) = **eh** 嗯

You open your **mouth** to ask your friend a **favor** but, before you can ask, they say, "So what do you want me to do now? **Eh**?" / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

522 困 **kùn** difficulty

Radical 囗
7 strokes



enclosed 囗(24a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **difficulty** 困

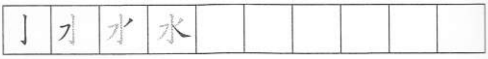
困难(503) **kùnnán** *difficulty, difficult*

The **tree** doesn't want to be **enclosed** so keeps reaching down with its branches and pulling up the fence. The workers have **difficulty** erecting the fence with this going on! / *The **dwarf** foreman is **cunning** and brings along his pet canary to sing and calm the tree down.*

---

523 水 **shuǐ** water

Radical 水
4 strokes



When this character appears as the left-hand side of other characters, it is abbreviated to the form 氵 which we have already met (78a).

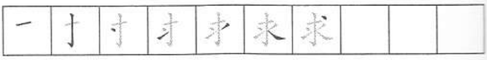
汽水(412) **qìshuǐ** *soft drink*
水果(187) **shuǐguǒ** *fruit*
水平(309) **shuǐpíng** *proficiency; level, standard*

/ *The **water wheel** has stopped and the **ghostly teddy**, who looks after it, is shaking his head — he can't fix it because he's dropped his **shades** in the mechanism (and can't see very well without them).*

---

524 求 **qiú** request

Radical 丶
7 strokes



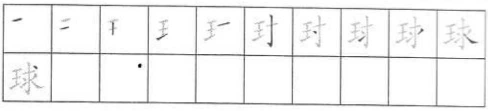
Note that the bottom of this character looks like "water" (Character 523), but all four small strokes are written separately.

要求(101) **yāoqiú** *require, requirement*
[请求(336) **qǐngqiú** *request*]

/ *(In a wheel shop) A **request** comes in for a new **wheel**. The owner chooses **two fairies** wearing sparkling **chokers** to deliver it right away to his best client.*

525 球 **qiú** ball

Radical 王
11 strokes



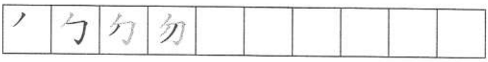
king 王(60a) + **request** 求(524) = **ball** 球

排球(330)	**páiqiú**	*volleyball*
足球(280)	**zúqiú**	*football*
月球(61)	**yuèqiú**	*the moon (scientific)*
[地球(54)	**dìqiú**	*(the planet) Earth*]

(The king is playing football, but not very well) The **king** has to keep **request**ing the queen to return his **ball** from her private garden. / *She asks her* ***two fairies****, wearing sparkling* ***chokers****, to deliver it back each time.*

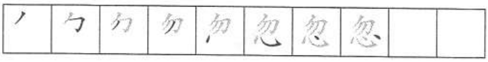
Test yourself:
米(334) 人(12) 去(86) 词(231) 就(239) 找(152) 向(389)
当(267) 义(467) 且(443) 决(404) 祝(434) 市(427) 色(417)

526a 勿 wù don't!



526 忽 **hū** sudden

Radical 心
8 strokes



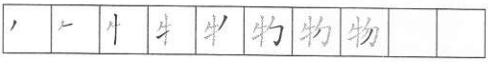
don't 勿(526a) + **heart** 心(161) = **sudden** 忽

忽然(266)	**hūrán**	*suddenly*

The surgeon in the operating theatre shouts, "**Don't** touch the **heart**!" **Sudden**ly blood spurts everywhere. / *The* ***giant*** *comes by with his* ***hoover*** *to clean everything up!*

527 物 **wù** thing

Radical 牛
8 strokes



cow 牛(384) + **don't** 勿(526a) = **thing** 物

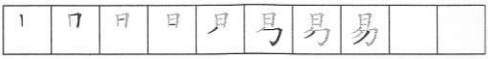
Remember that "cow" is written with the slanting stroke last (see Character 384).

动物(58)	**dòngwù**	*animal*
物理(158)	**wùlǐ**	*physics*
[生物(133)	**shēngwù**	*living things*]
[食物(287)	**shíwù**	*food*]
[动物园(58, 302)	**dòngwùyuán**	*zoo*]

The **cow** says, "**Don't** touch me — I washed my hair this morning and I can't do a **thing** with it!" / *The* ***dwarf whooped*** *with derision.*

528 易 **yì** easy

Radical 日
8 strokes



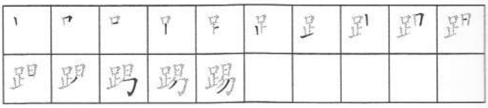
sun 日(6) + **don't** 勿(526a) = **easy** 易

容易(486) **róngyì** *easy*

"**Don't** lie in the **sun** for too long — it's **easy** to get sun burnt." / *The **dwarf** decides to put up this warning on an **easel** (as he's fed up of telling everyone).*

529 踢 **tī** kick

Radical 足
15 strokes

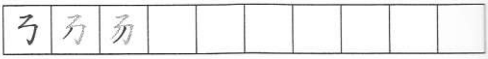


foot 足(280) + **easy** 易(528) = **kick** 踢

[踢球(525) **tī qiú** *to play football*]

The soccer player draws his **foot** back; it is going to be an **easy** shot, and he **kicks** the ball hard into the goal. / *The **giant** cheers the winning **team** (almost deafening everyone around him).*

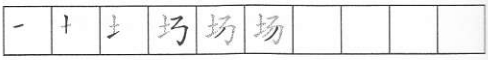
530a 𠃓 sunny



Compare this with "don't" (526a).

530 场 **chǎng** site

Radical 土
6 strokes
場



earth 土(54a) + **sunny** 𠃓(530a) = **site** 场

机场(10) **jīchǎng** *airport*
[会场 (59) **huìchǎng** *(meeting) venue*]
[广场 (170) **guǎngchǎng** *(city) square*]
[市场 (427) **shìchǎng** *market, marketplace*]
[停车场 (343, 83) **tíngchēchǎng** *parking lot, carpark*]

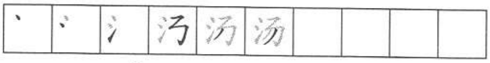
They look for a patch of **earth** that is **sunny**, for the **site** of their new plantation. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

If you look at the traditional form for Character 530, you will see that 530a is a simplified form of something which looks very like Character 528 (but with an extra line). The same abbreviation happens in the following two characters (531 and 532). Simplified characters usually exhibit this sort of consistency — but not always!

---

531 汤 **tāng** soup

Radical 氵
6 strokes
湯



water 氵 (78a) + **sunny** 𠃓(530a) = **soup** 汤

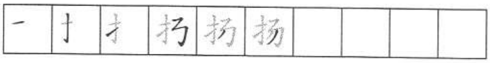
[清汤(337) **qīngtāng** *clear soup*]

"Put the **water** in a **sunny** spot (to warm it) before making the **soup**. / *When it's ready make sure to fill the* ***giant's tankard*** *first.*"

---

532 扬 **yáng** make known

Radical 扌
6 strokes
揚

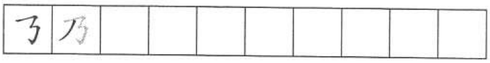


hand 扌 (152a) + **sunny** 𠃓(530a) = **make known** 扬

表扬(436) **biǎoyáng** *to praise*
[发扬(146) **fāyáng** *develop, carry forward*]

The signaller holds his **hand** aloft where it is **sunny** (so that his mirror catches the sun) to **make known** that the invaders are coming. / *At the next relay station it's cloudy, so the* ***fairy*** *has to fly onwards with the message, "The* ***Yanks*** *are coming!"*

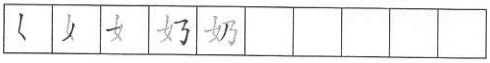
533a 乃 **nǎi** sigh



---

533 奶 **nǎi** milk

Radical 女
5 strokes



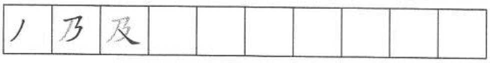
woman 女(15) + **sigh** 乃(533a) = **milk** 奶

This character is also used for "breast" or "suckle".

牛奶(384) **niúnǎi** *(cow's) milk*
[奶牛(384) **nǎiniú** *cow*]

The **woman** gives a **sigh** of relief as the baby starts to drink the **milk** (and so stops crying). / ***Teddy*** *bounds in with a* ***nightlight*** *so the baby can sleep (but trips up, much to the amusement of the baby).*

534a 及 **jí** reach

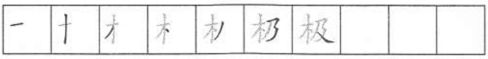


This means to "reach" or "attain"; also "timely" or "on time".

534 极 **jí** extremity

Radical 木
7 strokes

極



tree 木(10a) + reach 及(534a) =
extremity 极

极了(66) **A jíle** *extremely A, very A*
[极其(235) **jíqí** *extremely, highly*]
[北极(317) **běijí** *the North Pole*]

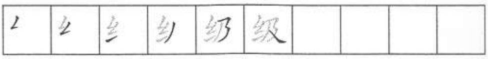
The **tree reach**es out — with the tips of its branches it can just reach the **extremity** of the neighboring tree. / *This is where the **fairy** has hung her **G-strings** to dry.*

---

535 级 **jí** grade

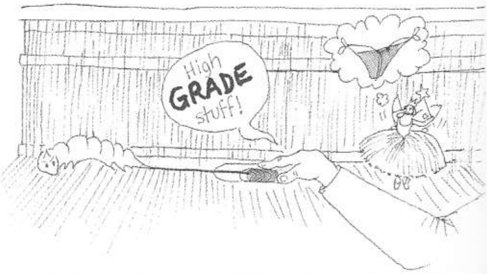
Radical 纟
6 strokes

級



thread 纟 (233a) + reach 及(534a) =
grade 级

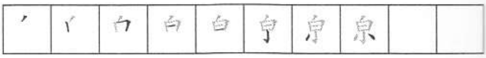
年级(168) **niánjí** *grade (in school)*
[初级(439) **chūjí** *elementary, initial*]
[上级(42) **shàngjí** *a superior, higher authorities*]
[九级风(38, 468) **jiǔjífēng** *10 % off, a 10% discount*]



If the **thread** (from the silkworm) can **reach** across the loom without breaking, it is high **grade** silk. / *They can use the leftovers to make the **fairy** a new **G-string**.*

For Character 535 you can see that simplifying the traditional form consisted of using the simplified form of the radical "thread", and keeping the same right-hand side (534a). In character 534, however, 534a stands in as an abbreviation for something else.

536a 泉 spring



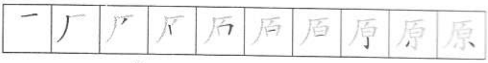
white 白(22) + small 小(50) = spring 泉

This "spring" is a water source, not a season (nor for that matter a piece of coiled metal).

Imagine seeing small dots of **white** in a green alpine meadow. They are edelweiss flowers — but why such a **small** cluster? When you look more closely there is a small **spring** there. (It is also a nice place for a picnic, where you can listen to the sound of the water). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

536 原 **yuán** original

Radical 厂
10 strokes



cliff 厂(149) + **spring** 泉(536a) =
original 原

This also means “a plain” (open countryside).

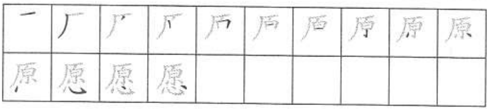
The whisky distillery was sited by the **spring** under the **cliff** — the water there gave the whisky its **original** flavor. / *Each bottle carried the trademark picture on the label, of a **fairy** sitting on a **yuan** coin.*

原来(65) **yuánlái** *former, original*
[平原(309) **píngyuán** *flatland, plain*]
[原因(520) **yuányīn** *a reason*]
[高原(481) **gāoyuán** *highland, plateau*]

---

537 愿 **yuàn** to desire

Radical 心
14 strokes
願



original 原(536) + **heart** 心(161) =
desire 愿

This is usually written in such a way that the “heart” creeps in under the “cliff”.

He realized that the **original** girl he had first lost his **heart** to was the one he now truly **desired**. / *The **dwarf** wondered sadly if she still had the lucky **yuan** coin he had once given her.*

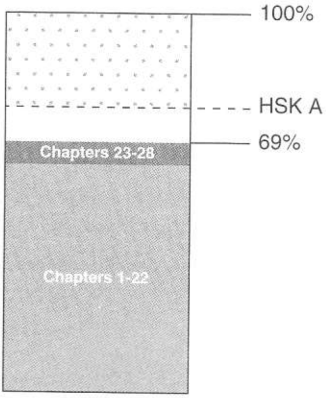
愿意(258) **yuànyì** *be willing; to want*

Test yourself:

页(477) 用(130) 身(107) 气(411) 的(23) 然(266) 懂(408)
度(425) 立(177) 让(476) 组(448) 视(435) 被(440) 广(170)
手(31) 没(169) 成(259) 风(468) 当(267) 带(429) 病(510)
右(213) 表(436) 姐(444) 角(418) 怎(512) 师(428) 真(452)

The simplification process for Character 537 has involved replacing the radical with a different one! This is a bit confusing, but fairly rare.

This is the last comment we shall make about traditional and simplified forms of characters. If you are interested, compare the simplified forms of the characters with their traditional forms as you continue to work through this book.



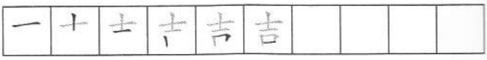
Chapter 29

Another quiz: do you remember the difference between these similar characters and fragments?

重(407) 垂(409a) 目(93) 且(443) 具(451a)

乁(410a) 乙(413a) 廾(85a) 艹(218a) 廿(425a)

538a 吉 jí
auspicious



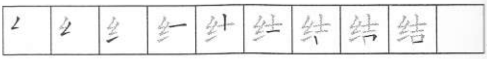
scholar 士(487a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
auspicious 吉

When the **scholar** (who is normally engrossed in his books in his cave) appears at the **mouth** of his cave, blinking in the sunlight, the villagers take it as an **auspicious** sign. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

538 结 **jié** (jiē)
tie up

Radical 纟
9 strokes
結



thread 纟(233a) + **auspicious** 吉(538a) =
tie up 结

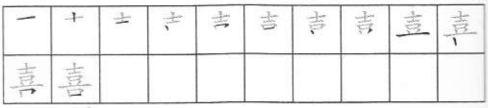
结果(187) **jiéguǒ** *in the end, finally*
团结(519) **tuánjié** *unite, show solidarity*
结束(494) **jiéshù** *terminate*

They used the invisible **thread**, produced by the silkworms on the most **auspicious** days, to **tie up** their hair into ornate patterns. / ***Two fairies*** *work together to put* ***gel*** *on any stray hairs to stick them down.*

---

539 喜 **xǐ**
celebration

Radical 士
12 strokes



auspicious 吉(538a) + **feet** 䒑(90a) +
mouth 口(5) = **celebration** 喜

This also means "happy" and has connotations of "to like".

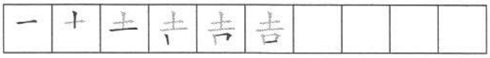
喜欢(363) **xǐhuan** *like, be fond of*
[欢喜(363) **huānxǐ** *joyful*]

It's **auspicious** if the first **feet** to enter the **mouth** of your cave at the start of a year are animal feet — when this happens it is a cause for **celebration**. / ***Teddy*** *brings a* ***sheep*** *early in the morning to ensure this happens.*

540a 𠮷 "foul mouth"

earth 土(54a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
foul mouth 𠮷

Take care! This character is easily confused with 538a.



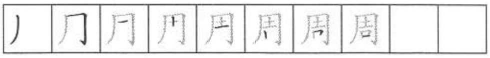
If you get **earth** on your **mouth**, you get a dirty, or **"foul" mouth**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

540 周 **zhōu** week **Radical** 冂 **8 strokes**

outer limits 冂(160a) + **foul mouth** 𠮷(540a) = **week** 周

This also means, amongst other things, "circuit", "circumference" or "all around".



"You will be sent to the **outer limits** if you are **foul mouth**ed and you'll have to stay there for a **week**. / *Even the* ***giant*** *was sent there for telling dirty* ***jokes****."*

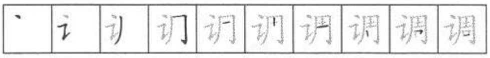
---

541 调 **diào** tune **Radical** 讠 **10 strokes** 調

words 讠(67c) + **week** 周(540) = **tune** 调

Another character with a range of additional meanings — "mix", "fit in", "mediate", "provoke", "move" and others.

声调(488) **shēngdiào** *tone (of Chinese character)*

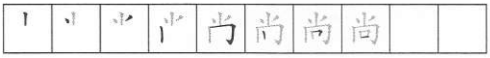


(The lyricist for a songwriting team lives on an island where he can concentrate) When the **week**'s quota of **words** is finished, they are ready to have a **tune** written for them. / *The* ***two dwarves*** *collect them each week in their* ***dhow*** *(and take them to his partner, the composer, on the mainland).*

542a 尚 **shàng** esteem

small 小(50) + **skylight** 冋(389a) =
esteem 尚

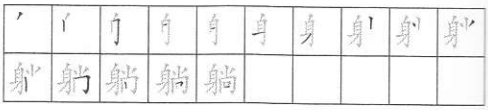
When it appears as the top part of other characters this gets somewhat squashed, with the "outer limits" compressed into "cover" (see Characters 543–545 for examples).



The double glazing salesman claims, "If you install a **small skylight**, you will be held in great **esteem** by your neighbors." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

542 躺 **tǎng**
lie down

Radical 身
15 strokes



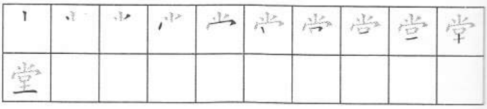
body 身(107) + **esteem** 尚(542a) =
lie down 躺

If you hold your **body** in high **esteem**, you will **lie down** for a power nap in the middle of the day. / *Teddy tries this, but bounces about so much that he gets **tangled** up in the covers.*

---

543 堂 **táng**
hall

Radical 土
11 strokes



esteem 尚(542a) + **earth** 土(54a) = **hall** 堂

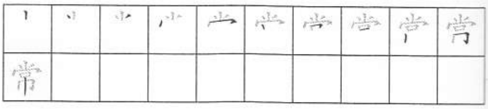
食堂(287) **shítáng** *dining hall*

The site of the famous battle that saved the town was an **esteem**ed piece of **earth**, so that's where they built the town **hall**. / *The **fairy** conjured up a shiny replica **tank** to sit outside the hall as a memorial.*

---

544 常 **cháng**
often

Radical 巾
11 strokes



esteem 尚(542a) + **towel** 巾(427a) =
often 常

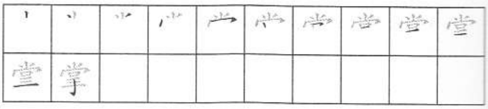
常常 **chángcháng** *often (colloq)*
经常(244) **jīngcháng** *often*
非常(328) **fēicháng** *unusual; very*
[平常(309) **píngcháng** *ordinary; normally*]

If you **esteem** the **towel** the king gave you, you will use it **often**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

545 掌 **zhǎng**
palm (of hand)

Radical 手
12 strokes



esteem 尚(542a) + **hand** 手(31) = **palm** 掌

This means a palm (of the hand), and by extension to control something.

掌握(474) **zhǎngwò** *know well, have a good command of*

(Briefing to the recipients at the military medal ceremony) "If the **esteem**ed lady offers you her **hand**, take care to notice if it is **palm** up (shake it) or palm down (kiss it). / *Teddy, holding the medals ready, will **jangle** them if you look like getting it wrong.*"

546 条 **tiáo** slip of paper

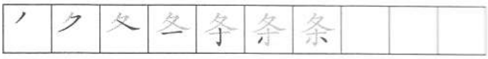
Radical 夂
7 strokes

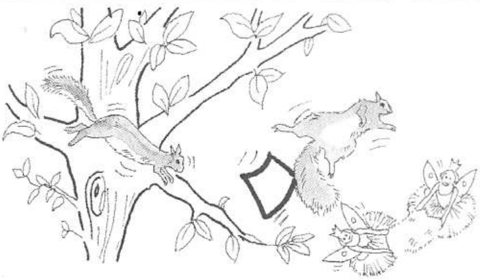
條

pursue 夂(506a) + **tree** 木(10a) =
slip of paper 条

Also used as a measure word for long, narrow things.

条件(385) **tiáojiàn** *conditions*
[面条儿(313, 21) **miàntiáor** *noodles*]





The squirrels **pursue** one another through the branches of the **tree** until one slips on a **slip of paper** and falls. / ***Two fairies*** *stretch a* ***towel*** *between them to catch him.*

---

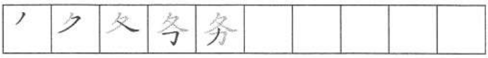
547 务 **wù** to work at

Radical 夂
5 strokes

務

pursue 夂(506a) + **power** 力(14) =
work at 务

[业务(395) **yèwù** *(professional) work*]
[医务室(491, 472) **yīwùshì** *clinic*]



He **pursued power** by climbing the corporate ladder, **working at** his desk into the night. / *His rival, the* ***dwarf****, chose instead to* ***woo*** *the CEO's daughter.*

---

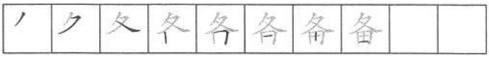
548 备 **bèi** prepare

Radical 夂
8 strokes

備

pursue 夂(506a) + **field** 田(156a) =
prepare 备

准备(504) **zhǔnbèi** *prepare; preparation*



He **pursue**d the pig round the **field** whilst his wife **prepare**d the other ingredients for the meal. / *They had promised the* ***dwarf bacon*** *for dinner.*

---

549 鱼 **yú** fish

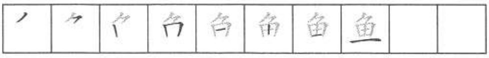
Radical 鱼
8 strokes

魚

bow ⺈(51a) + **field** 田(156a) +
one 一(1) = **fish** 鱼

See Character 15 for "pouring rain" stories.

[一条鱼(1, 546) **yì tiáo yú** *a fish*]

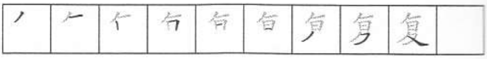


🌧 The small boy **bows** to the **unicorn** in the **field**, and proffers the dead **fish** (but the unicorn is unable to revive it). / *The* ***fairy*** *holds a burial ceremony and reads a* ***eulogy*** *in the pouring rain.*

550 复 **fù** repeat

Radical 夂
9 strokes

複 復



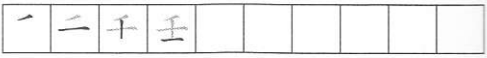
clouds 𠂉(124b) + **sun** 日(6) + **pursue** 夂(506a) = **repeat** 复

This has various shades of meaning — not just to repeat something, but often a sense of responding or replying. It can also mean "complex".

复杂(511) **fùzá** *complex, complicated*
[反复(331) **fǎnfù** *repeatedly*]

(At the fighter pilot training school) The pilots have to fly into the **clouds**, then out again into the **sun**, then **pursue** the instructor's aircraft; and they must **repeat** all this until they get it right every time. / *The* ***dwarf*** *(in charge of the kitchen) grumbles because the* ***food*** *is getting cold.*

551a 壬 **rén** ninth

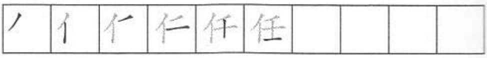


beret 一(89a) + **scholar** 士(487a) = **ninth** 壬

Ceremonial **berets** are given out each year to the top ten **scholars** in the country. Yours has a baseball embroidered on it to show that you came **ninth**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

551 任 **rèn** whatever

Radical 亻
6 strokes



person 亻(13a) + **ninth** 壬(551a) = **whatever** 任

This has a range of other meanings including "appoint", "allow", and "despite".

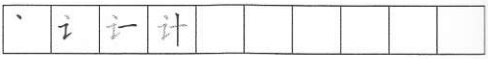
任何(142) **rènhé** *any, whatever*
[任务(547) **rènwu** *mission, assignment*]

Harry is at bat in the **ninth** innings of the baseball match. The coach says, "Do **whatever** it takes!" / *Harry hits the ball and the* ***dwarf*** *calls out, "For goodness' sake,* ***run****!"*

552 计 **jì** calculate

Radical 讠
4 strokes

計



words 讠(67c) + **ten** 十(4) = **calculate** 计

[计算(321) **jìsuàn** *to calculate*]

The exam paper was littered with **words** with red **crosses** through them. The examiner used these to **calculate** the final grade. / *The* ***dwarf*** *posted up the* ***GPA*** *scores on the notice board.*

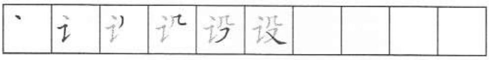
553 设 **shè** establish

Radical 讠
6 strokes

設

words 讠(67c) + **strike** 殳(169a) =
establish 设

[设备(548) **shèbèi** *equipment*]
[设计(552) **shèjì** *design*]



(Laying the foundation stone at a hospice) He had to **strike** very hard to etch the **words** into the stone which would mark where the hospice movement was first **establish**ed. / *The* ***dwarf****, wearing a bright yellow* ***shirt****, was keeping onlookers at a safe distance.*

---

554 划 **huà** (huá) to plan

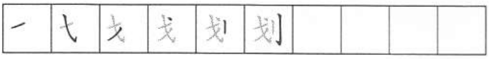
Radical 刂
6 strokes

劃

dagger 戈(32a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **plan** 划

Also means to "divide, carve out, delimit". (Pronounced **huá** it can mean "to scratch").

计划(552) **jìhuà** *a plan, to plan*



The actors, one with a **dagger** and one with a kitchen **knife**, carefully **plan** the fight which will be the climax of their play. / *The* ***ghostly dwarf*** *grumpily hands out protective clothing so that he won't get blamed if they come to any* ***harm****.*

---

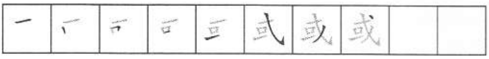
555 或 **huò** or

Radical 戈
8 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **one** 一(1) +
dagger 戈(32a) = **or** 或

Notice that "one" is written with a pronounced slope and that it is underneath "mouth" this time (compare this with "piled up", 150b).

或者(261) **huòzhě** *or, otherwise*

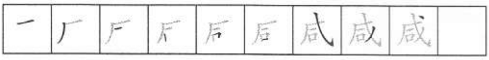


The dentist uses a small **dagger** to probe the teeth in the **unicorn**'s **mouth**, asking "Which one hurts, this one — **or** this one? — **or** this one?" / *The* ***ghostly dwarf****, who protects the unicorn, impatiently points out the tooth with the* ***hole*** *in it.*

556a 咸 **xián** salty

鹹

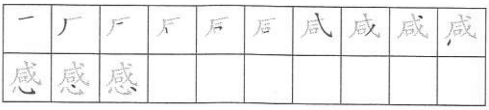
fifth 戊(259a) + **piled up** 戸(150b) =
salty 咸



With his **fifth** arm the starfish **piled up** the food he had caught to save for a **salty** snack later. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

556 感 **gǎn** feel

Radical 心
13 strokes



salty 咸(556a) + **heart** 心(161) = **feel** 感

This can be literal (to "feel", "touch") or metaphorical — "to be moved", "be grateful".

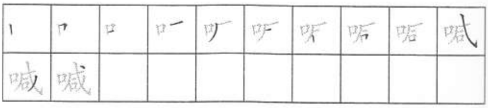
感到(74) **gǎndào** *to feel (e.g. happy)*
感谢(108) **gǎnxiè** *to be grateful*

"All that **salty** food was bad for your **heart**," the doctor said. "But now you've been on that diet, how do you **feel**?" / ***Teddy*** *had dressed up as* ***Gandhi*** *(to symbolize frugality and remind the patient that he should eat less salt).*

---

557 喊 **hǎn** shout

Radical 口
12 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **salty** 咸(556a) = **shout** 喊

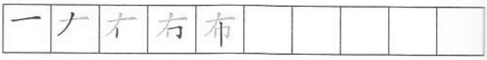
[叫喊(354) **jiàohǎn** *to shout*]
[呐喊(220) **nàhǎn** *to shout out*]

(On the beach) Stranded by the high tide at the **mouth** of the cave and surrounded by **salty** water, he **shout**s for help. / ***Teddy*** *clambers down the cliff with some drinking water in his* ***handbag****!*

---

558 布 **bù** cloth

Radical 巾
5 strokes



left hand 𠂇(53a) + **towel** 巾(427a) = **cloth** 布

This character is also used as the simplified form of a traditional character meaning "to spread" or "to arrange".

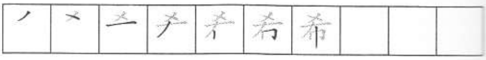
[一块布(1, 402) **yí kuài bù** *a piece of cloth*]

(At the jeweler's) She tries the ring on her **left hand** and then places it on the **towel** on the counter, and the jeweler cleans it with a **cloth**. / *The* ***dwarf*** *rubs his hands at this* ***boost*** *in his sales.*

---

559 希 **xī** to wish

Radical 巾
7 strokes



shears 㐅(25a) + **cloth** 布(558) = **wish** 希

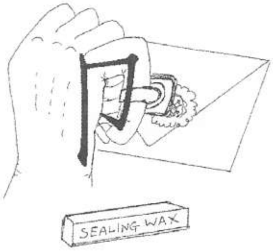
The sheepshearer rubs the magic **shears** with a **cloth** and makes a **wish**. / *And (lo and behold) a* ***giant*** *appears with a* ***sheep*** *for him to practice on!*

Chapter 30

Onward! — with this chapter you will have completed 30 out of the 40 chapters in the book. As you have got this far, you know that your routine is working — so simply keep going and you will be on the final lap before long.

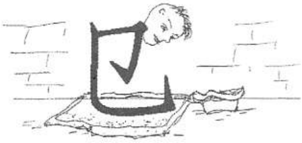
卩

seal


SEALING WAX

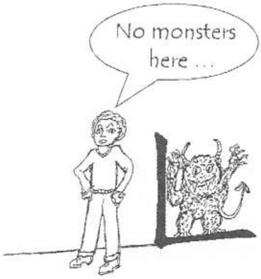
㔾

hardship



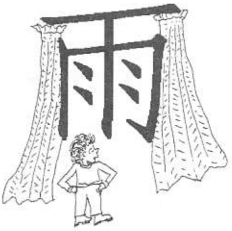
乚

conceal


No monsters here ...

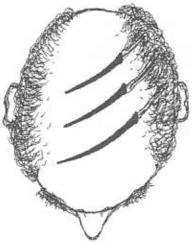
雨

rain



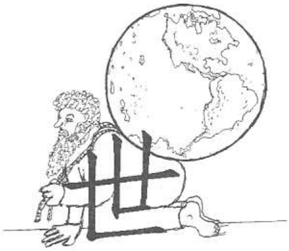
彡

hairs



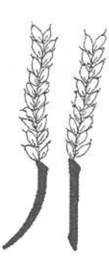
世

world



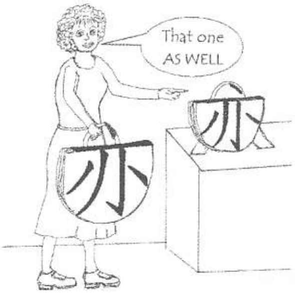
丿丨

grain stalks



亦

as well


That one AS WELL

560a 卩 seal

𠃌	卩	or	㇇	龴					

This has several variant forms (see 560, 562a and 564a).

It refers to a seal for authenticating documents, which could be carried around and served as a badge of office.

---

560 节 **jié** festival

Radical 艹
5 strokes
節

一	十	艹	艹㇆	节					

grass 艹(218a) + **seal** 卩(560a) = **festival** 节

In this character the first stroke of "seal" (560a) is lengthened and the vertical stroke starts part-way along it.

The character also means "a node or segment", "an agenda" or "to economize".

节目(93) **jiémù** *(TV, radio) program*
节日(6) **jiérì** *festival day*

Once a year the king allows his **seal** to be hidden in a huge pile of **grass** and the children have to find it — the resulting scrum is the highlight of the **festival**. / ***Two fairies*** *prepare a huge* ***jelly*** *for the feast afterwards (picture them having to keep plucking stray pieces of grass out of the jelly).*

561a 却 **què** despite

卻

一	十	土	土㇜	去	去𠃌	却			

go 去(86) + **seal** 卩(560a) = **despite** 却

"I told you to **go** and get me my favorite ornamental **seal**," the king said grumpily, "But **despite** this you've come back with the wrong one." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

561 脚 **jiǎo** foot

Radical 月
11 strokes
腳

丿	⺆	月	月	月一	月十	肚	月去	胠	胠𠃌
脚									

moon 月(61) + **despite** 却(561a) = **foot** 脚

[脚步(378) **jiǎobù** *footstep*]
[脚灯(182) **jiǎodēng** *footlights*]

There was a bright **moon**, but **despite** this he kept stubbing his **foot** on the tree roots in the forest. / *At this rate he would be too late to see the* ***two teddies jousting*** *at the secret gathering in the forest.*

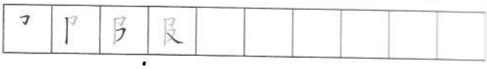
Test yourself: 工(147) 产(197) 刀(72) 卖(248) 午(125) 得(118) 破(441)
应(388) 号(424) 将(318) 院(306) 衣(437) 确(419) 推(502)

562a 𠬝 ruler

seal 卩(560a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **ruler** 𠬝

As you can see, this ruler is a monarch, not something for measuring things!

Note how the vertical stroke of "seal" extends all the way down the side of "right hand".



(The young prince is instructed) "You must accept the **seal** of state and **shake hands** with the archbishop before you can be enthroned as the new **ruler** of the kingdom." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

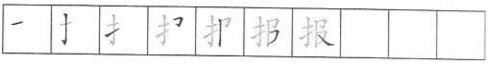
562 报 **bào** to report

Radical 扌
7 strokes

報

hand 扌(152a) + **ruler** 𠬝(562a) = **report** 报

[报名(70) **bào míng** *to sign one's name*]
[报道(145) **bàodào** *a news report*]



The **ruler** holds out his **hand** for the **report** (on the state of the kingdom). / *The **dwarf bows** as he gives it to him.*

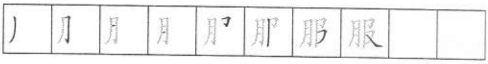
563 服 **fú** obey

Radical 月
8 strokes

moon 月(61) + **ruler** 𠬝(562a) = **obey** 服

This character can also mean "clothes".

服务(547)	**fúwù**	*work for, serve*
衣服(437)	**yīfu**	*clothes; garment*
服务员(547, 479)	**fúwùyuán**	*waiter, waitress, attendant*

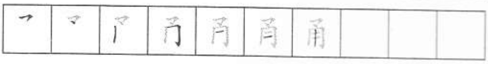


At the first full **moon** of his reign, the new **ruler** must pledge to **obey** the traditions of his office. / *The **fairy** presides over the ceremony sitting on a **futon**.*

564a 甬 "explosion"

seal マ(560a) + **use** 用(130) = **explosion** 甬

The top part of this character is the third, and final, variant of "seal" (560a) — don't confuse this with "cocoon" (34a)



(The assassins are planting a booby trap) When the **seal** is next **used** it will cause an **explosion** and kill the king. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

564 通

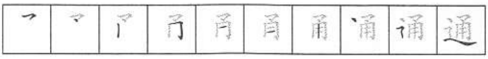
tōng
pass through

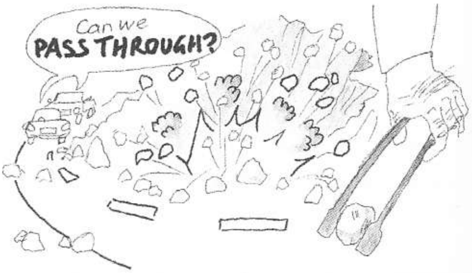
Radical 辶
10 strokes

road 辶(26a) + **explosion** 甬(564a) =
pass through 通

This has a range of other meanings including "connect", "know", "expert", "common" and "whole".

通过(106)	**tōngguò**	*to pass through; as a result of*
通知(490)	**tōngzhī**	*to notify; a notice*
[交通(380)	**jiāotōng**	*traffic, transportation*]





When the **road** was blocked (in a landslip) they used an **explosion** to clear it so that traffic could **pass through**. / *The **giant** used his **tongs** to help remove the rubble.*

---

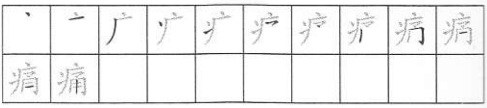
565 痛

tòng
to ache

Radical 疒
12 strokes

illness 疒(510b) + **explosion** 甬(564a) =
ache 痛

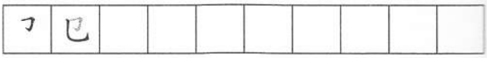
痛快(403)	**tòngkuai**	*overjoyed*
[痛苦(218)	**tòngkǔ**	*painful, tortuous*]



"Doctor, the **illness** I had before the **explosion** is gone but now I **ache** all over." / *"My **dwarf** assistant will use special **tongs** to remove the shrapnel, and then you'll be fine," replied the doctor.*

566a 㔾

hardship

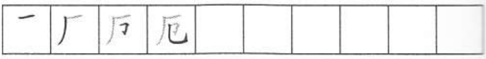


Contrast this with "seal" (560a), and also with "snake" (275a).

566b 厄

è
"uphill"

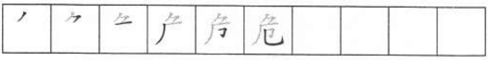
cliff 厂(149) + **hardship** 㔾(566a) =
uphill 厄



There are lots of **hardships** involved in living on a **cliff**, but it's ideal for someone who likes an **uphill** struggle! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

566 危 **wēi** danger

Radical 刀
6 strokes



bow ⺈(51a) + **uphill** 厄(566b) = **danger** 危

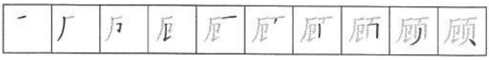
[危机(10) **wēijī** *crisis*]

"If you **bow** to someone you meet as you're going **uphill**, you run the **danger** that they will bow too (and will then fall over on top of you). / *I once had the full **weight** of the **giant** on top of me, because of bowing to him like that."*

---

567 顾 **gù** attend to

Radical 页
10 strokes
顧



uphill 厄(566b) + **page** 页(477) = **attend to** 顾

Notice that the hook on "hardship" (566a) in the left-hand side of this character has turned into a "barb". You've seen this happening before (see for example Character 228) and it will happen again (see 570a).

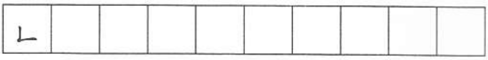
[顾客(509) **gùkè** *customer, client*]

(A reclusive author lives on a hill) The publisher struggles **uphill** with the **pages** of the author's book, so the author can **attend to** the corrections. / *But the **dwarf** doesn't mind as he is a budding author himself and regards the recluse as his **guru**.*

Test yourself:

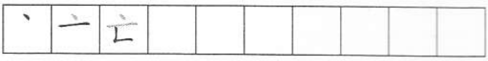
马(44) 角(418) 开(85) 而(151) 牛(384) 租(446) 准(504)
头(246) 教(265) 代(456) 合(347) 带(429) 风(468) 嘴(420)

568a 乚 conceal



Note that this is just one stroke.

568b 亡 **wáng** perish



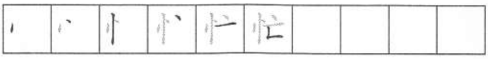
lid 亠(25b) + **conceal** 乚 (568a) = **perish** 亡

This can mean "to die" or "to lose".

The mother puts the **lid** on the box of strawberries to **conceal** them from her children — but then forgets about them so they **perish**. (The strawberries, not the children!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

568 忙 **máng** busy

Radical 忄
6 strokes



heart 忄(339a) + **perish** 亡(568b) = **busy** 忙

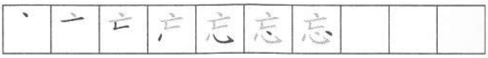
Notice that the same two parts (“heart” and “perish”) are used to make up this character and the next one. So the order in which they appear in the two equations (and stories) is important for remembering which is which.

Your **heart** will **perish** if you rush around being **busy** all the time. / *The **fairy** can (magically) see that your arteries are all getting **mangled** up in there …*

---

569 忘 **wàng** forget

Radical 心
7 strokes

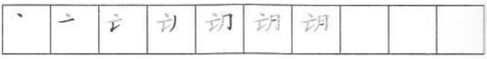


perish 亡(568b) + **heart** 心(161) = **forget** 忘

[忘记(272) **wàngjì** *forget*]

(The king dictates a letter to his mistress) “**Perish** the thought that my **heart** will ever **forget** you.” / *His retainer, **Wang** the **dwarf**, disapproves as he writes all this down. [This is almost a DIY pronunciation; feel free to improve on it if you can — anything that works is OK!]*

570a 朚 “wane”



perish 亡(568b) + **moon** 月(61) = **wane** 朚

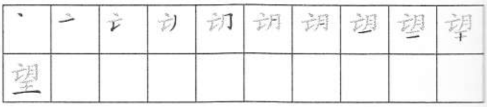
In some typefaces you will see moon here replaced by its other form (266a).

“That **perish**ing **moon** is on the **wane** again,” muttered the farmer (who needed the light for his harvesting). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

570 望 **wàng** gaze

Radical 王
11 strokes



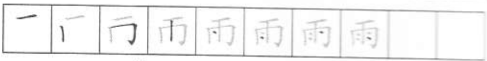
wane 朚(570a) + **king** 王(60a) = **gaze** 望

希望(559) **xīwàng** *hope, wish*

The old **king**’s health was on the **wane** — all he could do now was to **gaze** out at his kingdom from his balcony. / *Sadly he called for his chancellor **Wang** the **dwarf**, to put his affairs in order.*

571 雨 **yǔ** rain

Radical 雨
8 strokes



It's handy that the character for "rain" needs a "pouring rain" story!

When this appears at the top of other characters, "outer limits" gets compressed into "cover". Remember that the same thing happened for "esteem" (542a).

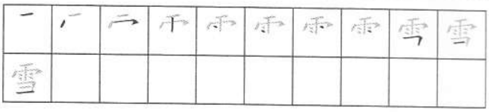
[雨衣(437) **yǔyī** *raincoat*]
[下雨(43) **xià yǔ** *rain; to rain*]

*/ Picture a **wheel** left out in the **rain**: "That **Teddy's useless** — he's always leaving things out in the pouring rain."*

---

572 雪 **xuě** snow

Radical 雨
11 strokes

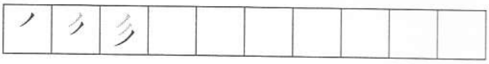


rain 雨(571) + **snout** ⺕(267a) = **snow** 雪

[雪人(12) **xuěrén** *a snowman*]
[下雪(43) **xià xuě** *to snow*]

The pig slept, dreaming of **rain** falling on his **snout** — but when he woke up it was **snow** (and everything around was white). */ [DIY pronunciation]*

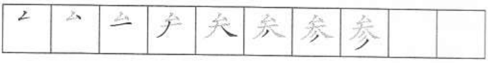
573a 彡 hairs



---

573 参 **cān** consult

Radical 厶
8 strokes
參

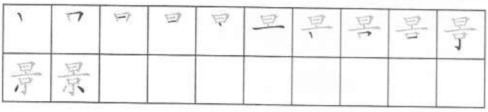


cocoon 厶(34a) + **big** 大(47) + **hairs** 彡(573a) = **consult** 参

参观(216) **cānguān** *visit (a place)*
参加(325) **cānjiā** *participate, join in*

The silkworm farmer finds that his **cocoons** are growing **big hairs**, so takes them along to **consult** the vet. */ The **giant** (working as the vet's assistant) jumps onto a chair saying, "I can't **stand** creepy crawlies!"*

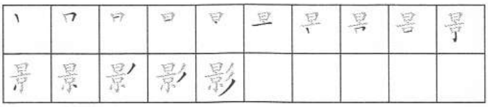
574a 景 **jǐng** view



sun 日(6) + **capital** 京(239b) = **view** 景

They could see the **sun** glinting on the **capital** in the distance — they knew that this was the right house for them as soon as they saw this **view** from the front porch. */ [No pronunciation needed]*

574 影 **yǐng** shadow **Radical** 彡 **15 strokes**



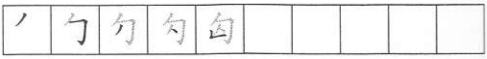
view 景(574a) + **hairs** 彡(573a) = **shadow** 影

From "shadow" come the additional meanings "image", "photo", "movie".

影响(390) **yǐngxiǎng** *effect; to affect*
电影(159) **diànyǐng** *movie, film*
[影子(17) **yǐngzi** *shadow*]
[合影(347) **héyǐng** *take a group photo*]
[电影院(159, 306) **diànyǐngyuàn** *cinema, movie theater*]

He had taken photos of all the **views**, but **hairs** in the camera had made **shadows** on all his prints. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

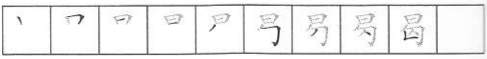
575a 匃 "beggar"



wrap 勹(23a) + **person** 人(12) + **conceal** 𠃊 (568a) = **beggar** 匃

They **conceal Harry** by **wrap**ping him up in an old cloak, to look like a **beggar**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

575b 曷 "a drink"

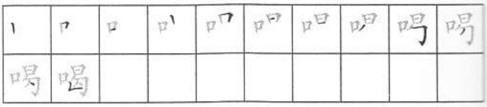


sun 日(6) + **beggar** 匃(575a) = **a drink** 曷

As the **sun** starts to get higher the **beggar** is getting desperate for **a drink**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

575 喝 **hē** to drink **Radical** 口 **12 strokes**



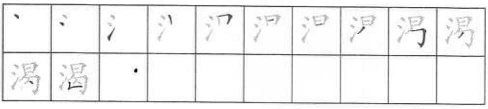
mouth 口(5) + **a drink** 曷(575b) = **to drink** 喝

[喝酒(102) **hējiǔ** *to drink wine/liquor*]
[喝汤(531) **hētāng** *to drink soup*]

They leave **a drink** (imagine a glass of beer) by the **mouth** of the cave to see if anyone will come out **to drink** it. / *They're hoping to catch sight of the **giant** who lives there as a **hermit**.*

576 渴 kě thirsty

Radical 氵
12 strokes

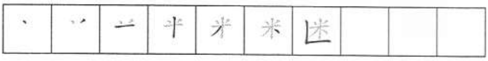


water 氵 (78a) + **a drink** 曷(575b) = **thirsty** 渴

[口渴(5) **kǒukě** *thirsty*]

Watering down the **drink**s in the pub only works if the customers are **thirsty** (because then they won't notice). / *Teddy does this behind a* ***curtain*** *(taking a sip from each glass and topping it up with water).*

577a 迷 "cut"



rice 米(334) + **conceal** 乚 (568a) = **cut** 迷

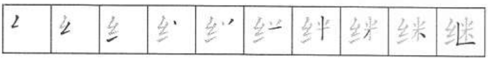
All the farmers in the district **conceal** some of their **rice** from the government inspector, in case he decides there's too much rice and **cut**s the official price. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

577 继 jì continue

Radical 纟
10 strokes

繼



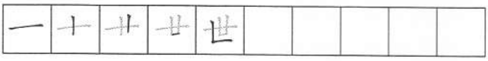
thread 纟 (233a) + **cut** 迷(577a) = **continue** 继

(In the clothing factory) When the worker reaches the end of each reel of **thread** he has to **cut** it off and **continue** straight away with a new reel. / *The* ***dwarf*** *supervisor has to check each* ***G-string*** *which has such a join in it.*

---

578 世 shì world

Radical 一
5 strokes



This also means "life", "generation" or "era".

You may like to think of this as "conceal" (568a) plus "twenty" (425a).

[世纪(273) **shìjì** *century*]
[去世(86) **qùshì** *pass away*]

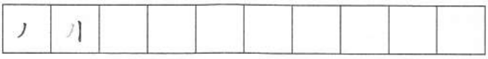
*/ After the round the world cycle ride, only one wheel had lasted the whole trip and this "****world wheel****" is now on display in the town hall, together with a photo of the* ***dwarf*** *with the "golden* ***shallot****" being presented to him by the French president.*

Test yourself:

常(544) 成(259) 希(559) 或(555) 祖(447) 活(460) 喜(539)
说(67) 部(316) 停(343) 少(377) 高(481) 示(430) 知(490)

579a

丿丨 "grain stalks"

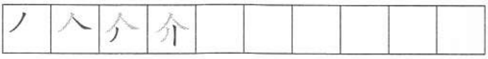


Notice how this differs from "boy" 儿 (Character 21).

---

579 介 **jiè** between

Radical 人
4 strokes



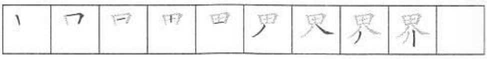
tent 人(19b) + **grain stalks** 丿丨(579a) = **between** 介

The farmer put a **tent** over the **grain stalks**, where the harvest mice had built their nest — so that the harvesters would have to go **between** the tents. / *The **two dwarf** farmhands were **jealous** of this treatment (when did the farmer ever show so much consideration for them?)*

---

580 界 **jiè** boundary

Radical 田
9 strokes



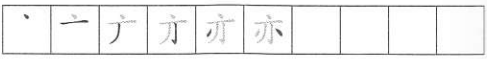
field 田(156a) + **between** 介(579) = **boundary** 界

世界(578) **shìjiè** *the world*

There is a **field between** the two farms, forming a no-man's land so that the **boundary** is disputed. / *The **two dwarves** (who each own one of the farms) each eye the field **jealously**.*

581a

亦 yì as well



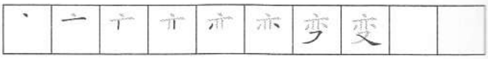
When this appears at the top of other characters, the central two lines are truncated into short vertical lines (as in the following character).

---

581 变 **biàn** transform

Radical 又
8 strokes

變



as well 亦(581a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **transform** 变

变成(259)	**biànchéng**	*change into*
改变(359)	**gǎibiàn**	*transformation*
变化(391)	**biànhuà**	*transformation*

(At the wizard contest) Before starting, they had to touch wands **as well** as **shake hands**. But because they had left their wands activated they **transform**ed one another into slugs. / *The **two dwarf** stage-hands carried them off on a **bench** (to the detransforming clinic).*

Chapter 31

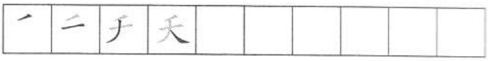
As another "quiz", see if you can remember these pairs. This time, each pair has similar meanings rather than being similar in appearance.

较(382) 比(228)   内(219) 里(157)   决(404) 定(406)   能(206) 可(140)
相(163) 互(226)   难(503) 困(522)   妈(46) 母(127)   首(144) 头(246)

582a 夭 die young

beret 乛 (89a) + **big** 大(47) =
die young 夭

Notice the subtle difference between this and 天 ("heaven", Character 76).



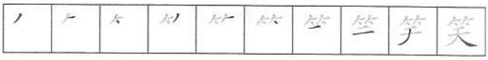
The child had loved wearing a **beret** which was too **big** for him (he had wanted to grow up to be a commando), but tragically he **died young**. (Picture the beret on the poor lad's coffin at the funeral). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

582 笑 **xiào** smile Radical ⺮ 10 strokes

bamboo ⺮(321a) + **die young** 夭(582a) =
smile 笑

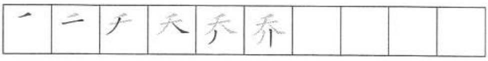
[大笑(47) **dà xiào** *to laugh*]
[笑话(458) **xiàohuà** *joke*]
开玩笑(85, 304) **kāiwánxiào** *to play a joke*



(The prince has married the princess from the neighboring kingdom and their first child is born. It is the custom to place a piece of bamboo in the baby's hand) If the baby ignores the **bamboo** it will **die young**, but the baby grasps it — and the parents **smile**. / *The **two dwarf** town criers have to trudge round the two kingdoms **shouting** out the good news.*

583a 乔 **qiáo** tall 喬

die young 夭(582a) + **grain stalks** 川(579a) = **tall** 乔



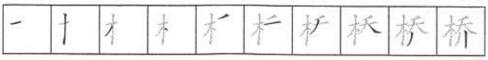
The boy **died young**, while the **grain stalks** were **tall**er than he was. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

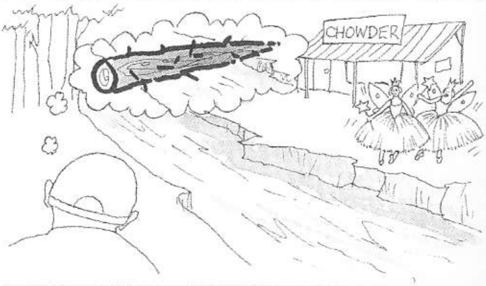
583 桥 **qiáo** bridge

Radical 木
10 strokes

橋

tree 木(10a) + **tall** 乔(583a) = **bridge** 桥

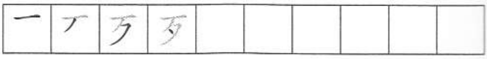




They looked for a **tree** that was **tall** enough to make a **bridge** across the river. / *The* ***two fairies*** *on the other side own a restaurant famed for its clam* ***chowder****.*

584a 歹 **dǎi** evil

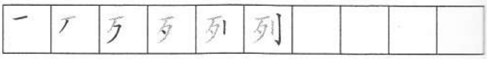
one 一(1) + **evening** 夕(69a) = **evil** 歹



Each **evening** the **unicorn** comes out of the forest to sleep, because he's scared that there are **evil** spirits in there at night. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

584b 列 **liè** line up

evil 歹(584a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **line up** 列



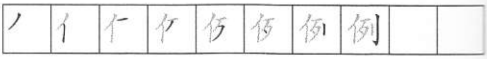
The **evil** looking **knife** was confiscated by the police and **lined up** (with the others they have seized) for the TV cameras. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

584 例 **lì** example

Radical 亻
8 strokes

person 亻(13a) + **line up** 列(584b) = **example** 例



Harry has to **line up** in the identity parade — they need **examples** of people similar to the suspect. / *The* ***dwarf*** *(policeman) arrives with the suspect on a* ***leash****!*

例如(80) **lìrú** *e.g., such as*
[比例(228) **bǐlì** *percentage*]
[例子(17) **lìzi** *an example*]

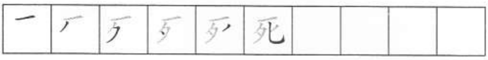
Test yourself: 划(554) 给(351) 指(251) 务(547) 嘴(420) 顾(567) 坐(211)
感(556) 忘(569) 坏(442) 它(227) 备(548) 只(254) 脚(561)

585 死 **sǐ** die

Radical 歹
6 strokes

evil 歹(584a) + **spoon** 匕(206a) = **die** 死

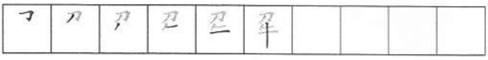
Note that the first stroke of "evil" extends over the "spoon". You might like to think of this character as having three parts — "one", "evening" and "spoon".



"If you eat from this **evil spoon** you will **die**," said the priest. / ***Teddy** said, "I'll stick to my **salami** then — you don't need a spoon for that."*

586a ⿱刀牛 "gimlet"

knife 刀(72) + **cow** 牛(384) = **gimlet** ⿱刀牛



The **cow** uses a **knife** to whittle a **gimlet** (with which she hopes to pick the lock on the gate of the field and escape). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

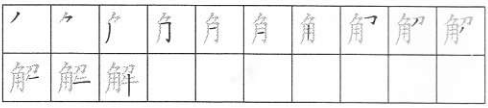
586 解 **jiě** untie

Radical 角
13 strokes

dime 角(418) + **gimlet** ⿱刀牛(586a) = **untie** 解

Recall the variation you might see in the writing of "dime" (see Character 418).

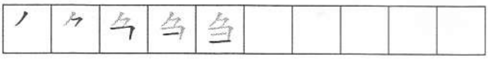
了解(66) **liǎojiě** *know, understand*
解决(404) **jiějué** *solve (puzzle), settle (issue)*
[解放(294) **jiěfàng** *liberate, liberation*]



The fisherman tells the workmen, "I'll give you a **dime** if you'll lend me your **gimlet** so that I can **untie** this knot." / *The **two teddies** sit on the **jetty** to help (one on either side of the fisherman — they're the ones who got the nets all knotted in the first place of course).*

587a 刍 "hay"

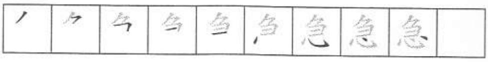
bow ⺈(51a) + **snout** 彐(267a) = **hay** 刍



The pig has been trained to **bow** and rub his **snout** on the ground whenever he needs more **hay** for his sty. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

587 急 **jí** urgent

Radical 心
9 strokes

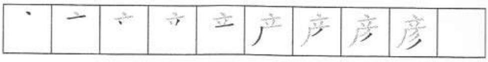


hay ⺈(587a) + **heart** 心(161) = **urgent** 急

着急(205) **zháojí** *anxious, worried*
[急忙(568) **jímáng** *hurried, hasty*]

Hay is spilling out of a hole in the scarecrow's coat, and soon his **heart** will be exposed — stopping the leak has become **urgent**. / *The **fairy** uses her **G-string** to secure it!*

588a 彦 **yàn** a good man 彥



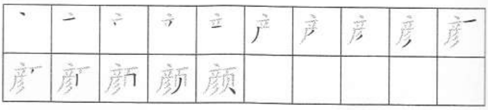
produce 产(197) + **hairs** 彡(573a) = **a good man** 彦

He decides to **produce hairs** in his factory (to make wigs for bald people) — but he charges nothing as he is **a good man**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

588 颜 **yán** complexion

Radical 页
15 strokes
顏



a good man 彦(588a) + **page** 页(477) = **complexion** 颜

This can mean (a person's) "face", or simply "color".

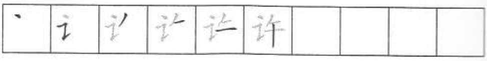
颜色(417) **yánsè** *color*

The **good man** spends all his time indoors studying the **pages** of his good books — so ends up with a pale **complexion**. / *The **fairy** casts a spell on him and he suddenly says, "You know, I have a **yen** to go outside more."*

---

589 许 **xǔ** to permit

Radical 讠
6 strokes
許



words 讠(67c) + **noon** 午(125) = **permit** 许

We've gathered together here the four characters pronounced "xu" (for convenience, they're not a phonetic series). Remember to visualize the rain in each story.

许多(69) **xǔduō** *many, much*
也许(8) **yěxǔ** *perhaps*

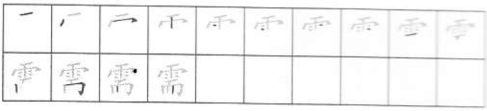
☂ The **words** on the sign in the street say that from **noon** parking is **permit**ted. / *A parking attendant appears through the pouring rain and **Teddy** says "**Shoo**!" in an attempt to chase him off.*

590 需 **xū** need

Radical 雨
14 strokes

rain 雨(571) + **and yet** 而(151) = **need** 需

需要(101) **xūyào** *to need; a need*



In the heavy **rain**, the market trader fixes up a makeshift roof for his stall, **and yet** it sags (and collapses with the weight of water) — a proper gutter is what he **needs**. / *The* ***giant*** *fixes up a* ***chute*** *to divert the pouring rain for him.*

---

591 须 **xū** have to

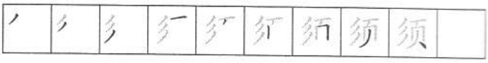
Radical 彡
9 strokes

須 鬚

hairs 彡(573a) + **page** 页(477) = **have to** 须

This can also mean "beard" (in which case the second traditional form applies).

必须(162) **bìxū** *must*



He's stuck **hairs** on the **page** to underline certain words (this is in the days before highlighter pens have been invented) but the librarian tells him to remove them. "Do I **have to**?" he wails (wondering how to remove the glue). / *The* ***giant*** *whispers to him, "When my* ***shoelaces*** *got glue on them I just left them to soak in the pouring rain."*

---

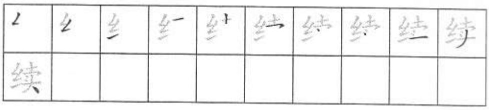
592 续 **xù** carry on

Radical 纟
11 strokes

續

thread 纟(233a) + **sell** 卖(248) = **carry on** 续

继续(577) **jìxù** *to continue*
[手续(31) **shǒuxù** *formalities*]

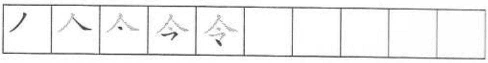


The spiders have found that if they produce extra **thread** they can **sell** it — so each day, after making their webs, they **carry on** and produce more thread, which can be sold. / *The* ***dwarf*** *uses it to make waterproof* ***shoelaces****, which he tests out in the pouring rain.*

593a 令 lìng command

combine 亼(59a) + **seal** 卩(560a) = **command** 令

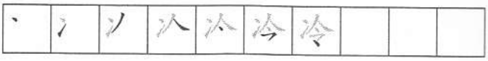
Not to be confused with 今 ("now", Character 166), this character is also used as a respectful way of saying "your".



The emperor simply signs ordinary documents, but when he **combines** a **seal** with his signature it means that it's a **command**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

593 冷 **lěng** cold

Radical 冫
7 strokes



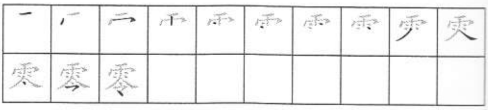
ice 冫(360a) + **command** 令(593a) = **cold** 冷

[冷气(411) **lěngqì** *air conditioning*]

The **ice** queen **command**s it to be **cold**. / ***Teddy** complains, "My **lungs** tickle with the cold air."*

594 零 **líng** zero

Radical 雨
13 strokes



rain 雨(571) + **command** 令(593a) = **zero** 零

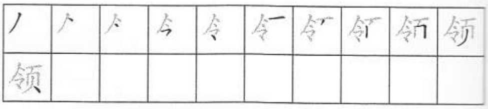
You will also see "0" used as a symbol for zero, and this is also pronounced **líng**.

[三千零四(3, 89, 24) **sānqiān líng sì** *3004*]

(The trainee wizard is taking his final exams) He tries to **command** that **rain** should fall, but instead the temperature drops to **zero**. / *The **fairy** whispers, "For rain, you should have used **linguini** in your spell."*

595 领 **lǐng** to lead

Radical 页
11 strokes
領



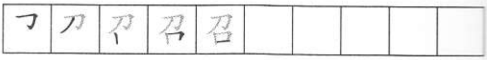
command 令(593a) + **page** 页(477) = **to lead** 领

This means "to lead" or "be in charge"; also "neck" or "collar".

[领导(277) **lǐngdǎo** *lead, guide; leader*]
[本领(174) **běnlǐng** *skill, ability*]

The herald unrolls the **page** and reads out the king's **command** — it says that everyone must **lead** their pets around the town on National Pet Day. / ***Teddy** ties a bit of **linguini** to his hamster and brings it along.*

596a 召 zhào summon



knife 刀(72) + **mouth** 口(5) = **summon** 召

The sentry looks over the castle walls — and sees a pirate climbing up towards him, a **knife** in his **mouth**. He raises the alarm, crying, "**Summon** the guards!" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

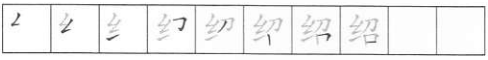
596 绍 **shào** continue

Radical 纟
8 strokes

紹

thread 纟 (233a) + **summon** 召(596a) = **continue** 绍

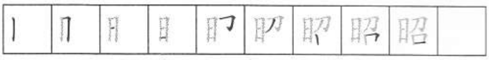
介绍(579) **jièshào** *introduce*



(The queen is doing her needlework) She has run out of **thread**, so she **summons** a servant to fetch more so that she can **continue**. / *The **dwarf shouts** after him to be quick about it.*

597a 昭 **zhāo** obvious

sun 日(6) + **summon** 召(596a) = **obvious** 昭



On the next day when the **sun** shone brightly, he **summon**ed all his friends to admire his new sundial. One complained, "Why do this on such a hot day?" "Well, isn't it **obvious**?" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

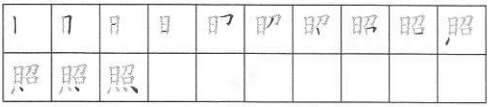
597 照 **zhào** shine

Radical 灬
13 strokes

obvious 昭(597a) + **fire** 灬(185a) = **shine** 照

This character has two meanings: "to shine on, illuminate"; and "to look after, care for".

照顾(567) **zhàogù** *look after, care for*
照相(163) **zhàoxiàng** *to take a photo*
[关照(372) **guānzhào** *take care of; notify*]
[照片(353) **zhàopiàn** *photograph*]



The **obvious** way to get the **fire** started is to **shine** focused sunlight onto it. / *The **dwarf** gets his old **jousting** shield (and uses the concave side of it as a magnifying mirror).*

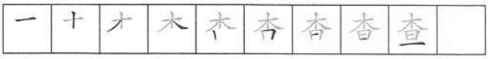
---

598 查 **chá** check up

Radical 木
9 strokes

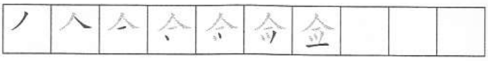
tree 木(10a) + **dawn** 旦(117a) = **check up** 查

[查对(154) **cháduì** *verify, check*]



(After a storm) He went round the **trees** at **dawn** to **check up** which ones had survived the night. / *The **fairy** flew alongside with a **chart** showing where the trees were supposed to be.*

599a 佥 “conference”



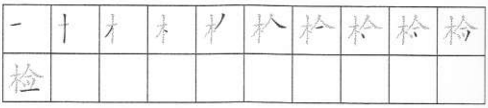
combine 亼(59a) + **haul up** 𭕄 (388a) =
conference 佥

The delegates **combine** to **haul up** a sign over the convention hall, to announce their **conference**. (Imagine them all lining up along the roof at the front of the building). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

599 检 **jiǎn** inspect

Radical 木
11 strokes
檢



tree 木(10a) + **conference** 佥(599a) =
inspect 检

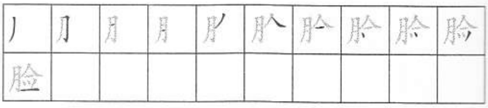
检查(598) **jiǎnchá** *examine, inspect, check*

When a **tree** arrives at the **conference**, it must be **inspect**ed for contagious diseases. */ If it is **genuinely** healthy, **two teddies** will escort it to the conference hall.*

---

600 脸 **lǐan** face

Radical 月
11 strokes
臉



moon 月(61) + **conference** 佥(599a) =
face 脸

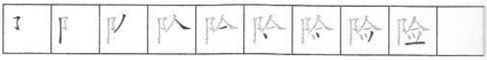
[脸红(233) **liǎnhóng** *to blush, get flushed*]

(At a conference of werewolves) When the full **moon** comes up the **conference** delegates have to have their **face**s checked to see if they really are werewolves. / ***Two teddies** stand on either side of the queue looking out for their friends so they can **lend** them hairy masks to get past the checks.*

---

601 险 **xiǎn** risky

Radical 阝
9 strokes
險



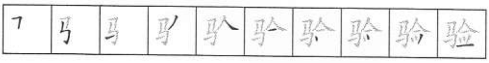
mound 阝(96a) + **conference** 佥(599a) =
risky 险

危险(566) **wēixiǎn** *danger, dangerous*

The commandos choose a **mound** to hold their **conference** (because they like to occupy the high ground), and plan how they are going to carry out the final part of their **risky** mission. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

602 验 **yàn** examine

Radical 马
10 strokes
驗

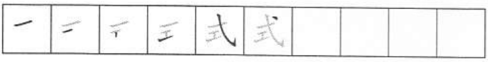


horse 马(44) + **conference** 佥(599a) = **examine** 验

经验(244) **jīngyàn** *experience*
[实验(250) **shíyàn** *a test, experiment*]

A **horse** with a rare disease has been brought along to the **conference** of vets so that they can **examine** him. / *The* ***dwarf*** *caretaker watches closely as he has always had a* ***yen*** *to be a vet.*

603a 式 shì style

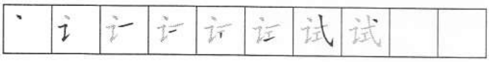


work 工(147) + **stake** 弋(456a) = **style** 式

He always carries a **stake** to **work**, as he thinks it gives him a certain **style**. (But his teenage son knows better!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

603 试 **shì** to try

Radical 讠
8 strokes
試



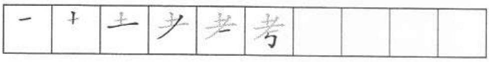
words 讠(67c) + **style** 式(603a) = **try** 试

[试验(602) **shìyàn** *to test, experiment*]
[试试 **shìshi** *to have a try*]

(Designing a poster for the production of "1001 Nights") The draftsman writes the **words** out in different **style**s, to **try** and see which will work best. / *The* ***dwarf*** *waits until he's finished, and only then points out that he's spelled "****Scheherazade****" wrong. (You can imagine the ensuing expletives!)*

604 考 **kǎo** to test

Radical 耂
6 strokes



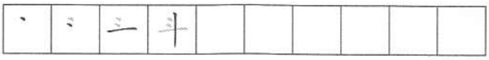
old man 耂(261a) + **choke** 丂(424a) = **test** 考

The first stroke of "choke" has got truncated so that "choke" fits under "old man".

考试(603) **kǎoshì** *to examine; a test*
[考场(530) **kǎochǎng** *exam hall/room*]

The **old man** arrives at the hospital **choking** — but it is just a pretense, to **test** out the hospital's response time. / ***Teddy****, on reception, rings a* ***cowbell*** *to summon the doctors who come running.*

605a 斗 dòu; dǒu
fight
鬥



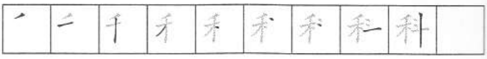
ice crystals 冫(246a) + **ten** 十(4) = **fight** 斗

The “cross” is rather distorted here to make room for the “ice crystals” — note that the “horizontal” line has a definite slope to it.

Two gangs of boys start throwing **ice crystals** at each other from either side of the **cross**roads — and it soon develops into a full-blown **fight**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

605 科 **kē**
classification
Radical 禾
9 strokes



grain 禾(126a) + **fight** 斗(605a) = **classification** 科

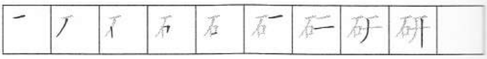
This character is often used for a specialization or field of (academic) study.

科学(82) **kēxué** *science*
[科长(172) **kēzhǎng** *section chief*]
[科学家(82, 109) **kēxuéjiā** *scientist*]

The farmers are having a **grain fight** (throwing bags of grain at each other) after the announcement of the grain **classification** results. / *The **giant** breaks up the fight and imposes a **curfew** until morning.*

---

606 研 **yán**
research
Radical 石
9 strokes



stone 石(115a) + **open** 开(85) = **research** 研

[科研(605) **kēyán** *scientific research*]

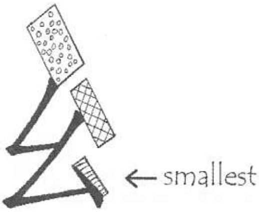
You are issued with a special **stone** (with an embedded microchip) to **open** the door to the secret **research** lab. (Boffins are always losing normal keys!) / *But the **fairy** has always had a **yen** to make the lab's work public, so lets a reporter in to look around.*

Test yourself:
多(69) 干(124) 百(40) 小(50) 九(38) 白(22) 旧(394)
牛(384) 渴(576) 然(266) 足(280) 钟(278) 导(277) 饺(381)

Chapter 32

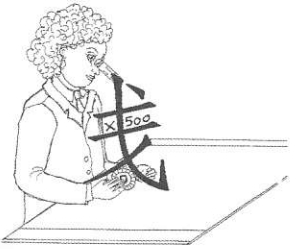
幺

smallest



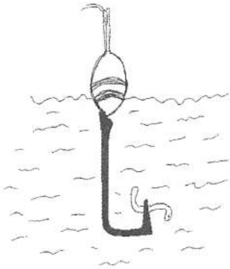
戋

tiny



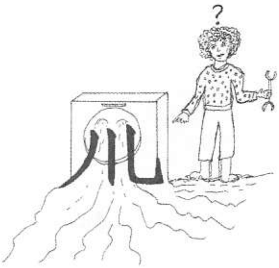
乚

hook



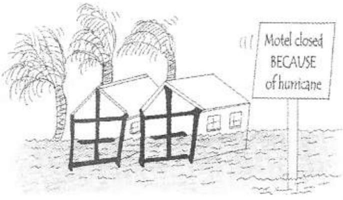
儿

flood



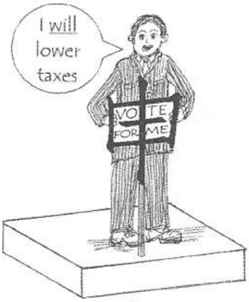
由

because


Motel closed
BECAUSE
of hurricane

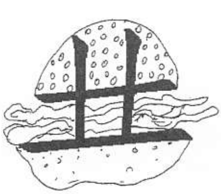
申

to state


I will
lower
taxes
VOTE
FOR ME

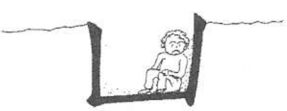
廿

bacon rashers

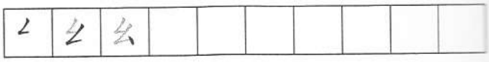


凵

pit

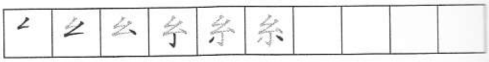


607a 幺
yāo
smallest



Used colloquially for “one”.

607b 糸
thread



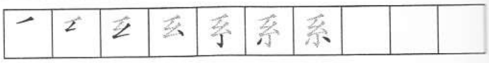
smallest 幺(607a) + **small** 小(50) =
thread 糸

The **smallest** of the **small** worms looks just like a piece of **thread**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

When this character appears as the left-hand side of another character, it is abbreviated to the form 纟 which we already know (233a).

607 系
xì
cluster

Radical 糸
7 strokes
係繫



beret 冖(89a) + **thread** 糸(607b) =
cluster 系

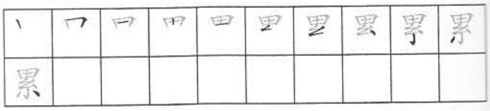
A spider has woven a web out of **threads** in the **beret**, and there is now a **cluster** of eggs there. / *The **dwarf** wraps it up in a **sheet** and throws it away.*

This has various senses including “fasten”, “system” and “department” (with the traditional forms varying from meaning to meaning).

关系(372)	**guānxì**	*connection; affect*
联系(374)	**liánxì**	*train, drill, exercise*
没关系(169, 372)	**méiguānxì**	*it's OK (reply to 'sorry')*

608 累
lèi (lěi)
exhausted

Radical 田
11 strokes

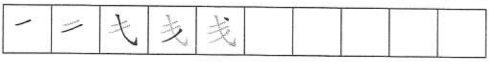


field 田(156a) + **thread** 糸(607b) =
exhausted 累

The farmer laid a network of steel **threads** under the **field** to protect his crops from rabbits — and it worked, as the rabbits rapidly became **exhausted** trying to dig through them. / *The **dwarf** takes them off and dumps them in the **lake**.*

Notice that the threads are *under* the field here (compare this with Character 234).

609a 戋 tiny

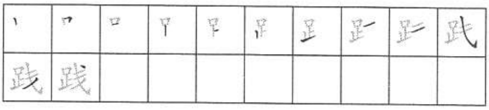


This is “dagger” (32a) but with an extra stroke.

---

609 践 **jiàn** carry out

Radical 足
12 strokes
踐



foot 足(280) + **tiny** 戋(609a) = **carry out** 践

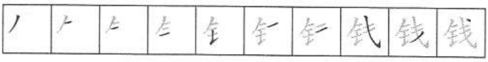
实践(250) **shíjiàn** *put into practice*

(A modern day Cinderella) The old hag slips her **tiny foot** into the slipper, and it fits! Now the prince has to **carry out** his promise (and marry her). / *The* ***two dwarves*** *(who have been carrying the slipper and cushion around) mutter that she can’t possibly be the* ***genuine*** *article.*

---

610 钱 **qián** money

Radical 钅
10 strokes
錢



gold 钅 (278a) + **tiny** 戋(609a) = **money** 钱

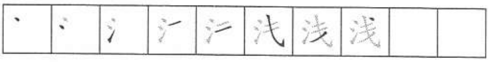
[零钱(594) **língqián** *small change*]

Tiny pieces of **gold** (found in the river beds) were the first **money**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

611 浅 **qiǎn** shallow

Radical 氵
8 strokes
淺

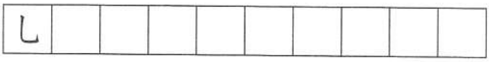


water 氵 (78a) + **tiny** 戋(609a) = **shallow** 浅

Also means “easy”, “low standard”.

There was only a **tiny** amount of **water** around so all the ponds were **shallow**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

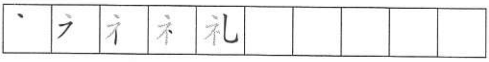
612a 乚 “hook”



---

612 礼 **lǐ** gift

Radical 礻
5 strokes
禮



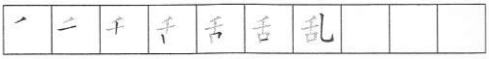
sign 礻(433a) + **hook** 乚(612a) = **gift** 礼

礼物(527) **lǐwù** *gift, present*
[礼堂(543) **lǐtáng** *auditorium*]

He sees a **sign** in the sky in the shape of a **hook**. “Aha, the perfect **gift** for my fisherman friend,” he thinks. / ***Teddy*** *tries his luck fishing, but only catches a* ***leek****!*

613 乱 **luàn** chaotic

Radical 舌
7 strokes
亂

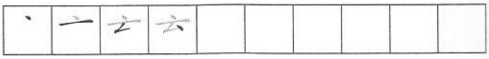


tongue 舌(457a) + hook 乚(612a) = chaotic 乱

[乱说(67) **luànshuō** *gossip*]
[乱世(578) **luànshì** *turbulent times*]

(At night on a small fishing boat) Someone's **tongue** gets a fish **hook** stuck in it, and **chaotic** scenes ensue as he thrashes around. / *The **ghostly dwarf** (guardian mascot of the boat) holds a **lantern** while they extract the hook.*

614a 亠厶 new-born baby



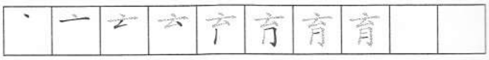
lid 亠(25b) + **cocoon** 厶(34a) = **new-born baby** 亠厶

The **lid** came off the **cocoon** and out popped a **new-born baby** butterfly. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

614 育 **yù** nurture

Radical 月
8 strokes

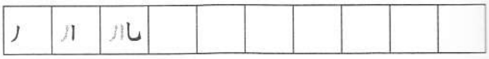


new-born baby 亠厶(614a) + **moon** 月(61) = **nurture** 育

教育(265) **jiàoyù** *education, educate*
体育(175) **tǐyù** *sports, P.T.*
[体育场(175, 530) **tǐyùchǎng** *stadium*]

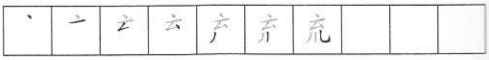
☂ She is over the **moon** about her **new-born baby**, and vows to **nurture** it. / *The **dwarf** grumbles as he has to come out in the pouring rain to read a **eulogy**.*

615a 川乚 flood



You could think of this as "boy" with a "stick", or as "grain stalks" plus "hook".

615b 㐬 birth



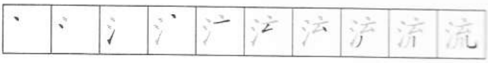
new-born baby 亠厶(614a) + **flood** 川乚(615a) = **birth** 㐬

Picture a mother cradling her **new-born baby** on the roof of a house during a **flood**. This was not how she imagined the **birth** would be! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

615 流 **liú** to flow

Radical 氵
10 strokes

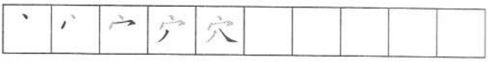


water 氵(78a) + **birth** 㐬(615b) = **flow** 流

[交流(380) **jiāoliú** *to communicate with*]
[流利(132) **liúlì** *fluent*]

The woman chose a **water birth** in the river so that the **flow**ing water would wash the baby clean. / ***Two fairies*** *floated* ***lotus*** *blossoms on the water.*

616a 穴 xué hole



house 宀(91a) + **eight** 八(20) = **hole** 穴

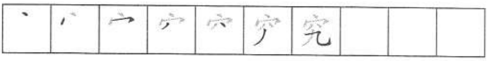
When this appears at the top of characters, you will sometimes see the legs curl (so that they look like "boy" rather than "eight").

The **house** where the **octopus** lives is so small that he had to make **hole**s in the walls for his tentacles to poke through. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

616 究 **jiū** investigate

Radical 穴
7 strokes



hole 穴(616a) + **nine** 九(38) = **investigate** 究

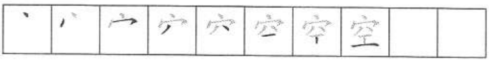
研究(606) **yánjiū** *research*

In one of the **holes** on the golf course they found a **baseball**, and decided to **investigate** how it had got there. / *It turned out that* ***two giants*** *had been* ***joking*** *around (playing mini-golf and using the baseball as a golf ball).*

---

617 空 **kōng** (kòng) empty

Radical 穴
8 strokes



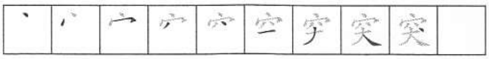
hole 穴(616a) + **work** 工(147) = **empty** 空

空气(411) **kōngqì** *air*
[空间(345) **kōngjiān** *space, room*]
[空中(33) **kōngzhōng** *in the air*]
[太空(48) **tàikōng** *(outer) space*]

Digging the **hole** (for the elephant trap) had been a lot of **work** — but day after day it remained **empty**. / *One day the* ***giant*** *sprained his ankle in it, and was so cross that he filled it in with* ***concrete***.

618 突 **tū** prominent

Radical 穴
9 strokes



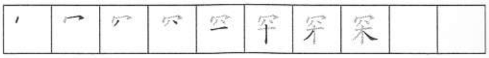
hole 穴(616a) + **dog** 犬(238a) = **prominent** 突

This also means "sudden".

The **hole** which the **dog** had dug was in a **prominent** position (right in the middle of the front lawn). / *The **giant** (head gardener) used his **toupee** to disguise the hole until he could repair it.*

[突然(266) **tūrán** *sudden, suddenly*]
[突出(114) **tūchū** *prominent; to highlight*]

619a 罙 hearth

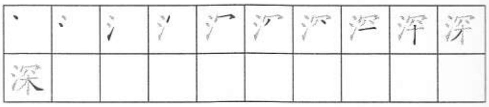


cover 冖(82a) + **eight** 八(20) + **tree** 木(10a) = **hearth** 罙

(In a game of hide and seek) The **octopus** hides up a **tree** and pulls a **cover** over his head — but still feels cold and wishes he was sitting by a warm **hearth**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

619 深 **shēn** deep

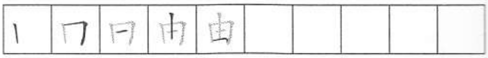
Radical 氵
11 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **hearth** 罙(619a) = **deep** 深

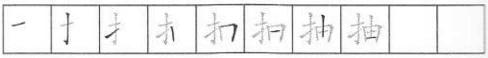
During the flood, **water** rapidly reached the **hearth** and put the fire out — it was getting really **deep** now. / *This would mean that the **giant** handyman would **shun** the village (until the water receded — he doesn't like getting his feet wet).*

620a 由 **yóu** because



620 抽 **chōu** to extract

Radical 扌
8 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **because** 由(620a) = **extract** 抽

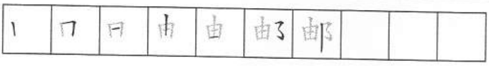
"Hold out your **hand because** it's the only way to **extract** the thorn." / *The **giant** holds out his hand grudgingly, and **chokes** back tears!*

[抽水(523) **chōushuǐ** *to draw (pump) water*]
[抽身(107) **chōushēn** *get away (from work)*]

621 邮 **yóu** mail

Radical 阝
7 strokes

郵

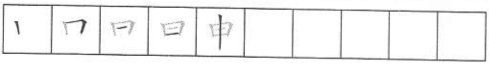


because 由(620a) + **city** 阝(96a) = **mail** 邮

邮票(431) **yóupiào** *postage stamp*

"**Because** it's a **city** there are **mail** boxes everywhere." / *The **fairy** explains all this to the **yokels** from the country.*

622a 申 shēn to state

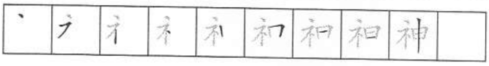


Compare this with "electricity" (Character 159), which has a curly "tail".

---

622 神 **shén** gods

Radical 礻
9 strokes

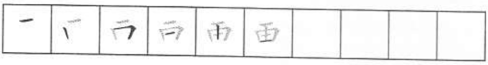


sign 礻(433a) + **state** 申(622a) = **gods** 神

精神(341) **jīngshén** *vitality, vigor*

The **sign** in the sky **states** that the **gods** are displeased. / *The **fairy** has begun to **shun** the villagers (so the gods have to communicate directly!)*

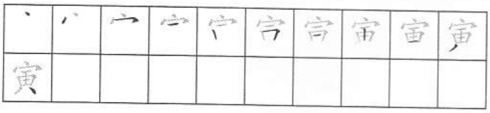
623a 覀 "polite"



one 一(1) + **because** 由(620a) = **polite** 覀

The **unicorn** is fed up **because** his mythic reputation means he has to be **polite** all the time (and there are times when he'd really like to use a rude word …) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

623b 寅 yín tiger

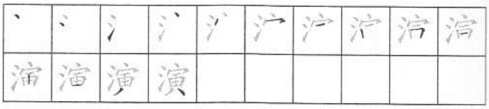


house 宀(91a) + **polite** 覀(623a) + **eight** 八(20) = **tiger** 寅

He ran flat out towards the **octopus' house**, trying to think how he could call out "Open the *** door!" **polite**ly so that he would be let in straight away, before the **tiger** caught up with him. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

623 演 yǎn perform

Radical 氵
14 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **tiger** 寅(623b) =
perform 演

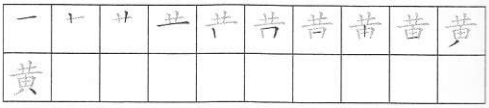
演出(114) **yǎnchū** *(theatrical) performance*
表演(436) **biǎoyǎn** *perform, performance*
[演员(479) **yǎnyuán** *actor, actress*]
[开演(85) **kāiyǎn** *to start (movie, etc.)*]

At the finale of the circus act the **tiger** dives into the **water**, drenching the audience. He **perform**s this at every show and it's the big attraction. / ***Teddy** has a **yen** to do it too.*

---

624 黄 huáng yellow

Radical 艹
11 strokes
黃

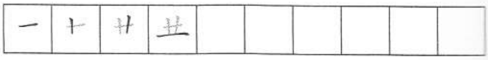


grass 艹(218a) + **polite** 亜(623a) +
eight 八(20) = **yellow** 黄

[黄河(141) **Huánghé** *the Yellow River*]

If you take your **grass** and are **polite** to the **octopus**, he will sit on it for you until it goes **yellow**. / *The **ghostly fairy** will then guard it in the aircraft **hangar** (until it is ready to sell on the black market — it's that sort of grass!)*

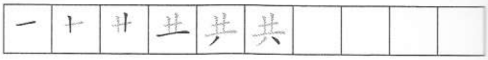
625a 廿 "bacon rashers"



---

625 共 gòng collectively

Radical 八
6 strokes

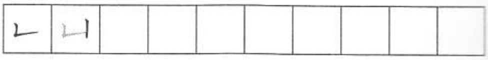


bacon rashers 廿 (625a) + **eight** 八(20) =
collectively 共

一共(1) **yígòng** *altogther; in all*
[公共(119) **gōnggòng** *public*]
公共汽车(119, 412, 83) **gōnggòng qìchē** *bus*

One **octopus** was cooking **bacon rashers**, another eggs, and **collectively** they produced a huge breakfast. / *The **dwarf** sounded a **gong** when it was ready.*

626a 凵 pit



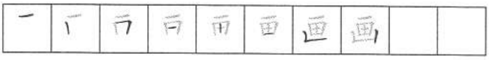
626 画 **huà** drawing

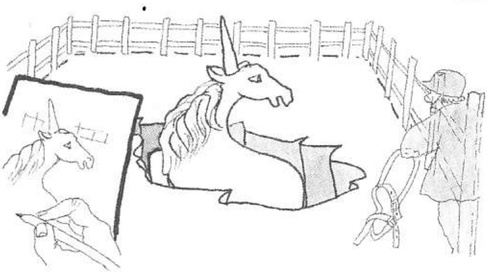
Radical 凵
8 strokes

畫

one 一(1) + **field** 田(156a) +
pit 凵(626a) = **drawing** 画

画儿(21) **huàr** *picture, drawing*
[画报(562) **huàbào** *pictorial (magazine)*]





The **unicorn** had fallen into the **pit** in the **field** (that they had dug as an elephant trap). The reporter (in the days before photography) took ages to make a **drawing** of the scene for the local paper. / *The **ghostly dwarf** guarding the pit suggested attaching a **harness** to the unicorn to lift him out.*

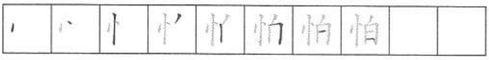
---

627 怕 **pà** fear

Radical 忄
8 strokes

heart 忄(339a) + **white** 白(22) = **fear** 怕

[可怕(140) **kěpà** *frightening*]
[哪怕(99) **nǎpà** *no matter*]



His **heart** has started pounding and his face has gone **white** — such a look of **fear**! What has he seen? / *It's a **dwarf parking** attendant bearing down on his parked car …*

---

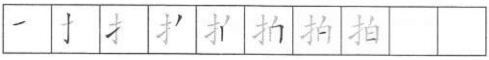
628 拍 **pāi** clap

Radical 扌
8 strokes

hand 扌(152a) + **white** 白(22) = **clap** 拍

This character can mean "to applaud" or "to beat time", and it can also mean a (ping pong) bat or (tennis) racket.

[拍手(31) **pāishǒu** *to applaud*]
[拍子(17) **pāizi** *bat, racket; to beat time (music)*]



The chef's **hand**s are all **white** so he **clap**s them together (to shake off the flour). / *The **giant** admires the **pies** (and wonders how many he'll get).*

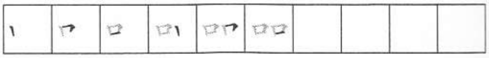
Test yourself:
文(25) 自(94) 刀(72) 儿(21) 反(331) 家(109) 照(597)
今(166) 事(312) 英(401) 医(491) 任(551) 祖(447) 现(215)

Chapter 33

Yet another chapter where we can further exploit the building blocks we already have, without needing to introduce any more.

629a

吅 cry out



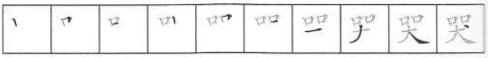
mouth 口(5) + **mouth** 口(5) = **cry out** 吅

With **two mouths** to feed in the nest, they must each **cry out** to get fed (or else the other one will get all the food). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

629 哭 **kū** weep

Radical 犬
10 strokes



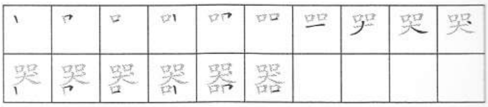
cry out 吅(629a) + **dog** 犬(238a) = **weep** 哭

The child **cried out** as her **dog** was hit by a passing car, and sat **weep**ing at the side of the road. / *The **giant**, who was passing by in his cool new **coupe**, stopped to give them a lift to the vet.*

---

630 器 **qì** utensil

Radical 口
16 strokes



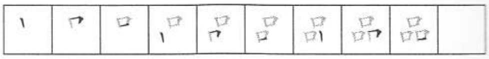
weep 哭(629) + **cry out** 吅(629a) = **utensil** 器

机器(10) **jīqì** *machine*

In the kitchen the Chef is **weep**ing, **crying out** and throwing his **utensils** about in despair. / *He's lost the "Best Restaurant" competition, and reckons that the **dwarf**, his main rival, **cheated** in order to win.*

631a

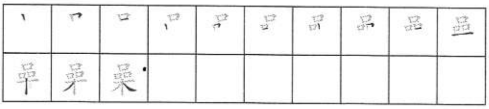
品 **pǐn** goods



mouth 口(5) + **cry out** 吅(629a) = **goods** 品

(The cave dwellers are having a yard sale) At the **mouth** of each cave the owner **cries out** to attract customers for the **goods** they have for sale. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

631b 喿 chirp



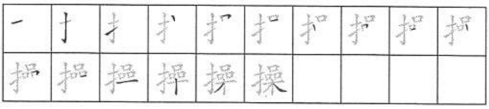
goods 品(631a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **chirp** 喿

The magpie steals **goods** from the town and takes them back to his **tree**, where his family welcomes him with a **chirp** each time he brings home something interesting. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

631 操 **cāo** exercise

Radical 扌
16 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **chirp** 喿(631b) = **exercise** 操

This can mean "to grasp" and hence "to operate" (a machine).

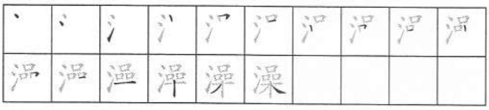
操场(530) **cāochǎng** *sports ground*

The bird sits on the fitness instructor's **hand** and **chirps** to set the tempo for the **exercises**. / *The* ***giant*** *has joined the class because he is getting too* ***stout****.*

---

632 澡 **zǎo** bathe

Radical 氵
16 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **chirp** 喿(631b) = **bathe** 澡

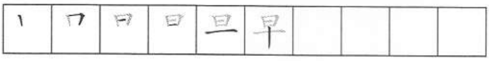
洗澡(139) **xǐzǎo** *take a bath, shower*

The bird sees the **water** and gives a delighted **chirp** — it can **bathe** at last! / *[DIY pronunciation]*

---

633 早 **zǎo** early

Radical 日
6 strokes



sun 日(6) + **ten** 十(4) = **early** 早

This can also mean "morning", "before" or "long ago".

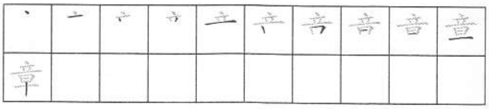
早饭(332) **zǎofàn** *breakfast*
早上(42) **zǎoshàng** *morning*

As the car approaches the **cross**roads the rising **sun** is directly in the driver's eyes — if only he didn't have to get to work so **early**! / *[DIY pronunciation]*

634 章

zhāng
badge

Radical 立
11 strokes



stand 立(177) + **early** 早(633) = **badge** 章

文章(25) **wénzhāng** *essay, article*

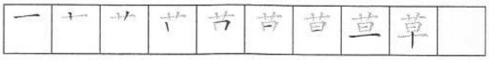
"If you **stand** there **early** you will get a **badge**. / *You'll know the **giant** is coming with the badges when you hear them **jangling** together."*

---

635 草

cǎo
straw

Radical 艹
9 strokes



grass 艹(218a) + **early** 早(633) = **straw** 草

[草地(54) **cǎodì** *lawn*]
[草原(536) **cǎoyuán** *steppe, pasture*]

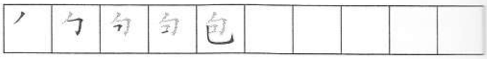
If you cut the **grass early** in the morning it will make the best **straw**. / ***Teddy** decides to watch, declaring, "I'm too **stout** to help with cutting grass."*

---

636 包

bāo
parcel

Radical 勹
5 strokes



wrap 勹(23a) + **snake** 巳(275a) = **parcel** 包

面包(313) **miànbāo** *bread*
[钱包(610) **qiánbāo** *purse, wallet*]
[包子(17) **bāozi** *steamed bun*]
[书包(176) **shūbāo** *school bag*]

(Before the birthday party) They **wrap** up the multicolored toy **snake** to make a long thin **parcel**. / *The **giant** has to **bow** down low to pick it up before he sets off to deliver it.*

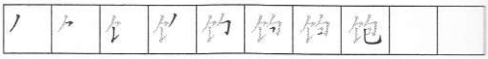
---

637 饱

bǎo
replete

Radical 饣
8 strokes

飽



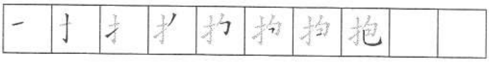
food 饣 (288a) + **parcel** 包(636) =
replete 饱

This means "full", "satisfied" or "to eat one's fill".

(At the birthday party) The **food** and **parcels** look so colorful on the table. The children eat quickly until they are all **replete**. / *The birthday boy then opens the first parcel, and out jumps **Teddy**, who then gives a deep **bow**.*

638 抱 **bào** embrace

Radical 扌
8 strokes



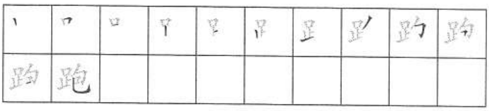
hand 扌(152a) + **parcel** 包(636) =
embrace 抱

The latecomer to the birthday party has the **parcel** in her **hand** when the birthday boy opens the door, and they hug in a fond **embrace**. / *The **dwarf** butler tactfully stays **bowing** until the embrace is over.*

---

639 跑 **pǎo** run

Radical 足
12 strokes

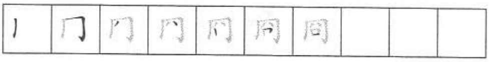


foot 足(280) + **parcel** 包(636) =
run 跑

跑步(378) **pǎobù** *jogging*
[跑道(145) **pǎodào** *runway*]

In the crowded airport he doesn't see the **parcel** until his **foot** hits it (and there's the sound of breaking glass) — he decides to **run** away before anyone sees him. / *But **Teddy** is curious and looks inside, sneezes, and gets covered in fine white **powder** from the parcel.*

640a 冏 "porthole"



skylight 冋(389a) + **eight** 八(20) =
porthole 冏

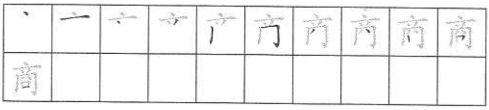
Again in this character you will sometimes see the legs curl (so that they look like "boy" rather then "eight").

The **octopus** is trying to squeeze through a **skylight**. "This should be easy — I've got through many a **porthole**," he says. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

640 商 **shāng** trade

Radical 亠
11 strokes



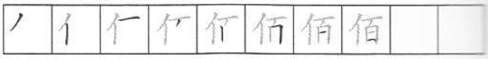
stand 立(177) + **porthole** 冏(640a) =
trade 商

Once again (see Characters 197, 295) the final stroke of "stand" has merged into the character below.

商店(186) **shāngdiàn** *shop, store*
[商业(395) **shāngyè** *commerce, business*]
[商场(530) **shāngchǎng** *shopping mall*]
[商人(12) **shāngrén** *businessman*]

Imagine **stand**ing, looking out through a **porthole** as your ship comes into port, and seeing all the possibilities for **trade**. / *But when you get ashore, the **giant** sitting on the quayside advises, "I'd set up in **Shanghai** if I were you."*

641a 佰 **bǎi** "$100 check"



person 亻(13a) + **hundred** 百(40) =
$100 check 佰

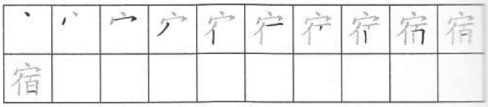
This is the form of "100" used on checks, banknotes, etc. to prevent alterations.

Harry buys a pet centipede with a **hundred** legs and has to write out a **$100 check**. (At a dollar a leg, it gets quite expensive, he muses). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

641 宿 **sù** stay overnight

Radical 宀
11 strokes

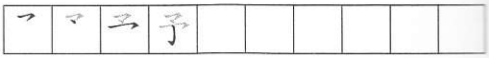


house 宀(91a) + **$100 check** 佰(641a) =
stay overnight 宿

[食宿(287) **shísù** *board and lodging*]

At the manor **house** they write a **$100 check** to **stay overnight**. / *They've arrived just in time for the evening meal — the* ***dwarf*** *head chef is just dishing out the* ***soup****.*

642a 予 **yǔ** bestow



seal 卩(560a) + **nail** 丁(81b) = **bestow** 予

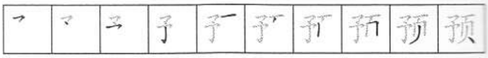
Notice that the first stroke of "nail" has a hook on it (a sign that we're cheating slightly again!)

If the proclamation with the king's **seal** is **nail**ed to your door, this **bestows** special status on your house. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

642 预 **yù** in advance

Radical 页
10 strokes
預



bestow 予(642a) + **page** 页(477) =
in advance 预

[预备(548) **yùbèi** *prepare, get ready*]

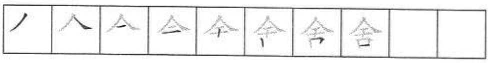
🌧 The authors of this book **bestow**ed a sample **page** on their publisher **in advance**, to show them the design. / *The* ***dwarf*** *sub-editor said it was* ***useless****, and threw the manuscript out the window into the pouring rain!*

643

舍 **shè**
shed

Radical 人
8 strokes

捨



tent 人(19b) + **dry** 干(124) + **mouth** 口(5) = **shed** 舍

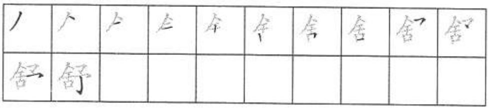
宿舍(641) **sùshè** *hostel, dormitory*

The explorer pitches his **tent** on the **dry** ground by the **mouth** of the cave — and only then spots a **shed** nearby. / *A **dwarf sherpa** lives there (who will act as his guide — for a fee of course).*

644

舒 **shū**
spread out

Radical 人
12 strokes



shed 舍(643) + **bestow** 予(642a) = **spread out** 舒

舒服(563) **shūfu** *comfortable*

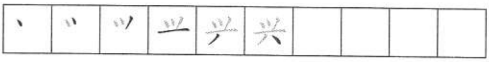
The duke **bestows** a **shed** on the cobbler so that he has space to **spread out** his patterns on the floor. / *He's started making **shoes** for the **giant** so he needs lots of space.*

645

兴 **xìng** (xīng)
excited

Radical 八
6 strokes

興



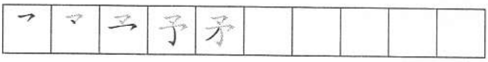
haul up 𭕄(388a) + **eight** 八(20) = **excited** 兴

高兴(481) **gāoxìng** *happy, delighted*

The fishermen **haul up** the **octopus** into their boat — they get very **excited** at this rare catch (which will fetch a good price). / *On the shore they sell it to a **dwarf** fishmonger — but the octopus revives and escapes, throwing up **shingle** everywhere as he makes a dash for the sea.*

646a

矛 **máo**
spear

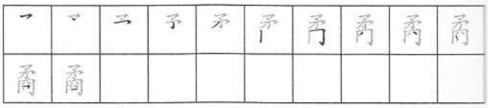


bestow 予(642a) + **slide** ㇒(34b) = **spear** 矛

This is easily confused with "bestow" (Character 642a) so it seems best to draw attention to the difference by adding "slide" (even though "slide" is not usually joined to anything).

(Imagine the king playing on the children's slide — whee!) The king decides to **bestow** the royal warrant on the **slide** by scratching his initials on it with his bodyguard's **spear**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

646b 矞 stab



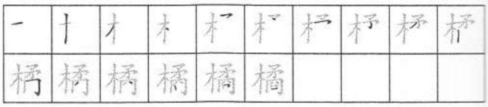
spear 矛(646a) + **porthole** 冏(640a) =
stab 矞

The Viking poked his **spear** through the **porthole** to **stab** the surprised guard. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

646 橘 **jú** tangerine

Radical 木
16 strokes



tree 木(10a) + **stab** 矞(646b) =
tangerine 橘

Time for some more "pouring rain" stories — we have collected together the five remaining characters with pronunciation "ju".

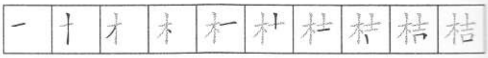
A party game: all stand around the **tree**, and the first one to **stab** a **tangerine** is the winner. / *The* ***fairy*** *takes the* ***juice*** *outside into the pouring rain, to dilute it.*

橘子(17) **júzi** *tangerine*

---

647 桔 **jú** tangerine

Radical 木
10 strokes



tree 木(10a) + **auspicious** 吉(538a) =
tangerine 桔

This is simply an alternative character (to the previous one) for tangerine.

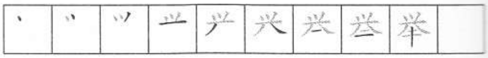
In the palace grounds there is a **tree**, from which, on a certain **auspicious** day, you are allowed to pick a **tangerine** to eat. / *The* ***fairy*** *takes the* ***juice*** *outside into the pouring rain, to dilute it.*

桔子(17) **júzi** *tangerine*

---

648 举 **jǔ** to raise

Radical 丶
9 strokes
舉



excited 兴(645) + **criminal** 丰(130a) =
raise 举

[举行(81) **jǔxíng** *to hold (meeting etc)*]

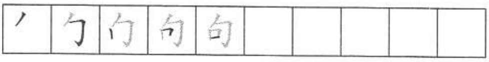
The **criminal** is **excited** as he **raises** his head carefully out of the prison escape tunnel he has dug. / ***Teddy*** *runs up in the pouring rain, shouting, "I've got you some* ***juice****!" (and almost gives the game away).*

649 句 **jù** sentence

Radical 勹
5 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **wrap** 勹(23a) = **sentence** 句

句子(17) **jùzi** *sentence (of text)*



They are fed up of his grumbling, so **wrap** something round his **mouth** before he can speak another **sentence**. / *But the **dwarf** is a **judo** expert and escapes, running out into the pouring rain.*

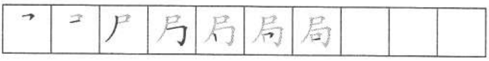
650 局 **jú** office

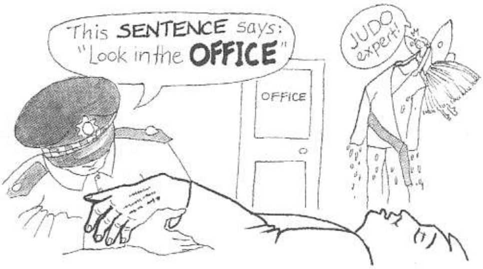
Radical 尸
7 strokes

corpse 尸(268a) + **sentence** 句(649) = **office** 局

Notice that "sentence" here is fused onto "corpse". An alternative breakdown for this character might be "corpse" plus "blade" plus "mouth".

邮局(621) **yóujú** *post office*
[局长(172) **júzhǎng** *bureau chief*]




This SENTENCE says: "Look in the OFFICE"
JUDO expert!
OFFICE

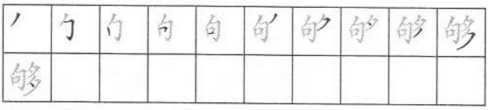
The **corpse** has a **sentence** written on his hand: "Look in the manager's **office**." / *The **fairy** (finding a wet judo outfit) says, "Whoever did this was a **judo** expert who has been out in the pouring rain."*

651 够 **gòu** enough

Radical 夕
11 strokes
夠

sentence 句(649) + **many** 多(69) = **enough** 够

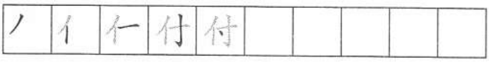
能够(206) **nénggòu** *can, be able to*



The politician had so **many sentences** in his speech that everyone had soon had **enough** (too much, in fact). / *The **dwarf** (never one to suffer fools gladly) gets up and walks out, saying, "Blow this, I'm off to the **go-kart** track."*

652a 付 **fù** pay

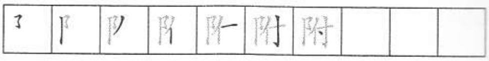
person 亻(13a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **pay** 付



(At the fairground ride) **Harry** was an **inch** too tall, so had to **pay** the adult fare. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

652 附 **fù** near to

Radical 阝 **7 strokes**



mound 阝(96a) + **pay** 付(652a) = **near to** 附

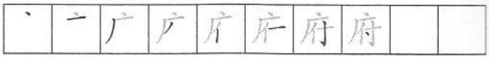
附近(241) **fùjìn** *nearby*

To see the burial **mound** properly, you have to **pay** to be allowed **near to** it. / *The **dwarf** doesn't allow food inside, except for the **foo yong** (which he himself sells).*

---

653 府 **fǔ** government

Radical 广 **8 strokes**

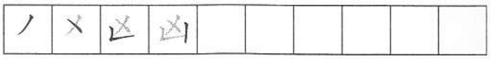


shelter 广(170) + **pay** 付(652a) = **government** 府

政府(190) **zhèngfǔ** *government*

A **shelter** has been set up where people go to **pay** their taxes to the **government**. / ***Teddy** tries to pay with **foo yong**.*

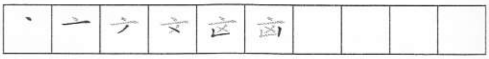
654a 凶 **xiōng** terrible



shears 乂(25a) + **pit** 凵(626a) = **terrible** 凶

If you've dropped your **shears** down the **pit**, that's **terrible**. (You'll have to use scissors to cut the grass now!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

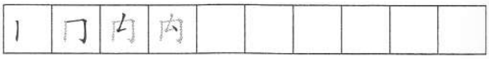
654b 㐫 brain



lid 亠(25b) + **terrible** 凶(654a) = **brain** 㐫

"Removing this **lid** will have **terrible** consequences," says the notice on a cask containing a **brain** (as it will die if exposed to the air). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

654c 禸 rump



cocoon 厶(34a) + **outer limits** 冂(160a) = **rump** 禸

In the **outer limits** caterpillars make their **cocoons** on the **rump** of cattle (to keep them warm). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

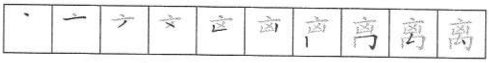
654 离 **lí** distant from

Radical 亠
10 strokes
離

brain 㐫(654b) + **rump** 禸(654c) =
distant from 离

This also means “to depart”.

离开(85) **líkāi** *to depart*
[离别(79) **líbié** *bid farewell*]

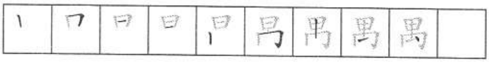


“The **brain** and **rump** of a giraffe are very **distant from** each other.” / *To demonstrate, the* ***fairy*** *pokes the giraffe in the rump with her wand. “Now let’s see how long he takes to* ***leap*** *up in surprise.”*

655a 禺 monkey

field 田(156a) + **rump** 禸(654c) =
monkey 禺

Notice how the vertical stroke carries through into “rump” so that the “cocoon” part of this character gets slightly altered.



Out in the **field** the cow plonks her **rump** down — but there’s a squeal and she discovers she’s sat on a **monkey** (who is now looking rather squashed). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

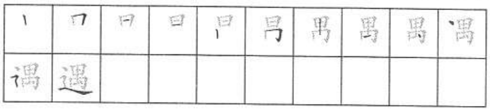
---

655 遇 **yù** encounter

Radical 辶
12 strokes

road 辶(26a) + **monkey** 禺(655a) =
encounter 遇

遇到(74) **yùdào** *encounter*



As a rite of passage, each young **monkey** has to walk along the **road** near the jungle, where they **encounter** various tests. / *The first test is to sneak past the* ***dwarf*** *playing his* ***ukulele*** *without him noticing — the trick is to do it when it’s pouring with rain.*

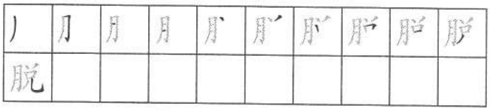
---

656 脱 **tuō** undress

Radical 月
11 strokes

moon 月(61) + **convert** 兑(67b) =
undress 脱

This character also refers to removing shoes, a hat, etc.



Whenever the **moon** comes out it **converts** him into a werewolf. Each time he must quickly **undress** before his clothes get ripped. / *The* ***ghostly giant*** *guards his clothes and gives him a* ***toga*** *to wear for the duration.*

Chapter 34

Another quiz, where we've put together groups of characters which have very similar meanings:

不(9) 没(169) 非(328)

数(469) 第(322) 号(424)

化(391) 变(581) 成(259) 改(359)

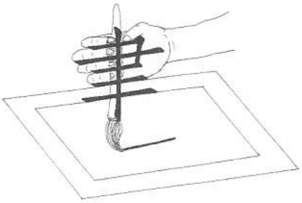
使(398) 用(130) 拿(348) 以(120)

见(214) 望(570) 视(435) 观(216) 看(200)

查(598) 验(602) 检(599) 究(616) 考(604)

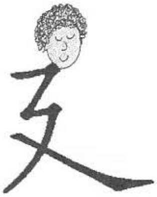
聿

write with brush



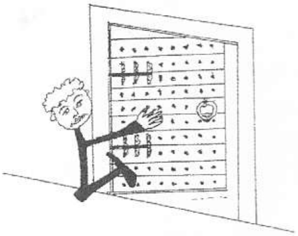
夂

stride



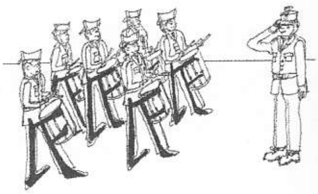
𠂎

an open door



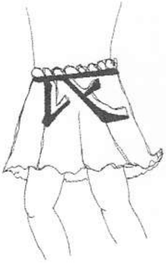
𠂢

brigade



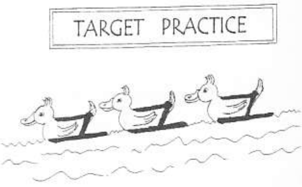
𧘇

a skirt

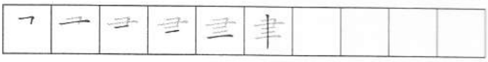


ユ

target

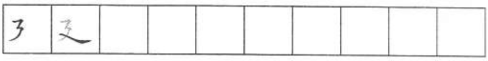


657a 聿 “write with brush”



We’ve treated this as a basic building block, but if you like you can think of it as “dexterity” plus “two” (or even “dexterity” plus “criminal”) and make up a story accordingly.

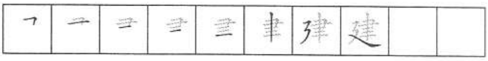
657b 廴 stride



---

657 建 **jiàn** build

Radical 廴
8 strokes



stride 廴(657b) + **write with brush** 聿(657a) = **build** 建

Like “road” (26a), “stride” is written last, after the fragment it encloses.

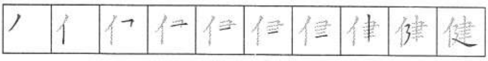
On the building site the foreman **strides** about **writing** on the ground **with a brush**, to mark out where they should **build** the walls. / ***Two dwarf*** *building inspectors come round to check there’ll be enough room for the* ***generator****.*

建设(553) **jiànshè** *build, install*
[建立(177) **jiànlì** *set up, build*]

---

658 健 **jiàn** strong

Radical 亻
10 strokes

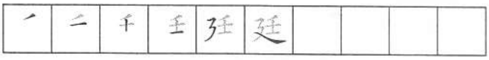


person 亻 (13a) + **build** 建(657) = **strong** 健

[健儿(21) **jiàn’ér** *good athlete*]

Harry is helping to **build** the floors of the new building, which have to be **strong** enough to take a lot of weight. / *The* ***two dwarf*** *building inspectors will try to find fault with the floor of the* ***generator*** *room.*

659a 廷 **tíng** court



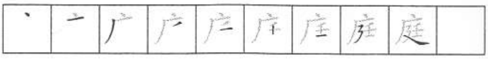
stride 廴(657b) + **ninth** 壬(551a) = **court** 廷

This is a feudal court rather than a modern judicial court.

The youngest member of the royal family **strides** arrogantly about the palace with a baseball bat — although he is only **ninth** in line to the throne. Everyone is waiting for him to get his comeuppance when he gets to **court**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

659 庭 **tíng** courtyard

Radical 广
9 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **court** 廷(659a) =
courtyard 庭

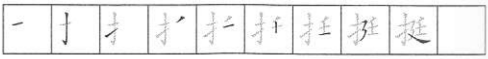
家庭(109) **jiātíng** *family*

They need a **shelter** to house the overflowing **court**, so build one over the **courtyard** outside. / *The* ***fairy*** *administers* ***tincture*** *(to ward off colds for those stuck outside in the cold weather).*

---

660 挺 **tǐng** exceptionally

Radical 扌
9 strokes



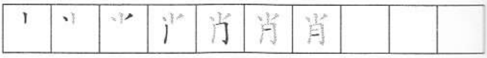
hand 扌(152a) + **court** 廷(659a) =
exceptionally 挺

This is often just used to mean "very"; it also means "erect", "straight" or "firm".

[挺立(177) **tǐnglì** *to stand upright; to stand firm*]

The head guard holds up his **hand** to stop people entering the **court** — only **exceptionally** does he let someone in. / ***Teddy*** *gets in because he is carrying the king's* ***tincture*** *(and is likely to spill it if he has to hold it for long).*

661a 肖 **xiào** resemble



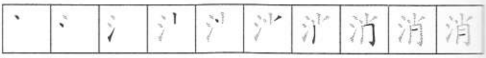
small 小(50) + **moon** 月(61) = **resemble** 肖

The **small moon** (of the planet) **resembles** a potato. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

661 消 **xiāo** vanish

Radical 氵
10 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **resemble** 肖(661a) =
vanish 消

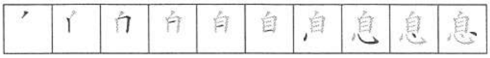
[取消(88) **qǔxiāo** *to cancel*]
[消化(391) **xiāohuà** *to digest*]

The enchanted **water resembles** lemonade and is used to make things **vanish**. / *The* ***two giants*** *take a* ***shower*** *in it (but then keep bumping into each other as they are both now invisible).*

Test yourself: 九(38) 水(523) 火(181) 子(17) 民(455) 页(477) 痛(565)
难(503) 助(445) 办(123) 姓(135) 支(462) 容(486) 扬(532)

662 息 **xī** stop

Radical 心
10 strokes

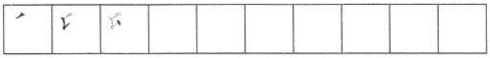


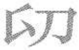
self 自(94) + **heart** 心(161) = **stop** 息

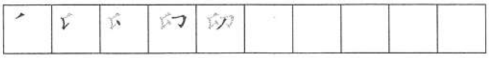
消息(661) **xiāoxī** *news*

The surgeon is trying to do a **heart** operation on him**self**. "**Stop**!" cry the other doctors. / *The **giant** brings a **shield** to use as a stretcher (to take him to the proper operating theater).*

663a "an open door"



663b  "barred"



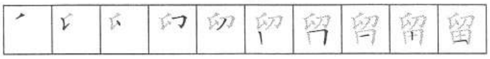
an open door (663a) + **knife** 刀(72) = **barred**

Returning to your apartment you find **an open door** and see an intruder inside with a **knife**. You quickly lock the door from the outside so that he is **barred** from escaping. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

663 留 **liú** remain

Radical 田
10 strokes

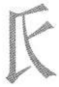


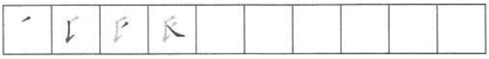
barred (663b) + **field** 田(156a) = **remain** 留

This also means to "detain" or "keep".

留念(167) **liú niàn** *keep as a souvenir*
留学生(82, 133) **liúxuéshēng** *international students (in a university)*

(Cows were escaping from the field) The farmer **barred** the gate to the **field** so that the cows who had not yet escaped would have to **remain** in the field. / *The **two fairies** set out to tempt the escaped cows back with **lotus** leaves.*

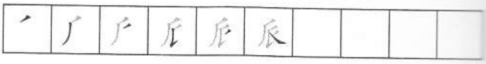
664a  "brigade"



Compare this with "dress" 𧘇 (436a).

664b 𠂢 tributary

drag 厂(150a) + **brigade** 𧘇(664a) =
tributary 𠂢



The commanding officer **drags** his **brigade** miles to the river, but when they get there it's just a **tributary** (he's got the navigation wrong again). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

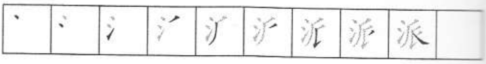
664 派 **pài** group

Radical 氵
9 strokes

water 氵(78a) + **tributary** 𠂢(664b) =
group 派

This is generally a group of people in the sense of a faction or school of thought.

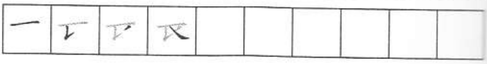
[派别(79) **pàibié** *group, school, faction*]
[派系(607) **pàixì** *faction (in a political party)*]
[派头(246) **pàitóu** *style (as in "doing something in style")*]



The **water** in the **tributary** is particularly good and only a privileged **group** is allowed to fish there. / *The* ***dwarf*** *objects to this because he thinks there's plenty of* ***pike*** *for everyone.*

Test yourself: 方(291) 复(550) 科(605) 设(553) 高(481) 钱(610) 笔(454)
志(487) 城(260) 页(477) 因(520) 租(446) 定(406) 法(87)

665a 𧘇 "a skirt"

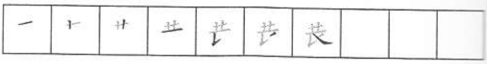


This is the bottom part of "dress" (436a), suspended from a horizontal line (which you can think of as a belt).

665b 𧗱 gown

grass 艹(218a) + **a skirt** 𧘇(665a) =
gown 𧗱

Although this looks like "grass" plus "skirt", if you look closely you can see that the grass is actually joined on, as it is in "bacon rashers" (625a).



Imagine sewing sheaves of **grass** together to make the **skirt** for a **gown**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

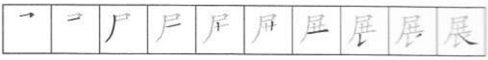
665 展 **zhǎn** display

Radical 尸
10 strokes

corpse 尸(268a) + **gown** 丧(665b) =
display 展

This also means to "unfold" or "postpone".

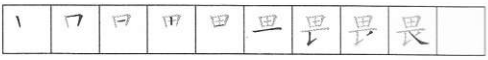
发展(146) **fāzhǎn** *develop (economy)*
[展出(114) **zhǎnchū** *display; be on show*]



(The well-loved Princess Janet dies…) They put a **gown** on the **corpse** before putting it on **display** (for the mourners to file past). / ***Teddy** makes a placard: "Prinsess **Janit** this way." (Spelling is not his strong point).*

666a 畏 **wèi** respect

field 田(156a) + **a skirt** 𧘇(665a) =
respect 畏



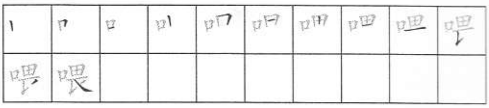
A farmer discovers a discarded **skirt** in his **field** (after he has chased off some youngsters). "These young people have no **respect**," he complains. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

666 喂 **wèi** Hey!

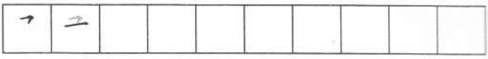
Radical 口
12 strokes

mouth 口(5) + **respect** 畏(666a) = **Hey!** 喂



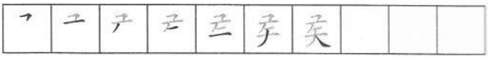
(In the restaurant one diner is angrily talking to another) "Don't eat with your **mouth** full — show some **respect**! **Hey**, are you listening to me?" / *The **dwarf** head **waiter** storms over to throw the diners out.*

667a ユ target



667b 矦 "archery contest"

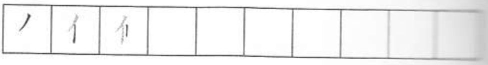
target ユ (667a) + **arrow** 矢(490a) =
archery contest 矦



Picture yourself setting up the **target**s and **arrow**s ready for the **archery contest**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

667c 亻丨

"man with stick"



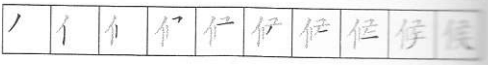
person 亻 (13a) + **stick** 丨 (19a) =
man with stick 亻丨

This hardly needs a story … / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

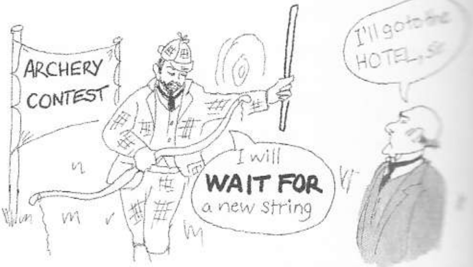
667 侯 **hòu** wait for

Radical 亻
10 strokes



man with stick 亻丨(667c) + **archery contest** ⺈矢(667b) = **wait for** 侯

This means "to await" but also appears as the second half of various compounds.


ARCHERY CONTEST
I will WAIT FOR a new string
I'll go to the HOTEL, sir

时候(105) **shíhòu** *(the) time*
有时候(63, 105) **yǒu shíhòu** *sometimes*
[气候(411) **qìhòu** *climate*]

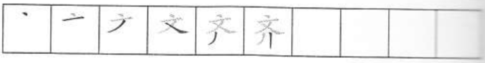
Who's the **man with a stick** at the **archery contest**? He's **waiting for** a new string for his bow. / *His **dwarf** manservant must go back to the **hotel** to fetch one.*

---

668 齐 **qí** tidy

Radical 文
6 strokes

齊



culture 文(25) + **grain stalks** 丿丨(579a) =
tidy 齐

整齐(495) **zhěngqí** *in good order*
[一齐(1) **yìqí** *together*]

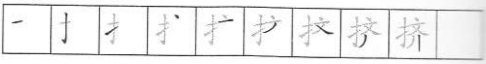
In one particular **culture** the **grain stalks** must be **tidy** after the harvest. / *The **fairy** then flies off to get the tribal **chief** to come and make his inspection.*

---

669 挤 **jǐ** squeeze

Radical 扌
9 strokes

擠



hand 扌(152a) + **tidy** 齐(668) =
squeeze 挤

[挤奶(533) **jǐ'nǎi** *to milk (a cow)*]

The mother tells her teenage daughter, "Give me a **hand** to **tidy** up all these clothes — see if you can **squeeze** them all into those drawers." / *Meanwhile **Teddy** has found a **G-string** (and is twanging it until it is snatched away from him).*

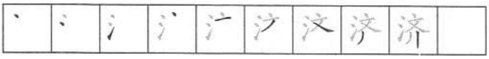
670 济 **jì** bring relief

Radical 氵
9 strokes

濟

water 氵 (78a) + **tidy** 齐 (668) = **bring relief** 济

经济 (244) **jīngjì** *(country's) economy*

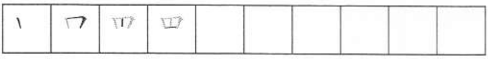


(After the flood) The **water** had receded, but before they could **tidy** up they needed to **bring relief** supplies to the stranded people. / *The* ***dwarf*** *directed operations from his amphibian* ***jeep****.*

671a 吅 "kiss"

mouth 口 (5) + **mouth** 口 (5) = **kiss** 吅

You can tell from the stroke order that these are not "really" two mouths glued together (see also 629a), but we liked the idea of being able to use "kiss" in a few stories!

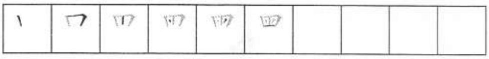


Use your imagination! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

671b 罒 "windowpane"

kiss 吅 (671a) + **horns** 丷 (65a) = **windowpane** 罒

Note the stroke order, here and in the following character.



The two deer met for a **kiss** but they were too near the hut and their **horns** smashed the **windowpane**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

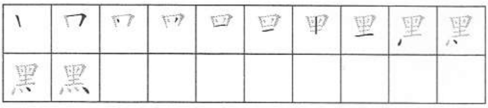
671 黑 **hēi** black

Radical 黑
12 strokes

windowpane 罒 (671b) + **earth** 土 (54a) + **fire** 灬 (185a) = **black** 黑

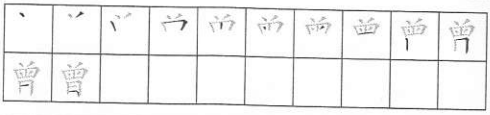
The top part of this is often handwritten 里 ("in", Character 157), where the "horns" are replaced by a single horizontal stroke.

[黑板 (333) **hēibǎn** *blackboard*]
[黑市 (427) **hēishì** *black market*]
[黑白 (22) **hēibái** *black and white; right and wrong*]



You throw **earth** at the upstairs **windowpane** to alert the occupants that their house is on **fire** — they run out unharmed but they're **black** with soot. / *The* ***giant*** *lets them stay in his* ***hayloft*** *while their house is rebuilt.*

672a 曾 **céng; zēng**
used to be



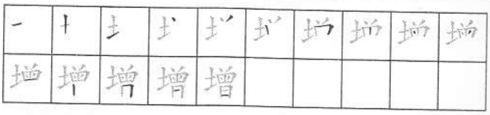
horns 丷 (65a) + **windowpane** 罒 (671b) + **sun** 日 (6) = **used to be** 曾

The old stag looks at his **horns** in the **windowpane** as the **sun** goes down. They **used to be** magnificent, he sighs. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

672 增 **zēng**
to increase

Radical 土
15 strokes

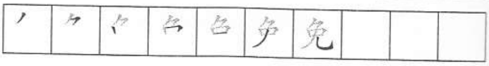


earth 土(54a) + **used to be** 曾(672a) = **increase** 增

增加(325) **zēngjiā** *to increase*
[增长(172) **zēngzhǎng** *to increase, grow*]

(A farmer looks at a handful of soil) The **earth used to be** arid and barren, but he's enriched it and **increased** the crop yield tremendously. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

673a 免 **miǎn**
avoid



bow 𠂊(51a) + **kiss** 口 (671a) + **boy** 儿(21) = **avoid** 免

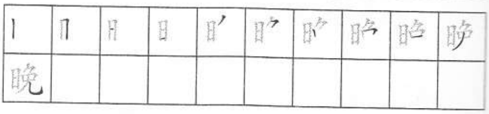
Although the middle of this character looks like "kiss", you will see from the stroke order diagrams that you draw a box (like "mouth") and then the first stroke of "boy" divides this in two on its way down.

The aunt **bows** down to **kiss** the **boy** — but he ducks away to **avoid** her (as he hates sloppy kisses from relatives). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

673 晚 **wǎn**
evening

Radical 日
11 strokes



sun 日(6) + **avoid** 免(673a) = **evening** 晚

This can either mean "to be late for something", or late in the day, i.e. "evening".

晚饭(332) **wǎnfàn** *supper*
晚上(42) **wǎnshang** *evening*
晚会(59) **wǎnhuì** *soiree, evening party*

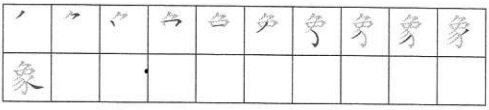
The albino animal has to **avoid** the **sun**, so only comes out in the **evening**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

674a 象 **xiàng**
elephant

bow 𠂊(51a) + **kiss** 罒(671a) + **pig** 豕(109a) = **elephant** 象

The top part is similar to "avoid" (673a), but the bottom is now "pig" (but note that the pig has lost its first horizontal stroke).

The character also means "shape" and is often used as a simplified form of the following character (674) if there is no room for confusion.



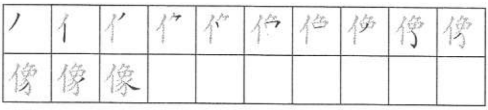
The princess **bows** down to **kiss** the **pig** — who promptly turns into a handsome … **elephant**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

674 像 **xiàng**
likeness

Radical 亻
13 strokes

person 亻 (13a) + **elephant** 象(674a) = **likeness** 像

好像(18) **hǎoxiàng** *be like, similar to*

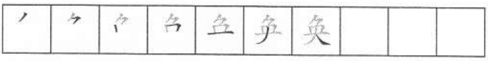


Harry pointed at his **elephant** and then at its passport photo, and said, "But — it's a good **likeness**!" / *The **two dwarf** immigration officers at **Shanghai** are dubious — each takes one end of the elephant but neither end looks like the passport photo …*

675a 奂
wonderful

bow 𠂊(51a) + **center** 央(401a) = **wonderful** 奂

Note the difference between this character and "avoid" (673a). By now you are probably pretty good at spotting details like this.

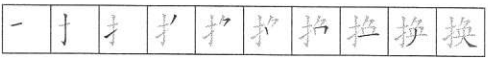


(At the bowing master class) The bowing expert stood in the **center** of the arena and demonstrated the perfect **bow**. "**Wonderful**," they all cried. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

675 换 **huàn**
exchange

Radical 扌
10 strokes
換

hand 扌(152a) + **wonderful** 奂(675a) = **exchange** 换

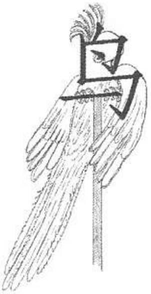


(At the sculpture class) "That **hand** is **wonderful** — would you give it to the art college, in **exchange** for extra lessons? / *The **ghostly dwarf** will guard it as part of our **hand** collection.*"

Chapter 35

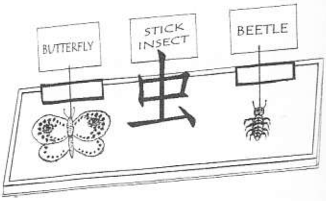
鸟

bird



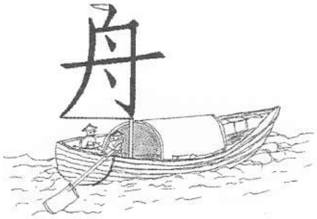
虫

insect


BUTTERFLY
STICK INSECT
BEETLE
虫

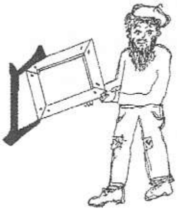
舟

boat



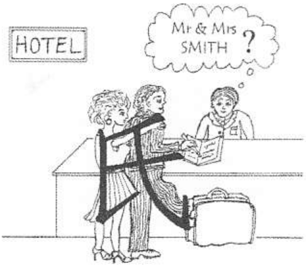
𠂎

a vise



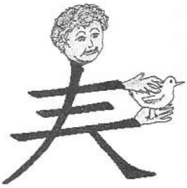
氏

surname


HOTEL
Mr & Mrs SMITH ?
氏

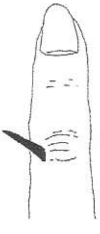
𡗗

held in the hands



丶

splinter



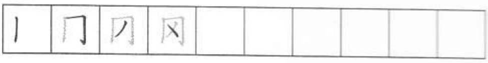
676a 冈 gāng
ridge

岡

outer limits 冂(160a) + **shears** 㐅(25a) =
ridge 冈

This character means the ridge of a hill.

Don't confuse it with 风 ("wind", Character 468).



In the **outer limits** they use **shears** to trim the hedges on the **ridge** of the hill, so that they can peer over into the neighboring kingdom. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

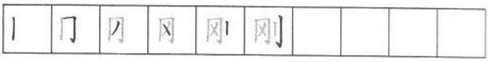
676 刚 **gāng**
barely

Radical 刂
6 strokes

剛

ridge 冈(676a) + **knife** 刂(74a) =
barely 刚

刚才(518) **gāngcái** *a short while ago*
[刚刚 **gānggāng** *only just, barely*]



Imagine crawling up to the **ridge** (at dusk, to investigate a suspicious noise), **knife** at the ready, but there's **barely** enough light to see what's going on. / *When you peer over you see the **giant** and his **gang** making camp.*

---

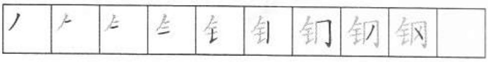
677 钢 **gāng**
steel

Radical 钅
9 strokes

鋼

gold 钅(278a) + **ridge** 冈(676a) = **steel** 钢

钢笔(454) **gāngbǐ** *fountain pen*

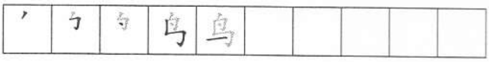


You take **gold** up to the **ridge** to trade it for **steel**. / *The **giant** and his **gang** are well known for making the best steel around.*

Test yourself: 宜(449) 话(458) 数(469) 物(527) 题(478) 知(490) 周(540)
明(77) 技(463) 毛(453) 母(127) 集(505) 床(171) 树(155)

678a 鸟 niǎo
bird

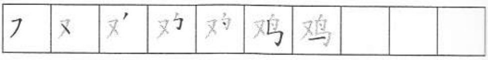
鳥



There are two characters for "bird": this one and the one we have called "pigeon" (501a). Traditionally these are said to apply to long-tailed birds and short-tailed birds respectively.

678 鸡 **jī** chicken

Radical 又
7 strokes
鷄



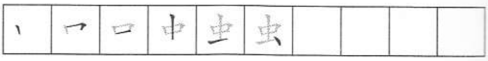
right hand 又(52) + **bird** 鸟(678a) =
chicken 鸡

[一只鸡(1, 254) **yì zhī jī** *a bird*]

The farmer's daughter solemnly **shakes hands** with each **bird** before it leaves — no **chicken** is allowed to go for slaughter until she has done this. / *The **giant** loads them onto his **jeep** to drive them away.*

679a 虫 **chóng** insect

蟲

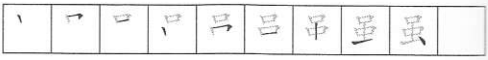


This character also applies to other very small animals, including worms.

---

679 虽 **suī** although

Radical 口
9 strokes
雖

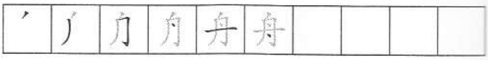


mouth 口(5) + **insect** 虫(679a) =
although 虽

虽然(266) **suīrán** *although*

The exhausted **insect** (imagine a cute furry caterpillar) crawls into the **mouth** of the cave, **although** he has heard that it is haunted. / *The **ghostly giant**, who guards the cave, rushes out brandishing his **saber** (until he realises that the poor, frightened caterpillar is not a threat).*

680a 舟 **zhōu** boat

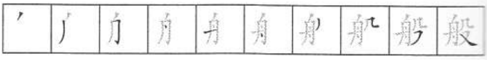


When it is used as a part of other characters, "boat" has sometimes evolved into "moon" (月, Character 61). Look at "canoe" (90b) and see if you get an "aha" feeling.

---

680 般 **bān** a sort

Radical 舟
10 strokes



boat 舟(680a) + **strike** 殳(169a) = **sort** 般

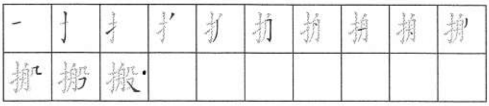
This means a sort of, or type of, something.

一般(1) **yìbān** *average, commonplace*

At the launching ceremony they **strike** the **boat** with a bottle, but what **sort** of bottle depends on what **sort** of boat it is. / *The **giant** strikes up the **band** as the boat is launched.*

681 搬 **bān** move

Radical 扌
13 strokes



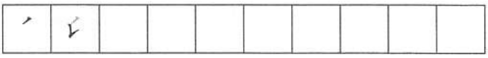
hand 扌(152a) + **sort** 般(680) = **move** 搬

This generally means to move house.

[搬家(109) **bānjiā** *to move house*]

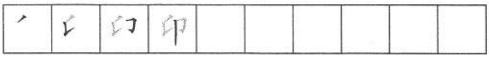
"We need a **hand**." "What **sort** of hand?" "Any sort we can get, to help us **move** house." / *The **giant** brings his **band** of helpers (and they finish the move in no time).*

682a 𠂎 "a vise"



Compare this with "open door" (663a).

682b 卬 aspire



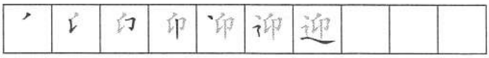
a vise 𠂎(682a) + **seal** 卩(560a) = **aspire** 卬

He uses the **vise** in his shed to hold the **seal** while he fashions an intricate design on it, worthy of the chief scribe which he **aspire**s one day to be. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

682 迎 **yíng** greet

Radical 辶
7 strokes

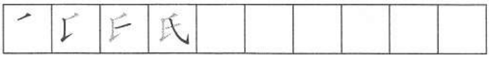


road 辶(26a) + **aspire** 卬(682b) = **greet** 迎

欢迎(363) **huānyíng** *welcome*
[迎接(203) **yíngjiē** *to meet, greet*]

The **road aspired** to be declared a Boulevard, so **greet**ed each car effusively to ingratiate itself to everyone. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

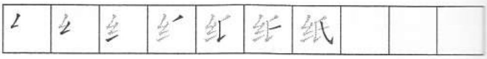
683a 氏 **shì** surname



You can probably see "vise" and "pile of earth" here; feel free to make up a story for this if you like.

683 纸 **zhǐ** paper

Radical 纟
7 strokes
紙

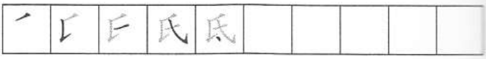


thread 纟 (233a) + **surname** 氏(683a) =
paper 纸

[报纸(562) **bàozhǐ** *newspaper*]

It is customary when finishing a piece of embroidery to use **thread** to sign your **surname** at the bottom — but it is best to work out the design on **paper** first. / ***Teddy*** *jumps onto the embroidery frame (using it as a trampoline), and cries out,* ***"Geronimo!"***

684a 氐 "settle down"



surname 氏(683a) + **a drop** 丶 (22a) =
settle down 氐

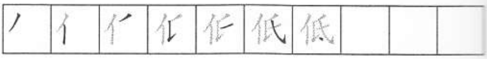
In some typefaces you will see the older form of this character where the dot is replaced by a (very) short horizontal line.

Her fiancé has been a playboy, so she will only marry him if he will sign his **surname** in **a drop** of his own blood, to swear that he is now ready to **settle down**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

684 低 **dī** low

Radical 亻
7 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + **settle down** 氐(684a) =
low 低

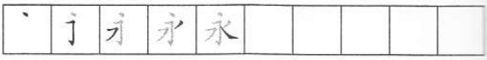
[低调(541) **dīdiào** *low-key*]

Harry plans to **settle down** somewhere quiet where he can keep a **low** profile. / *He finds the perfect place in the corner of the* ***giant's*** *estate and the giant kindly gives him the* ***deeds*** *so that he will never have to leave.*

---

685 永 **yǒng** forever

Radical 丶
5 strokes



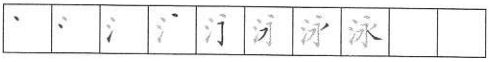
a drop 丶 (22a) + **water** 水(523) =
forever 永

永远(303) **yǒngyuǎn** *forever*

"Put **a drop** of this elixir in your drinking **water** and you will live **forever**." / ***Teddy*** *asks, "Will it keep me looking* ***young****?" and takes a swig.*

686 泳 **yǒng** swim

Radical 氵
8 strokes

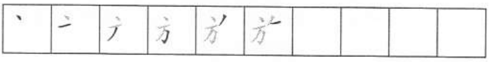


water 氵(78a) + **forever** 永(685) = **swim** 泳

She wanted to stay in the **water forever**, now that she had learnt to **swim**. / ***Teddy** said, "You're never too **young** to learn!" as he jumped in, feet first.*

Test yourself: 七(37) 见(214) 世(578) 累(608) 邮(621) 海(129) 民(455)
真(452) 楼(470) 体(175) 刻(500) 问(289) 提(475) 肉(221)

687a 㫃 banner



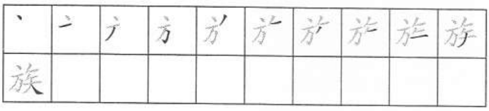
direction 方(291) + **clouds** 𠂉(124b) = **banner** 㫃

This combination occurs together in several characters (such as the following two; and also Character 755). However, the combination is not a radical, and dictionaries simply classify these characters under "direction" (Character 291).

He looks to see what **direction** the **clouds** are coming from, so that he can work out where to hang the **banner** (for the fete, so that it won't be torn down by the wind). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

687 族 **zú** clan

Radical 方
11 strokes

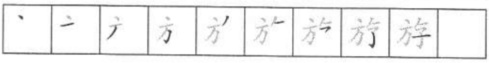


banner 㫃(687a) + **arrow** 矢(490a) = **clan** 族

民族(455) **mínzú** *nationality, ethnic group*

The African tribe have a **banner** with an **arrow** painted on it, as the symbol of their **clan** (to match the arrows they have painted on their faces). / *They asks the **fairy** to fly aloft with it to scare off the neighboring **Zulus**.*

688a 斿 roam

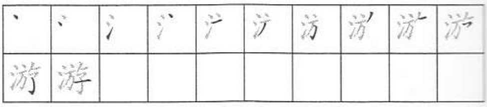


banner 㫃(687a) + **child** 子(17) = **roam** 斿

A **banner** went up (announcing that the circus was in town), and the young **child** ran to see these fascinating people who **roam**ed from place to place. / *[No pronunciation needed]*.

688 游 **yóu** to tour

Radical 氵
12 strokes



water 氵(78a) + **roam** 斿(688a) = **tour** 游

This also means "to swim".

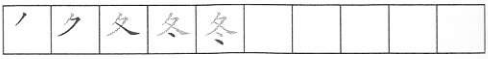
游泳(686) **yóuyǒng** *swim*

The sailing enthusiast said, "We love **roam**ing about on the **water**, and it's an easy way for us to **tour** the world — and it has the added benefit that we can swim whenever we want to. / *We even get the* ***fairy*** *to come along to give us* ***yoga*** *lessons on board."*

---

689 冬 **dōng** winter

Radical 夂
5 strokes



pursue 夂(506a) + **ice crystals** ⺀(246a) = **winter** 冬

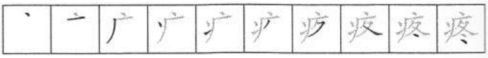
冬天(76) **dōngtiān** *winter*

A keen photographer likes to **pursue** unusual **ice crystals** — although he can only indulge this hobby in **winter**. / *The* ***giant*** *brings his* ***donkey*** *along to carry things (in winter the donkey is free from his summer job of giving rides on the beach).*

---

690 疼 **téng** ache

Radical 疒
10 strokes



illness 疒(510b) + **winter** 冬(689) = **ache** 疼

[头疼(246) **tóuténg** *headache*]

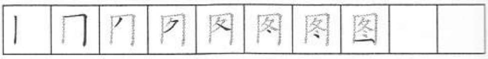
The **illness** doing the rounds that **winter** caused various parts of the body to **ache**. / *The* ***fairy*** *could diagnose it by looking at the color of people's* ***tongues***.

---

691 图 **tú** diagram

Radical 囗
8 strokes

圖



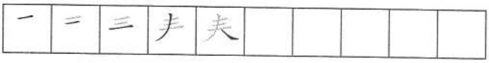
enclosed 囗(24a) + **winter** 冬(689) = **diagram** 图

[地图(54) **dìtú** *map*]

The planned **winter** garden is **enclosed** by a wall, and attached to the wall is a **diagram** showing the planned layout. / *The* ***fairy*** *flies around putting* ***toothpaste*** *on the trees so that people can see what it will look like in the snow.*

692a 𡗗

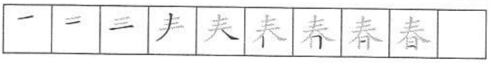
"held in the hands"



---

692 春 **chūn** springtime

Radical 日
9 strokes



held in the hands 𡗗(692a) + **sun** 日(6) = **springtime** 春

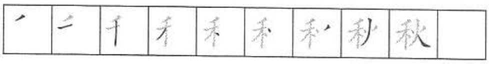
春天(76) **chūntiān** *spring*
[春节(560) **Chūn Jié** *Spring Festival (Chinese New Year)*]

(There is a statue of the king in the palace gardens) When the sun gets high enough so that it looks as if the statue is **holding** the **sun in his hands**, that's the official start of **spring**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*.

---

693 秋 **qiū** autumn

Radical 禾
9 strokes



grain 禾(126a) + **fire** 火(181) = **autumn** 秋

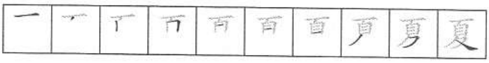
秋天(76) **qiūtiān** *autumn, fall*

They set **fire** to the stubble in the **grain** field, as they do every **autumn**. / *Downwind, the **two giants** are **choking** on the smoke (as they rush to take in their washing before it gets dirty in the smoke).*

---

694 夏 **xià** summer

Radical 夂
10 strokes



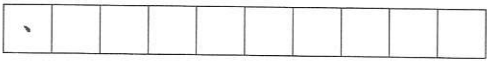
thumb tack 丆(40a) + **eye** 目(93) + **pursue** 夂(506a) = **summer** 夏

夏天(76) **xiàtiān** *summer*

A legendary old fish, who has never been caught, has old fishhooks in his leathery skin, and even a **thumb tack** near his **eye**. The local fishermen **pursue** it all **summer**. / *But in the end they resort to hiring the **two dwarves** with their **shark** fishing boat (one drives the boat and the other handles the lines on deck).*

695a 丶

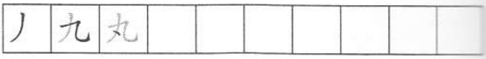
"splinter"



This is a short stroke which crosses another stroke, as in the following character.

695b 丸 **wán** pellet

nine 九(38) + **splinter** 丶(695a) = **pellet** 丸

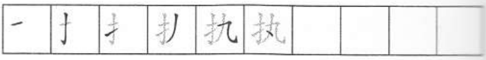


A youngster is sitting idly in the sun carving **splinters** off an old **baseball**, until what is left is just a **pellet**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

695c 执 **zhí** hold on to 執

hand 扌(152a) + **pellet** 丸(695b) = **hold on to** 执

This also means "to manage", in the sense of managing a business.



The dead man had a **pellet** in his **hand** — he was **hold**ing **on to** it as if it was important. (Perhaps it's a clue to a homicide!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

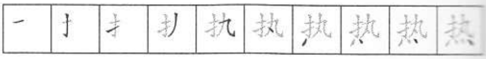
---

695 热 **rè** hot **Radical** 灬 **10 strokes** 熱

hold on to 执(695c) + **fire** 灬(185a) = **hot** 热

You will see from the following list of compounds that this can literally mean "hot" (high temperature) or, more metaphorically, "warm" to give meanings such as "ardent".

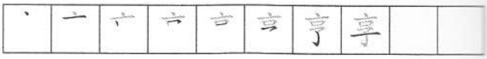
热情(339)	**rèqíng**	*enthusiasm*
[热点(185)	**rèdiǎn**	*hot-spot*]
[热爱(365)	**rè'ài**	*to love deeply*]
[热带(429)	**rèdài**	*the Tropics*]
[热心(161)	**rèxīn**	*enthusiastic; warm-hearted*]



You **hold on to** the metal poker while stoking the **fire**, but it becomes so **hot** that you drop it. / *The* ***dwarf*** *growls, "****Rrr****... rug! You've burnt a hole in my rr..rug!"*

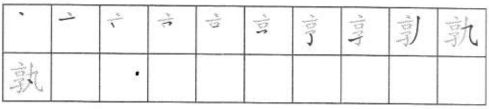
696a 享 **xiǎng** enjoy

tall 亠(239a) + **child** 子(17) = **enjoy** 享



You would think that the **tall child** would **enjoy** basketball (but no — it's no challenge and he gets bored). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

696b 孰 cooked



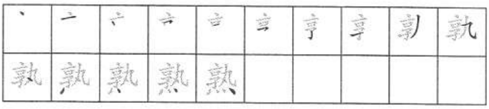
enjoy 享(696a) + **pellet** 丸(695b) =
cooked 孰

Your cat **enjoys pellets** because they are **cooked** — she much prefers them to raw meat like mice. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

696 熟 **shú** familiar

Radical 灬
15 strokes



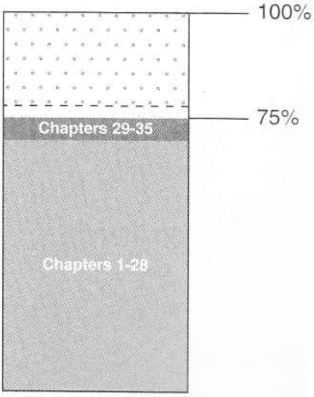
cooked 孰(696b) + **fire** 灬(185a) =
familiar 熟

[成熟(259) **chéngshú** *mature, ripe*]
[面熟(313) **miànshú** *to look familiar*]

The boy scouts **cooked** food on the **fire** — but overdid it. "It looks **familiar**," said the scoutmaster, bravely tucking into the charred remains. / *The **fairy** tried it and pulled a face. "It tastes like **shoe** leather," she said.*

Test yourself:

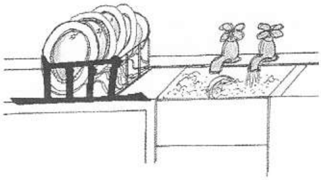
页(477)	事(312)	神(622)	往(300)	半(131)	西(100)	心(161)
适(459)	安(91)	对(154)	加(325)	脏(513)	员(479)	处(506)
东(319)	布(558)	画(626)	行(81)	始(485)	声(488)	贵(492)
重(407)	愿(537)	层(471)	奶(533)	等(464)	易(528)	念(167)



Chapter 36

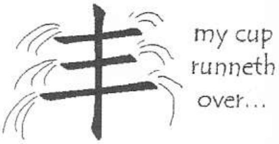
皿

dish



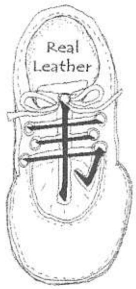
丰

abundant


my cup
runneth
over...

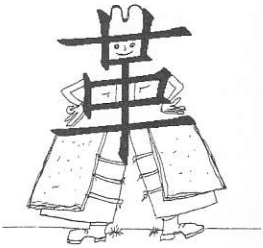
韦

leather


Real
Leather

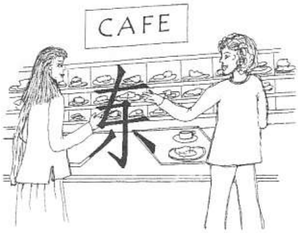
革

leather



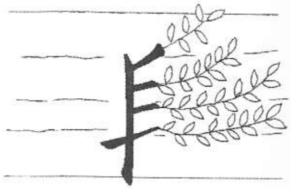
东

to select



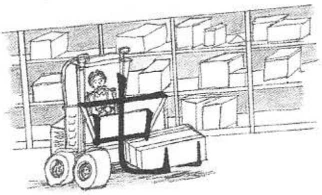
龵

ivy



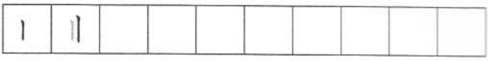
屯

to store



697a 〢

"two sticks"

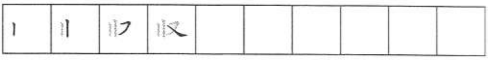


stick 丨 (19a) + **stick** 丨 (19a) = **two sticks** 〢

Another fragment which hardly needs a story! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

697b 〢又

firm



two sticks 〢(697a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **firm** 〢又

This also means "firm" in the sense of "strict" (but not in the sense of a business corporation).

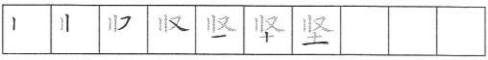
At the start of the hockey match the two center-forwards hold their **two sticks** and **shake hands** — the umpire will insist on a **firm** handshake. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

697 坚 **jiān** resolute

Radical 土 **7 strokes**

堅



firm 〢又(697b) + **earth** 土(54a) = **resolute** 坚

坚持(465) **jiānchí** *uphold, persist in*
[坚决(404) **jiānjué** *resolute, determined*]

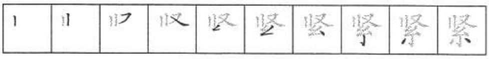
(Awards are being given for bravery after a landslide) "You both stood **firm**, holding back the **earth** and **resolute**ly protecting the village." / *The **two giants** were proud that the **general** himself had come (to present them with medals for saving the village).*

---

698 紧 **jǐn** tight

Radical 糸 **10 strokes**

緊



firm 〢又(697b) + **thread** 糸(607b) = **tight** 紧

紧张(173) **jǐnzhāng** *nervous, tense*
[要紧(101) **yàojǐn** *important, urgent*]
[不要紧(9, 101) **bú yàojǐn** *Do not …*]

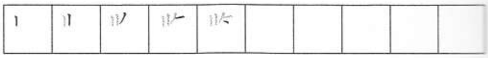
He takes a **firm** hold on the **thread** and pulls it **tight**. / ***Teddy** then steps **gingerly** onto it and edges along (thinking that perhaps he's not cut out for tightrope walking after all!)*

699a

丨丨𠂉

"prostrate"

two sticks 丨丨(697a) + **(half) bamboo** 𠂉(321a)
= **prostrate** 丨丨𠂉



(Visiting the emperor, everyone is waiting in the antechamber) When the emperor approaches, a court official uses **two sticks** to beat loudly on a drum, "Bam! **Bam**!" — and everyone falls **prostrate**. (Notice that we've cheated here and used "bam" to stand for half of "bamboo"!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

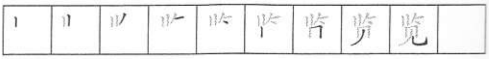
---

699 览 **lǎn** to view

Radical 见
9 strokes
覽

prostrate 丨丨𠂉(699a) + **see** 见(214) =
view 览

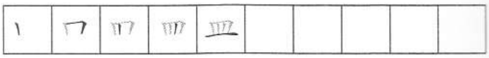
展览(665) **zhǎnlǎn** *exhibit, exhibition*
[游览(688) **yóulǎn** *tour, sightsee*]



You lie **prostrate** to see if you can **see** any mouse holes in the skirting board — you do this every time you **view** a room you might rent. / ***Teddy** says, "Why not just ask the **landlord**?"*

700a

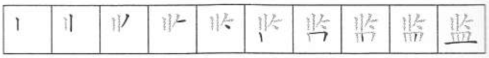
皿 dish



700b 监 jiān supervise

監

prostrate 丨丨𠂉(699a) + **dish** 皿(700a) =
supervise 监



The head chef in the palace kitchen is the only one who can **prostrate** himself while holding a **dish** and not spill the contents; which is why he gets to **supervise** the other chefs (rather than because of his culinary skills). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

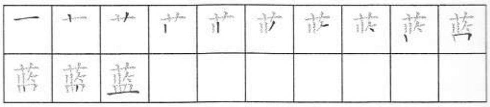
---

700 蓝 **lán** blue

Radical 艹
13 strokes
藍

grass 艹(218a) + **supervise** 监(700b) =
blue 蓝

[蓝图(691) **lántú** *blueprint*]



The **grass** he was supposed to **supervise** overnight had turned **blue**. / *This had been caused by the **fairy's** magic **lantern** (and neither of them had noticed).*

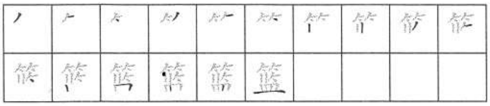
---

701 篮 **lán** basket

Radical ⺮
16 strokes
籃

bamboo ⺮(321a) + **supervise** 监(700b) = **basket** 篮

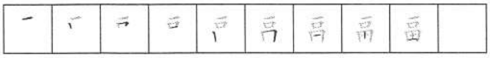
篮球(525) **lánqiú** *basketball*



The **bamboo** he has to **supervise** tonight is going to be made into a **basket**. / *This is for the* ***fairy*** *to keep her magic* ***lantern*** *in (so that it won't turn the grass blue any more!)*

702a 畐 plenty

piled up 百(150b) + **field** 田(156a) = **plenty** 畐



Picture potatoes **piled up** in the corner of every **field** — there's **plenty** for everyone. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

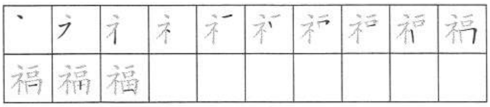
702 福 **fú** blessing

Radical 礻
13 strokes

sign 礻(433a) + **plenty** 畐(702a) = **blessing** 福

Along with characters for "peace" and "longevity", this is a very popular Chinese character, seen on many necklaces and earrings in the West. It has the general sense of "good fortune".

幸福(308) **xìngfú** *happy, fortunate*



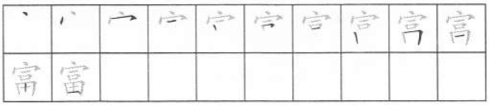
A farmer points out to his son a **sign** of **plenty** in the sky, "It is a **blessing** on us. / *The* ***fairy*** *is promising that we will always have* ***food*** *to eat."*

---

703 富 **fù** wealthy

Radical 宀
12 strokes

house 宀(91a) + **plenty** 畐(702a) = **wealthy** 富



"In that **house** they always have **plenty**, they're really **wealthy**. / *They even have a* ***dwarf*** *who brings* ***food*** *to them whenever they want it."*

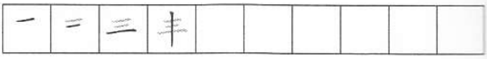
Test yourself:
马(44) 青(335) 斤(240) 的(23) 爱(365) 冷(593) 系(607)
今(166) 圆(480) 汉(78) 胜(134) 书(176) 您(493) 特(466)

704 丰 **fēng** abundant

Radical 丨 **4 strokes**

豐

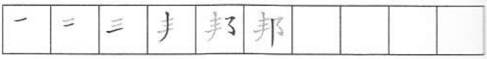
丰富(703) **fēngfù** *rich, abundant*
[丰产(197) **fēngchǎn** *high yield, bumper crop*]



/ ***Wheels*** *are so* ***abundant*** *at the* ***giant's*** *wheel shop that most of them just sit there untouched until* ***fungus*** *grows on them.*

705a 邦 **bāng** nation

abundant 丰(704) + **city** 阝(96a) = **nation** 邦



People are **abundant** in the **city** — it seems as if the whole **nation** is there. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

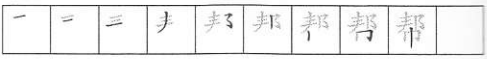
705 帮 **bāng** help

Radical 巾 **9 strokes**

幫

nation 邦(705a) + **towel** 巾(427a) = **help** 帮

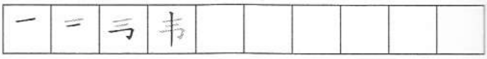
帮助(445) **bāngzhù** *to help*
[帮忙(568) **bāngmáng** *to help*]



At the Olympics, the athletes from each **nation** have **towels** with their national flags on them, which they wave if they need **help**. / *At the opening ceremony the* ***giant*** *uses the Olympic torch to light the fireworks with a* ***bang****.*

706a 韦 **wéi** leather

韋



Compare this with "abundant" (Character 704). There is also another character for leather, coming up shortly (711a).

---

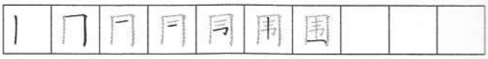
706 围 **wéi** surround

Radical 囗 **7 strokes**

圍

enclosed 囗(24a) + **leather** 韦(706a) = **surround** 围

周围(540) **zhōuwéi** *all around; surrounding area*

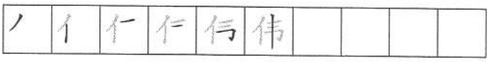


(In the glove factory) The highest quality **leather** is **enclosed** in a store room **surround**ed by security devices. / *The* ***fairy*** *keeps the keys on a belt at her* ***waist****.*

---

707 伟 **wěi** great

Radical 亻
6 strokes
偉

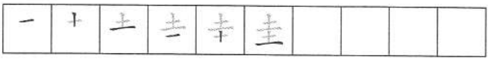


person 亻 (13a) + **leather** 韦(706a) =
great 伟

伟大(47) **wěidà** *great*

Harry buys a new **leather** coat and feels just **great**. / *He also got a smaller one for **Teddy** but it won't go round Teddy's **waist**!*

708a 圭 jade block



earth 土(54a) + **earth** 土(54a) =
jade block 圭

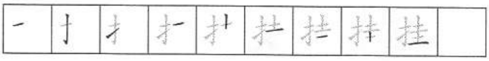
This is an old character referring to a small rectangular jade tablet used in feudal times as a token of authority.

The archaeologist dug through a layer of **earth**, then another layer of **earth**, before he found a **jade block**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

708 挂 **guà** hang

Radical 扌
9 strokes
掛



hand 扌(152a) + **jade block** 圭(708a) =
hang 挂

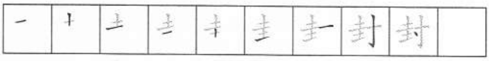
[挂号(424) **guà hào** *register (at hospital)*]

Running his **hand** over the **jade block**, he could feel something on the back to **hang** it up by. / *When he hung it up, a **ghostly dwarf** appeared with some **garlic** to guard it.*

---

709 封 **fēng** seal up

Radical 寸
9 strokes



jade block 圭(708a) + **inch** 寸(104a) =
seal up 封

信封(376) **xìnfēng** *an envelope*
[封建(657) **fēngjiàn** *feudal*]
[封里(157) **fēnglǐ** *inside front cover/ inside back cover (of a book)*]

You are sending out miniature **jade blocks**, an **inch** long, as Christmas presents, and you **seal** them **up** in little envelopes. / *The **giant** has brought along some **fungus** to seal them with.*

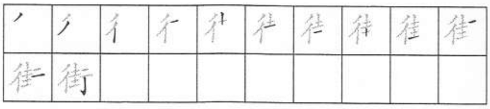
710 街 **jiē** street

Radical 彳
12 strokes

step forward 彳(81a) + **jade block** 圭(708a) + **footstep** 亍(81c) = **street** 街

Although this looks to be made up of three parts, it actually comes from combining 圭 (708a) with 行 (Character 81).

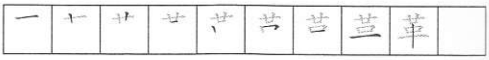
[街道(145) **jiēdào** *street*]



He **steps forward** to pick up the **jade block**, but hears a **footstep** behind him, and he quickly looks up and down the deserted **street**. / ***Two giants*** *appear, one at each end of the street, each armed with a* ***jellyfish****!*

[大街(47) **dàijiē** *(main) street*]

711a 革 **gé** leather



This also means "to expel".

You'll remember that we just met another character for "leather" (706a).

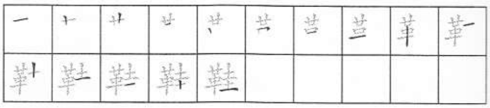
---

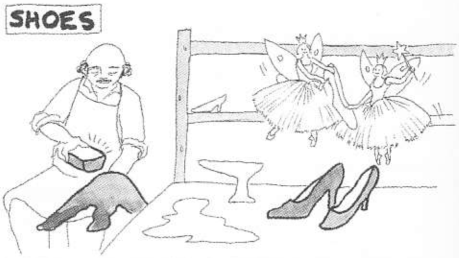
711 鞋 **xié** shoe

Radical 革
15 strokes

leather 革(711a) + **jade block** 圭(708a) = **shoe** 鞋

[脱鞋(656) **tuō xié** *take off one's shoes*]
[鞋带(429) **xié dài** *shoelace*]





The cobbler rubs the **leather** with a **jade block** to soften it up to make the best **shoes**. / *When each pair is made,* ***two fairies*** *fly up and arrange them on a* ***shelf****.*

---

712 双 **shuāng** pair

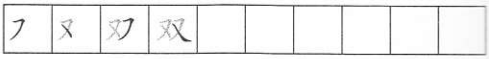
Radical 又
4 strokes

雙

right hand 又(52) + **right hand** 又(52) = **pair** 双

We've made an exception here and used "two right hands" instead of "shaking hands".

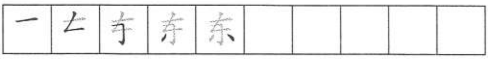
[双方(291) **shuāngfāng** *both sides*]
[双号(424) **shuānghào** *an even number*]



Someone who has **two right hands** is shopping for gloves. "We only sell them as a **pair**," all the shops tell him. / *"Try the* ***ghostly giant*** *of* ***Shangri-La****. He looks after people who have special requirements."*

[一双鞋(1, 711) **yì shuāng xié** *a pair of shoes*]

713a 东 to select



Compare this with 东 ("east", Character 319). The difference is the small horizontal line at the beginning of the third stroke.

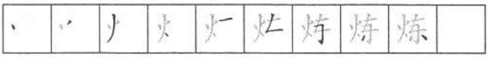
The traditional forms of "east" and "select" are also very similar. The traditional form of "east" (see the entry for Character 319) can be thought of as the "sun" rising behind a "tree". The traditional form of 713a can be seen in the following two entries — here the "sun" looks more like "windowpane" (671b).

---

713 炼 **liàn** smelt

Radical 火
9 strokes
煉

fire 火(181) + **select** 东(713a) = **smelt** 炼



The **fire** had to be fed with carefully **select**ed wood so that it could be used to **smelt** the iron. / *It took **two dwarves** to lift the cauldron of **lentil** soup for the workers at the ironworks.*

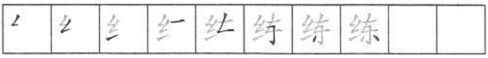
---

714 练 **liàn** to train

Radical 纟
8 strokes
練

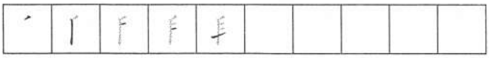
thread 纟 (233a) + **select** 东(713a) = **train** 练

[熟练(696) **shúliàn** *skilled, skilful*]



"You must learn how to **select** the correct **thread** if you want to **train** to become a dressmaker." / ***Two dwarves** come round with a selection of things to test the students' skills, including **lentils** (in place of sequins) to sew onto dresses.*

715a 𠃛 ivy



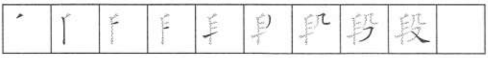
---

715 段 **duàn** piece

Radical 殳
9 strokes

ivy 𠃛(715a) + **strike** 殳(169a) = **piece** 段

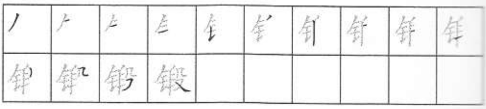
[手段(31) **shǒuduàn** *means, measure*]



Vandals attack the **ivy** — they **strike** it and leave only a single **piece** in place. / *The king calls in the **ghostly dwarf** to guard his special **dandelion** (so that it doesn't meet the same fate).*

716 锻 **duàn** forge

Radical 钅
14 strokes
鍛

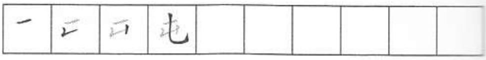


gold 钅 (278a) + **piece** 段(715) = **forge** 锻

锻炼(713) **duànliàn** *do physical exercise*

The king donates a **gold piece** to be **forged** into a gift. / *He gives it to the* ***ghostly dwarf*** *as a reward for guarding his special* ***dandelion***.

717a 屯 **tún** to store

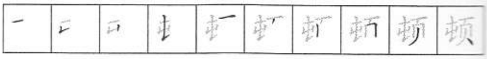


You might prefer to think of this as "seven" plus "pit"; if so, feel free to make up a story accordingly.

---

717 顿 **dùn** session

Radical 页
10 strokes
頓



store 屯(717a) + **page** 页(477) = **session** 顿

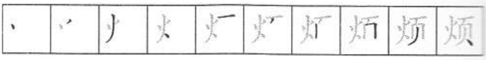
[三顿饭(3, 332) **sān dùn fàn** *three meals*]

You are writing a book and **store** the **pages** you have produced at the end of each **session**. / *The* ***ghostly dwarf*** *who guards the pages thinks it's such drivel that he keeps a* ***dunce's*** *cap on top of them as a paperweight.*

---

718 烦 **fán** bother

Radical 火
10 strokes
煩



fire 火(181) + **page** 页(477) = **bother** 烦

[烦劳(324) **fánláo** *trouble*]

He's trying to light a **fire** with a **page** torn from the newspaper — but keeps burning his fingers on the matches. "**Bother**!" he cries. "Bother, bother, bother!" / *The* ***fairy*** *offers to* ***fan*** *the flames with her wings.*

Test yourself:

可(140) 米(334) 早(633) 舍(643) 银(285) 须(591) 联(374)
附(652) 建(657) 各(507) 相(163) 字(92) 睡(409) 持(465)
工(147) 天(76) 小(50) 举(648) 局(650) 处(506) 喜(539)
请(336) 踢(529) 卡(198) 室(472) 束(494) 切(230) 总(514)

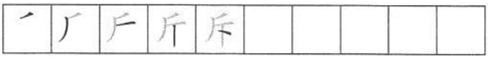
Chapter 37

As you review the characters you learned way back in the earliest chapters, there will be many which you instantly recognize, and others where you have to think for a while, and recall the story in your head. Of course, there are also bound to be many characters which you have tried to learn a few times but keep forgetting. Often the thing to do with these is to go back to the story and really explore the setting, imagine yourself as part of the action and embellish the story with more details. If all else fails, make a list of the characters you find particularly problematic, and teach them to somebody else (one of your fellow students, or even a friend who is not studying Chinese). Teaching something is a very effective way of learning it yourself — we've both been teachers so we know!

719a 斥 chì
drive out

axe 斤(240) + **splinter** 丶(695a) =
drive out 斥

In some typefaces the splinter doesn't reach all the way across the vertical stroke.



The gang use an **axe** to chop **splinter**s out of the door of anyone they want to **drive out** of the neighborhood. / *No pronunciation needed*

---

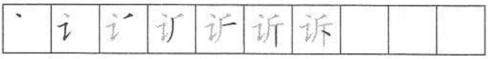
719 诉 sù
tell

Radical 讠
7 strokes

訴

words 讠(67c) + **drive out** 斥(719a) =
tell 诉

告诉(138) **gàosù** *to tell, inform*]



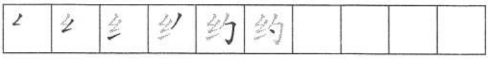
The lurid **words** scrawled on the wall urge people to **drive out** any foreigners; the authorities have asked people to **tell** the police if they know who was responsible. / *The* ***dwarf*** *police official will be stationed at the* ***supermarket*** *(ready to take reports).*

720a 约 yuē
approximate

約

thread 纟(233a) + **ladle** 勺(23b) =
approximate 约

This also means to make an appointment or come to an agreement.



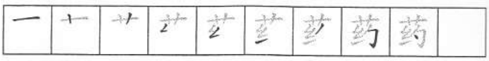
In the palace kitchens they hang a **ladle** from a **thread** and use it as a makeshift pendulum (to time the boiled eggs) — a traditional method, but only **approximate**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

720 药 **yào** medicine

Radical 艹
9 strokes
藥

grass 艹(218a) + **approximate** 约 (720a) = **medicine** 药

[药房(293) **yàofáng** *pharmacy*]
[药片(353) **yàopiàn** *pill, tablet*]

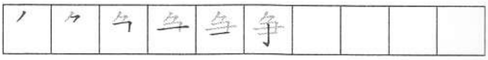


The sick cow has eaten poisonous plants which looked **approximate**ly like **grass**, and so now has to take some **medicine**. / *But as the* ***dwarf*** *assistant reaches for the medicine, the cow stands on his foot and he yells out, "****Yeow****!"*

721a 争 **zhēng** contend

bow 𠂊(51a) + **dexterity** 㸦(312a) = **contend** 争

This character can mean "argue (about)" or "compete (for)". You may see an older form of this character which has "claw" (365b) instead of "bow".



(In the pickpocket's master-class) The expert demonstrates his skill by **bow**ing to the volunteer and, with great **dexterity**, simultaneously picking his pocket without being noticed. "I **contend**, ladies and gentlemen," he says, "that this is the ultimate skill." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

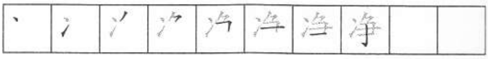
---

721 净 **jìng** clean

Radical 冫
8 strokes

ice 冫(360a) + **contend** 争(721a) = **clean** 净

干净(124) **gānjìng** *clean (adjective)*



The tour guide in the arctic points to the **ice** and says, "I **contend** that this is the most pure and **clean** water in the world." / *The* ***dwarf*** *in charge of the husky sledge for transport* ***jingles*** *the sledge bells impatiently (he's heard it all before and wants to move on).*

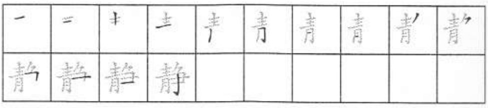
---

722 静 **jìng** calm

Radical 青
14 strokes

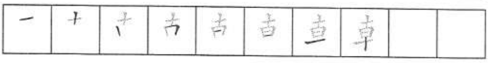
blue-green 青(335) + **contend** 争(721a) = **calm** 静

安静(91) **ānjìng** *quiet, peaceful*
[平静(309) **píngjìng** *calm, quiet*]



(Two people are arguing over the color of a book in the library) "I **contend** it's **blue**!" "I **contend** it's **green**!" "**Calm** down!" says their friend. / *The* ***dwarf*** *librarian* ***jingles*** *his bell for quiet.*

723a 𠦝 daybreak



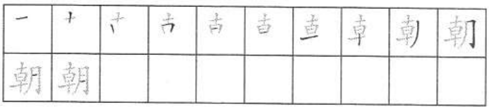
ten 十(4) + **early** 早(633) = **daybreak** 𠦝

"We'll meet up at the **cross**roads for an **early** start — get there by **daybreak** or we'll go without you." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

723 朝 **cháo** facing

Radical 月
12 strokes

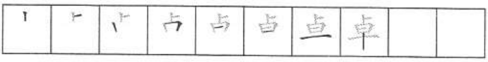


daybreak 𠦝(723a) + **moon** 月(61) = **facing** 朝

[朝阳(96) **cháoyáng** *sunny aspect, exposed to the sun*]

(During the Apollo missions) At **daybreak** the **moon** had set in the USA, so they had to swap to an Australian ground station which was now **facing** the moon. / *The **fairy** had produced **chowder** to wake the Australians up.*

724a 卓 **zhuō** eminent



fortune teller 卜(42a) + **early** 早(633) = **eminent** 卓

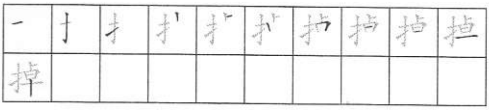
This is easy to confuse with "daybreak" (723a).

The **fortune teller** got to her tent **early** that day, to prepare for an **eminent** client (picture her polishing up her crystal ball, etc.) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

724 掉 **diào** to drop

Radical 扌
11 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **eminent** 卓(724a) = **drop** 掉

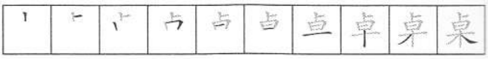
[用掉(130) **yòngdiào** *to use up*]
[卖掉(248) **màidiào** *to sell out*]
[忘掉(569) **wàngdiào** *to forget*]

The **eminent** surgeon holds out his **hand** for the scalpel, but promptly **drops** it! / *The **two dwarf** clinical assessors exchange glances — they have **doubts** about the surgeon's competence (however eminent he is).*

Test yourself: 酒(102) 谁(501) 和(126) 研(606) 车(83) 多(69) 情(339)
派(664) 整(495) 别(79) 嗯(521) 房(293) 目(93) 者(261)

725 桌 **zhuō** table

Radical 木
10 strokes

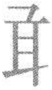


fortune teller 卜(42a) + **sun** 日(6) + **tree** 木(10a) = **table** 桌

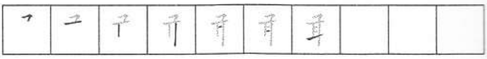
桌子(17) **zhuōzi** *table, desk*

The **fortune teller** sets up her stall out of the **sun** under the shade of the **tree**, and puts her crystal ball on a **table**. / *The **ghostly giant** watches over her to dissuade anyone from making a **joke** of her.*

726a



"earring"



knee ㇇ (166a) + **ear** 耳(88a) = **earring**

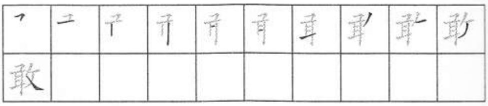
The bit on top of the "ear" is sometimes written like "nail" instead of "knee", although it's actually derived from "work" (Character 147)!

"Put your **ear** here on my **knee** and I will fix your **earring** for you." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

726 敢 **gǎn** dare

Radical 攵
11 strokes



earring

(726a) + **tap** 攵 (190a) = **dare** 敢

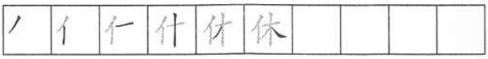
[不敢当(9, 267) **bùgǎndāng** *Thank you (polite, modest reply to compliment)*]

(At the pirates' lair in the creek, the door is in the shape of a giant pirate's head) You **tap** on the **earring** to gain entry — and a voice booms out, "Who **dares** to enter here?" / *But actually it's only **Teddy** on a **gantry** behind the door (speaking into a megaphone).*

---

727 休 **xīu** leisure

Radical 亻
6 strokes



person 亻 (13a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **leisure** 休

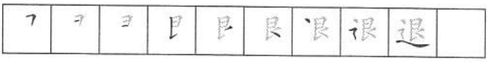
休息(662) **xīuxi** *(take a) rest*

Harry always goes to sit high up in the **tree** whenever he has **leisure** time. / *Today he's watching the **two giants** put on a **show**.*

---

728 退 **tuì**
retreat

Radical 辶
9 strokes



road 辶(26a) + **stubborn** 艮(281a) = **retreat** 退

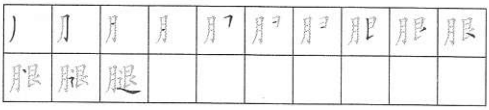
[退休(727) **tuìxīu** *to retire*]

On the single-track **road** the two drivers sit, both **stubborn**ly waiting for the other to **retreat**. / *The **ghostly dwarf**, who guards the stretch of road, gets out his **tape** measure (to see who would have to reverse the least distance).*

---

729 腿 **tuǐ**
leg

Radical 月
13 strokes

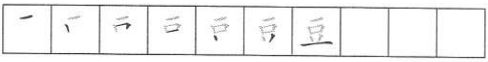


moon 月(61) + **retreat** 退(728) = **leg** 腿

[大腿(47) **dàtuǐ** *thigh*]

(The Apollo astronauts had finished their moonwalk) They had to leave the **moon** and make a rapid **retreat** into their spacecraft (before their oxygen ran out), but one trapped his **leg** in the airlock. / *Back inside the lunar module the **ghostly teddy** who looked after the astronauts measured the leg with a **tape** measure (to see if it was all there!)*

730a 豆 **dòu**
bean



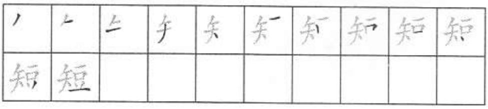
piled up 戸 (150b) + **feet** 䒑 (90a) = **bean** 豆

The pilgrims **piled up** their gifts at the **feet** of the statue — each pilgrim had brought a tin of holy **beans**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

730 短 **duǎn**
brief

Radical 矢
12 strokes

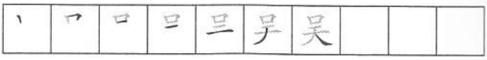


arrow 矢(490a) + **bean** 豆(730a) = **brief** 短

[短期(236) **duǎnqī** *short-term*]

William Tell could shoot an **arrow** to hit a **bean** on his son's head, after only a **brief** glance to judge the distance. / *The **ghostly teddy** who protects the son suggests putting the bean on a pile of **dandruff** (to give him more room for error)!*

731a 吴 shout out



mouth 口(5) + **heaven** 天(76) =
shout out 吴

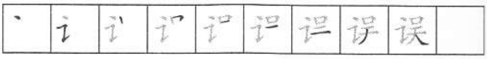
"Turn your **mouth** to the **heaven**s and **shout out** your message," the preacher tells his congregation. / *[No pronunciation needed]*.

---

731 误 **wù** mistake

Radical 讠
9 strokes

誤



words 讠(67c) + **shout out** 吴(731a) =
mistake 误

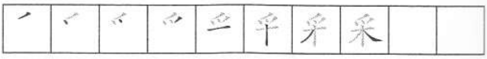
This also means "to miss" (e.g. a train, by arriving too late).

(Monks are poring over a piece of calligraphy) Looking over the beautiful **words**, they **shout out** whenever they spot a **mistake**. / *The* ***dwarf****, who wrote it, is* ***wounded*** *by their criticism (and goes off in a huff).*

[误会(59) **wùhuì** *misunderstand*]
[误点(185) **wùdiǎn** *late, overdue, behind schedule*]

732a 采 cǎi; cài pick

採



claw ⺥(365b) + **tree** 木(10a) = **pick** 采

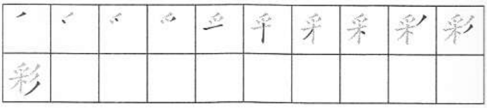
Try not to confuse this with "claw marks" (734a) — at first glance they look almost identical.

With her **claw**-like hand the old crone reaches up to the **tree** to **pick** the apple. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

732 彩 **cǎi** colorful

Radical 彡
11 strokes



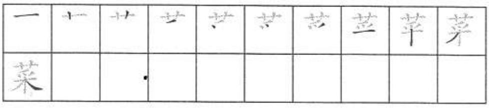
pick 采(732a) + **hairs** 彡(573a) =
colorful 彩

The hairdresser **picks** out individual **hairs** to highlight, producing a **colorful** effect. / ***Teddy*** *wants a whole new* ***style****!*

精彩(341) **jīngcǎi** *thrilling, exciting*
[彩色(417) **cǎisè** *multi-colored*]

733 菜 **cài** vegetable

Radical 艹
11 strokes

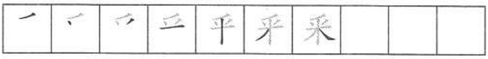


grass 艹(218a) + **pick** 采(732a) =
vegetable 菜

[白菜(22) **báicài** *cabbage*]
[做菜(210) **zuòcài** *to cook*]
[饭菜(332) **fàncài** *food*]
[点菜(185) **diǎncài** *to choose (items from a menu)*]

The greengrocer knows the best **grass** to **pick**, and uses it to display his **vegetables** to best effect. / *But the* ***dwarf*** *owner always dictates the exact* ***style*** *of the display.*

734a 采 "claw marks"

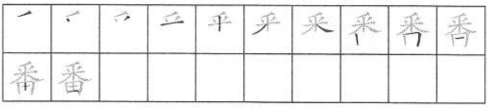


beret 丿(89a) + **rice** 米(334) =
claw marks 采

This is very easy to confuse with "pick" (732a).

The palaeontologist fills his **beret** with **rice** and pours it into the fossilized **claw marks** to measure their volume — each claw mark takes up a whole beret-full of rice. (So it must have been quite a dinosaur!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

734b 番 fān a time



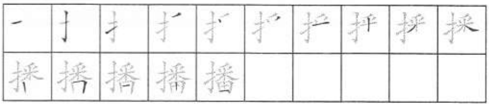
claw marks 采(734a) + **field** 田(156a) =
a time 番

Picture huge **claw marks** scarring the **field**. They have tried **time** after **time** to catch the beast which makes them, without success. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

734 播 **bō** to sow

Radical 扌
15 strokes



hand 扌(152a) + **a time** 番(734b) = **sow** 播

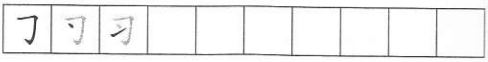
广播(170) **guǎngbō** *broadcast*

He has to dip his **hand, time** after **time**, into the bag as he walks up and down **sow**ing the seeds. / *The* ***giant*** *is finding this* ***boring*** *(even though he can do it in half the time it would take most people ...)*

735 习 xí to practice

Radical 冫
3 strokes

習



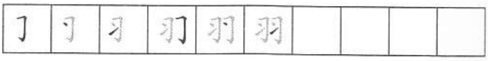
ice 冫(360a) + **blade** 𠃌(231a) = **practice** 习

Notice that "ice" is usually on the left-hand side but here it is enclosed by "blade".

He uses an **ice blade** to **practice** his fencing skills. / *The **fairy** conjures up an insulated **sheath** to keep it in.*

学习(82) **xuéxí** *to study, learn*
复习(550) **fùxí** *review (a lesson)*
练习(714) **liànxí** *to practice*
预习(642) **yùxí** *preview, prepare*

736a 羽 yǔ feather



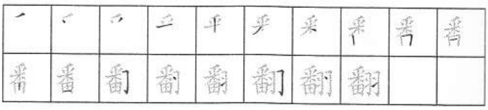
practice 习(735) + **practice** 习(735) = **feather** 羽

You would have to **practice** and **practice** before you could balance a **feather** on your nose (without sneezing!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

736 翻 fān turn over

Radical 羽
18 strokes



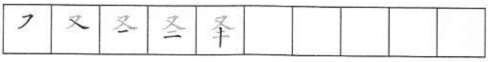
a time 番(734b) + **feather** 羽(736a) = **turn over** 翻

Every **time** the **feather** (on the ground) moves in the breeze, it **turns over**. / *The **giant** is creating the breeze with his **fan** (on a nearby hill).*

[翻新(243) **fānxīn** *recondition, renovate*]
[翻跟头(283, 246) **fān gēntou** *turn somersaults; loop the loop*]

Test yourself: 会(59) 几(7) 走(275) 前(90) 点(185) 就(239) 般(680)
族(687) 道(145) 高(481) 调(541) 特(466) 屋(473) 极(534)

737a 𠬤 watch over



right hand 又(52) + **criminal** 丰(130a) = **watch over** 𠬤

In the prison at each shift change, the new warder **shakes hands** with the notorious **criminal** as he arrives to **watch over** him. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

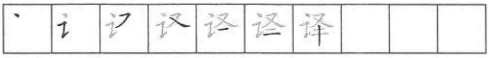
737 译 **yì** translate

Radical 讠 **7 strokes**

譯

words 讠 (67c) + **watch over** 𠬤(737a) = **translate** 译

翻译(736) **fānyì** *translate, interpret*



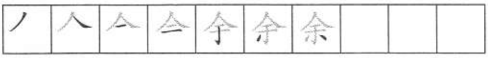
(A crime scene: the dead man, a foreigner, has managed to write something on the floor beside him) The police have to **watch over** the **words** until someone arrives to **translate** them. / *The* ***dwarf*** *police inspector is impatient — he wants to* ***e-mail*** *for a translation instead.*

738a 余 **yú** surplus

餘

tent 𠆢(19b) + **work** 工(147) + **small** 小(50) = **surplus** 余

We have cheated a bit here by breaking the lower part of this character into "work" and "small".



The **tent** they are **work**ing in is very **small**, so you can tell which one it is by the pile of **surplus** equipment outside. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

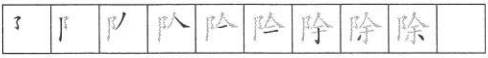
---

738 除 **chú** to remove

Radical 阝 **9 strokes**

mound 阝(96a) + **surplus** 余(738a) = **remove** 除

除了(66) **chúle** *except, besides*



The **mound** of **surplus** office equipment has grown so big that the council has told them to **remove** it. / *The* ***fairy*** *wants to* ***choose*** *some things for herself first.*

---

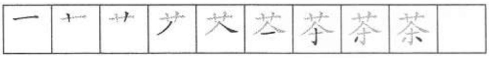
739 茶 **chá** tea

Radical 艹 **9 strokes**

grass 艹(218a) + **tent** 𠆢(19b) + **tree** 木(10a) = **tea** 茶

Note that the bottom part of this character is *not* "surplus" (738a). Also note that the last two strokes of "tree" have become slightly detached.

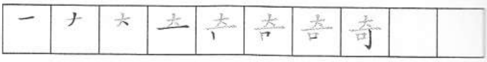
[红茶(233) **hóngchá** *black tea*]
[茶杯(11) **chábēi** *tea cup*]



They set up their **tent** on the **grass** underneath the **tree** and the first thing they do is make some **tea**. / *The* ***fairy*** *relaxes, saying, "This is a nice cup of* ***cha****."*

740a 奇

qí; jī
strange



big 大(47) + **may** 可(140) = **strange** 奇

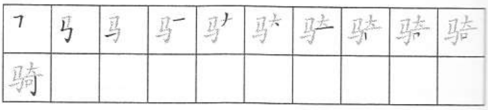
The extra **big may**pole is for the most senior students; it's really **strange** to see them dancing round it like small children. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

740 骑

qí
ride

Radical 马
11 strokes

騎



horse 马(44) + **strange** 奇(740a) = **ride** 骑

This character means to ride an animal (or bicycle) which you sit astride. Riding in a bus or car is different (see 783a).

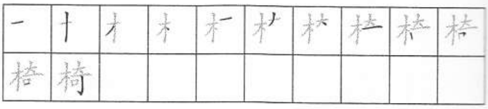
[骑马(44) **qí mǎ** *to ride a horse*]

That **horse** may be very **strange**-looking, but it's wonderful to **ride**. / *The **fairy** streaks along on it, explaining, "That's because it's half **cheetah**."*

741 椅

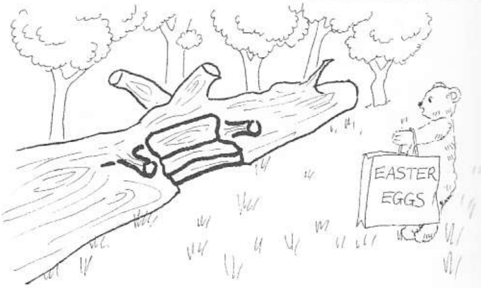
yǐ
chair

Radical 木
12 strokes



tree 木(10a) + **strange** 奇(740a) = **chair** 椅

椅子(17) **yǐzi** *chair*

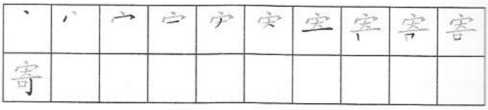


The **tree** is a **strange** shape and part of it has been carved into a **chair**. / *Picture **Teddy** sitting on it, munching his chocolate **Easter** egg.*

742 寄

jì
send

Radical 宀
11 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **strange** 奇(740a) = **send** 寄

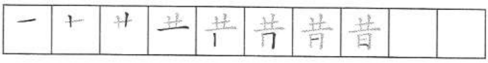
[寄件人(385, 12) **jìjiànrén** *sender (of letter)*]

"The **house** is really **strange**," she pleads, "Please don't **send** me there. / *The **dwarf** who lives there is weird, even if he is a **genius**."*

Chapter 38

We hope that you've enjoyed writing the characters at the same time as you've been learning them. Writing Chinese characters can be fun and satisfying, even if you have no interest in being particularly artistic about it. If you are interested in calligraphy, however, Chinese characters are a fascinating subject and there are many books available. To do it properly you will need a writing brush and thick black ink. The Chinese themselves hold calligraphy in high esteem, ranking it alongside, if not above, painting, sculpture and poetry.

743a 昔 **xī** the old days



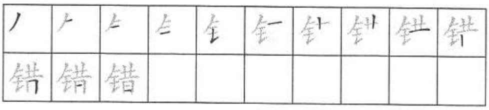
bacon rashers 龷 (625a) + **sun** 日 (6) = **the old days** 昔

"Leave the **bacon rashers** out in the **sun** — that's how we used to cook in **the old days**, my boy." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

743 错 **cuò** mistake

Radical 钅
13 strokes
錯



gold 钅 (278a) + **the old days** 昔 (743a) = **mistake** 错

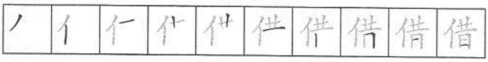
The sailors were paid in **gold** in **the old days** — which was a **mistake** as it attracted pirates. / *So the **ghostly dwarf stowed** away on the ship to guard the gold.*

错误(731) **cuòwù** *error; be mistaken*]
不错(9) **búcuò** *not bad; quite right*]

---

744 借 **jiè** borrow

Radical 亻
10 strokes



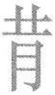
person 亻 (13a) + **the old days** 昔 (743a) = **borrow** 借

In **the old days Harry** had nothing, and had to **borrow** everything. / *He became **jealous** of the **two** pawnbroker **dwarves**.*

Used to mean either "borrow" or "lend" (the meaning being made clear by the context).

[借用(130) **jièyòng** *borrow (and use)*]

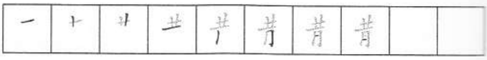
Test yourself: 买(247) 雪(572) 水(523) 危(566) 共(625) 虽(679) 咳(499)
如(80) 咱(95) 责(515) 星(136) 汽(412) 要(101) 路(508)

745a 

"midnight feast"

bacon rashers 龷 (625a) + **moon** 月 (61) = **midnight feast**

Compare this with "the old days" (743a above).



They took **bacon rashers** into the **moon**lit forest for a **midnight feast**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

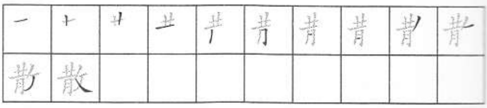
---

745 散 **sàn** disperse

Radical 攵
12 strokes

midnight feast (745a) + **tap** 攵 (190a) = **disperse** 散

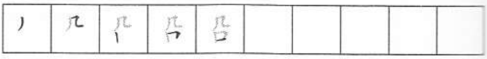
散步(378) **sànbù** *a stroll; to stroll*



At the **midnight feast** in the forest they are eating hungrily when the lookout **taps** out a warning on the tree and they all **disperse** quickly. / *When the **dwarf** arrives, all he finds is a pile of abandoned **sandwiches**.*

746a 㕣 ravine

several 几(7) + **mouth** 口(5) = **ravine** 㕣



From the air, what looked like a string of **several mouths** in the landscape, was actually a deep **ravine**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

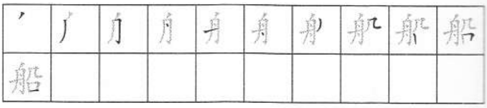
---

746 船 **chuán** ship

Radical 舟
11 strokes

boat 舟(680a) + **ravine** 㕣(746a) = **ship** 船

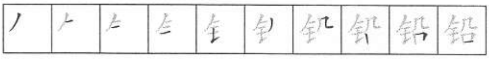
[汽船(412) **qìchuán** *steamship*]
[船场(530) **chuánchǎng** *shipyard*]
[船员(479) **chuányuán** *sailor; crew*]
[船票(431) **chuánpiào** *boat ticket*]



They sailed the **boat** down the **ravine** until it opened out, and there on the lake was a beautiful golden **ship**. / *Beyond the lake the **ghostly fairy** waited to guide them through the next dangerous **channel**.*

747 铅 **qiān** lead

Radical 钅
10 strokes
鉛



gold 钅 (278a) + **ravine** 㕣(746a) = **lead** 铅

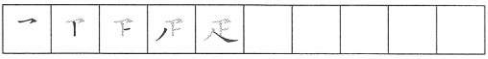
This is lead, the metal (not "lead" as in "to lead the way").

铅笔(454) **qiānbǐ** *pencil*

The pirates store their **gold** in the **ravine**, because there (in the gloom) it looks like **lead**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself:
饭(332) 火(181) 厂(149) 市(427) 户(269) 空(617) 嗽(496)
看(200) 困(522) 握(474) 级(535) 装(489) 单(344) 自(94)

748a 疋 bolt of cloth



cap 乛(247a) + **stop** 止(30a) =
bolt of cloth 疋

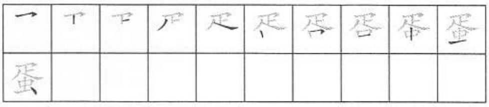
This character is easy to mistake for "upright" (30b).

The stall-holder whips off his **cap** when he realizes that it's the princess who has **stopped** at his stall — and he quickly produces his finest **bolt of cloth** for her inspection. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

748 蛋 **dàn** egg

Radical 疋
11 strokes

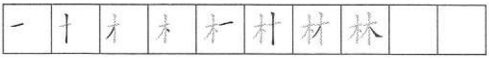


bolt of cloth 疋(748a) + **insect** 虫(679a) =
egg 蛋

鸡蛋(678) **jīdàn** *(hen's) egg*

The **bolt of cloth** has been invaded by **insects**, who have laid tiny white **eggs** in it. / *The **dwarf** (a market trader selling the cloth) tells his customers it's only **dandruff**.*

749a 林 **lín** a wood

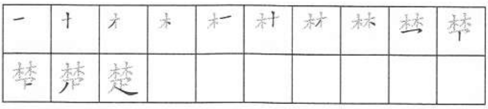


tree 木(10a) + **tree** 木(10a) = **a wood** 林

It takes **two trees** to make a **wood** (and three to make a forest). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

749 楚 **chǔ** clear

Radical 疋
13 strokes



a wood 林(749a) + **bolt of cloth** 疋(748a) = **clear** 楚

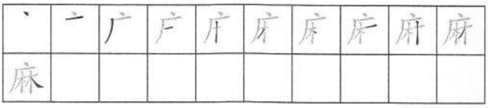
清楚(337) **qīngchu** *clear (image, speech)*

For the picnic they took a **bolt of cloth** to the **woods** and had to **clear** a space to spread it out. / *When they opened the picnic basket, they found **Teddy** inside **chewing** on a sausage!*

---

750 麻 **má** hemp

Radical 麻
11 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **a wood** 林(749a) = **hemp** 麻

You will sometimes see this character with "detached final strokes of trees" (see Character 739).

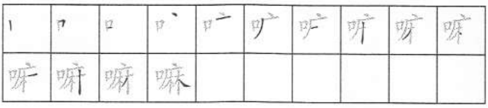
麻烦(718) **máfán** *to bother; trouble*
[麻药(720) **máyào** *anesthetic*]
[麻烦您(718, 493) **máfan nín** *Would you mind …?*]

They build a **shelter** in the **wood** to hide their **hemp** crop. / *When it is ready the **fairy** takes it to **market**.*

---

751 嘛 **ma** surely

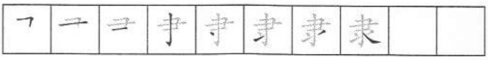
Radical 口
14 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **hemp** 麻(750) = **surely** 嘛

"You need some **hemp** in your **mouth** — you'll **surely** feel the effects." / *"Let's send the **robot** to get some from the **market** — nobody will suspect him!"*

752a 隶 **lì** subordinate 隸



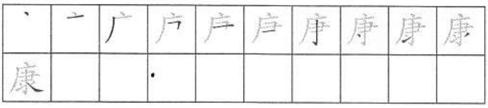
dexterity 肀(312a) + **water** 水(523) = **subordinate** 隶

This is cheating slightly as the bottom half isn't really "water" (see also Character 524); the same applies to Character 753 below.

On the oil rig out at sea, fixing the pipes under **water** calls for **dexterity**, but it's tedious work so it's a job that is always given to the **subordinates**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

752 康 **kāng** good health

Radical 广
11 strokes



shelter 广(170) + **subordinate** 隶(752a) = **good health** 康

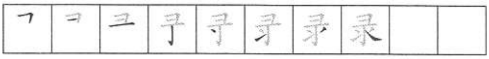
健康(658) **jiànkāng** *health, healthy*

The manager wants to build a **shelter** for his **subordinates** to keep them in **good health**. / *The **giant** workman comes to build it — with a **kangaroo** assistant who keeps the tools in her pouch.*

---

753 录 **lù** to record

Radical 彐
8 strokes
錄



snout 彐(267a) + **water** 水(523) = **record** 录

Note that the final stroke of "snout" (267a) is extended here.

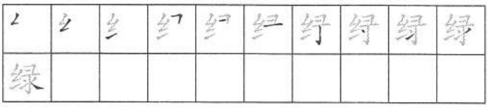
录音(257) **lùyīn** *(sound) recording*
[记录(272) **jìlù** *to record, a record*]

Each time the pig dips his **snout** in the **water**, the naturalist excitedly **records** it. / *His **dwarf** assistant thinks this obsession is **ludicrous**.*

---

754 绿 **lǜ** green

Radical 纟
11 strokes
綠



thread 纟 (233a) + **record** 录(753) = **green** 绿

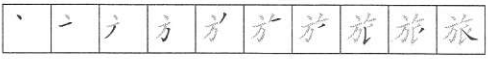
[红绿灯(233, 182) **hónglǜdēng** *traffic light, stoplight*]

☔ **Thread**-work (like the Bayeux tapestry) is often used to **record** important events or stories. Picture the story of Robin Hood being stitched — and they keep running out of **green** thread. / *The **dwarf** had to go out in the pouring rain to get **luminous** green thread (to do the night scenes).*

---

755 旅 **lǚ** travel

Radical 方
10 strokes

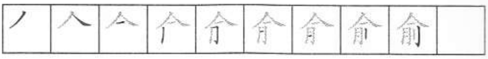


banner 㫃(687a) + **brigade** 𠂢(664a) = **travel** 旅

旅行(81) **lǚxíng** *travel*
[旅客(509) **lǚkè** *passenger; hotel guest*]

☔ The **brigade** are looking for their **banner** as they are about to **travel** (and want to fly it over their new barracks). / *They find **Teddy** taking a bath in the pouring rain with a **loofah** (and he's pinched the banner to use as a bath towel).*

756a 俞 **yú** "catamaran"



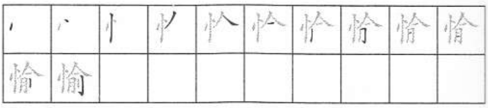
combine 亼(59a) + **canoe** 刖 (90b) = **catamaran** 俞

He **combined** two **canoes** together to make a **catamaran**. / *[No pronunciation needed].*

---

756 愉 **yú** happy

Radical 忄
12 strokes



heart 忄 (339a) + **catamaran** 俞(756a) = **happy** 愉

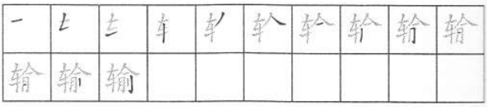
愉快(403) **yúkuài** *happy; pleasant*

☂ He had set his **heart** on a **catamaran** so is really **happy** when he finally gets one. / *The **fairy** comes out in the pouring rain to write the name "**Eureka**" on the side of the boat with her wand (which fortunately conjures up waterproof paint).*

---

757 输 **shū** lose

Radical 车
13 strokes
輸



car 车(83) + **catamaran** 俞(756a) = **lose** 输

This means "to lose a game" (*not* "to mislay something") and also "transport".

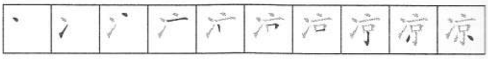
[运输(57) **yùnshū** *transport, carry, transportation*]
[输出(114) **shūchū** *emit; export*]
[输家(109) **shūjiā** *the loser (in a game)*]

The **car** has a race with the **catamaran** but in the end it **loses**. / *Halfway round it had crashed into the **giant's shoe**.*

---

758 凉 **liáng** cool

Radical 冫
10 strokes



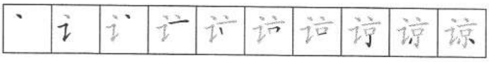
ice 冫 (360a) + **capital** 京(239b) = **cool** 凉

凉快(403) **liángkuai** *(pleasantly) cool*

Ice covers the **capital** and finally **cools** it down after the sweltering summer. / *The **two fairies**, who had been **languishing** in the heat, come to life again.*

759 谅 liàng forgive

Radical 讠
10 strokes
諒

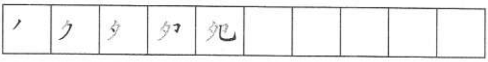


words 讠(67c) + **capital** 京(239b) =
forgive 谅

原谅(536) **yuánliàng** *to excuse, forgive*

The peace activists have painted **words** on walls all over the **capital**: "**Forgive** your *?#* enemies" is the message. / *The two* ***dwarves*** *object to the uncouth* ***language*** *(and take it in turns to remove the words).*

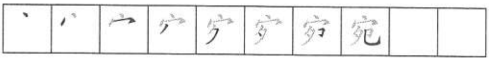
760a 夗 turn in one's sleep



evening 夕(69a) + **hardship** 㔾(566a) =
turn in one's sleep 夗

If you spend all **evening** dwelling on your **hardships** you will **turn in your sleep** all night. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

760b 宛 wǎn winding



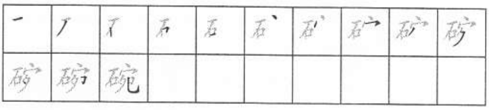
house 宀(91a) + **turn in one's sleep**
夗(760a) = **winding** 宛

Once again the **house** had appeared in his dreams, and he **turned in his sleep** with a groan, knowing that the endless **winding** path would be next. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

760 碗 wǎn bowl

Radical 石
13 strokes



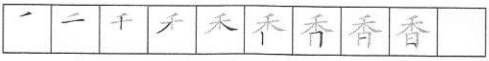
stone 石(115a) + **winding** 宛(760b) =
bowl 碗

[饭碗(332) **fànwǎn** *rice bowl; livelihood*]
[两碗饭(222, 332) **liǎng fàn wǎn** *two bowls of rice*]

The children roll small **stones** down the **winding** marble-run and the stones clatter into a **bowl** at the bottom. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself: 北(317) 共(625) 元(301) 找(152) 连(84) 满(225) 搞(482)
阳(96) 都(262) 打(153) 万(296) 告(138) 场(530) 绩(516)

761 香 **xiāng**
fragrant
Radical 禾
9 strokes



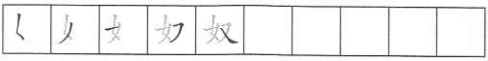
grain 禾(126a) + **sun** 日(6) = **fragrant** 香

This character appears in the name **Xiānggǎng**, 香港, "Hong Kong" — the other character (港, "harbor") is not an HSK A character.

[香水(523) **xiāngshuǐ** *perfume, scent*]
[香精(341) **xiāngjīng** *essence (of plant)*]
[香气(411) **xiāngqì** *aroma, sweet smell*]
[香客(509) **xiāngkè** *pilgrim*]
[香火(181) **xiānghuǒ** *burning incense, etc. (in a temple)*]

The **grain** drying in the **sun** gives off a **fragrant** smell. / *The **two giants** from **Shanghai** agree that they have never smelled anything like it.*

762a 奴 **nú**
slave

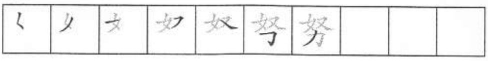


women 女(15) + **right hand** 又(52) = **slave** 奴

When the **woman shakes hands** with him he notices the mark on her wrist which marks her out as a **slave**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

762 努 **nǔ**
exert oneself
Radical 力
7 strokes

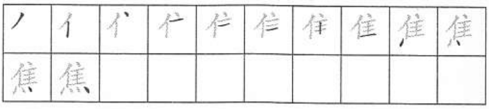


slave 奴(762a) + **power** 力(14) = **exert oneself** 努

努力(14) **nǔlì** *make great efforts; try hard*

They used **slave power** to build the pyramids — the foremen made sure that the slaves **exerted themselves** to the full. / *Nowadays it's just a ruin and **Teddy** sits on it eating his **noodles**.*

763a 焦 **jiāo**
scorched



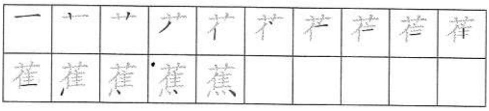
pigeon 隹(501a) + **fire** 灬(185a) = **scorched** 焦

The **pigeon** sat by the **fire** for too long and **scorched** his tail feathers. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

763 蕉 **jiāo** [banana]

Radical 艹
15 strokes

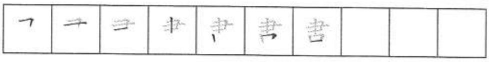


grass 艹(218a) + **scorched** 焦(763a) =
banana 蕉

香蕉(761) **xiāngjiāo** *banana*

The **grass** had been **scorched** by the fire, but the **bananas** on the trees were undamaged. / *The **two giants** (who owned the banana plantation) had been off at a **jousting** match (and were relieved that their crop was alright).*

764a 唐 “rude”

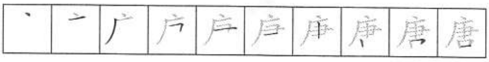


dexterity 肀(312a) + **mouth** 口(5) =
rude 唐

Notice how the bottom part of “dexterity” has been truncated.

He displayed great **dexterity** with his **mouth** to make faces — many of which were **rude**! / *[No pronunciation needed]*

764b 唐 **táng** Tang



shelter 广(170) + **rude** 唐(764a) = **Tang** 唐

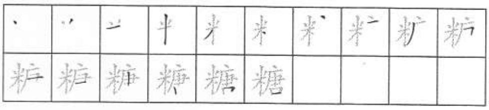
This is “Tang” as in the name of the Tang dynasty.

They had to build a **shelter** to hide the **rude** statues from sensitive eyes, particularly those from the **Tang** dynasty. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

764 糖 **táng** sugar

Radical 米
16 strokes

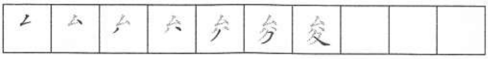


rice 米(334) + **Tang** 唐(764b) = **sugar** 糖

[糖果(187) **tángguǒ** *candy, sweets*]
[糖衣(437) **tángyī** *sugar-coating, sugar-coated*]
[一块糖(1, 402) **yí kuài táng** *a lump of sugar*]

Rice from the **Tang** period was as sweet as **sugar**. / *But only the **fairy** can conjure up **Tang** rice nowadays.*

765a 夋 hesitate



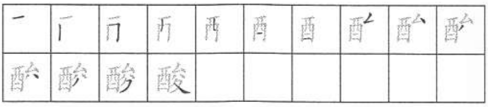
cocoon 厶(34a) + **eight** 八(20) + **pursue** 夂(506a) = **hesitate** 夋

The butterfly emerges from the **cocoon** and the first thing it sees is an **octopus**, which it **pursue**s, thinking the octopus is its mother — but when it gets closer it **hesitates**. (Would its mum have *quite* so many legs?) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

765 酸 **suān** sour

Radical 酉
14 strokes

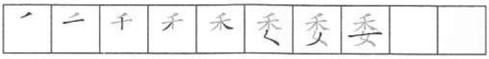


whisky bottle 酉(102a) + **hesitate** 夋(765a) = **sour** 酸

[酸牛奶(384, 533) **suānniúnǎi** *yogurt; sour milk*]

The alcoholic picked up the **whisky bottle** but **hesitated** — the last drink had tasted very **sour**. / *The* ***ghostly giant*** *(from Alcoholics Anonymous) had tampered with his liquor by steeping his* ***sandals*** *in it!*

766a 委 wěi entrust



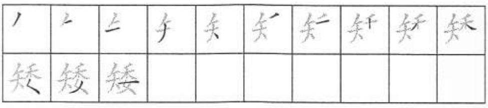
grain 禾(126a) + **women** 女(15) = **entrust** 委

The first bag of **grain** from the harvest was carried proudly on her head by the **woman** who had been **entrust**ed to present it to the king. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

766 矮 **ǎi** short

Radical 矢
13 strokes



arrow 矢(490a) + **entrust** 委(766a) = **short** 矮

[矮子(17) **ǎizi** *dwarf; short person*]

The apprentice Cupid takes the **arrow**s he has been **entrust**ed with. For his first solo mission he is only allowed to bewitch **short** people! / ***Teddy*** *skips about marking likely targets with* ***iodine*** *to identify them.*

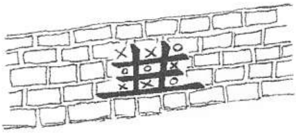
Test yourself: 页(477) 头(246) 喂(666) 间(345) 阴(97) 拉(179) 原(536)
全(416) 课(189) 酒(102) 还(199) 治(483) 该(497) 屋(473)

Chapter 39

Only two more chapters to go!

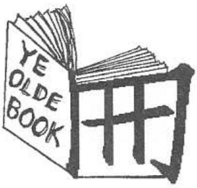
龷

bricks



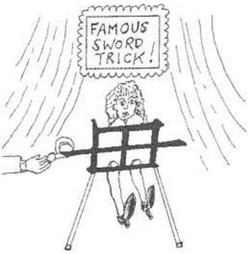
册

old book


YE
OLDE
BOOK

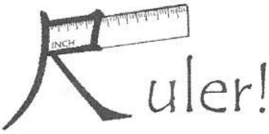
毌

pierced


FAMOUS
SWORD
TRICK!

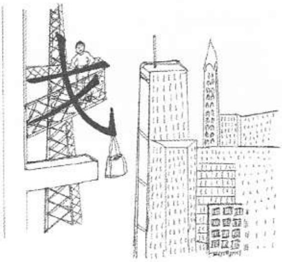
尺

ruler



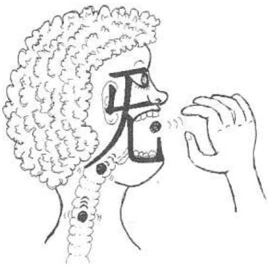
戈

high up



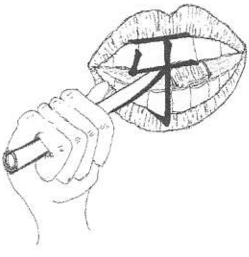
旡

to swallow



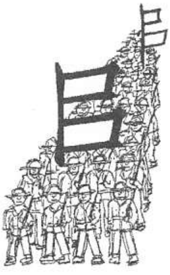
牙

tooth

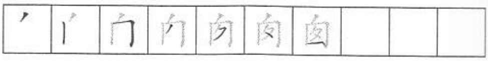


㠯

legion



767a 囱 cōng [chimney]



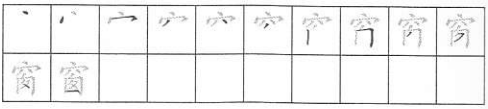
a drop 丶(22a) + **enclosed** 囗(24a) + **pursue** 夂(506a) = **chimney** 囱

In some typefaces "pursue" gets changed to a leaned-over version of "criminal".

At the zoo, the mother monkey feels **a drop** of rain so **pursues** the baby monkey round the **enclosure** — but the baby monkey climbs up the **chimney** out of reach. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

767 窗 **chuāng** window

Radical 穴
12 strokes

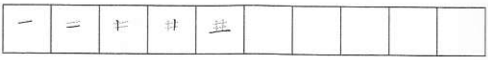


hole 穴(616a) + **chimney** 囱(767a) = **window** 窗

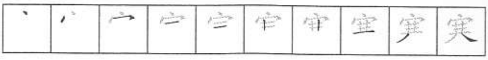
窗户(269) **chuānghù** *window*

Imagine making a **hole** in the **chimney** above your fireplace and installing a small **window** (so that you can watch the smoke going up it — a nice talking point for your visitors). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

768a 龷 "bricks"



768b 𡨄 to block up

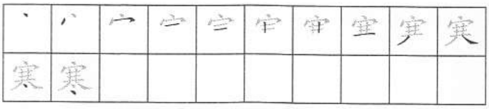


house 宀(91a) + **bricks** 龷(768a) + **eight** 八(20) = **block up** 𡨄

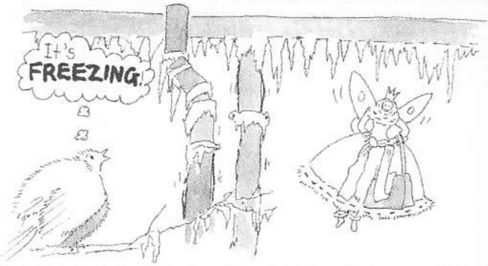
The **octopus** built his **house** out of **bricks** and **blocked up** his chimney (to stop the wolf coming down — he'd read the story!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

768 寒 **hán** freezing

Radical 宀
12 strokes



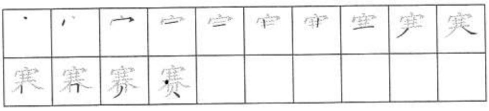
block up 𡨄(768b) + **ice crystals** 冫(246a) = **freezing** 寒



All the pipes in the house are **blocked up** with **ice crystals** in the **freezing** weather. / *The **fairy** pulls lengths of lagging from her **handbag** (to wrap round the pipes).*

769 赛 **sài** compete

Radical 宀
14 strokes
賽

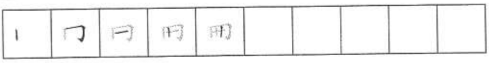


They had to **block up** a big trench on the beach with **sea shells** so that they could **compete** in the sand-yacht races. / *The **dwarf** sounded the **siren** to start each race.*

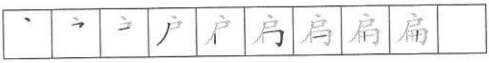
block up 寒(768b) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) = **compete** 赛

比赛(228) **bǐsài** *competition*
[赛跑(639) **sàipǎo** *a (running) race*]

770a 冊 old book



770b 扁 **biǎn; piān** flat



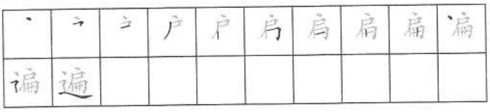
They propped the **door** open with an **old book**. But it slammed in the wind and knocked the book **flat**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

door 户(269) + **old book** 冊(770a) = **flat** 扁

---

770 遍 **biàn** everywhere

Radical 辶
12 strokes



In Holland the **roads** are all **flat** — **everywhere**, there are no hills at all. / ***Two dwarves** sit on a **bench** bemoaning this (they can't get a good view anywhere).*

road 辶(26a) + **flat** 扁(770b) = **everywhere** 遍

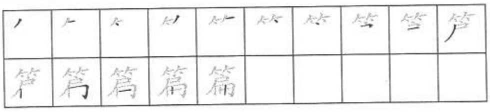
This also means "times" as in "I've been there three times."

[三遍(3) **sānbiàn** *three times*]

---

771 篇 **piān** piece of paper

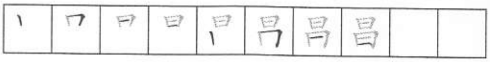
Radical ⺮
15 strokes



Imagine pounding slivers of green **bamboo flat** and joining them together to make a primitive **piece of paper**. / *The **two giants** each make you something to write with — one makes a **pen** and the other a **pencil** so you can try them out.*

bamboo ⺮(321a) + **flat** 扁(770b) = **piece of paper** 篇

772a 昌 **chāng** prosperous



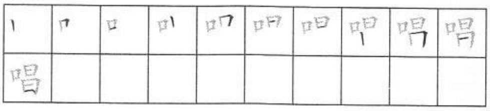
sun 日(6) + **sun** 日(6) = **prosperous** 昌

A couple consult an astrologer who tells them, "Looking at your **two sun** signs I see that you will be **prosperous**." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

772 唱 **chàng** sing

Radical 口
11 strokes



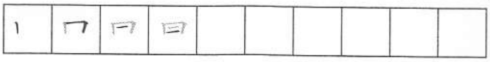
mouth 口(5) + **prosperous** 昌(772a) = **sing** 唱

[合唱(347) **héchàng** *chorus*]

At the **mouths** of their caves the **prosperous** people can afford to employ servants to **sing** an appropriate song when someone approaches (instead of having doorbells). / *[DIY pronunciation]*

Test yourself: 忙(568) 千(89) 前(90) 系(607) 初(439) 后(150) 思(165)
求(524) 客(509) 那(98) 数(469) 发(146) 躺(542) 姑(192)

773a 𠔼 hood



outer limits 冂(160a) + **two** 二(2) = **hood** 𠔼

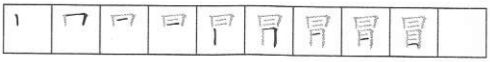
When it is part of a composite character, this is easily mistaken for "sun" (日, Character 6) unless you look closely.

When flying his **biplane** in the **outer limits** the pilot is so cold he has to put his coat **hood** up (over his flying helmet). / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

773 冒 **mào** risk

Radical 日
9 strokes



hood 𠔼(773a) + **eye** 目(93) = **risk** 冒

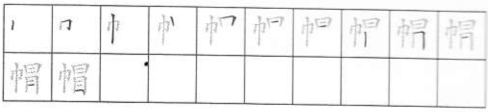
Another major meaning is "emit" or "give off".

感冒(556) **gǎnmào** *catch a cold*

The thief is so well-known that even with his **hood** pulled down over his **eyes** he runs the **risk** of people recognizing him. / *The **dwarf** security guard spots him anyway, as he recognizes the thief's **mouth**.*

774 帽 **mào** hat

Radical 巾
12 strokes

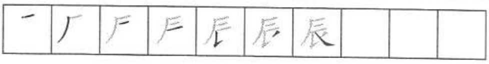


towel 巾(427a) + **risk** 冒(773) = **hat** 帽

帽子(17) **màozi** *hat, cap*

(At the boxing match) One trainer threw a **towel** into the ring, as there was a **risk** his boxer could get badly injured — the other trainer threw his **hat** in the air triumphantly. / *Unfortunately the hat hit the* ***dwarf*** *referee in the* ***mouth*** *(which started another fight).*

775a 辰 **chén** heavenly body



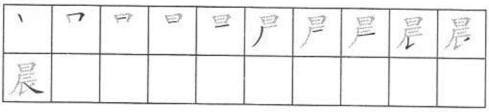
cliff 厂(149) + **one** 一(1) +
a skirt 𧘇(665a) = **heavenly body** 辰

The **unicorn**, standing on the **cliff**, sees **a skirt** round one of the stars. "It's a planet with rings, or some other **heavenly body**." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

775 晨 **chén** morning

Radical 日
11 strokes

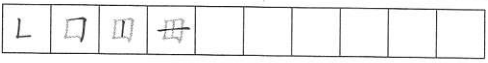


sun 日(6) + **heavenly body** 辰(775a) =
morning 晨

早晨(633) **zǎochén** *(early) morning*

When the **sun** rises and the other **heavenly bodies** dim, it is **morning**. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

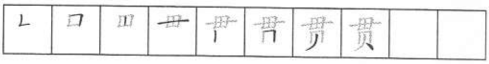
776a 毌 pierced



Writing this one often catches people out! It is derived from "mother" (Character 127) and has the same "sloping" appearance. Contrast the stroke order with, for example, the stroke order for "field" (156a). The stroke-count for this fragment is 4, not 5!

776b 贯 **guàn** pierce

貫

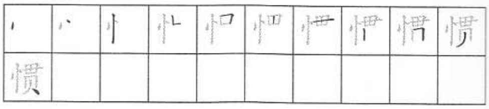


pierced 毌(776a) + **sea shell** 贝(477a) =
pierce 贯

Finding a **pierced sea shell** on the beach, she thinks, "I could **pierce** lots of shells and string them together to make necklaces!" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

776 惯 **guàn** habitual

Radical 忄
11 strokes
慣

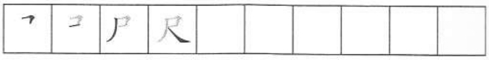


heart 忄(339a) + **pierce** 贯(776b) = **habitual** 惯

习惯(735) **xíguàn** *habit; be used to*

Cupid flies around the neighborhood **piercing** the **hearts** of the **habitual** criminals (in the hope that this will reform them). / *The **ghostly dwarf**, who protects the neighborhood, sits on a **gantry**, directing who to shoot at.*

777a 尺 **chǐ** ruler

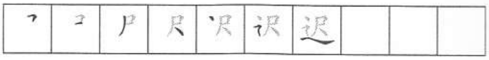


This time the ruler is not a monarch, but a ruler for measuring things. A "meter", the unit of length, is 公尺 (**gōngchǐ**) although a more colloquial character for meter is 米 (**mǐ**, Character 334).

---

777 迟 **chí** late

Radical 辶
7 strokes
遲

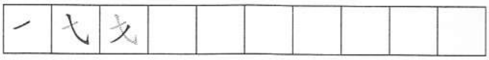


road 辶(26a) + **ruler** 尺(777a) = **late** 迟

迟到(74) **chídào** *be late (for meeting)*

Some small boys are playing with a **ruler** on the **road** (measuring out a hopscotch pitch) — and they're going to be **late** for school. / *The **fairy** chases them off, and wipes the chalk marks off the road with a **chapati**.*

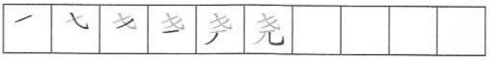
778a 戈 high up



Keep this distinct in your mind from 七 ("pile of earth", 455a) and from 戈 ("dagger", 32a).

778b 尧 **yáo** Chieftain Yao

堯



high up 戈(778a) + **pedestal** 兀(301a) = **Chieftain Yao** 尧

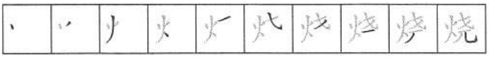
Yao was a legendary emperor who lived a little over 4000 years ago.

High up on a **pedestal** stands a statue of the legendary **Chieftain Yao** (who was in fact so legendary that he had his own Chinese character!) / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

778 烧 shāo burn

Radical 火
10 strokes
燒

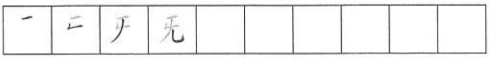


fire 火(181) + **Chieftain Yao** 尧(778b) = **burn** 烧

发烧(146) **fā shāo** *run a fever*

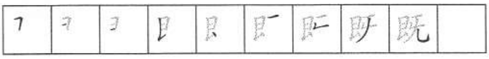
The villagers lit a **fire** beside **Chieftain Yao**'s statue, but it got out of hand and started to **burn** the statue and its surroundings. / *Luckily the* ***giant*** *had been taking a* ***shower****, and directed the spray at the fire to put it out.*

779a 旡 to swallow



Compare this with "tooth" (780a below). The distinguishing feature is that "to swallow" has a hook.

779b 既 jì since



stubborn 艮(281a) + **swallow** 旡(779a) = **since** 既

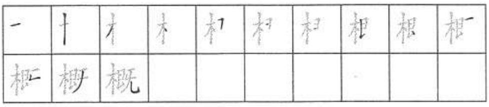
One of the strokes of "stubborn" is missing here (see 281a). This is the form which "stubborn" takes whenever there is something else to its right in a composite character.

The elderly man **stubborn**ly refused to **swallow** the pills, saying, "**Since** I've never swallowed a pill, I'm not going to start now." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

779 概 gài summary

Radical 木
13 strokes

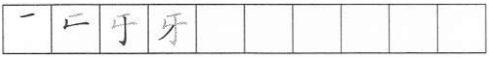


tree 木(10a) + **since** 既(779b) = **summary** 概

大概(47) **dàgài** *probably; more or less*

"The **tree** has been there **since** ancient times, and must be saved," the **summary** stated (although there was a huge report with all the details). / *The* ***dwarf*** *will be in charge of attaching* ***guy*** *ropes to support the tree.*

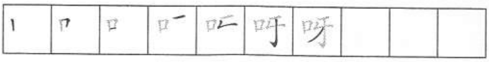
780a 牙 yá tooth



Compare this with "swallow" (779a above).

780 呀 yā (ya) oh!

Radical 口
7 strokes



mouth 口(5) + **tooth** 牙(780a) = **oh!** 呀

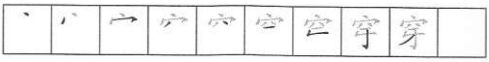
At the end of a phrase, this character can take a neutral tone (see Character 143 for another example of this happening).

The dentist looks into the **mouth**, sees a colored **tooth** and cries, "**Oh**!" / *The* ***giant*** *had tied colored* ***yarn*** *round the tooth when he was trying to pull it out.*

---

781 穿 **chuān** penetrate

Radical 穴
9 strokes

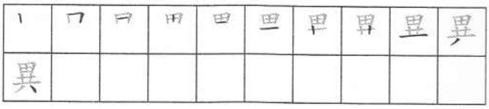


hole 穴(616a) + **tooth** 牙(780a) = **penetrate** 穿

There was a **hole** in the **tooth** so the dentist had to **penetrate** it with his drill. / *The* ***ghostly giant*** *had protected his friend's root* ***channel*** *until he got to the dentist. (We know you normally say "root canal", but work with us here!)*

Test yourself:
然(266) 实(250) 回(202) 示(430) 老(264) 谁(501) 抬(484)
孩(498) 负(517) 色(417) 汤(531) 哪(99) 次(361) 园(302)

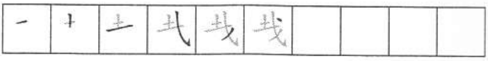
782a 異 different



field 田(156a) + **collectively** 共(625) = **different** 異

Imagine each member of your family owning a **field**, and farming them **collectively**, even though each person has a **different** crop. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

782b 𢦏 wound



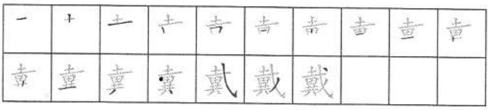
earth 土(54a) + **dagger** 戈(32a) = **wound** 𢦏

Another "fused" character — "earth" and "dagger" share a stroke. Compare this with "I" (Character 32) all the way back in Chapter 3.

(In a self-defense class) "I want everyone to plunge their **daggers** into the **earth** before we start; I don't want anyone getting **wound**ed like in the last session." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

782 戴 **dài** to wear **Radical 戈** **17 strokes**

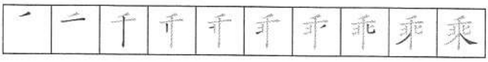


different 異(782a) + **wound** 戋(782b) = **wear** 戴

[穿戴(781) **chuāndài** *apparel, dress*]

In the hospital the patients with **different** types of **wound** have to **wear** different colored gowns (a red gown for arm wounds, a green gown for leg wounds, etc.) / *The **dwarf** grumbles as he has to **dye** all the gowns.*

783a 乘 **chéng** ride



grain 禾(126a) + **north** 北(317) = **ride** 乘

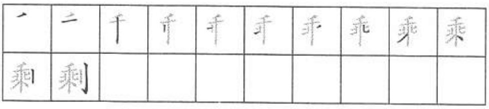
An unusual combination, where "north" is fitted around "grain" rather than just being placed above, below, or to the side of it.

This is to ride in a vehicle (remember that in Character 740 we had another sort of "ride", which involved sitting astride something, like a horse or a bicycle).

The **north** wind blows through the vast fields of **grain** — you gaze at this vista as you **ride** on the train through the Canadian prairies. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

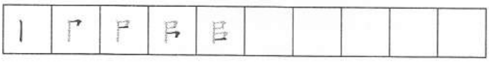
783 剩 **shèng** residue **Radical 刂** **12 strokes**



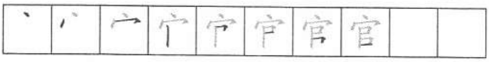
ride 乘(783a) + **knife** 刂(74a) = **residue** 剩

Imagine **riding** on a train, using a **knife** to make sandwiches for your lunch — from the **residue** of last night's supper. / *[DIY pronunciation]*

784a 㠯 legion



784b 官 **guān** an official

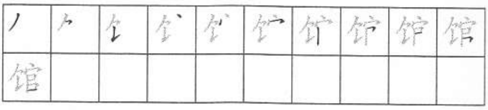


house 宀(91a) + **legion** 㠯(784a) = **an official** 官

The **house** to be allocated to each member of the **legion** is decided by the town **official**. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

784 馆 **guǎn** public building

Radical 饣 **11 strokes** 館



food 饣 (288a) + **an official** 官 (784b) = **public building** 馆

图书馆(691, 176) **túshūguǎn** *library*

(After an earthquake) **Food** is handed out by an **official** at the **public building**. / *The* ***ghostly teddy*** *dressed up as* ***Gandhi*** *is supposed to guard the food but larks about instead.*

Test yourself: 开(85) 年(168) 去(86) 结(538) 才(518) 堂(543) 从(103)
医(491) 球(525) 江(148) 病(510) 讨(201) 最(421) 长(172)

We have given you stories all the way through this book rather than stopping halfway through and saying "the rest is up to you". However, for other characters beyond those included in this book, you will have to make up your own stories. How do you do this? Let's expand on what we said at the end of Chapter 7.

Suppose you are trying to make a story for "hand" + "sigh" = "throw", for example. As a starting point, take the parts of the character (in this case, "hand" and "sigh") and see what your mind comes up with. The best bet is often to use the first thing that comes into your head as the basis for the story, because that is what you will naturally think of again, the next time you see "hand" plus "sigh".

Next, link the target ("throw") to "hand" and "sigh", with a story in which these three parts *interact* — they should not just be "standing around" in the story.

Make a list of soundwords for the required syllable and pick one which gives the most memorable story (you can easily list all the ones we used in this book by looking up the characters with that pronunciation in the pronunciation index). With some syllables you will find there are lots of soundwords to choose from, but for others you have very little choice, and you just have to do the best you can. Again, make the second part of the story interact with the first part if you can.

The best stories are those that are vivid — try to bring in details which catch your interest, that are quirky and fun. Make the story unusual, by making it out of the ordinary, or rude: at the very least, exaggerate things. A good thing to do at times is to bring in your other senses (imagine sounds or smells). Finally, try to personalize your story: include people, places and things that have particular significance for you personally. (This is one aspect we couldn't include in our stories — for obvious reasons — the best we could do was sometimes to suggest that you yourself are in the story). You don't have to do all of these things for every story; these are just ways of "spicing up" a story to make it more memorable. The only rule is, if it works (in that you remember the character) then it's fine!

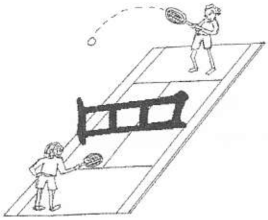
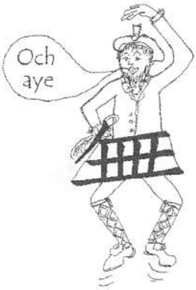
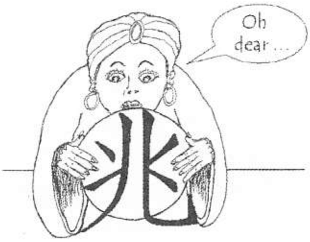
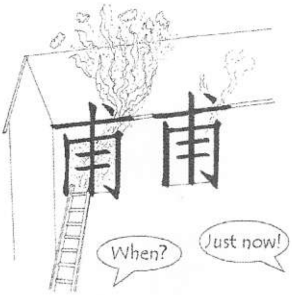
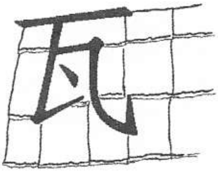
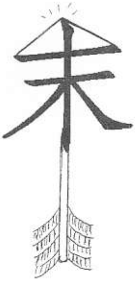
Creating memorable stories is not easy (although you will improve with practice), but time spent thinking up a really memorable story will be repaid many times over by all the rote-learning you *don't* have to do!

Chapter 40

This is the last page of character pictures in this book. We hope you've found them useful (and that you had as much fun with them as we did!) — but, as we have said before, if a different character picture works better for you, then use that instead. Sometines, if you look at a basic building block for a few moments, often letting your mind wander a bit, the shape will suddenly suggest something which is familiar to you in your own life, which can form the basis for a "personal" character picture.

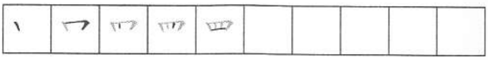
If you decide to go on and learn more characters, then it would be a good idea to practice making up character pictures for yourself. Don't worry if they aren't "perfect" in some way — the very fact that you have dreamed them up yourself will mean that they are memorable to *you* — which is all you need.

So this is it — the final chapter!

罒 **net** 	無 **dancing** 
兆 **omen** 	甫 **just now**  When? Just now!
瓦 **tile** 	末 **tip** 

785a 罒

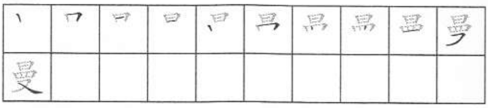
net



785b 曼

màn

graceful



sun 日(6) + **net** 罒(785a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **graceful** 曼

(The princess comes to award national fisherman's prizes to the fishermen in the village) They drape a **net** over poles to shield her from the **sun** while she **shakes hands** with the winners; they are all captivated by how **graceful** she is. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

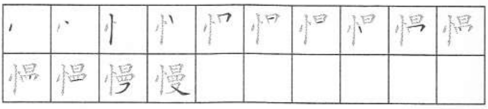
785 慢

màn

slow

Radical 忄

14 strokes



heart 忄(339a) + **graceful** 曼(785b) = **slow** 慢

[慢车(83) **mànchē** *slow train*]
[慢慢 **mànmàn** *gradually, slowly*]

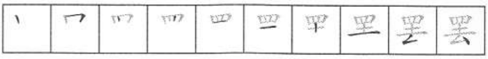
He has set his **heart** on the **graceful** woman — but he's just too **slow** to attract her attention. / *The* ***dwarf*** *(running a dating agency) suggests that he learns to play a* ***mandolin*** *to serenade her.*

786a 罢

bà

stop

罷



net 罒(785a) + **go** 去(86) = **stop** 罢

You watch the fishermen pick up their **nets** to **go** fishing — but you see one of the nets has snagged on a rock and shout, "**Stop**!" / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

786 摆

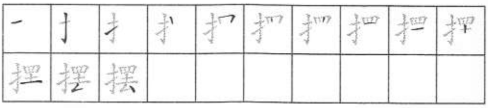
bǎi

arrange

Radical 扌

13 strokes

擺

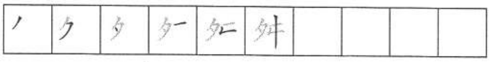


hand 扌(152a) + **stop** 罢(786a) = **arrange** 摆

[摆设儿(553, 21) **bǎisher** *ornaments*]

The child reaches out her **hand** to the flowers and her mother calls out, "**Stop** right there, I've spent hours **arranging** those!" / *But just then* ***Teddy*** *comes by on his* ***bike*** *and crashes into them anyway.*

787a 舛 opposing

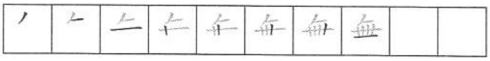


evening 夕(69a) + **surpass** 牛 (168a) = **opposing** 舛

The **evening**'s debate **surpass**ed everyone's expectations: the highlight was the speech given by the **opposing** team's captain. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

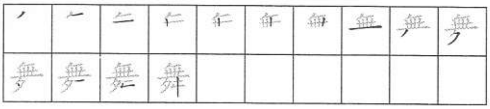
787b 無

dancing



---

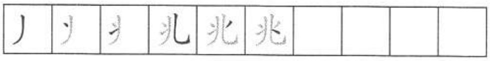
787 舞 **wǔ** dance **Radical** 丿 **14 strokes**



dancing 無(787b) + **opposing** 舛(787a) = **dance** 舞

At the **dancing** competition the **opposing** teams compete to produce the best **dance**. / ***Teddy*** *retires* ***wounded*** *in the first round (when someone stands on his paw with a stiletto heel).*

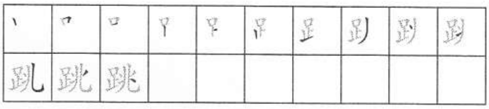
788a 兆 **zhào** omen



Compare this with "north" (Character 317).

---

788 跳 **tiào** jump **Radical** 足 **13 strokes**

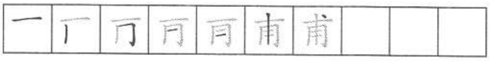


foot 足(280) + **omen** 兆(788a) = **jump** 跳

跳舞(787)	**tiàowǔ**	*to dance*
[跳高(481)	**tiào gāo**	*high jump*]

You find a bird's **foot** in the road — this is an **omen** and you know that what you have to do is **jump** over it. / ***Two dwarf*** *bureaucrats from the* ***town*** *hall arrive to make sure the omen sighting is documented in duplicate.*

789a 甫 **fǔ** just now



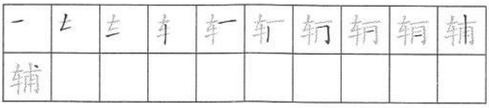
Make up a story involving "ten", "moon" and "drop" if you wish.

789 辅 **fǔ** assist

Radical 车
11 strokes
輔

car 车(83) + **just now** 甫(789a) = **assist** 辅

辅导(277) **fǔdǎo** *tutor; tutorial*

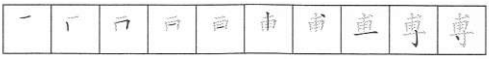


(Talking to the police after your car has been stolen) "The **car** was here **just now**, officer, but I don't know where it's gone. I'd like to be able to **assist** you, really I would." / *But **Teddy** has been **fooling** around (and has hidden the car in your garage, but then gives himself away by hitting the horn).*

790a 尃 spread over

just now 甫(789a) + **inch** 寸(104a) = **spread over** 尃

Note that the bottom part of "just now" is truncated somewhat here.



"There's a puddle of green liquid on the kitchen floor — and it's an **inch** bigger than it was **just now**! If we don't do something it will **spread over** the whole floor." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

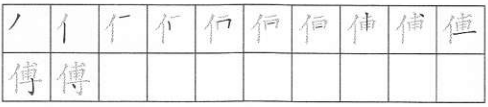
---

790 傅 **fù** teacher

Radical 亻
12 strokes

person 亻 (13a) + **spread over** 尃(790a) = **teacher** 傅

师傅(428) **shīfù** *master worker*



Harry spread the icing carefully **over** the cake, to impress his cookery **teacher**. / *The **dwarf** teacher thinks teaching **food** classes is beneath him (and would much rather be teaching car maintenance).*

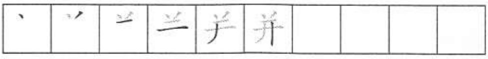
791a 并 **bìng** actually

併 並

horns 丷 (65a) + **open** 开(85) = **actually** 并

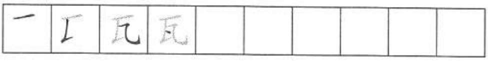
This is easy to mistake for "well" (Character 357a).

The character has several other meanings including "combine" or "side by side".



The old bull is trying to **open** the gate by hooking his **horns** under it to pull it open; the (smart-ass) young bull comes across and says, "**Actually**, all you need to do is push it." / *[No pronunciation needed]*

791b 瓦 wǎ; wà
tile

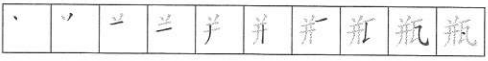


This means a (roof) tile or, more generally, earthenware.

---

791 瓶 **píng**
bottle

Radical 瓦
10 strokes

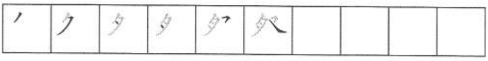


actually 并(791a) + **tile** 瓦(791b) = **bottle** 瓶

[瓶子(17) **píngzi** *bottle*]
[花瓶(392) **huāpíng** *vase*]

(The archaeologist is pontificating during a lecture) "This may look like a roof **tile**, but **actually** it's a fragment from a huge earthenware **bottle**." / *In the audience, the* ***fairy*** *whispers to her neighbor, "Actually, it's a bit of old pot I painted* ***pink****."*

792a 癶 "Druid"

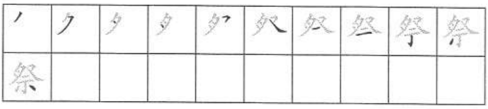


moon 夕(266a) + **right hand** 又(52) = **Druid** 癶

Notice the truncation of "right hand".

(At Stonehenge) At the full **moon** the cloaked figures gather, **shake hands**, and wait for the **Druid** to appear and conduct the ceremony. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

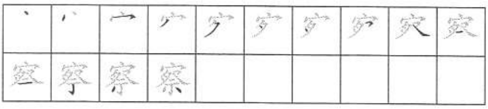
792b 祭 jì
worship



Druid 癶(792a) + **sign** 示(430) = **worship** 祭

(At Stonehenge again) The **Druid** waits for a **sign** (to appear in the sky) before the **worship** can begin. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

792c 察 chá
inspect

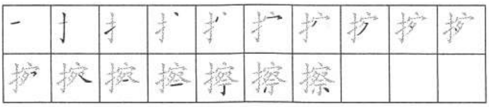


house 宀(91a) + **worship** 祭(792b) = **inspect** 察

If you want to set up your **house** as a place of **worship**, you have to get it **inspect**ed. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

792 擦 **cā** wipe

Radical 扌
17 strokes

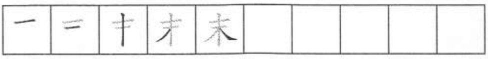


hand 扌(152a) + **inspect** 察(792c) = **wipe** 擦

The doctor asks for help: “Give me a **hand** to **inspect** this patient — we’ll have to give him a good **wipe** down first though.” */ He pulls back the curtain to reveal ... the **giant** standing there **starkers**!*

You will perhaps have noticed that there are a lot of gray characters and fragments in this final chapter, and most of these are only used once. That is why they are here: if they were useful for many common characters they would have been introduced earlier in the book. However, that is not to say that they won’t crop up again (beyond HSK Level A) so don’t be too dismissive of them!

793a 末 **mò** tip



Here the first stroke is longer than the second; compare this with “not yet” (64a).

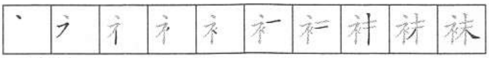
The character means an extremity, the tip or end of something.

---

793 袜 **wà** socks

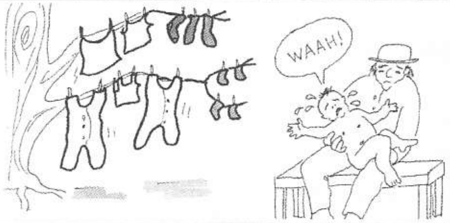
Radical 衤
10 strokes

襪



clothes 衤(439a) + **tip** 末(793a) = **socks** 袜

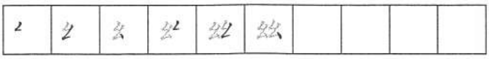
袜子(17) **wàzi** *sock, stocking*



The **clothes** are hung up to dry on the branches of the tree, and fitted over the **tips** of the branches are the **socks**. */ The **dwarf** has been left to look after the baby who is crying “**Waaah!**” (the baby is cold: it has no clothes as they are all being washed).*

Test yourself: 洗(139) 杂(511) 忽(526) 结(538) 校(383) 位(178) 远(303)
所(270) 故(191) 常(544) 想(164) 票(431) 记(272) 团(519)

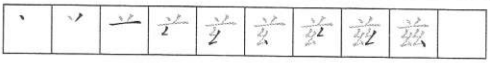
794a 幺幺 “teeny weeny”



smallest 幺(607a) + **smallest** 幺(607a) = **teeny weeny** 幺幺

The **smallest** of the **smallest** is **teeny weeny**! */ [No pronunciation needed]*

794b 兹 zī "jet black" 兹



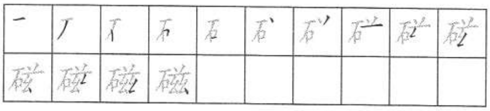
feet 䒑 (90a) + **teeny weeny** 𢆶(794a) = **jet black** 兹

The burglar has trained his pet beetle to help him — the beetle's **teeny weeny feet** don't set off the alarms, and his **jet black** color doesn't show up on the security cameras. / *[No pronunciation needed]*

---

794 磁 **cí** magnet

Radical 石
14 strokes



stone 石(115a) + **jet black** 兹(794b) = **magnet** 磁

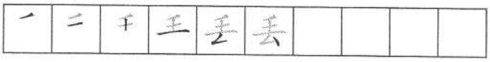
磁带(429) **cídài** *magnetic (audio) tape*

The children had each brought a **jet black stone** from the beach, and they wanted to make them into fridge **magnets**. / *The **fairy** tapped the stones with a **staccato** tap of her wand to render them magnetic.*

---

795 丢 **dīu** mislay

Radical 丿
6 strokes



beret 一 (89a) + **go** 去(86) = **mislay** 丢

Notice that the top line slopes gently (it is "beret"); but in some typefaces it looks level, making the character look like "king" plus "cocoon".

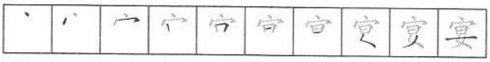
[丢掉(724) **dīudiào** *discard, throw away*]

He was about to put his **beret** on and **go** out, but found that he had **mislaid** it. / *The **two giants** (who ran the bakery shop) fashioned a temporary beret out of **dough**.*

---

796 宴 **yàn** banquet

Radical 宀
10 strokes



house 宀(91a) + **sun** 日(6) + **women** 女(15) = **banquet** 宴

宴会(59) **yànhuì** *banquet, feast*

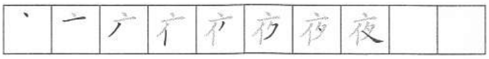
The **woman** has to stay in the **house** all day, although the **sun** is shining, as she has to prepare for the **banquet**. / *The **dwarf** has always had a **yen** to be a master chef (although he usually only gets to cook in the canteen) so has been allowed to cook the food.*

And so we've arrived at the last page! We've left these four rather splendid characters until last. In each case note the odd strokes. We haven't even attempted to come up with stories for them. You might enjoy having a go at writing equations according to how you feel these characters break up into parts, and devising stories to go with them. After that, no other Chinese character should pose any problems for you. (Alternatively, you can chicken out, like us, and try remembering them by rote).

---

797 夜 **yè** night

Radical 亠
8 strokes

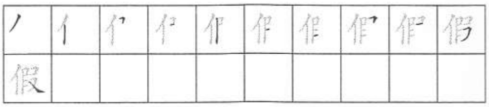


[夜里(157) **yèli** *at night*]
[半夜(131) **bànyè** *midnight*]

---

798 假 **jià** (jiǎ) vacation

Radical 亻
11 strokes

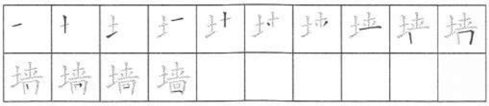


放假(294) **fàngjià** *to be on holiday*
请假(336) **qǐng jià** *to ask for leave*
寒假(768) **hánjià** *winter vacation*

---

799 墙 **qiáng** wall

Radical 土
14 strokes
牆

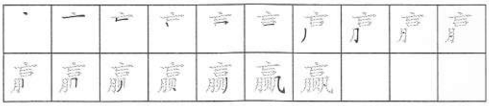


[爬墙(371) **páqiáng** *to climb a wall*]

---

800 赢 **yíng** win

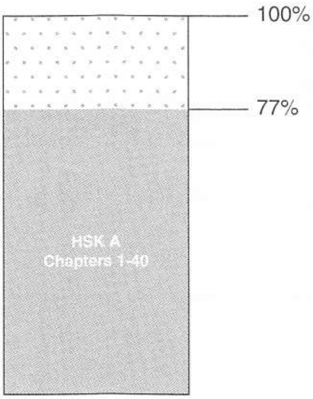
Radical 亠
17 strokes
贏



[赢利(132) **yínglì** *profit, gain*]

The final progress diagram: this completes HSK Level A. If you didn't think you'd ever get to the end of the book — well, neither did we when we were writing it! We reckon we all deserve a break to celebrate.

再见!



APPENDIX: Soundwords

Soundwords are the words we use in the stories to indicate the pronunciation of a character. The first *syllable* of the English soundword has a similar sound to the pronunciation of the Chinese character. So for the pronunciation **ma** we could use the soundwords market or marbles because **ma** is pronounced somewhat like the "mar" sound at the start of these words. The tables in this appendix give you all the pronunciations of Chinese characters you need for HSK Level A, along with an example of a soundword that could be used for each of them. (For a full explanation of how we use soundwords, along with archetypes to represent tones, see the User Guide). Again we must stress that the purpose of the soundwords is to help you remember the pronunciations of each of the 800 characters; it is not to mimic exactly the sounds of Chinese.

Here is a *very* brief description of the sounds of Chinese — as mentioned in the User Guide, you really need to hear Chinese spoken to appreciate fully the correct sounds.

Consonants

b, p, m, f, d, t, n, l, s, r, g, k, h are pronounced similarly to how they are in English.

(Although b and d are more like "soft" versions of p and t respectively).

z is pronounced like the "ds" in adds and **c** like the "ts" in tsunami.

Because English does not use these sounds at the beginning of words, we had to cheat with the soundwords here (it was that or declare them "DIY" which we have tried to avoid whenever possible). If you look at Table 1 you'll see that for "z" we simply use soundwords beginning with "z", and for "c" we use soundwords beginning with "st" (not "ts").

zh, ch, sh are pronounced like the "j" in jar, the "ch" in chart, and the "sh" in shark respectively.

j, q, x are pronounced like the "j" in jeep, the "ch" in cheat, and the "sh" in sheet respectively.

The difference between zh & j, ch & q and sh & x is that for zh, ch and sh the tongue is curled back against the roof of the mouth to say the sound, and for j, q and x the tip of the tongue is pressed against the lower teeth. For soundwords we just use English words beginning with j, ch and sh regardless. Happily this does not cause any confusion because, as you will see in the tables, if zh has an entry in a particular vowel column then j does not and vice versa. The same applies to the other two pairs (ch & q and sh & x).

Vowels

a, o, e, u are pronounced as indicated by the soundwords in the relevant columns in Table 1.

(But when "e" has neutral tone, it is pronounced closer to the "u" in huh).

i can be pronounced in two ways:

After most consonants it is pronounced like the "i" in Fiji. But after some consonants (z, c, s, zh, ch, sh, r; see the final column in Table 1) it is as if the "i" is hardly there at all. It seems to just modify the consonant sound slightly. The closest we could get to this sound is to use English soundwords where the first syllable is unstressed, so for **zhi** we use jacuzzi. (For this reason, in all other soundwords we have chosen, the stress is on the first syllable).

ü is pronounced like "ü" in German or the "u" in the French tu.

Say "oo", and then, keeping your lips in the same position, try and say "ee". Rather confusingly the two dots are only written above the u for **nü** and **lü** (to distinguish them from **nu** and **lu**), otherwise they are omitted (see the ü column of Table 1). "Pouring rain" is used in the stories to indicate ü pronunciations (see Character 15).

When vowels are on their own (with no consonant in front of them), the pinyin system sometimes inserts a "y" or a "w" before the vowel. So instead of "i", "u" and "ü" we write **yi, wu** and **yu** respectively (see the final row of the tables).

In the tables you will see that we have listed the consonants down the left-hand side and the vowels along the top. The table entries give the pinyin spelling and an example soundword for each combination of consonant and vowel we need. For some combinations there is no reasonable soundword in English — these are the "DIY pronunciations" and they are indicated in the table by "DIY". Blanks indicate combinations not used in HSK Level A.

Remember that it is the *sound* of the soundword that is important, not its English spelling. So the soundwords herb, shirt and lurk all appear in the "e" column of Table 1 because they all have the same vowel *sound* even through their English spellings use three different vowels.

Table 1 shows the simplest Chinese syllables, which are just a consonant followed by a vowel.

Table 1: simple syllables

	a	o	e	u	ü	i	-i
b	**ba** bar	**bo** board		**bu** boot		**bi** bee	
p	**pa** park	**po** port				**pi** pea	
m	**ma** market		**me** mermaid	**mu** moon		**mi** meat	
f	**fa** farm			**fu** food			
d	**da** dart		**de** dervish	**du** doodle		**di** diesel	
t	**ta** tart		**te** turkey	**tu** toupe		**ti** tea	
n	**na** narcissus		**ne** nerd	**nu** noodles	**nü** noodles	**ni** needle	
l	**la** lava		**le** lurk	**lu** loop	**lü** loop	**li** leap	
z	**za** DIY		**ze** zircon	**zu** zoo			**zi** zapata
c	**ca** star						**ci** statistics
s			**se** surf	**su** soup			**si** sedate
zh			**zhe** jerk	**zhu** juke box			**zhi** jacuzzi
ch	**cha** chart		**che** church	**chu** chew			**chi** chapati
sh			**she** shirt	**shu** shoe			**shi** cheroot
r			**re** rrrr	**ru** ruby			**ri** relinquish
g			**ge** girder	**gu** goose			
k	**ka** carpet		**ke** curtain	**ku** coupon			
h	**ha** harp		**he** herb	**hu** hoop			
j					**ju** juke box	**ji** jeep	
q					**qu** chew	**qi** cheetah	
x					**xu** shoe	**xi** sheet	
-	**a** arm		**e** eh	**wu** wound	**yu** eulogy	**yi** easy	

Table 2 shows how the syllables which have two vowels are spelled and pronounced.

Table 3 shows how the endings "-n" or "-ng" can be added to some of the syllables in Tables 1 and 2. Note that it is still the first syllable of the soundword that indicates the pronunciation. Notice too that the English ending "nk" contains an "ng" sound, so the stories for the Chinese syllable **bang** might use either of the English soundwords bang or bank. For this reason, the soundwords we use for the syllables in Tables 1 and 2 never contain these "n" or "ng" sounds.

Table 2: two vowels

	ai	ei	ai	ou
b	**bai** bike	**bei** baby	**bao** bow	
p	**pai** pie		**pao** powder	
m	**mai** mitre	**mei** mail	**mao** mouse	
f		**fei** face		
d	**dai** dice	**dei** daisy	**dao** douse	**dou** dodo
t	**tai** tie		**tao** tower	**tou** toe
n	**nai** nightie	**nei** nail		
l	**lai** light	**lei** lake	**lao** loud	**lou** locust
z	**zai** xylophone		**zao** DIY	**zou** zodiac
c	**cai** sty		**cao** stout	
s	**sai** siren			**sou** soap
zh			**zhao** joust	**zhou** joke
ch			**chao** chowder	**chou** choker
sh			**shao** shower	**shou** show
r				**rou** rope
g	**gai** guy	**gei** gate	**gao** gout	**gou** goat
k	**kai** kite	**kei**	**kao** cow	**kou** coat
h	**hai** hive	**hei** halo	**hao** house	**hou** hose
j				
q				
x				
-	**ai** island			

Table 3: -n and -ng endings

	an	en	in	un	ang	eng	ong	ing
b	**ban** band	**ben** bun			**bang** bang			**bing** bingo
p						**peng** puncture		**ping** pingpong
m	**man** mansion	**men** money	**min** mint		**mang** mango			**ming** mink
f	**fan** fan	**fen** funnel			**fang** fang	**feng** fungus		
d	**dan** dandelion				**dang** dangle	**deng** dungarees	**dong** donkey	**ding** dinghy
t	**tan** tannoy				**tang** tank	**teng** tongue	**tong** tongs	**ting** tingle
n	**nan** nanny		**nin** ninja			**neng** DIY	**nong** DIY	
l	**lan** lantern					**leng** lung		**ling** linger
z	**zan** Zanzibar	**zen** DIY			**zang** DIY	**zeng** DIY	**zong** DIY	
c	**can** stand					**ceng** stung	**cong** DIY	
s	**san** sand						**song** song	
zh	**zhan** janitor	**zhen** junta			**zhang** jangle	**zheng** jungle	**zhong** jonquil	
ch	**chan** channel	**chen** chunter			**chang** DIY	**cheng** chunk		
sh	**shan** shandy	**shen** shun			**shang** Shanghai	**sheng** DIY		
r	**ran** ransom	**ren** runway			**rang** rank		**rong** wrong	
g	**gan** gantry	**gen** gun			**gang** gang	**geng** gunk	**gong** gong	
k	**kan** candle				**kang** kangaroo		**kong** conga	
h	**han** hand	**hen** hunter			**hang** hangar		**hong** honk	
j			**jin** gin					**jing** jingle
q			**qin** chin					**qing** chink
x			**xin** shin					**xing** shingle
-	**an** ant		**yin** yin	**yun** DIY				**ying** DIY

The vowel "i" sometimes gets inserted between the consonant and another vowel. When this happens the "i" takes on a "y" sound and is called an on-glide. The syllables that arise this way are shown in Table 4. Unfortunately English has virtually no words that begin with the necessary sounds for these pronunciations. Instead of making them all "DIY" pronunciations we use soundwords in the stories that ignore the i on-glide but we introduce *two* of the appropriate archetype instead of one (as explained following the entry for Character 38). For example when there are two teddies in a story with the soundword lava then you know that the character is pronounced **lia**, not **la** (and with tone 3).

An oddity is that "ian" is pronounced like "yen", not "yan", and hence **bian** uses bench as a soundword (with a double archetype). But "iang" is pronounced "yang", and so **liang** uses language as a soundword (with a double archetype).

Just to confuse things, if there is no initial consonant, the "i" is written "y". Thus "ia" on its own is written "ya", and so on. For this reason, and because there *are* English words available for these sounds, we simply use soundwords beginning with "y" and there is no need for double archetypes.

Table 4: i on-glides (double archetype)

	ia	**iao**	**ie**	**iou**	**ian**	**iang**	**iong**
b		**biao** bow	**bie** bed		**bian** bench		
p		**piao** powder			**pian** pen		
m					**mian** menu		
d		**diao** douse		**diu** dodo	**dian** dent		
t		**tiao** tower			**tian** tennis		
n				**niu** nose	**nian** DIY	**niang** DIY	
l	**lia** lava	**liao** loud		**liu** locust	**lian** lend	**liang** language	
j	**jia** jar	**jiao** joust	**jie** jelly	**jiu** joke	**jian** generator	**jiang** jangle	
q		**qiao** chowder	**qie** chest	**qiu** choker	**qian** DIY	**qiang** DIY	
x	**xia** shark	**xiao** shower	**xie** shed	**xiu** show	**xian** DIY	**xiang** Shanghai	
-	**ya** yard	**yao** yowl	**ye** yeti	**you** yoga	**yan** yen	**yang** yankee	**yong** young

Using a device, such as having two archetypes, underlines the fact that the role of the soundwords is not to teach pronunciation, but to work as a memory system. Although we match the pronunciations approximately (close enough so that you remember the pinyin spelling for the character), we also deliberately use additional tricks and coding devices (such as having two archetypes, a ghostly archetype, or a pouring rain story). These devices help with the memory system but it does mean that the soundword on its own, taken in isolation and forgetting the device, is not an exact guide to the Chinese pronunciation.

The "u" on-glide is similar to the "i" on-glide except that the "u" takes on a "w" sound and is signalled in the stories by a ghostly archetype (as explained in the comment following Character 59).

If there is no initial consonant, the "u" is written "w". Thus "ua" on its own is written "wa", and so on. In this case we simply use soundwords beginning with "w" (and there is no need for the archetype to be ghostly).

Table 5: u on-glides (ghostly archetype)

	ua	**uo**	**uai**	**uei**	**uan**	**uen**	**uang**
d		**duo** dodo		**dui** daisy	**duan** dandelion	**dun** dunce	
t		**tuo** toe		**tui** tail	**tuan** tannoy		
n					**nuan** nanny		
l					**luan** lantern	**lun** London	
z		**zuo** zodiac		**zui** DIY			
c		**cuo** stove				**cun** stunt	
s		**suo** soap		**sui** sail	**suan** sand		
zh		**zhuo** joke				**zhun** DIY	**zhuang** jangle
ch				**chui** chain	**chuan** channel	**chun** DIY	**chuang** DIY
sh		**shuo** show		**shui** shave			**shuang** Shanghai
g	**gua** garden	**guo** goat		**gui** gate	**guan** gantry		**guang** gang
k			**kuai** kite			**kun** cunning	**kuang** kangaroo
h	**hua** harp	**huo** hose	**huai** hive	**hui** halo	**huan** hand		**huang** hangar
-	**wa** wah	**wo** woe	**wai** white	**wei** waiter	**wan** DIY	**wen** wonderful	**wang** wangle

Table 6 shows the syllables where "ü" acts as an on-glide. There are only a few such syllables, which are mostly treated as "DIY" pronunciations, and in these the two dots on the ü are not actually written (so that "jüe" is written "jue", etc.). If there is no consonant, the "ü" is written "yu", thus "üe" is written "yue".

Table 7 shows two syllables which are exceptions and don't fit into the general pattern.

Table 6: ü on-glides

	üa	**üan**
j	**jue** DIY	
q	**que** DIY	**quan** DIY
x	**xue** DIY	
-	**yue** DIY	**yuan** yuan

Table 7: exceptions

er	**ng**
earth	uncle

PRONUNCIATION INDEX

This index gives the serial numbers of all the 800 HSK Level A characters. Where a character has more than one (HSK Level A) pronunciation, it has a separate entry for each of those pronunciations.

ā	啊	143
a	啊	143
ǎi	矮	766
ài	爱	365
ān	安	91
bā	八	20
bǎ	把	369
bà	爸	370
ba	吧	368
bái	白	22
bǎi	百	40
	摆	786
bān	班	113
	般	680
	搬	681
bǎn	板	333
bàn	半	131
	办	123
bāng	帮	705
bāo	包	636
bǎo	饱	637
bào	抱	638
	报	562
bēi	杯	11
běi	北	317
bèi	倍	315
	备	548
	被	440
běn	本	174
bǐ	比	228
	笔	454
bì	必	162
biān	边	41
biàn	变	581
	便	400
	遍	770
biǎo	表	436
bié	别	79
bìng	病	510
bō	播	734
bù	不	9
	步	378
	布	558
	部	316
cā	擦	792
cái	才	518
cǎi	彩	732
cài	菜	733
cān	参	573
cāo	操	631
cǎo	草	635
céng	层	471
chá	茶	739
	查	598
chà	差	204
chǎn	产	197
cháng	长	172
	常	544
chǎng	厂	149
	场	530
chàng	唱	772
cháo	朝	723
chē	车	83
chén	晨	775
chéng	成	259
	城	260
chī	吃	415
chí	持	465
	迟	777
chōu	抽	620
chū	出	114
	初	439
chú	除	738
chǔ	楚	749
	础	115
chù	处	506
chuān	穿	781
chuán	船	746
chuāng	窗	767
chuáng	床	171
chuī	吹	362
chūn	春	692
cí	词	231
	磁	794
cì	次	361
cóng	从	103
cūn	村	104
cuò	错	743
dá	答	352
dǎ	打	153
dà	大	47
dài	大	47
	代	456
	带	429
	戴	782
dān	单	344
dàn	但	117
	蛋	748
dāng	当	267
dāo	刀	72
dǎo	导	277
	倒	75
dào	到	74
	倒	75
	道	145
dé	得	118
de	的	23
	地	54
	得	118
děi	得	118
dēng	灯	182
děng	等	464
dī	低	684
dì	地	54
	弟	323
	第	322
diǎn	点	185
	典	232
diàn	电	159
	店	186
diào	调	541
	掉	724
dìng	定	406
dīu	丢	795
dōng	东	319
	冬	689
dǒng	懂	408
dòng	动	58
dōu	都	262
dū	都	262
dú	读	249
dù	度	425
duǎn	短	730
duàn	段	715
	锻	716
duì	对	154
dùn	顿	717
duō	多	69
è	饿	288
ér	儿	21
	而	151
èr	二	2
fā	发	146
fǎ	法	87
fān	翻	736
fán	烦	718
fǎn	反	331
fàn	饭	332
fāng	方	291
fáng	房	293
fǎng	访	292
fàng	放	294
fēi	飞	410
	非	328
	啡	329
fēn	分	73
fēng	风	468
	丰	704
	封	709
fū	夫	49
fú	服	563
	福	702
fǔ	府	653
	辅	789
fù	父	367
	负	517
	附	652
	复	550
	富	703
	傅	790
gāi	该	497
gǎi	改	359
gài	概	779
gān	干	124
gǎn	敢	726
	感	556
gàn	干	124
gāng	刚	676
	钢	677
gāo	高	481
gǎo	搞	482
gào	告	138
gē	哥	386
	歌	387
gè	个	19
	各	507
gěi	给	351
gēn	根	282
	跟	283
gèng	更	399

gōng 工 147
公 119
gòng 共 625
gòu 够 651
gū 姑 192
gù 故 191
顾 567
guā 刮 457
guà 挂 708
guān 关 372
观 216
guǎn 馆 784
guàn 惯 776
guǎng 广 170
guì 贵 492
guó 国 60
guǒ 果 187
guò 过 106
hā 哈 350
hái 还 199
孩 498
hǎi 海 129
hán 寒 768
hǎn 喊 557
hàn 汉 78
háng 行 81
hǎo 好 18
hào 号 424
hē 喝 575
hé 合 347
何 142
河 141
和 126
hēi 黑 671
hěn 很 281
hóng 红 233
hòu 后 150
候 667
hū 忽 526
hú 湖 193
hù 户 269
互 226
huā 花 392
huà 化 391
划 554
话 458
画 626
huài 坏 442
huān 欢 363
huán 还 199
huàn 换 675
huáng 黄 624
huí 回 202
huì 会 59
huó 活 460
和 126
huǒ 火 181
huò 或 555
jī 机 10
鸡 678
基 237
jí 极 534
级 535
急 587
集 505
jǐ 几 7
己 271
挤 669
jì 计 552
记 272
纪 273
技 463
济 670
寄 742
绩 516
继 577
jiā 家 109
加 325
jià 驾 326
假 798
jiān 坚 697
间 345
jiǎn 简 346
检 599
jiàn 见 214
件 385
践 609
健 658
建 657
jiāng 江 148
将 318
jiǎng 讲 357
jiāo 交 380
教 265
蕉 763
jiǎo 饺 381
角 418
脚 561
jiào 叫 354
觉 405
教 265
较 382
jiē 接 203
街 710
jié 节 560
结 538
jiě 姐 444
解 586
jiè 介 579
界 580
借 744
jīn 今 166
斤 240
jǐn 紧 698
jìn 近 241
进 358
jīng 经 244
睛 340
精 341
jìng 净 721
静 722
jiū 究 616
jiǔ 九 38
久 364
酒 102
jiù 旧 394
就 239
jú 局 650
桔 647
橘 646
jǔ 举 648
jù 句 649
jué 决 404
觉 405
kā 咖 327
kǎ 卡 198
kāi 开 85
kàn 看 200
kāng 康 752
kǎo 考 604
kē 科 605
棵 188
ké 咳 499
kě 可 140
渴 576
kè 克 194
客 509
刻 500
课 189
kōng 空 617
kǒu 口 5
kū 哭 629
kǔ 苦 218
kuài 快 403
块 402
kuàng 况 360
kùn 困 522
lā 拉 179
la 啦 180
lái 来 65
lán 蓝 700
篮 701
lǎn 览 699
láo 劳 324
lǎo 老 264
le 了 66
lèi 累 608
lěng 冷 593
lí 离 654
lǐ 里 157
理 158
礼 612
lì 力 14
历 393
立 177
利 132
例 584
li 里 157
liǎ 俩 224
lián 连 84
联 374
liǎn 脸 600
liàn 炼 713
练 714
liáng 凉 758
liǎng 两 222
liàng 谅 759
亮 342
辆 223
liǎo 了 66
líng 零 594
lǐng 领 595
liú 留 663
流 615
liù 六 39
lóu 楼 470
lù 录 753
路 508
lǚ 旅 755
lǜ 绿 754
luàn 乱 613
lùn 论 252
mā 妈 46
má 麻 750
mǎ 马 44
ma 吗 45
嘛 751
mǎi 买 247
mài 卖 248
mǎn 满 225
màn 慢 785
máng 忙 568
máo 毛 453
mào 冒 773
帽 774

me 么 34
méi 没 169
měi 每 128
mèi 妹 64
mén 门 27
men 们 28
mǐ 米 334
miàn 面 313
mín 民 455
míng 名 70
明 77
mǔ 母 127
mù 目 93
ná 拿 348
nǎ 哪 99
nà 那 98
呐 220
na 哪 99
nǎi 奶 533
nán 男 156
难 503
南 307
ne 呢 268
nèi 内 219
néng 能 206
ng 嗯 521
nǐ 你 51
nián 年 168
niàn 念 167
niáng 娘 286
nín 您 493
niú 牛 384
nóng 农 438
nǔ 努 762
nǚ 女 15
nuǎn 暖 366
pá 爬 371
pà 怕 627
pāi 拍 628
pái 排 330
pài 派 664
páng 旁 295
pǎo 跑 639
péng 朋 62
pèng 碰 396
pī 批 229
pí 啤 356
piān 篇 771
pián 便 400
piàn 片 353
piào 票 431
漂 432
píng 平 309
评 311
苹 310
瓶 791
pò 破 441
qī 七 37
期 236
qí 其 235
齐 668
骑 740
qǐ 起 276
qì 气 411
汽 412
器 630
qiān 千 89
铅 747
qián 前 90
钱 610
qiǎn 浅 611
qiáng 墙 799
qiáo 桥 583
qiě 且 443
qiè 切 230
qīn 亲 196
qīng 轻 245
青 335
清 337
qíng 晴 338
情 339
qǐng 请 336
qiū 秋 693
qiú 求 524
球 525
qǔ 取 88
qù 去 86
quán 全 416
què 确 419
rán 然 266
ràng 让 476
rè 热 695
rén 人 12
rèn 认 253
任 551
rì 日 6
róng 容 486
ròu 肉 221
rú 如 80
sài 赛 769
sān 三 3
sàn 散 745
sè 色 417
shān 山 110
shāng 商 640
shàng 上 42
shāo 烧 778
shǎo 少 377
shào 绍 596
shè 社 433
设 553
舍 643
shēn 身 107
深 619
shén 什 35
神 622
shēng 生 133
声 488
shěng 省 379
shèng 胜 134
剩 783
shī 师 428
shí 十 4
识 256
时 105
拾 349
实 250
食 287
shǐ 史 397
使 398
始 485
shì 示 430
世 578
是 30
市 427
适 459
试 603
视 435
室 472
事 312
shōu 收 355
shǒu 手 31
首 144
shū 书 176
舒 644
输 757
shú 熟 696
shǔ 数 469
shù 术 461
束 494
数 469
树 155
shuāng 双 712
shuí 谁 501
shuǐ 水 523
shuì 睡 409
shuō 说 67
sī 思 165
sǐ 死 585
sì 四 24
sòng 送 373
sòu 嗽 496
sù 宿 641
诉 719
suān 酸 765
suàn 算 321
suī 虽 679
suì 岁 116
suǒ 所 270
tā 他 13
她 16
它 227
tái 抬 484
tài 太 48
态 426
tán 谈 422
tāng 汤 531
táng 堂 543
糖 764
tǎng 躺 542
tǎo 讨 201
tè 特 466
téng 疼 690
tī 踢 529
tí 提 475
题 478
tǐ 体 175
tiān 天 76
tiáo 条 546
tiào 跳 788
tīng 听 242
tíng 停 343
庭 659
tǐng 挺 660
tōng 通 564
tóng 同 160
tòng 痛 565
tóu 头 246
tū 突 618
tú 图 691
tuán 团 519
tuī 推 502
tuǐ 腿 729
tuì 退 728
tuō 脱 656
wà 袜 793
wài 外 71
wán 玩 304
完 305
wǎn 晚 673
碗 760
wàn 万 296
wǎng 往 300
忘 569
望 570

wēi 危 566
wéi 为 122
围 706
wěi 伟 707
wèi 为 122
位 178
喂 666
wén 文 25
闻 290
wèn 问 289
wǒ 我 32
wò 握 474
wū 屋 473
wǔ 五 36
午 125
舞 787
wù 务 547
物 527
误 731
xī 西 100
息 662
希 559
xí 习 735
xǐ 喜 539
洗 139
xì 系 607
细 234
xià 下 43
夏 694
xiān 先 137
xiǎn 险 601
xiàn 现 215
xiāng 香 761
相 163
xiǎng 想 164
响 390
xiàng 相 163
向 389
像 674
xiāo 消 661
xiǎo 小 50
xiào 校 383
笑 582
xiē 些 314
xié 鞋 711
xiě 写 423
xiè 谢 108
xīn 心 161
辛 195
新 243
xìn 信 376
xīng 星 136
xíng 行 81
xìng 兴 645
姓 135
幸 308
xiū 休 727
xū 需 590
须 591
xǔ 许 589
xù 续 592
xué 学 82
xuě 雪 572
yā 呀 780
ya 呀 780
yán 言 375
研 606
颜 588
yǎn 眼 284
演 623
yàn 宴 796
验 602
yáng 扬 532
阳 96
羊 111
yàng 样 112
yāo 要 101
yào 要 101
药 720
yě 也 8
yè 业 395
页 477
夜 797
yī 一 1
衣 437
医 491
yí 宜 449
yǐ 以 120
已 274
椅 741
yì 义 467
亿 413
艺 414
易 528
译 737
谊 450
意 258
yīn 音 257
因 520
阴 97
yín 银 285
yīng 英 401
应 388
yíng 迎 682
赢 800
yǐng 影 574
yǒng 永 685
泳 686
yòng 用 130
yóu 尤 238
邮 621
游 688
yǒu 有 63
友 53
yòu 又 52
右 213
yú 鱼 549
愉 756
yǔ 雨 571
语 68
yù 育 614
遇 655
预 642
yuán 元 301
园 302
员 479
圆 480
原 536
yuǎn 远 303
yuàn 院 306
愿 537
yuè 月 61
乐 320
yún 云 56
yùn 运 57
zá 杂 511
zài 在 55
再 217
zán 咱 95
zāng 脏 513
zǎo 早 633
澡 632
zé 责 515
zěn 怎 512
zēng 增 672
zhǎn 展 665
zhàn 占 183
站 184
zhāng 张 173
章 634
zhǎng 长 172
掌 545
zháo 着 205
zhǎo 找 152
zhào 照 597
zhě 者 261
zhè 这 26
zhe 着 205
zhēn 真 452
zhěng 整 495
zhèng 正 29
政 190
zhī 之 121
支 462
只 254
织 255
知 490
zhí 直 451
zhǐ 只 254
指 251
纸 683
zhì 志 487
治 483
zhōng 中 33
钟 278
zhǒng 种 279
zhòng 重 407
zhōu 周 540
zhū 猪 263
zhǔ 主 297
zhù 住 298
注 299
祝 434
助 445
zhuāng 装 489
zhǔn 准 504
zhuō 桌 725
zì 自 94
字 92
zi 子 17
zǒng 总 514
zǒu 走 275
zū 租 446
zú 足 280
族 687
zǔ 祖 447
组 448
zuǐ 嘴 420
zuì 最 421
zuó 昨 208
zuǒ 左 209
zuò 作 207
做 210
坐 211
座 212

MEANING INDEX

This index gives the serial numbers of all the characters and fragments used in this book.

As in the main text, we use the following two conventions. A meaning in "quotes" is simply our name for a fragment which might not have a true meaning of its own. A meaning in [brackets] means that you are only ever likely to see this character in a compound which has this meaning.

able to 能 206
above 上 42
abundant 丰 704
accept 收 355
accommodation 屋 473
accurate 准 504
ache 疼 690
痛 565
achievement 绩 516
acquire 取 88
act as 为 122
当 267
actually 并 791a
add 加 325
advantageous 便 400
affair 事 312
again 又 52
再 217
ah 阿 143a
ahead 先 137
air 气 411
alive 活 460
all 都 262
allow 让 476
already 已 274
also 也 8
alter 改 359
although 虽 679
always 总 514
ancestor 祖 447
and yet 而 151
answer 答 352
appearance 样 112
相 163
"appendage" 么 34
[apple] 苹 310
appropriate 宜 449
approx 约 720a
"archery contest" 𥎦 667b
arrange 摆 786
arrive 到 74
arrow 矢 490a
art 艺 414
as for 呢 268
as well 亦 581a
Asia 亚 396a
ask 问 289
ask for 讨 201
要 101
aspire 卬 682b
assemble 集 505
assist 辅 789
at 在 55
attend to 顾 567
attitude 态 426
aunt 姑 192
auspicious 吉 538a
autumn 秋 693
avoid 免 673a
await 候 667
axe 斤 240
"bacon rashers" 龷 625a
bad 坏 442
badge 章 634
ball 球 525
bamboo ⺮ 321a
[banana] 蕉 763
banner 㫃 687a
banquet 宴 796
"barb" 乚 120a
barely 刚 676
"barred" 卯 663b
basket 篮 701
bathe 澡 632
bean 豆 730a
beard 胡 193a
because 因 520
由 620a
bed 床 171
[beer] 啤 356
beg 乞 415a
"beggar" 匈 575a
beginning 初 439
below 下 43
belt 带 429
bend 曲 232a
benefit 利 132
"beret" ㇀ 89a
beside 旁 295
best wishes 祝 434
bestow 予 642a
big 大 47
bird 鸟 678a
"bird's wing" 乁 410a
birth 㐬 615b
bitter 苦 218
black 黑 671
"blade" 了 231a
blessing 福 702
block up 𡨄 768b
blow 刮 457
blue 蓝 700
blue-green 青 335
board 板 333
boat 舟 680a
body 身 107
体 175
bolt of cloth 疋 748a
book 书 176
"bookcase" 且 443
borrow 借 744
bother 烦 718
bottle 瓶 791
boundary 界 580
bow 弓 173a
⺈ 51a
bowl 碗 760
boy 儿 21
brain 㐫 654b
branch 支 462
"bricks" 𠀎 768a
bridge 桥 583
brief 短 730
"brigade" 𠂢 664a
bright 明 77
bring relief 济 670
broad 广 170
build 建 657
building 所 270
bump into 碰 396
bundle 束 494
burn 烧 778
busy 忙 568
but 但 117
buy 买 247
by 被 440
calculate 计 552
"calf" ⺧ 137a
call 叫 354
calm 静 722
canoe 刖 90b
"cap" 乛 247a
capital 京 239b
car 车 83
card 卡 198
carry 提 475
carry on 续 592
carry out 践 609
"catamaran" 俞 756a
catch 着 205
celebration 喜 539
center 央 401a

certain 确 419
chair 椅 741
change 化 391
channel 𢀖 244b
chaotic 乱 613
check up 查 598
chicken 鸡 678
chief 长 172
Chieftain Yao 尧 778b
child 子 17
[chimney] 囱 767a
Chinese character 字 92
chirp 喿 631b
“choke” 丂 424a
circle 圆 480
city 阝 96a
clan 族 687
clap 拍 628
classification 科 605
“claw marks” 采 734a
claw 爪 365a
爫 365b
clean 净 721
clear 楚 749
cliff 厂 149
climb 爬 371
clock 钟 278
close 近 241
cloth 布 558
clothes 衣 437
衤 439a
cloud 云 56
“clouds” 𠂉 124b
cluster 系 607
cocoon 厶 34a
[coffee] 咖 327
啡 329
cold 冷 593
collectively 共 625
color 色 417
colorful 彩 732
“comb” 冊 151a
combine 亼 59a
come 来 65
command 令 593a
comment on 评 311
companion 朋 62
compared with 比 228
comparison 较 382
compete 赛 769
complete 了 66
complexion 颜 588
conceal 乚 568a
concubine 妾 203a
“conference” 佥 599a
connect 联 374
consult 参 573
container 匚 491a
contend 争 721a
continue 继 577
绍 596
convenient 便 400
convert 兑 67b
cooked 孰 696b
cool 凉 758
corpse 尸 268a
correct 对 154
cough 咳 499
嗽 496
count 数 469
country 国 60
couple 两 222
court 廷 659a
courtyard 庭 659
cover 冖 82a
cow 牛 384
craft 术 461
“criminal” 𢆉 130a
criticize 批 229
cross 过 106
cry out 吅 629a
culture 文 25
cup 杯 11
cut 切 230
“cut” 𢇍 577a
dad 爸 370
dagger 戈 32a
damage 破 441
dance 舞 787
dancing 無 787b
danger 危 566
dare 敢 726
date 号 424
dawn 旦 117a
daybreak 卓 723a
decide 决 404
decide on 定 406
deep 深 619
degrees 度 425
deliver 送 373
department 司 231b
desire 愿 537
despite 却 561a
dexterity 肀 312a
diagram 图 691
die 死 585
die young 夭 582a
different 異 782a
difficult 难 503
difficulty 困 522
“dime” 角 418
direction 方 291
director 董 408a
dirty 脏 513
discipline 纪 273
discuss 论 252
dish 皿 700a
disperse 散 745
display 展 665
distant 远 303
distant from 离 654
division 分 73
do 做 210
作 207
“dog food” 肰 266b
dog 犬 238a
犭 263a
don’t! 别 79
勿 526a
door 户 269
戶 269
drag 厂 150a
drawing 画 626
“dress” 𧘇 436a
drink 喝 575
“drink” 曷 575b
drive (vehicle) 驾 326
drive out 斥 719a
droop 垂 409a
drop 掉 724
丶 22a
“Druid” 癶 792a
dry 干 124
due 期 236
dumpling 饺 381
duty 责 515
each 各 507
ear 耳 88a
early 早 633
“earring” 𦔮 726a
earth 土 54a
east 东 319
easy 易 528
eat 吃 415
egg 蛋 748
eh! 啊 143
嗯 521
eight 八 20
electricity 电 159
elephant 象 674a
embrace 抱 638
eminent 卓 724a
empty 空 617
enclosed 囗 24a
“encompass” 帀 428a
encounter 遇 655
engaged in 搞 482
enjoy 享 696a
enough 够 651
“entangle” 丩 354a
enter 入 219a
entire 整 495
entrust 委 766a
especially 尤 238
establish 设 553
esteem 尚 542a

尚 542a
even more 更 399
evening 晚 673
夕 69a
every 每 128
everywhere 遍 770
evil 歹 584a
examine 验 602
example 例 584
exceptionally 挺 660
exchange 换 675
excited 兴 645
exclamation 啦 180
exercise 操 631
exert oneself 努 762
exhausted 累 608
exit 出 114
expensive 贵 492
experience 历 393
"explosion" 甬 564a
extract 抽 620
extremity 极 534
eye 目 93
眼 284
face 面 313
脸 600
facing 朝 723
factory 厂 149
fall short 差 204
familiar 熟 696
farm 农 438
father 父 367
favor 恩 521a
fear 怕 627
feather 羽 736a
feel 觉 405
感 556
"feet" 䒑 90a
festival 节 560
few 少 377
些 314
field 田 156a
fifth 戊 259a
fight 斗 605a
filial piety 孝 265a
fine weather 晴 338
finish 完 305
fire 火 181
灬 185a
"firewood" 丬 317a
firm 収 697b
fish 鱼 549
five 五 36
flat 扁 770b
flood 巜 615a
flow 流 615
flower 花 392
fly 飞 410
food 食 287
饣 288a
foot 足 280
⻊ 280
脚 561
footstep 亍 81c
for 为 122
给 351
forever 永 685
forge 锻 716
forget 忘 569
forgive 谅 759
former 故 191
fortune teller 卜 42a
"foul mouth" 吉 540a
foundation 基 237
four 四 24
fragrant 香 761
freezing 寒 768
friend 友 53
friendship 谊 450
from 从 103
fruit 果 187
full 满 225
furs 月 98a
garden 园 302
gate 门 27
gaze 望 570
"gazebo" 亠 342a
get 㝵 118a
gift 礼 612
"gimlet" 罕 586a
give back 还 199
glowing 𫇧 324a
go through 经 244
go 去 86
往 300
gods 神 622
going to 将 318
gold 钅 278a
good fortune 幸 308
good health 康 752
good man 彦 588a
good 好 18
良 286a
goods 品 631a
government 政 190
府 653
gown 表 665b
graceful 曼 785b
grade 级 535
grain 禾 126a
"grain stalks" 丿丨 579a
gram 克 194
grasp 握 474
grass 艹 218a
great 伟 707
green 绿 754
greet 迎 682
ground 地 54
group 团 519
派 664
guest 客 509
guide 导 277
habitual 惯 776
hairs 彡 573a
half 半 131
hall 堂 543
halt 停 343
Han Chinese 汉 78
hand down 爫 365c
hand 手 31
扌 152a
handle 把 369
hands 82b
reaching down ⺍ 82b
hang 挂 708
happy 愉 756
hardship 㔾 566a
hat 帽 774
"haul up" 业 388a
have 有 63
have to 须 591
"hay" 刍 587a
he 他 13
head 头 246
首 144
heal 医 491
hear 闻 290
heart 心 161
忄 339a
hearth 罙 619a
heaven 天 76
heavenly body 辰 775a
heavy 重 407
"held in the hands" 龹 692a
help 助 445
帮 705
hemp 麻 750
hero 英 401
heron 肯 420a
hesitate 夋 765a
hey! 喂 666
hidden 阴 97
high 高 481
high up 戈 778a
history 史 397
hit 打 153
hold on to 执 695c
hole 穴 616a
hood 冃 773a
"hook" 乚 612a
horns 丷 65a
horse 马 44
hot 热 695
house 宀 91a
房 293
household 家 109

how? 怎 512
however 然 266
hundred 百 40
"$100 check" 佰 641a
hundred million 亿 413
hungry 饿 288
husband 夫 49
I 我 32
ice 冫 360a
ice crystals ⺀ 246a
idea 意 258
if 如 80
illness 病 510
imperial decree 敕 496a
in 里 157
in advance 预 642
in front of 前 90
inch 寸 104a
increase 增 672
indicator 表 436
industry 业 395
inevitably 必 162
inferior 卑 356a
inflammation 炎 422a
inform 告 138
"-ing" 着 205
insect 虫 679a
inside 内 219
inspect 检 599
察 792c
institute 院 306
intention 志 487
intervene 介 579
invert 倒 75
investigate 究 616
is 是 30
it 它 227
"ivy" 丰 715a
jade 玉 60b
jade block 圭 708a
"jet black" 兹 794b
join together 合 347
joyful 欢 363
jump 跳 788
just 义 467
just now 甫 789a
kick 踢 529
kin 亲 196
king 王 60a
"kiss" 吅 671a
"knee" ㇆ 166a
knife 刀 72
刂 74a
know 知 490
knowledge 识 256
"label" 丿 124a
lacking 欠 361a
ladle 勺 23b
lake 湖 193
lamp 灯 182
language 语 68
late 迟 777
laugh 哈 350
law 法 87
"lay out" 夅 318a
lead 铅 747
领 595
leather 韦 706a
革 711a
left 左 209
left hand 𠂇 53a
leg 腿 729
legion 目 784a
leisure 休 727
lesson 课 189
letter 信 376
level 平 309
lid 亠 25b
lie down 躺 542
life 生 133
lightweight 轻 245
likeness 像 674
line up 列 584b
line 行 81
排 330
linked up 连 84
liquor 酒 102
listen 听 242
long 长 172
long time 久 364
look at 看 200
look for 找 152
lord 主 297
lose 输 757
love 爱 365
low 低 684
lump 块 402
"-ly" 地 54
machine 机 10
magnet 磁 794
mail 邮 621
maintain 持 465
make known 扬 532
male 男 156
"man with stick" 亻 667c
manage 办 123
many 多 69
market 市 427
master 师 428
may 可 140
meal 饭 332
meat 肉 221
medicine 药 720
meditate 仑 252a
meeting 会 59
member 员 479
metropolis 都 262
middle 中 33
"midnight feast" 昔 745a
milk 奶 533
mislay 丢 795
mistake 错 743
误 731
mix 和 126
mixed 杂 511
money 钱 610
monkey 禺 655a
moon 月 61
夕 266a
moreover 且 443
morning 晨 775
mother 母 127
mound 阝 96a
mountain 山 110
mouth 口 5
嘴 420
move 动 58
搬 681
multiple 倍 315
mum 妈 46
music 乐 320
must 得 118
mutual 相 163
nail 丁 81b
name 名 70
nation 邦 705a
near to 附 652
need 需 590
net 罒 785a
new 新 243
newborn baby 𠫓 614a
night 夜 797
nine 九 38
ninth 壬 551a
noisy 响 390
noon 午 125
north 北 317
not yet 未 64a
not 不 9
没 169
note down 记 272
now 今 166
number of cars 辆 223
number of items 个 19
number of things 件 385
number of trees 棵 188
number 数 469
第 322
nun 尼 268b
nurture 育 614
obey 服 563
observe 观 216
obtain 得 118
obvious 昭 597a
occupy 占 183
of 的 23

之 121
offend 羊 307a
office 局 650
official 吏 398a
官 784b
often 常 544
oh! 呀 780
OK 行 81
old book 冊 770a
old man 耂 261a
old 古 191a
老 264
older brother 哥 386
兄 67a
older sister 姐 444
omen 兆 788a
one 一 1
one of a pair 只 254
only 只 254
only just 才 518
open 开 85
"open door" 户 663a
oppose 反 331
opposing 舛 787a
or 或 555
organize 组 448
original 原 536
other 另 79a
ought 该 497
outdated 旧 394
outer limits 冂 160a
outside 外 71
overt 阳 96
page 页 477
pair 双 712
palm (of hand) 掌 545
paper 纸 683
parcel 包 636
pass through 通 564
path 路 508
pavilion 亭 343a
pay 交 380
付 652a
peaceful 安 91
"pedestal" 兀 301a
pellet 丸 695b
pen 笔 454
penetrate 穿 781
people 们 28
perform 演 623
perish 亡 568b
permit 许 589
person 人 12
亻 13a
pick 采 732a
pick up 拾 349
piece 段 715
piece of paper 篇 771
pierce 贯 776b
pierced 毌 776a
pig 猪 263
豕 109a
亥 497a
pigeon 隹 501a
"pile of earth" 弋 455a
"piled up" 𠮛 150b
pit 凵 626a
place 位 178
处 506
plan 划 554
plant 主 133a
platform 台 483a
play 玩 304
please 请 336
plenty 畐 702a
plinth 础 115
point at 指 251
"polite" 覀 623a
"porthole" 冋 640a
possess 具 451b
pour 注 299
power 力 14
practice 习 735
premises 庄 513a
prepare 备 548
pretend 装 489
pretty 漂 432
proceed 进 358
produce 产 197
prominent 突 618
prosperous 昌 772a
"prostrate" 丨丨𠂉 699a
province 省 379
public 公 119
public building 馆 784
puff 吹 362
pull 拉 179
pupil 睛 340
purpose 旨 251a
pursue 夂 506a
push 推 502
quarter (hour) 刻 500
question mark 吗 45
quick 快 403
rain 雨 571
raise 抬 484
举 648
ravine 㕣 746a
reach 及 534a
read 读 249
real 实 250
rear 后 150
reason 理 158
receive 接 203
reciprocal 互 226
reckon 算 321
recognize 认 253
record 录 753
red 红 233
reference book 典 232
regard as 当 267
release 放 294
remain 留 663
remove 除 738
rent 租 446
repeat 复 550
replete 饱 637
report 报 562
request 求 524
research 研 606
resemble 肖 661a
reside 住 298
residue 剩 783
resolute 坚 697
respect 畏 666a
retreat 退 728
return 回 202
rice 米 334
ride 骑 740
乘 783a
ridge 冈 676a
right 右 213
right away 就 239
right hand 又 52
rise up 起 276
risk 冒 773
risky 险 601
river 河 141
江 148
road 辶 26a
roam 斿 688a
room 间 345
室 472
root 根 282
"rude" 書 764a
ruler 尺 777a
𠬝 562a
rump 禸 654c
run 跑 639
salty 咸 556a
same 同 160
sash 帀 429b
say 说 67
scales 㒼 225a
scholar 士 487a
school 校 383
scorched 焦 763a
sea 海 129
sea shell 贝 477a
seal up 封 709
seal 卩 560a
卪 560a
マ 560a
seat 座 212
second 乙 413a
section 部 316

see 见 214
select 东 713a
self 自 94
己 271
sell 卖 248
send 寄 742
send out 发 146
sentence 句 649
separate 夬 402a
sequence 弟 322a
session 顿 717
"settle down" 氏 684a
seven 七 37
several 几 7
shadow 影 574
shallow 浅 611
she 她 16
shears 乂 25a
shed 舍 643
sheep 羊 111
羊 204a
sheet (of paper) 张 173
shelter 广 170
shine 照 597
shining 亮 342
ship 船 746
shoe 鞋 711
shoot 射 108a
"shopping basket" ⿱中一 492a
short 矮 766
should 应 388
shoulder 负 517
shout 喊 557
[shout] 呐 220
shout out 吴 731a
sickness 疒 510b
side 边 41
sigh 乃 533a
sign 示 430
礻 433a
silver 银 285
simple 简 346
since 既 779b
sing 唱 772
single 单 344
sit 坐 211
site 场 530
situation 况 360
six 六 39
skill 技 463
skin 皮 440a
"skirt" 𧘇 665a
"skylight" 冋 389a
slave 奴 762a
sleep 睡 409
觉 405
slender 细 234
slice 片 353
"slide" ㇀ 34b
slip of paper 条 546
slow 慢 785
small 小 50
⺌ 50
smallest 幺 607a
smelt 炼 713
smile 笑 582
snake 巳 275a
snout 彐 267a
snow 雪 572
society 社 433
socks 袜 793
song 歌 387
sort 般 680
sound 音 257
soup 汤 531
sour 酸 765
source 本 174
south 南 307
sow 播 734
spear 矛 646a
special 特 466
specialist 者 261
species 种 279
speck 点 185
speech 话 458
spicy 辛 195
spit 咅 315a
splendid 精 341
"splinter" 丶 695a
spoon 匕 206a
spread out 舒 644
spread over 尃 790a
spring 泉 536a
springtime 春 692
squeeze 挤 669
stab 矞 646b
stake 弋 456a
stand 立 177
stand side by side 並 396b
star 星 136
start 始 485
state 申 622a
state of affairs 情 339
station 站 184
stay overnight 宿 641
steam 汽 412
steel 钢 677
step 步 378
step forward 彳 81a
stick 丨 19a
still 还 199
stone 石 115a
stop 止 29a
⺊ 30a
息 662
罢 786a
store 店 186
屯 717a
story 楼 470
straight 直 451
strange 奇 740a
straw 草 635
street 街 710
stride 廴 657b
strike 殳 169a
strong 健 658
stubborn 艮 281a
study 学 82
念 167
sturdy 壮 489a
style 式 603a
subordinate 隶 752a
substitute 代 456
suck 敕 495a
sudden 忽 526
suddenly 乍 207a
sugar 糖 764
suggestion 吧 368
suitable 适 459
summary 概 779
summer 夏 694
summon 召 596a
sun 日 6
sunny 昜 530a
supervise 监 700b
surely 嘛 751
surname 姓 135
氏 683a
surpass 屮 168a
surplus 余 738a
surround 围 706
swallow 旡 779a
swim 泳 686
switch off 关 372
"swoop" 云 56a
table 桌 725
talent 才 55a
talk 讲 357
talk over 谈 422
"tall" ⿱亠口 239a
tall 乔 583a
Tang 唐 764b
tangerine 桔 647
橘 646
tap 攵 190a
target ユ 667a
tea 茶 739
teach 教 265
teacher 傅 790
team 班 113
"teeny weeny" 丝 794a
tell 诉 719
temple 寺 464a
ten 十 4
ten thousand 万 296
"tent" 人 19b

terrible	凶	654a
test	考	604
thank	谢	108
that	那	98
the old days	昔	743a
the people	民	455
the present	现	215
thing	物	527
think	思	165
think about	想	164
third	丙	510a
thirsty	渴	576
thirty	卅	429a
this or that	其	235
this	这	26
	此	314a
thou	尔	51b
thousand	千	89
thread	糸	607b
	纟	233a
three	三	3
“thumb tack”	丅	40a
ticket	票	431
tidy	齐	668
tie up	结	538
tier	层	471
tiger	寅	623b
tight	紧	698
tile	瓦	791b
time	时	105
	番	734b
times	次	361
tiny	戈	609a
tip	末	793a
toil	劳	324
tolerate	容	486
tongue	舌	457a
too much	太	48
tooth	牙	780a
topic	题	478
topple	倒	75
tour	游	688
towards	向	389
	往	300
towel	巾	427a
town	城	260
trade	商	640
train	练	714
transform	变	581
transition	了	66
translate	译	737
transparent	清	337
transport	运	57
travel	旅	755
“treasure”	且	451a
treat (disease)	治	483
tree	树	155
	木	10a
tributary	𠂢	664b
triumph	胜	134
trouble	娄	469a
truly	真	452
try	试	603
tune	调	541
turn in one’s sleep	宛	760a
turn into	成	259
turn over	翻	736
twenty	廿	425a
two	二	2
two hands	廾	85a
two people	俩	224
“two sticks”	刂	697a
un-	非	328
underground river	ス	244a
understand	懂	408
undress	脱	656
untie	解	586
until	至	74b
“unveil”	龸	82c
“uphill”	厄	566b
upright	正	29
	⺪	30b
urgent	急	587
use	用	130
	使	398
used to be	曾	672a
using	拿	348
	以	120
utensil	器	630
utmost	最	421
vacation	假	798
valley	谷	486a
vanish	消	661
vegetable	菜	733
very	很	281
view	览	699
	景	574a
village	村	104
“vise”	匚	682a
visit	访	292
voice	声	488
wait for	等	464
	巴	368a
walk	走	275
wall	墙	799
“wane”	⿰讠月	570a
want	要	101
warm	暖	366
wash	洗	139
watch	视	435
watch over	圣	737a
water	水	523
	氵	78a
way	道	145
	得	118
we	咱	95
wealthy	富	703
wear	戴	782
weave	织	255
week	周	540
weep	哭	629
well	井	357a
west	西	100
	覀	100
what	何	142
what?	什	35
whatever	任	551
which?	哪	99
whisky bottle	酉	102a
white	白	22
who?	谁	501
whole	全	416
win	赢	800
wind	风	468
winding	宛	760b
window	窗	767
“windowpane”	罒	671b
winter	冬	689
wipe	擦	792
wish	希	559
with	跟	283
	和	126
	与	423a
woman	女	15
wonderful	奂	675a
wood	林	749a
wool	毛	453
word	词	231
words	言	375
	讠	67c
work at	务	547
work	工	147
	干	124
world	世	578
worship	祭	792b
wound	戋	782b
wrap	勹	23a
write	写	423
“write with brush”	聿	657a
year	年	168
years old	岁	116
yellow	黄	624
yesterday	昨	208
you	你	51
you (polite)	您	493
young lady	娘	286
younger brother	弟	323
younger sister	妹	64
youngster	孩	498
yours truly	吾	68a
yuan	元	301
zero	零	594

FAST FINDER INDEX

Use this index when you see a character and want to find it in this book, but you don't know its pronunciation or meaning. This index uses the appearance of the character directly, and how the character splits up into parts. This is the same method as used in the book "Chinese Character Fast Finder" (see the inside back cover), which enables you to find any of the 3,000 characters in all four HSK Levels A — D rapidly, without knowing their meanings, pronunciations, radicals or stroke-counts.

Most characters split left-right or top-bottom into parts:

很 → 很　　想 → 想

Take the simpler component (or the one you recognize) and look up the character in the appropriate section, depending on whether this part is the left, right, top or bottom part of the character:

很 → 很 → Look for 彳 in the ◧ section

想 → 想 → Look for 心 in the ⬓ section

You will find all such characters (for example, all the characters which have 彳 as the left-hand side) listed together, and by scanning along the characters listed you should be able to quickly find the one you want.

For some characters, instead of a left-right or top-bottom split, one part of the character encloses another on two or more sides. For such cases, use the enclosing part to look up the character:

层 → 层 → Look in the ◰ section

周 → 周 → Look in the ◙ section

Finally, many simple characters are "indivisible" — they do not break down into parts:

本 → 本 → Look in the ■ section

So this index is similar to a radical index, except that you don't need to count strokes. You also don't need to decide which part is the "proper" radical. For example:

和 appears under 禾 in the ◧ section, and also under 口 in the ◨ section.

If the character is printed in gray, you were not really looking for it in the right place: never mind, at least you have found it! Taking a close look at these gray characters will help you to distinguish between similar and easily-confused characters and fragments.

The numbers given refer to serial numbers in the book.

▌ (page 1 / 2)

丶
小 心 必 办 火 为
50 161 162 123 181 122

ノ
牛 午 年 生 久
384 125 168 133 364

丿
八 儿 从 片
20 21 103 353

忄
快 忙 怕 情 惯 慢 愉 懂
403 568 627 339 776 785 756 408

火
灯 烦 炼 烧
182 718 713 778

丬
将 北
318 317

讠
认 记 计 让 许 评 讲
253 272 552 476 589 311 357

访 该 谅 谊 请 读 说 谈
292 497 759 450 336 249 67 422

论 识 设 误 语 课 译 话
252 256 553 731 68 189 737 458

谁 谢
501 108

诉 讨 试 词 调
719 201 603 231 541

冫
次 决 况 凉 冷 净 准 习 头
361 404 360 758 593 721 504 735 246

氵
江 汉 浅 汤 酒
148 78 611 531 102

注 法 洗 泳 消 济 流 演 清 满
299 87 139 686 661 670 615 623 337 225

治 汽 海 深 活 没 渴 澡 漂
483 412 129 619 460 169 576 632 432

湖
193

河 游 派
141 688 664

丨
旧 门 师 以
394 27 428 120

亻
亿 化 代 什 件 伟 作
413 391 456 35 385 707 207

休 体 你 他 使 便 俩
727 175 51 13 398 400 224

位 住 倍 信 停 傅 借
178 298 315 376 343 790 744

但 任 低 像
117 551 684 674

们 例 做 假 倒 候 何 健
28 584 210 798 75 667 142 658

彳
行 往 街 很 得
81 300 710 281 118

扌
打 找 扬 把 抽
153 152 532 369 620

拍 拉 技 持 挂 挤 接 掉 搞 擦
628 179 463 465 708 669 203 724 482 792

指 拾 抬 换 提 操 摆 播
251 349 484 675 475 631 786 734

推 排 批 搬
502 330 229 681

报 握 挺 抱
562 474 660 638

牜
物 特
527 466

车
轻 较 辆 输 辅
245 382 223 757 789

礻
礼 社 神 祖 祝 视 福
612 433 622 447 434 435 702

衤
初 袜 被
439 793 440

方
放 族 旅
294 687 755

(page 2 / 2)

土
坏 块 场 地 城 增 墙 切
442 402 530 54 260 672 799 230

王
玩 球 理 现 班
304 525 158 215 113

木
机 杯 村 样 相 极
10 11 104 112 163 534
校 桔 检 桥 棵 椅 楼 橘
383 647 599 583 188 741 470 646
树 概 板
155 779 333

禾
利 科 秋 和 种 租
132 605 693 126 279 446

米
精 糖
341 764

矢
知 短 矮
490 730 766

又
双 欢 对 观 鸡 难
712 363 154 216 678 503

女
如 姐 妈 好 奶 妹 姓 她
80 444 46 18 533 64 135 16
姑 始 娘
192 485 286

阝
阳 阴 院 险 附 除
96 97 306 601 652 738

马
验 骑
602 740

纟
红 纪 组 细 级 练 纸 继
233 273 448 234 535 714 683 577
结 织 经 绍 给 绿 绩 续
538 255 244 596 351 754 516 592

饣
饺 馆 饭 饱 饿
381 784 332 637 288

钅
钟 银 钱 钢 铅 错 锻
278 285 610 677 747 743 716

口
叫 吹 呀 吧 吗
354 362 780 368 45
哈 吃 咱 响 咳 啤 唱 喝 喂 嗯
350 415 95 390 499 356 772 575 666 521
咖 啡 啦 哪 啊 嗽
327 329 180 99 143 496
听 呢 嘛 呐 喊 嘴
242 268 751 220 557 420

日
昨 明 晴 晚 暖 时 的
208 77 338 673 366 105 23

目
眼 睡 睛 助
284 409 340 445

耳
取 联
88 374

月
胜 朋 服 脸 脱 脚 脏 腿 那
134 62 563 600 656 561 513 729 98

舟
般 船
680 746

石
研 础 破 确 碗 碰 磁
606 115 441 419 760 396 794

足
践 跟 路 踢 跑 跳
609 283 508 529 639 788

舌
乱 刮
613 457

other
以 比 切 外 加 收 改 政 从 坐
120 228 230 71 325 355 359 190 103 211
非 划 预 顿 段 孩 张 猪 帽
328 554 642 717 715 498 173 263 774
头 须 邮 助 那 酸
246 591 621 445 98 765
站 刻 故 动 的 瓶 躺 鞋
184 500 191 58 23 791 542 711
所 够 刚 处 爬 建 起 题
270 651 676 506 371 657 276 478
解 能 静 翻
586 206 722 736

刂	划 利 刻 刮 别 到 倒 例 刚 剩	554 132 500 457 79 74 75 584 676 783
𠃌	门 们 词 翻 切 初	27 28 231 736 230 439
丁	打 灯 可 河 何 啊	153 182 140 141 142 143
寸	讨 对 时 封 树 谢 村 的	201 154 105 709 155 108 104 23
匕	北 比 批 化	317 228 229 391
力	助 动 切	445 58 230
欠	次 欢 吹 歌	361 363 362 387
攵	收 改 政 做 放 故 教 数 散 敢	355 359 190 210 294 191 265 469 745 726
又	汉 双 取	78 712 88
反	饭 板	332 333
卜	外 处	71 506
亍	行 街	81 710
十	计 什	552 35
中	钟 种	278 279
乚	礼 乱 亿	612 613 413
立	拉 啦	179 180
不	坏 杯	442 11
巴	吧 把 爬	368 369 371
人	认 从 以	253 103 120
马	吗 妈	45 46
工	江 红	148 233
彡	彩 影	732 574
己	记 纪 起	272 273 276
也	他 地 她	13 54 16

口	如 加 知 和 咖	80 325 490 126 327
日	旧 阳	394 96
且	姐 租 祖 组 相	444 446 447 448 163
月	明 阴 朋 期 朝 湖	77 97 62 236 723 193
阝	邮 那 都 部 哪	621 98 262 316 99
斤	听 所 新 诉	242 270 243 719
殳	没 设 段 般	169 553 715 680
见	现 观 视	215 216 435
页	须 烦 顿 预 领 顾 颜 题	591 718 717 642 595 567 588 478
隹	准 谁 难 推	504 501 503 502
艮	很 根 眼 跟 银 娘	281 282 284 283 285 286
戈	找 我 成 城 或 戴 代	152 32 259 260 555 782 456
戋	浅 践 钱	611 609 610
other	叫 非 化 让 社 代 科 研 班	354 328 391 476 433 456 605 606 113
	切 机 好 秋 妹 袜 联 钢	230 10 18 693 64 793 374 677
	相 脚 鸡 的 句 包	163 561 678 23 649 636
	就 舒 瓶 起 建 解 能 静	239 644 791 276 657 586 206 722

丶
义 467 户 269 永 685 主 297 之 121 术 461 发 146 或 555 感 556
广 170 书 176 尤 238 求 524 心 161 必 162 门 27 为 122 集 505

丿
向 389 白 22 自 94 息 662 身 107

丷
羊 111 弟 323 单 344 总 514 关 372 首 144 前 90 半 131 米 334

⺌
当 267 堂 543 常 544 掌 545 半 131 米 334 火 181

⺍
觉 405 举 648 兴 645 学 82

八⺌
公 119 分 73 父 367 爸 370 少 377 省 379

人
个 19 介 579 全 416 今 166 念 167 会 59 合 347 舍 643 拿 348 食 287

亠 立
文 25 六 39 方 291 立 177 交 380 衣 437 言 375 夜 797 齐 668 主 297
齐 668 市 427 忘 569 变 581 育 614 亮 342 高 481 离 654 赢 800
辛 195 亲 196 音 257 章 634 意 258 产 197 旁 295 商 640

宀 穴
它 227 安 91 字 92 家 109 实 250 定 406 宜 449 宿 641 农 438
完 305 室 472 客 509 寄 742 富 703 寒 768 赛 769 宴 796
究 616 空 617 突 618 穿 781 容 486 窗 767

⺊
卡 198 占 183 点 185 桌 725

十
支 462 克 194 直 451 真 452 南 307 卖 248 喜 539 先 137

土 士
去 86 走 275 幸 308 志 487 声 488 喜 539

龶
责 515 青 335 表 436

一
二 2 三 3 云 56 元 301 示 430 画 626 买 247 写 423 死 585 哥 386
下 43 不 9 干 124 平 309 天 76 开 85 万 296 正 29 西 100 两 222

丆
而 151 面 313 页 477 百 40 夏 694

丿
千 89 系 607 香 761 爱 365 重 407 丢 795 么 34

𠂉
午 125 气 411 年 168 每 128 复 550 怎 512 舞 787

⺈
色 417 负 517 危 566 鱼 549 角 418 急 587 包 636 句 649

夂 夕
冬 689 条 546 务 547 各 507 备 548 名 70 多 69

艹
艺 414 节 560 苹 310 花 392 药 720 共 625
茶 739 菜 733 蕉 763 黄 624 劳 324 苦 218 英 401 草 635 蓝 700
带 429

⺮
笑 582 笔 454 第 322 答 352 等 464 简 346 算 321 篮 701 篇 771

大 山
太 48 态 426 岁 116 出 114

口 吅
只 254 号 424 足 280 员 479 虽 679 哭 629 器 630

日
星 136 最 421 易 528 早 633 晨 775 是 30 冒 773

田
男 156 思 165 累 608 界 580 里 157 果 187

覀 ⻗
要 101 票 431 雪 572 需 590 零 594

other
么 34 见 214 共 625 写 423 买 247 步 378 录 753 希 559 导 277 哥 386
先 137 杂 511 忽 526 蛋 748 集 505 参 573 贵 492 查 598 冒 773 舞 787

丶冫
太 冬 寒
48 689 768

八 贝
六 兴 只 共 典 黄 真 其
39 645 254 625 232 624 452 235
页 负 员 责 贵 赛
477 517 479 515 492 769

丿丨
齐 介 界 开
668 579 580 85

儿 见
元 先 克 完 亮 见 党 览
301 137 194 305 342 214 405 699

小 糸
示 票 系 紧 累
430 431 607 698 608

灬
点 黑 热 熟 然 蕉 照
185 671 695 696 266 763 597

心
志 忘 怎 忽 急 态 思
487 569 512 526 587 426 165
息 总 您 想 念 意 感 愿
662 514 493 164 167 258 556 537

一
二 三 鱼 查 些
2 3 549 598 314

土
里 坐 坚 堂 基 在 室 全 望
157 211 697 543 237 55 472 416 570

十
干 千 午 辛 早 草 章 单 举
124 89 125 195 633 635 634 344 648

木
果 亲 杂 条 茶 菜 桌 集 米
187 196 511 546 739 733 725 505 334

大
天 关 哭 笑 突 英 实 卖
76 372 629 582 618 401 250 248

乂
义 父 文 交
467 367 25 380

又
变 支 友 爱
581 462 53 365

夕 夂
岁 多 夏 复
116 69 694 550

女
安 宴 要
91 796 101

口
占 告 各 名 合 舍
183 138 507 70 347 643
苦 答 客 容 言 喜 右 可 句
218 352 509 486 375 539 213 140 649

日
白 百 音 香 春
22 40 257 761 692

目
自 省 首 冒 看 宜
94 379 144 773 200 449

田
备 留 富
548 663 703

月
青 育 有 角
335 614 63 418

皿
蓝 篮
700 701

工
左 空
209 617

厶
云 去 会 公 离
56 86 59 119 654

力
男 务 劳 努 分 究
156 547 324 762 73 616

力
万 方 房 旁
296 291 293 295

彐 子
当 雪 字 学
267 572 92 82

巾 冂
市 布 带 常 帮 而 需
427 558 429 544 705 151 590

𧘇 𧘇
衣 农 表 装 晨
437 438 436 489 775

龰 𤴓
走 足 是 定 楚
275 280 30 406 749

other
个 卡 少 今 气 艺 它
19 198 377 166 411 414 227
出 求 分 究 举 节 穿 蛋 驾 哥
114 524 73 616 648 560 781 748 326 386
望 整 楚 掌 等 零 器 爸 包
570 495 749 545 464 594 630 370 636

厂 厂

历	原	愿	反	后	厂
393	536	537	331	150	149

广

床	店	应	座	度	康	府	麻	庭	广
171	186	388	212	425	752	653	750	659	170

疒

疼	病	痛
690	510	565

𠂇

友	左	右	有	布	在
53	209	213	63	558	55

尸

层	屋	展	局	民
471	473	665	650	455

耂

老	考	者	差	着
264	604	261	204	205

㫃

放	族	旅
294	687	755

other

在	发	死	名	危	房	看
55	146	585	70	566	293	200

辶

边	还	近	迟	过	进	连	退	迎
41	199	241	777	106	358	84	728	682

这	运	远	送	适	道	通	遇	遍
26	57	303	373	459	145	564	655	770

other

处	爬	建	起	题	也	世
506	371	657	276	478	8	578

习	可	句	包	或	戴
735	140	649	636	555	782

头
246

问	间	闻	同	周	风	门	几
289	345	290	160	540	468	27	7

向	内	肉	见
389	219	221	214

医
491

回	四	园	团	因	困	围	国	图	圆
202	24	302	519	520	522	706	60	691	480

班	街	解	能	静	舒
113	710	586	206	722	644

十	上	丰	书	牛	生	山	出
4	42	704	176	384	133	110	114

中	本	束	来
33	174	494	65

七	长	电
37	172	159

才	小	水	求	事
518	50	523	524	312

人	力	九	女	车	东	史	内	肉	农
12	14	38	15	83	319	397	219	221	438

大	夫	火	尤	太	久	午	年
47	49	181	238	48	364	125	168

之	广	门	义	户	术	主	永	发	身
121	170	27	467	269	461	297	685	146	107

为	心	必	羊	半	米	弟	头
122	161	162	111	131	334	323	246

八	儿	片	世	也	其	业	非
20	21	353	578	8	235	395	328

一	下	不	万	天	干	平	开	两	西
1	43	9	296	76	124	309	85	222	100

工	五	互	正	雨	再	更	死
147	36	226	29	571	217	399	585

厂	几	又
149	7	52

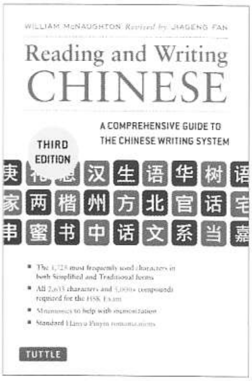
刀	了	子	己	已	飞	马
72	66	17	271	274	410	44

口	日	目	且	月	用	母
5	6	93	443	61	130	127

千	手	毛	斤	乐	重
89	31	453	240	320	407

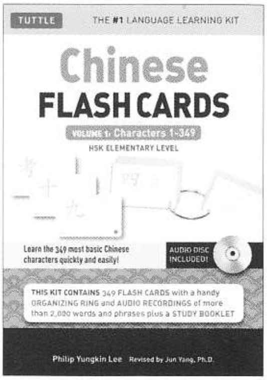
Other books of interest from Tuttle Publishing

tuttlepublishing



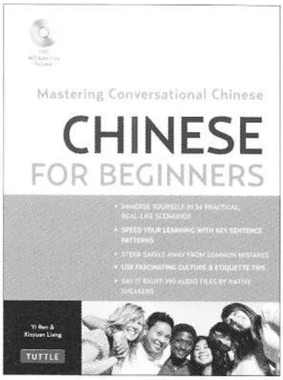
WILLIAM McNAUGHTON Revised by JIAGENG FAN
Reading and Writing CHINESE
A COMPREHENSIVE GUIDE TO THE CHINESE WRITING SYSTEM
THIRD EDITION
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4299-0



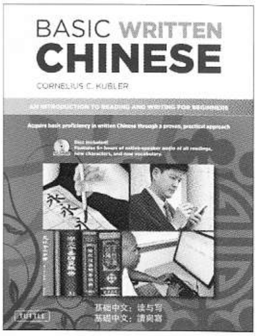
TUTTLE
THE #1 LANGUAGE LEARNING KIT
Chinese FLASH CARDS
VOLUME 1: Characters 1-349
HSK ELEMENTARY LEVEL
AUDIO DISC INCLUDED!
Philip Yungkin Lee

Volume 1: ISBN 978-0-8048-4201-3
Volume 2: ISBN 978-0-8048-4202-0
Volume 3: ISBN 978-0-8048-4203-7



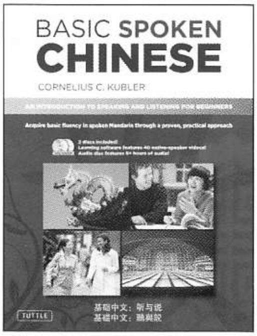
Mastering Conversational Chinese
CHINESE FOR BEGINNERS
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4235-8



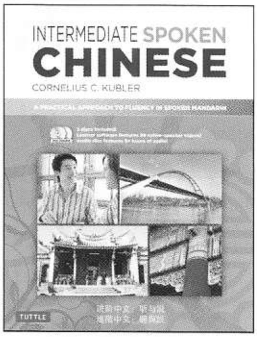
BASIC WRITTEN CHINESE
CORNELIUS C. KUBLER
TUTTLE

Textbook: ISBN 978-0-8048-4016-3
Practice: ISBN 978-0-8048-4017-0



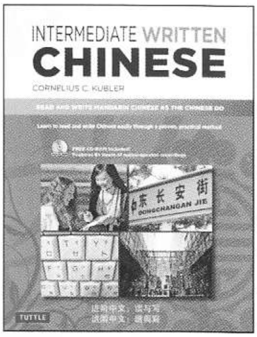
BASIC SPOKEN CHINESE
CORNELIUS C. KUBLER
TUTTLE

Textbook: ISBN 978-0-8048-4015-6
Practice Ess: ISBN 978-0-8048-4014-9



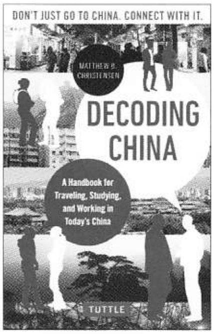
INTERMEDIATE SPOKEN CHINESE
CORNELIUS C. KUBLER
TUTTLE

Textbook: ISBN 978-0-8048-4018-7
Practice: ISBN 978-0-8048-4019-4



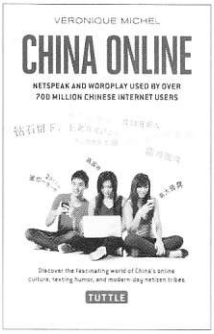
INTERMEDIATE WRITTEN CHINESE
CORNELIUS C. KUBLER
TUTTLE

Textbook: ISBN 978-0-8048-4020-0
Practice: ISBN 978-0-8048-4021-7



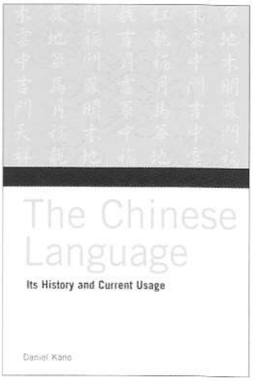
DON'T JUST GO TO CHINA. CONNECT WITH IT.
MATTHEW B. CHRISTENSEN
DECODING CHINA
A Handbook for Traveling, Studying, and Working in Today's China
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4267-9



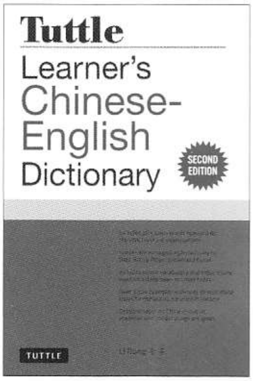
VERONIQUE MICHEL
CHINA ONLINE
NETSPEAK AND WORDPLAY USED BY OVER 700 MILLION CHINESE INTERNET USERS
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4436-9



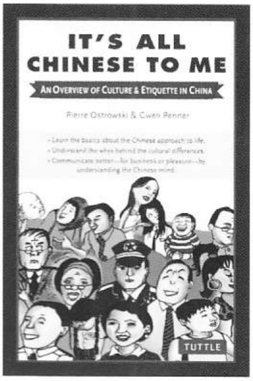
The Chinese Language
Its History and Current Usage
Daniel Kane

ISBN 978-0-8048-3853-5



Tuttle
Learner's Chinese-English Dictionary
SECOND EDITION
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4527-4



IT'S ALL CHINESE TO ME
AN OVERVIEW OF CULTURE & ETIQUETTE IN CHINA
Pierre Ostrowski & Gwen Penner
TUTTLE

ISBN 978-0-8048-4079-8

"A great place to start your Mandarin studies." — *Goodreads*

"A great memorization tool for Chinese characters." — *Virginialynn.hubpages.com*

"This book is everything I could have wished for when learning basic Chinese."
— *Hanban.com*

At last — an effective and enjoyable way to learn Mandarin Chinese characters!

This book helps you learn the meanings and pronunciations of the 800 most common Mandarin Chinese characters—those required for the Advanced Placement and HSK Level 1–3 exams. Authors Alison and Laurence Matthews have developed a revolutionary new method of learning the basic Mandarin Chinese characters quickly and easily based on the modern science of learning and memory. Key principles of this method include (a) the use of visual imagery to depict each character and commit it to memory along with a story containing the meaning and pronunciation of the character, and (b) the systematic construction of complicated characters from their constituent building blocks.

Learning Chinese Characters has been used successfully by tens of thousands of people and is suitable for anyone with an interest in learning the basic Chinese characters, with or without prior knowledge of the Mandarin Chinese language. It may be used in conjunction with any standard textbook, or on its own.

KEY FEATURES OF THIS BOOK:

- Specially designed pictures and stories make each character memorable, allowing you to quickly commit the meaning and pronunciation of the character to long-term memory without the need for tedious and time-consuming rote memorization
- Tips are provided on how to use the learning method and how to avoid common problems encountered by students when learning the characters
- Mandarin Chinese characters are introduced in logical sequence, giving priority to the most common ones
- Standard simplified Mandarin Chinese characters are presented with pronunciations given in the standard Hanyu Pinyin romanization system
- Key information is provided for each character—including radical, stroke-count, traditional forms, compounds and guidance on writing the character

This is a practical guide with a clear and concise presentation. All characters are indexed for easy look-up.

TUTTLE
www.tuttlepublishing.com
Printed in Singapore

ISBN 978-0-8048-3816-0
52995
9 780804 838160
US $29.95